# ADVANCED GRAMMAR

A self-study reference and practice book for advanced learners of English

with answers

**Fourth Edition** 

IN USE

Martin Hewings



Includes eBook with audio





Includes
Online Tests



Shaftesbury Road, Cambridge CB2 8EA, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

314 321, 3rd Floor, Plot 3, Splendor Forum, Jasola District Centre, New Delhi 🗆 10025, India

103 Penang Road, #05 06/07, Visioncrest Commercial, Singapore 238467

Cambridge University Press & Assessment is a department of the University of Cambridge.

We share the University mission to contribute to society through the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

# www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781108920216

© Cambridge University Press & Assessment 2022

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press & Assessment.

Printed in Malaysia by Vivar Printing

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

978-1-108-92021-6 Advanced Grammar in Use Fourth Edition with Answers, Practice Extra, and Audio

Cambridge University Press & Assessment has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press & Assessment does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

# Contents

Thanks vii

To the student viii

To the teacher x

Study planner xii

#### Tenses

- 1 Present continuous and present simple: state verbs and performatives
- 2 Using present continuous and present simple
- 3 Past simple and present perfect
- 4 Past continuous and past simple
- 5 Past perfect and past simple
- 6 Present perfect continuous and present perfect
- 7 Past perfect continuous, past perfect and past continuous
- 8 Present and past time: review

#### The future

- 9 Will and be going to
- 10 Present simple and present continuous for the future
- 11 Future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous
- 12 Be to + infinitive; be about to + infinitive
- 13 Other ways of talking about the future
- 14 The future seen from the past

#### Modals and semi-modals

- 15 Can, could, be able to and be allowed to
- 16 Will, would and used to
- 17 May and might
- 18 Must and have (got) to
- 19 Need(n't), don't need to and don't have to
- 20 Should, ought to and had better

# Linking verbs, passives, questions

- 21 Linking verbs: be, appear, seem; become, get, etc.
- 22 Using passives
- 23 Forming passive sentences: objects, complements and multi-word verbs
- 24 Forming passive sentences: verb + -ing or to-infinitive
- 25 Reporting with passives; It is said that ...
- 26 Wh-questions with who, whom, which, how and whose
- 27 Negative questions; echo questions; questions with that-clauses

# Verb complementation: what follows verbs

- 28 Verbs, objects and complements
- 29 Verb + two objects
- 30 Verb + -ing forms and infinitives 1
- 31 Verb + -ing forms and infinitives 2

# Reporting

- 32 Reporting people's words and thoughts
- 33 Reporting statements: that-clauses
- 34 Verb + wh-clause
- 35 Tense choice in reporting
- 36 Reporting offers, suggestions, orders, intentions, etc.
- 37 Modal verbs in reporting
- 38 Reporting what people say using nouns and adjectives
- 39 Should in that-clauses; the present subjunctive

#### Nouns

- 40 Agreement between subject and verb 1
- 41 Agreement between subject and verb 2
- 42 Agreement between subject and verb 3
- 43 Compound nouns and noun phrases

# Articles, determiners and quantifiers

- 44 A / an and one
- 45 A / an. the and zero article 1
- 46 A / an, the and zero article 2
- 47 A / an, the and zero article 3
- 48 Some and any
- 49 No, none (of) and not any
- 50 Much (of), many (of), a lot of, lots (of), etc.
- 51 All (of), whole, every, each
- 52 Few, little, less, fewer

# Relative clauses and other types of clause

- 53 Relative pronouns
- 54 Other relative words: whose, when, whereby, etc.
- 55 Prepositions in relative clauses
- 56 Other ways of adding information to noun phrases 1: additional noun phrases, etc.
- 57 Other ways of adding information to noun phrases 2: prepositional phrases, etc.
- 58 Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 1
- 59 Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 2

# Pronouns, substitution and leaving out words

- 60 Reflexive pronouns: herself, himself, themselves, etc.
- 61 One and ones
- 62 So and not as substitutes for clauses, etc.
- 63 Do so; such
- 64 More on ellipsis after auxiliary verbs
- 65 Ellipsis of to-infinitives

#### Adjectives and adverbs

- 66 Position of adjectives
- 67 Gradable and non-gradable adjectives: using adjectives with adverbs
- 68 Gradable and non-gradable adjectives: differences in meaning
- 69 Participle adjectives and compound adjectives
- 70 Adjectives + to-infinitive, -ing, that-clause, wh-clause
- 71 Adjectives and adverbs
- 72 Adjectives and adverbs: comparative and superlative forms
- 73 Comparative phrases and clauses
- 74 Position of adverbs: end position
- 75 Position of adverbs: front and mid position
- 76 Adverbs of place, direction, indefinite frequency, and time
- 77 Degree adverbs and focus adverbs
- 78 Comment adverbs and viewpoint adverbs

# Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

- 79 Adverbial clauses of time
- 80 Giving reasons: as, because, etc.; for and with
- 81 Purposes and results: in order to, so as to, etc.
- 82 Contrasts: although and though; even though / if; while, whilst and whereas
- 83 If: real and unreal conditionals
- 84 If: other conditional patterns with if
- 85 If I were you ...; imagine he were to win
- 86 If ... not and unless; if and whether; etc.
- 87 Connecting ideas in a sentence and between sentences

# Prepositions

- 88 Prepositions of position and movement
- 89 Between and among
- 90 Prepositions of time
- 91 Talking about exceptions
- 92 Prepositions after verbs
- 93 Prepositions after nouns
- 94 Multi-word verbs: word order

# Organising information

- 95 There is, there was, etc.
- 96 It as subject (introductory It)
- 97 It as object (referring forward): It is / was no versus There is / was no...
- 98 Focusing: it-clauses and what-clauses
- 99 Inversion 1
- 100 Inversion 2

#### Grammar in academic contexts

- 101 Complex noun phrases and complex prepositions
- 102 Expressing and reporting opinions: it-clauses
- 103 Linking ideas in academic writing and speech
- 104 Referring to other work and sections in academic writing and speaking
- 105 Academic discussion: lead-in phrases

Glossary 212

Grammar reminder 217

Additional exercises 235

Key to Additional exercises 246 Key to Study planner 249 Key to Exercises 250

Index of grammatical items 277
Index of lexical items 285

Appendix 1 295 Appendix 2 297

# **Thanks**

I would like to thank all those who worked with me on the first three editions of *Advanced Grammar in Use*, in particular Jeanne McCarten and Alison Sharpe for their encouragement. Thanks also to my former colleagues and students at the University of Birmingham for their help and interest.

For this fourth edition I am grateful to Claire Croal, Gillian Lowe, Chris Reakirt, Ashley Williams, and Nóirín Burke. I would also like to thank Cambridge University Press and Assessment for allowing me access to the Cambridge English Corpus.

Finally, my thanks, as ever, to Ann.

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting and in the next update to the digital edition, as applicable.

Key: U = Unit

Photography

All the images are sourced from Getty Images.

U04: Compassionate Eye Foundation/Kelvin Murray/DigitalVision; U05: SolStock/E+; U06: Dave & Les Jacobs/DigitalVision; Tetra Images/Tetra images; U08: georgeclerk/iStock/Getty Images Plus; U10: KatarzynaBialasiewicz/iStock/Getty Images Plus; U12: Francesco Carta fotografo/Moment; U16: Andersen Ross/DigitalVision; U19: Westend61; U22: RUNSTUDIO/Moment; U25: skynesher/E+; U30: Alan Schein/The Image Bank; U31: Prostock-Studio/iStock/Getty Images Plus; U36: Tara Moore/Stone; U44: PhotoEuphoria/iStock/Getty Images Plus; U45: FG Trade/E+; U62: bergh.dk/Image Source; U64: Jupiterimages/The Image Bank; U65: Andersen Ross/DigitalVision; U71: Capelle.r/Moment; U72: The Good Brigade/DigitalVision; U76: Erica Finstad/iStock/Getty Images Plus; U77: DieterMeyrl/E+; U79: verbaska\_studio/iStock/Getty Images Plus; U81: Monty Rakusen/Image Source; U86: Jung-Pang Wu/Moment; U91: Nick Brundle Photography/Moment.

Typeset

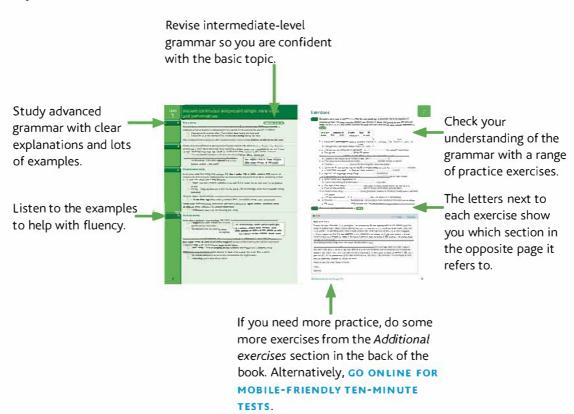
Typesetting by QBS Learning.

# To the student

#### Who the book is for

Advanced Grammar in Use is for advanced students of English. It is mainly a self-study book, but might also be used in class with a teacher.

# Layout of the book



#### How to use the book

It isn'	't necessary to work through the units in order. First, have a look through the whole book to see what
is the	ere.
$\bigcirc$ T	The STUDY PLANNER will help you decide which units to study. Do the multiple-choice questions
	and check your answers, then go to the relevant unit in the book for further study, or to the relevant
	GRAMMAR REMINDER section for further reading.
	Alternatively, find a specific grammar point in the <b>CONTENTS</b> at the start of the book or in the more detailed <b>INDEX</b> at the back.
$\bigcirc$ T	The KEY TO EXERCISES, as well as ADDITIONAL EXERCISES for further practice of grammar points, are
	at the back of the book.
0 1	Jse the GLOSSARY for explanations of grammar terms used in the book and the APPENDICES for more
	nformation on irregular verbs and passive verb forms.
	Go online for easy access to Mobile-FRIENDLY TEN-MINUTE TESTS.
Gran	nmar in Academic contexts
FIVE	NEW UNITS focus on GRAMMAR IN ACADEMIC CONTEXTS specifically for students using English at
	ge or university. These units will help you to:
	produce more accurate English in your written work;
•	give better academic presentations;
_	ead your textbooks more efficiently;
_	ollow your lectures and presentations more easily:

# Where will learning English take you?

We know you want to enjoy learning grammar and feel supported too. That's why we have made all the learning materials - whether in the book or online - easy to use. Advanced Grammar in Use will keep you engaged and provide the practical skills you need to succeed in both exam and everyday life English.

Read on to start your English learning journey today.

reflect on your work and learn from your mistakes.

# To the teacher

You can recommend Advanced Grammar in Use to your advanced level students to encourage them to be more autonomous with/in their learning. You can use it to supplement or support your classroom teaching, or use it as a reference book.

Read on to see how you can use Advanced Grammar in Use with your students -call to action-

# How to use the book ...

Select units that are relevant to the syllabus that you are following with your students, or as particular difficulties arise. You can use this book in a number of ways:

1	to encourage self-study
0	Ask students to use the <b>STUDY PLANNER</b> at the beginning of the book, then focus on those units that deal with areas of grammar where students are least successful. Alternatively, use the study planner as a diagnostic test for your students.
0	Remind students to use the reference-only <b>Grammar reminder</b> before moving on to the more advanced material in the units, and to do the <b>Additional exercises</b> in the back of the book and <b>TEN-MINUTE TESTS</b> online for further practice.
i	in class
0	Present the explanation on the left-hand page of a unit, and use the exercises for classroom practice.
0	Alternatively, you could begin with the exercises and refer to the left-hand pages only when students need help to complete them.
0	Set particular units for self-study for students who study at a slower pace than others, or for faster-paced ones to extend their knowledge.
0	Develop your own classroom-based activities around the explanations on the left-hand pages, then set the exercises as consolidation for self-study.

NE	W for Fourth Edition
_	e've kept popular Third Edition features, including:
	The easy-to-use format with explanations on the left-hand pages and exercises on the facing right-hand pages.
0	The comprehensive grammar syllabus, so your students have access to all the grammar they need. The word boxes with the most common words found in particular grammar patterns, informed by the Cambridge International Corpus.
	Fourth Edition, we've added the following new features that students and teachers told us they wanted:  UPDATED CONTENT to keep it relevant to students.  MOBILE-FRIENDLY TEN-MINUTE TESTS.  NEW 'GRAMMAR IN ACADEMIC CONTEXTS' UNITS focussing on longer written and spoken texts to help
	your students succeed in their academic studies.

# We support you to help them achieve

As a teacher, you go above and beyond because you care about your students' future. That's why Advanced Grammar in Use will support you at every step with our research-based learning resources. It helps make learning more effective and exciting, and teaching more efficient and rewarding.

A series of REFLECTION tasks in the new Grammar in academic contexts units to help your students self-

evaluate the work they have done and apply it to their own academic work.

Use this study planner to decide which units you should study, and which section of the *Grammar reminder* you should read.

Choose the best option in each question. Sometimes more than one option is possible. Check your answers on page 249.

Tenses	Grammar reminder	Unit
1.1 'Who?' ' to get through to Misaki.'  A do you phone I'm trying  C are you phoning I try  D do you phone I try	A1	1, 2
1.2 to Turkey every year for your holidays?  A Are you going B Were you going C Have you gone  D Do you go	A5	1, 2
<ul> <li>1.3 I</li></ul>		1, 2
1.4 Sophia me that you're thinking of emigrating.  A told B tells C is telling D tell		2, 1
1.5 Aisha a few minutes ago.  A has left B leaves C left D had left	A6	3, 4, 5
1.6 We to the tennis club since we moved here.  A have belonged B belong C belonged D are belonging	A11	3,6
1.7 After shehospital, she had a long holiday.  A leaves B is leaving C has left D left		3, 4, 5
1.8 When he realised I at him, he away.  A looked was turning B was looking turned  C was looking was turning D looked turned	A13	4,7
<ul><li>1.9 When the builders were here I them cups of tea all the time.</li><li>A was making B am making C made D make</li></ul>		4,7
1.10 When I went into the bathroom, I found that the bath	A14	5,7
1.11 I was sure that I		5, 7
1.12 Your eyes are red –?  A did you cry B have you been crying C have you cried D do you cry	A17	6

		Grammar reminder	Unit
1.13	this holiday for ages.  A We're looking forward to  B We've been looking forward to  C We look forward to  D We've looked forward to		6, 3
1.14	When I saw the vase on the website, I knew it was exactly what I	A18	7
	A looked for B look for C had been looking for D have looked for		
1.15	hard all year, so I felt that I deserved a holiday.  A I work  B I'd been working  C I'd worked  D I'm working		7, 4, 5
The fu	uture		
2.1	Ione of my special desserts for dinner, if you like.  A make B'm going to make C'll make D'm making	В3	9
2.2	If Erik phones Iyou know.  A 'm going to let B let C 'm letting D 'll let		9
2.3	'Has anybody offered to look after the children?' 'Sophia it.'	B5	9
	A is to do B's going to do C does D will do		
2.4	The next train to Dublin at 3:45. (station announcement)  A will leave B is leaving C is going to leave D leaves	В6	10
2.5	When you Ben, tell him he still owes me some money.		10
22/727	A are going to see B are seeing C see D will see		Section 1
2.6	Wea party next Saturday. Can you come?  A 're to have B 're having C have D 'll have	B7	10
2.7	After the operation you any sport for a while.  A won't be doing B aren't doing C don't do  D won't to do	В8	11
2.8	When the race starts later this afternoon the drivers for drier weather than last year.  A were hoping B are hoping C hope D will be hoping		11
2.9	In the next few years, thousands of speed cameras on major roads.  A are appear B will appear C are to appear D are appearing		12
2.10	To Bangkok by the end of June.  A I aim getting B I'm aiming getting C I aim to get  D I'm aiming to get		13
2.11	Weeach other later that day, but I had to phone and cancel.  A see B are seeing C were seeing D saw		14

Mod	dals and semi-modals	Grammar reminder	Unit
3.1	Despite yesterday's snowfalls, we home in less than an hour.  A could drive B can drive C were able to drive  D are able to drive	C5	15
3.2	She swam strongly and cross the river easily, even though it was swollen by the heavy rain.  A can B was able to C could D is able to		15
3.3	me to get you some water?  A Would you like B Should you like C Shall you like  D Will you like	C12	16
3.4	WeSwitzerland four times during the 2010s.  A would visit B used to visit C visit D visited		16
3.5	'While we're in Moscow shall we go and see Dariya?' 'But it's been nearly 20 years since we last saw her. She remember us.'  A can't B couldn't C may not D might not	C17	17
3.6	During the war, the police arrest you for criticising the government.  A may B might C should D could		17
3.7	'I'm seeing Dr Evans next week.' 'That be right. He's on holiday then.'  A mustn't B can't C hasn't to D hasn't got to	C23	18
3.8	I can't access the database. You a password.  A must have got to put in B must've to put in  C must have to put in D must put in		18
3.9	Ian interview because I'd worked there before.  A didn't have to have B needn't have had C didn't need to have D needn't have	C27	19
3.10	Nowadays it cost a fortune to own an eBook reader. <b>A</b> hasn't to <b>B</b> needn't <b>C</b> doesn't have to <b>D</b> mustn't		19
3.11	Walking under a ladderbe unlucky. <b>A</b> is suppose to <b>B</b> should <b>C</b> ought to <b>D</b> is supposed to	C32	20
3.12	It's the third time she's been skating this week. She really enjoy it.  A must B should C ought to D had better		20
Link	ing verbs, passives, questions		
4.1	The traffic lightsgreen and I pulled away.  A got B became C turned D went		21
4.2	The building the earthquake but then by a fire.  A was survived destroyed B survived was destroyed  C survived destroyed D was survived was destroyed	D1	23, 24, 22

Relative clauses and other types of clause	Grammar reminder	Unit
<ul> <li>9.1 My mother enjoys hill walking.</li> <li>A who is in her seventies B, that is in her seventies,</li> <li>C, which is in her seventies,</li> <li>D, who is in her seventies,</li> </ul>	J2	53
9.2 She's one of the kindest people		53
9.3 Do you know the date we have to hand in the essay? <b>A</b> which <b>B</b> on which <b>C</b> by which <b>D</b> when		54
9.4 The valley the town lies is heavily polluted. <b>A</b> in that <b>B</b> in which <b>C</b> in <b>D</b> which		55
9.5 The prisoners are all women.  A who being released B are being released  D who are being released  C being released		56
9.6 She lives in the house		57
9.7 'Wait a minute,' said Amy,	J8	58, 59
9.8 by the boys' behaviour, she complained to the head teacher.  A She annoyed B Annoyed C She was annoyed D Annoying	J10	58, 59
9.9 at the party, we saw Ruth standing alone. <b>A</b> Arrived <b>B</b> We arrived <b>C</b> Arriving <b>D</b> We were arriving		58
9.10 Josh was the first person I saw hospital. <b>A</b> by leaving <b>B</b> on leaving <b>C</b> in leaving <b>D</b> on to leave		59
Pronouns, substitution and leaving out words		
10.1 'What did you do to your hand?' 'Iwhen I was chopping vegetables.'  A cut me B cut C myself cut D cut myself	К1	60
10.2 The scheme allows students from many countries to communicate	K7	
A each other B with each other C themselves D with one another		
<ul> <li>We are confident that both sets of fans will at the match.</li> <li>A behave itself B behave them C behave themselves</li> <li>D behave</li> </ul>		60
10.4 'We need new curtains.' 'Okay, let's buy		61

		Grammar reminder	Unit
4.3	I'm really disappointed. I for the team again.  A wasn't picked B didn't pick C didn't get picked  D wasn't got picked	D2	23, 24, 22
4.4	When I asked what was wrong,  A I was explained the problem  B he explained the problem to me  C the problem was explained to me  D he explained me the problem		23
4.5	The children to the zoo.  A were enjoyed taken  C were enjoyed taking  D enjoyed taking		24 App.2
4.6	The new computer system next month. <b>A</b> is being installed by people <b>B</b> is be installed <b>C</b> is being installed <b>D</b> is been installed		22 App.2
4.7	That we have to leave.  A They have informed us  B It has been informed  D We have been informed		25
4.8	He just turned away when I asked him. he meant?  A Which do you think  B How do you think  C What you think  D What do you think	E4, E1	26
4.9	To see in the town?  A What there are B What is there C What are there  D What there is		26
4.10	was in the box?  A What did you think that B What you thought  C What did you think D What you did think		27
Verb	complementation: what follows verbs		
5.1	I always associate  A pizza B pizza by Italy C Italian pizza  D pizza with Italy		28
5.2	She described		29
5.3	Stevens the wallet.  A admitted to steal B admitted steal C admitted stealing  D admitted him stealing	F5	30, 31
5.4	My parents wouldn't to the party.  A allow me go B allow me to go C allow me going  D allow to go	F9	30, 31
5.5	She felt the mosquito her.  A bites B to bite C bite D biting	F13	30, 31

		Grammar reminder	Unit
5.6	You don't object late tonight, do you?  A to working B to work C work D working		30
5.7	They arranged in London.  A for Rania to stay B Rania to stay C by Rania to stay  D for Rania staying		31
Repo	rting	_	
6.1	Georgiashe would be late for the meeting. Sheshe was feeling ill.  A told that said that B told that said me that  C told me that said that D told me that said me that	G4/5	32
6.2	She	G7	32
6.3	'I suppose you've heard the latest to me.  A news,' said she B news.' she said C news', she said  D news,' she said		32
6.4	I notified I had changed my address.  A with the bank that B the bank that C that  D to the bank that		33
6.5	She reminded		34
6.6	Police said that they the missing girl.  A had found B have found C find D were finding		35
6.7	She encouragedthe job.  A to take the job B that Fran should take C Fran to take  D to Fran to take		36
6.8	He asked where he put the box. <b>A</b> shall <b>B</b> ought to <b>C</b> will <b>D</b> should		37
6.9	She asked my advicesubject she should study at university.  A on to what B as to what C on what D to what		38
6.10	They directed that the building		39
Nour	ns -		
7.1	Thefaulty.  A equipments are B equipment was C equipments were  D equipment were	H1	

		reminder	Offic
7.2	The company doing a lot of in South America.  A is businesses  B are business  C are businesses  D is business	H2	40
7.3	Theshoes were covered in mud, so I asked them to take them off before they got intocar.  A girl's Leon's B girls' Leons' C girls' Leon's D girl's Leons'	Н7	43
7.4	The council postponed a decision on the new road, and many leading members of the opposition party criticised the delay.  A has have B has has C have has D have have		40
7.5	Thinks that Phil should be given the job.  A Neither of us B The majority of my colleagues  C Practically everyone D A number of people		41
7.6	Policethat Thomas is in Brazil, although his exact whereaboutsunknown.  A believes are B believe are C believes is  D believe is		42
7.7	A new is being built outside the town.  A golf course B golfcourse C golf's course D golf-course	H5	
7.8	The government has introduced  A a children's clothes tax  B a tax on children clothes  C a children clothes tax  D a tax on children's clothes		43
7.9	A David's guitar playing  B David guitar playing  C Davids' guitar playing  D The guitar playing of David	Н11	40
Articl	es, determiners and quantifiers		
8.1	I'll be with you in		44
8.2	Look at	15	45-47
8.3	Sydney is	17	45–47
8.4	A There are example B There are examples C There are the examples D There is example	19	45–47

	Grammar reminder	Unit
8.5 is one of the many factors involved in changing farming methods.  A Climate B A climate C Climates D The climate		45
8.6 Against her parents' wishes, she wants to be		46
8.7 'You look upset.' 'Yes, I've had		47
8.8 I haven't been here for	114	48
8.9 We haven't gotleft. <b>A</b> a butter <b>B</b> any butter <b>C</b> the butter <b>D</b> some butter	115	48
8.10 'Where were you last week?' 'I was visiting		48 49–51
8.11 my jewellery is missing. <b>A</b> Some of <b>B</b> Any of <b>C</b> Some <b>D</b> Any	123	49
8.12 the furniture arrived yet.  A None has B None have C None of has  D None of have	134, 122–28	49
8.13 I phoned Sarah at home, but  A there were no answers B there were no answer  C there was no answers D there was no answer		49
8.14 There isn'ttraffic along the street where I live. <b>A</b> many <b>B</b> much <b>C</b> much of <b>D</b> many of	138, 122–28	50
8.15 the food was inedible.  A A large amount of B Many of C Much of  D A large number of		50
8.16 waiting to hear the results. <b>A</b> Everyone was <b>B</b> All was <b>C</b> Everyone were <b>D</b> All were	144	51
8.17 Following the flood, in the area major repair work.  A each of building need  C every building need  D each buildings need	146, 122–28	51
8.18 to Athens during the vacation.  A All they are going B They are all going  C They all are going D They are going all		51
8.19 There isevidence to support his claim. <b>A</b> little of <b>B</b> few <b>C</b> a few <b>D</b> little	148, 122–28	52
8.20 We should usetime we have available to discuss Jon's proposal.  A the little of B the little C the few D little		52

		Grammar reminder	Unit
10.5	The two children for breaking the window.  A each blamed other B blamed other C blamed each other  D each blamed the other	К9	
10.6	I had a racing bike when I was young, and  A my brother did so B so did my brother C so my brother  D did my brother	K10	62
10.7	'I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I		62
10.8	They needed someone who was both an excellent administrator and managerwas not easy to find.  A Such person B A such person C Such D Such a person		63
10.9	'They could have been delayed by the snow.' 'Yes, they		64
10.10	Leon was frightened – or maybe he just		65
Adje	ctives and adverbs		
11.1	He is a		66
11.2	Our teacher gave us problem to solve.  A a very impossible B a completely impossible  C an absolutely impossible D an extremely impossible	L2	67, 68
11.3	Experience is for the job.  A really essential B fairly essential C pretty essential  D very essential		67
11.4	I met my professor the other day. She is now advising on the government's  A old politics very foreign policy B very old politics foreign policy C very old politics very foreign policy D old politics foreign policy		68
11.5	I drank some	L3	
11.6	I was to find that the film was quite  A surprised frightening B surprised frightened  C surprising frightened  D surprising frightened	L4	

		Grammar reminder	Unit
11.7	My watch was among the		69
11.8	He was busy his homework.  A to do B doing C that he was doing D he was doing		70
11.9	It was as we went into the room.  A strange quiet B strange quietly C strangely quiet  D strangely quietly	L6	71
11.10	Shetowards the door.  A quick ran B ran quick C ran quickly D quickly ran		71
11.11	It was the thing to say.  A most ridiculous B ridiculous C ridiculousest  D most ridiculousest	L8	72
11.12	'Why did you buy these oranges?' 'They were		72
11.13	Despite his heavy injuries he tried to lead as possible.  A as normal life B a normal a life  C as normal as life D as normal a life		73
11.14	Have you heard the good news?  A In May, Eva had a baby.  B Eva had a baby in May.  C Eva in May had a baby.  D Eva had in May a baby.		74,75
11.15	A We see hardly ever  B We hardly see ever  C We hardly ever see  D Hardly we ever see		75
11.16	Only later how much damage had been caused.  A she realised B she did realised C did she realise  D realised she		76, 99, 100
11.17	We		77
11.18	A Politics speaking B Politically C In political terms  D In a political point of view		78
Adver	bial clauses and conjunctions		
12.1	I unwell when I this morning.  A felt get up B felt got up C feel get up  D feel got	M2	
12.2	Have something to eat before you	МЗ	

		Grammar	Unit
		reminder	
12.3	I still feel tiredin the morning.  A when I wake up B as I wake up C when I will wake up  D while I wake up		79
12.4	We were delayed an accident.  A because B because of there was C because there was  D because of		80
12.5	I wrote down her nameforget it.  A so as not to B so not to C not to D in order not to		81
12.6	they slept soundly.  A Hot though was the night air B Hot though the night air was  C Hot as the night air was D Hot although the night air was		82
12.7	I'll give you a lift if it	M9	83, 84
12.8	If I had known how difficult the job was, I it.  A won't have taken B wouldn't have taken C won't take it  D mightn't have taken	M14	83, 84
12.9	If I a more reliable car, I to Spain rather than fly.  A would have would drive B had had driven  C had would drive D would have had would drive	M17	83, 84
12.10	If the technology available, we would be able to expand the business.  A would become B were become C were to become D became		83
12.11	If the North Sea in winter, you could walk from London to Oslo.  A happened to freeze B froze C should freeze  D should happen to freeze		84
12.12	very busy and rather unfit, I might consider taking up squash.  A Were I not B Was I not C Weren't I D If I wasn't		85
12.13	They couldn't decide it was worth re-sitting the exam.  A if B whether or not C whether D if or not		86
12.14	It was midday, I put on the light. <b>A</b> Even so <b>B</b> Although <b>C</b> Even <b>D</b> Even though		87
Prepo	sitions		
13.1	He suddenly saw Eva the room. He pushed his way the crowd of people to get to her.  A across through B over through C across across D over along		88

		Grammar reminder	Unit
13.2	The concert features, others, Karl Frisk and the Johnsons. Their music is still very popular teenagers.  A between among B between between C among between D among among		89
13.3	a pause in the conversation, she left the room. <b>A</b> In <b>B</b> During <b>C</b> Over <b>D</b> By		90
13.4	cricket, I enjoy watching football and basketball.  A Apart from B Except C Except for D Besides		91
13.5	Joher disabled mother until her death last year.  A cared after B cared for C took care of D cared about		92
13.6	What's the chance five heads when you toss a coin five times?  A of getting B to get C of get D get		93
13.7	She tried to		94
Organ	nising information		
14.1	people trying to get into the football stadium.  A There were too much  B There were too many  C It was too many  D There was too many		95, 96
14.2	Sara wanted to borrow money.  A Suddenly hit me that  B It suddenly hit  C It suddenly hit me that  D Suddenly hit me		96
14.3	Iyou can swim so well and I can't.  A hate B hate it that C hate that D hate it		97
14.4	Luis lost his job and was short of money, so his flat and move in with his brother.  A that he did was to sell B what he did was to sell C what he did sold D what he did was sell		98
14.5	<ul> <li>been diverted, they would have arrived early.</li> <li>A Had the plane not</li> <li>B Hadn't the plane</li> <li>C The plane had not</li> <li>D The plane not had</li> </ul>		99
14.6	that Lana was able to retire at the age of 50.  A So successful her business was, B So successful was her business, C Her business was so successful D So was her successful business		100

# ADVANCED GRAMMAR IN USE

Unit **1** 

# Present continuous and present simple: state verbs and performatives

	and performatives				
А	State verbs		Reminder → A1–A5		
	We can use the present continuous with some statements as that a situation is temporary or for a positive continuous. Ella stays with us quite often. The childrents at the moment. The childrents State verbs which we rarely use with the present of the continuous with some statements.	eriod of tim n <b>love</b> havin n <b>are lovin</b> g	ne around the present. Compare: ng her here. <i>and</i> g having her here.		
В	Some verbs have different meanings when they are actions. With their 'state' meanings, they usually to 'action' meanings, they may take simple or conting.  The app doesn't appear to work on my possible.	take simple luous forms hone. (app	rather than continuous forms. With their s, depending on context. Compare:		
J	<ul> <li>Carley Robb is currently appearing in a monomorphisms on Broadway. / She often appears in mus (appear: action = take part)</li> </ul>		Also: expect, feel, fit, have, imagine, look, measure, see, think, weigh		
C	Mental state verbs				
	With some verbs describing mental states (e.g. find, realise, regret, think, understand) we can the present continuous to emphasise that we have recently started to think about something of we are not sure about something. Compare:    I regret that the company will have to be sold. (= I've made the decision and I'm sorry a it) and   I'm regretting my decision to give her the job. (= I'm increasingly aware that it was the decision)  When it means 'think carefully about', consider is often used in the continuous form in the presence   He's considering taking early retirement. (not He considers taking early retirement.)  Some other verbs describing preferences and mental states (e.g. agree, believe, conclude, known in the presence of the continuous form in the presence of the considering taking early retirement.				
	<ul><li>prefer) are rarely used with the present continuou</li><li>I believe you now. (not I'm believing you</li></ul>				
D	Performatives				
	Verbs which perform the action they describe (= p  I suggest you park outside the city and				
	get the bus to the centre.  We <b>request</b> that you read the terms and conditions carefully before signing.	beg, conf forbid, g	nowledge, admit, advise, apologise, fess, congratulate, declare, deny, uarantee, name, order, permit, predict, refuse, remind, request, thank, warn		
	Some verbs used as performatives with the preser (apologise, deny, guarantee, promise, suggest) simple or the present continuous in negative sent O I don't deny / I'm not denying taking the	have a sim ences:	ilar meaning with either the present		
	say more tentative or polite:				

○ We **would advise** you to arrive two hours before the flight leaves.

☐ I **must beg** you to keep this a secret.

# **Exercises**

1.1 Complete each pair of sentences using the same verb (in a question form or negative if necessary) from the box. Use the present continuous; if this is not possible, use the present simple. Use \( \lambda \) to add any words outside the gap and use contracted forms where appropriate.

A & B

	go.m	tract consist of doubt feel fit eve like <del>look</del> measure sound
		's does
1	a	I hear you're having your house repainted. How \( \) it \( \looking \)? (or How \( \) it \( \look \)?)
		does
		I bought this new dress today. How ∕it <u>look</u> ?
2		A: What are you doing with that ruler? B: I the area of the kitchen.
		The garden 12 by 20 metres.
3		Iwhether I'll get another chance to retake the exam.
	Ь	I suppose she might be at home tonight, but Iit.
4	a	The new science museum currently
	b	Flowersbees with their brightly-coloured petals.
5	a	Carlos won't work at the top of the 20-storey building because heheights.
	Ь	A: How's the new job? B: Well, at the moment, Iit at all.
6	a	My car's in the garage today. Theynew brakes.
	b	I bought this jumper for Anna, but ither so I'll have to take it back.
7	a	What's your shirt made from? Itlike silk.
	b	I won't be coming to work today. Ivery well.
8		The roof of the houseonly plastic sheets nailed down in a few places.
		Their school uniform black trousers and a dark green jumper.
9	a	Simon's new songquite good, but he doesn't think he's ready yet to perform
		it in public.
	Ь	A: What's that noise? B: Itlike a bird stuck in the chimney.
10	a	Poulsontreatment for a knee injury, but should be fit to play on Saturday.
	b	My sisterlong blonde hair. You're bound to recognise her.

1.2 Cross out any improbable answers. C & D



# Using present continuous and present simple

A	We often use the present simple and present continuous when telling stories and jokes in informal spoken English to create the impression that events are happening now. This can make them more direct and exciting and hold people's attention:  She goes up to this man and looks straight into his eyes. He's not wearing his glasses, and he doesn't recognise her  This man's playing golf when a kangaroo bounds up to him, grabs his club and hits his ball about half a mile  The main events are usually described in sequence using the present simple and longer background events are described using the present continuous.  In narratives and anecdotes the present simple can be used to highlight an event. Often it is used after past tenses and with a phrase such as suddenly or all of a sudden:					
	<ul> <li>So last night, I'm waiting for the bus when this man walks up to me and says</li> <li>I was in the park reading a newspaper, when all of a sudden this dog jumps at me.</li> </ul>					
В	We also use the present simple and present continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports events) when the report takes place at the same time as the action:  Continuous in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes place at the same time as the action in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes place at the same time as the action in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes place at the same time as the action in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes place at the same time as the action in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes place at the same time as the action in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes place at the same time as the action in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes at the same time as the action in live commentaries (for example, on sports) when the report takes (for example, or example, or example, or example, or example, or examp					
С	We can use the present simple in phrases such as It says here, I hear, I gather, I see, I understand and They say, (Someone) says, (Someone) tells me to introduce news that we have heard, read, seen (e.g. on television), or been told. We can also use past tenses (e.g. Kevin said, I heard):  I gather you're worried about Pedro.  Sophia tells me you're thinking of emigrating.  Professor Hendriks is at the conference and I hear she's an excellent speaker.					
D	The present simple is often used in news headlines to talk about events that have recently happened:  SECOND QUAKE HITS JAPAN  FIRE BREAKS OUT IN HOTEL ROOM					
	SCIENTISTS FIND ICE ON THE MOON FOREIGN MINISTER RESIGNS					
	We can use the present simple to refer to the contents of books, films, newspapers, etc:  Thompson <b>gives</b> a list of the largest European companies in Chapter 6.  At the beginning of the book, three men <b>find</b> \$4 million in a crashed plane.  In the film, Loni Baranski <b>takes</b> the role of a private detective.					
E	We can use the present continuous with adverbs such as always, constantly, continually or forever to emphasise that something is done so often that it is characteristic of a person, group or thing. We often use this pattern to indicate disapproval:  A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're constantly changing your mind.  Jacob is a really kind person. He's always offering to help me with my work.  The past continuous is used in a similar way with these adverbs (e.g. Was Olivia always asking you for money, too?).  We can use the present continuous to describe something we regularly do at a certain time:					
	<ul> <li>At eight o'clock I'm usually driving to work, so phone me on my mobile.</li> <li>Seven o'clock is a bit early. We're generally eating then.</li> </ul>					

# **Exercises**

0000	ontinuous. A & B	
1		just over the bar. The home team
	much more in this half	
2	A manhome late one nigl	nt after the office Christmas party. His wife
	for him, and she	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
3	I went to a concert yesterday in the Town H	
		on his seat andto
	conduct them. (play – stand – start)	
C	omplete what each person says about the	news they have read or heard using the present
	ense phrases in C. 🕝	
1	O	I see the government's giving the health
	Government gives health service billions	service a lot more money.
2	Verseem to each 1 000 weathers	Vegecorp are going to
	Vegecorp to sack 1,000 workers.	
3		
_	President Bergman announced a new	we're going to have
	public holiday on his birthday, August	8 - 8 - 9
	6th. He made the announcement	
4	Ed: "Did you hear that Bruno's crashed his	Bruno's
	car again?"	J'Ulio J
5	Julia: "I've got a new job."	she's
	Jana. Tre got a tient job.	51.6 9
6	A team of researchers claims to have	they've identified
6	A team of researchers claims to have identified a gene which causes some	they've identified
6		they've identified
72	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.	
Ex	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to con	nplete each dialogue. E
Ex	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to continually / change / mind forever /	mplete each dialogue. E moan / work forever / ask me / money
Ex	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to continually / change / mind forever /	nplete each dialogue. E
Ex	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to continually / change / mind forever /	mplete each dialogue. E moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting
Ex (	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always com	mplete each dialogue. E moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting
1 2	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always come.  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come.  A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're	mplete each dialogue. E  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.
1 2 3	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come a: Can I borrow €10? B: You're  A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You	mplete each dialogue.   moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  're
1 2 3 4	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're	mplete each dialogue.   moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  ''re
1 2 3 4 5	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You	mplete each dialogue.   moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  're
1 2 3 4 5 CG	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always complete each pair of sentences using the second	mplete each dialogue.  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting plaining about my handwriting.  "re  "re  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the
1 2 3 4 5 Cc pr	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're more seent continuous or the present simple. Use the people of the seent continuous or the present simple. Use the people of the seent continuous or the present simple. Use the people of the seent continuous or the present simple. Use the people of the seent continuous or the present simple. Use the people of the seent continuous or the present simple. Use the people of the seent continuous or the present simple. Use the people of the seent continuous or the present simple.	mplete each dialogue. E  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  're  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the se / to add any words outside the gap. D & E
1 2 3 4 5 Cc pr	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're momplete each pair of sentences using the seriesent continuous or the present simple.	mplete each dialogue. E  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  ''re  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the se \( \) to add any words outside the gap. \( \) \(
1 2 3 4 5 CG pr 1	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come a: Can I borrow €10? B: You're always come a: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're a: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You omplete each pair of sentences using the series of the continuous or the present simple. Using a A: Shall I phone at six? B: No, we usually b I lamb, thanks. I'm a verience is simple and the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the series of the continuous of the present simple. Using the continuous of the present simple si	mplete each dialogue. E  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  I're  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the se / to add any words outside the gap. D & E  dinner at that time.  getarian.
1 2 3 4 5 CG pr 1	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come a: Can I borrow €10? B: You're  A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're a: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're a: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're as a complete each pair of sentences using the stressent continuous or the present simple. Using the sentence of the present simple. Using the sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentences using the sentence of the present simple. Using the sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentences using the sentence of the present simple. Using the sentence of the present simple and the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple as a complete each pair of sentence of the present simple	mplete each dialogue. E  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  I're  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the se \( \) to add any words outside the gap. \( \) \(
1 2 3 4 5 CC pr 1 2	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office	mplete each dialogue. E  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  I're  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the se / to add any words outside the gap. D & E  dinner at that time.  getarian.  e latest production at the Royal Theatre.  nusic until the early hours of the morning.
1 2 3 4 5 Cc pr	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're momplete each pair of sentences using the seriesent continuous or the present simple.	moan / work forever / ask me / money // complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  I're  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the se \( \) to add any words outside the gap. \( \) \(
1 2 3 4 5 CC pr 1 2	identified a gene which causes some people to sleep more than others.  Expand one of the sets of notes below to concontinually / change / mind forever / constantly / criticise / driving always  A: I can't read this. B: You're always come A: Can I borrow €10? B: You're A: That was a dangerous thing to do. B: You're A: I think I'll stay here after all. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office again. B: You're A: I had a bad day at the office	mplete each dialogue. E  moan / work forever / ask me / money / complain / handwriting  plaining about my handwriting.  I're  ame verb (in negative form if necessary). Use the se \( \) to add any words outside the gap. \( \) \(

# Past simple and present perfect

A	Time expressions that refer to the present, such as <b>this morning</b> / <b>week</b> / Reminder → A6–A12 <b>month</b> and <b>today</b> , can be used with either past simple or present perfect verbs.  If we think of <b>this morning</b> (etc.) as a past, completed time period, then we use the past simple; if we think of <b>this morning</b> (etc.) as a time period which includes the present moment, then we use the present perfect. Compare:  □ I <b>didn't shave</b> this morning. (= the morning is over and I didn't shave) and □ I <b>haven't shaved</b> this morning. (= it is still the morning and I might shave later)
В	In a sentence which includes a time clause with <b>since</b> , we generally prefer a past simple verb in the time clause (referring to a particular point in the past) and a present perfect verb in the main clause:  Since Mr Dodson <b>became</b> president unemployment <b>has increased</b> . (rather than has become)  She <b>hasn't been able</b> to play tennis since she <b>broke</b> her arm. (rather than has broken)  Note, however, that we use the present perfect in the time clause with since if the two situations described in the main clause and time clause extend until the present:  Have you met any of your neighbours since you've lived here? (not you lived)
С	With time clauses introduced by after, when, until, as soon as, once, by the time and the time expressions the minute / second / moment the past simple refers to past, completed events and the present perfect refers to future events. Compare these examples:  After she left hospital (past), she had a long holiday. and After Lucas has left school (future), he will be spending six months in India. The minute I got the news about Anna (past) I telephoned my parents. and I'll contact you the minute I've got my exam results. (future)  In the time clause in sentences like this it is possible to use the past perfect instead of the past simple (e.g. After she had left) and the present simple instead of the present perfect (e.g. After Lucas leaves) with the same meaning (see also Unit 5).
D	In news reports, you will often read about or hear recent events introduced with the present perfect, and then the past simple or other past tenses are used to give details:  A Russian spacecraft has returned safely to Earth with its two passengers. US astronaut Scott Keane and Russian cosmonaut Olga Kaleri landed in the early hours of Wednesday.  An American woman has become the first person to make 2 million contributions to Dictionary File. Esther Miller began editing the site eight years ago.
E	After the pattern It / This / That is / will be the first time we generally use the present perfect in the next clause:  That's the first time I've seen Jan look embarrassed. (reporting a past event)  It won't be the first time she has voted against the government. (talking about a future event)  Note that after It / This / That was the first time we generally use the past perfect (see Unit 5):  It was the first time I'd talked to Dimitra outside the office.

# **Exercises**

have	go (	oversleep	read	spend	wear	
1 A: Sha	ll I make ι	us some dinn	er? It's a	lreadv eigh	t o'clock.	
						nd my mouth hurts too n
any	thing.					5
2 1	t	hree lectures	today a	nd I still ha	ve two more	later this afternoon.
		보다 사가 프라이트 사용 아이들이 없는 사람이 되었다.			nd a T-shirt at	
			ood this i	month and	there's anoth	ner week to go before I ge
		a lift home?				
						lidn't go off, so I need to
6 I	r	nuch of the r	eport ye	t, but I hav	e to finish it b	y the weekend.
Complet	e the sent	tences with	the pairs	of verbs f	om the box	Choose the most appro
		erfect or pas			om the box.	choose the most appro
		393				
be able		happen – s	7.0	improve		
not wa	nt – fall	rescue –	be w	ork – not l	lave	
1 Maria		to go sw	imming	since she	i	in the river.
						day off through illness.
						on TV almost every
		since I las				
				1. W. 1. W. W. W. S.	ch more inde	pendent
						at school.
420						2 Y F TO 12
				rrect it by	replacing the	e past simple with the p
50 20 21 21 21 22 21 22 21 22 21 22 21 22 21 22 21 22 21 22 21 22 22		cised verb.	100			
		50 NS NS			THE SECTION 112	able to change your mir
b Carl	.o's injury	only became	apparer	nt after he	<i>igned</i> to play	for United.
2 a Ass	oon as I fi	inished colleg	ge I want	to travel a	ound Austral	lia.
b I dic	ln't have t	ime to check	the essa	ay. I hande	l it in as soon	as I <i>finished</i> it.
3 a Bvt	he time S	arah <i>got</i> to w	vork the	meeting ha	d finished.	
					ne the childre	n <i>aot</i> up.
11001 10 1000		ner the mome				9-1
	-			0	 ent I <i>heard</i> fro	om Emil
D THE	ett you wi	iat time we i	e coming	g the mom	ent inearding	JIII LITHIL.
Here are	some ext	racts from a	televisi	on news re	port. Choose	the more appropriate t
present p	erfect or	past simple	- for the	e verbs in b	rackets. D &	E
1 When	President	Ismail arri	ves in	Paris this	vening, it will	l be the first time she
					victory in Ma	
						new patients after more
						ek in the outbreak.
3 The ra						
3 The rat	te of inflat	tion		. (drop) to		first time in nearly two y
the rat	te of inflate	tion(fa	ll) below	( <i>drop</i> ) to 15%.	1.8%. It's the	first time in nearly two y
the rat 4 Nearly	te of inflate e 600 lapto	tion( <i>fa</i> ops	ll) below	. ( <i>drop</i> ) to 15%. (steal) froi	1.8%. It's the ministry of	

# Past continuous and past simple

A	When we talk about two events or activities that went on over the same period of past time, we can often use the past continuous or the past simple for both:  ☐ Mia was reading to the children while ☐ Ben was washing up. (or read washed up.)					
	Using the past continuous emphasises that the event or activity ('was reading') was in progress during the past period of time ('while Ben was washing up'). Compare:  When I was learning / learned to drive I was living with my parents.  Was learning emphasises that the activity was in progress ('I had lessons during this time') and learned emphasises completion ('I passed my test during this time').					
	When we talk about two or more past completed events that followed one another, we use the past simple, not the past continuous, for both (see also Unit 5C):  She <b>got</b> up when the alarm clock <b>went</b> off.					
В	We usually use the past simple rather than the past continuous to talk about repeated past actions:  We went to Spain three times last year.  Did you drive past her house every day?					
	However, we can use the past continuous, particularly in spoken English, when we want to emphasise that repeated actions went on for a limited and temporary period of past time:  When Kata was in hospital, we were visiting her twice a day. (or we visited)  To lose weight before the race, I wasn't eating any biscuits for weeks. (or I didn't eat) or to talk about something that happened surprisingly often:  Last week I was having to bring work home every night to get it all done. (or had) When the builders were here I was making them cups of tea all the time. (or made)					
С	We often use the past simple in a narrative (e.g. a report or a story) to talk about a single complete past event and the past continuous to describe the situation that existed at the time.  The event might have interrupted the situation, or happened while the situation was in progress:  Erika dropped her bag while she was getting into her car.  She was shaking with anger as she left the hotel.					
D	We can use either the past continuous or past simple (or past perfect; see Unit 5E) with some verbs to talk about things we intended to do but didn't:   We were meaning to call in and see you, but Marc wasn't feeling well. (or We meant)					
	Also: consider + -ing, expect to, hope to, intend to, plan to / on + -ing, think about / of + -ing, want to					
	These verbs (with the exception of mean) and wonder about can also be used with the present and past continuous to report what we might do in the future. The past continuous is less definite than the present continuous: <ul> <li>I was thinking of going to China next year, but it depends how much money I've got. (less definite than I'm thinking of going)</li> <li>We were wondering about inviting Eva over tomorrow. (less definite than We're wondering about)</li> </ul>					

# **Exercises**

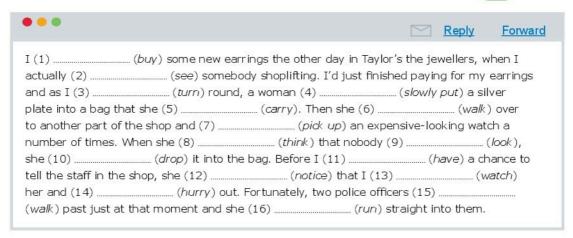
Complete the sentences using these pairs of verbs. Use the past simple in one gap and the past continuous in the other. A-D

7		
(	come – show <u>get – go</u> hope – give l look – see play – break start – check in	ive – spend
1	Just as I was getting into the bath, all the lig	ghts went off.
2	2 Ito go away this weekend, but have to finish by Monday.	my boss me some work that I
3	When Iin Paris, Iwork.	three hours a day travelling to and from
4	A friendly American couplecha reception.	atting to him as heat the hotel
5	5 I bumped into Lena last week. Sheher.	a lot better than when I last
	My boss into the office just as I everyone my holiday photos.	
7	I badminton four times a week before I my ankle.	

This time, use the same tense, either past simple or past continuous, in both spaces.

(	add – taste	go off – light	not listen – explain	push – run	not watch – dream
8	The smoke al	arm	when he	a candle	underneath it.
9		nber how to answe	er this question. I must co us.	onfess that I	while the
10	She	more salt	to the soup, and then it		much better.
			, I it. In		
12	She	open the	door and	into the roo	m.

- 4.2 Look again at numbers 1, 4, 7 and 11 in 4.1. Which of these sentences could have both verbs in the past simple? What difference in meaning, if any, would there be?
- 4.3 Complete this email with either the past simple or the past continuous form of the verbs in brackets. Where alternatives are possible, think about any difference in meaning. A-C



# Past perfect and past simple

A

When we give an account of a sequence of past events we usually put these events in chronological order using the past simple. If we

Reminder → A6-A8, A14-A15

want to refer to an event out of order – that is, an event which happened *before* the last event in the sequence we have written or spoken about – we can use the past perfect. Study the use of the past perfect and past simple in the text below, then read the notes in the table about the order of events:

I wrote Clara an email to thank her for the present she had given me for my birthday last week. But as soon as I pressed the 'send' button, I realised that I had made a mistake and sent it to her sister instead.

Order of events:	1 gave present 2 wrote email 3 made mistake 4 realised mistake
Order events are mentioned:	1 wrote email 2 <b>had given</b> present 3 realised mistake 4 <b>had made</b> mistake

В

When we understand that we are talking about events before another past event, we don't have to continue using the past perfect:

- We bought a new car last month. We'd driven my parents' old car for ages, but it started (or had started) to fall apart. We put (or had put) a new engine in it, but that didn't solve (or hadn't solved) the problems we were having.
- If the order of past events is clear from the context (for example, if time expressions make the order clear) we can often use either the past perfect or the past simple:
  - After Ivan had finished reading, he put out the light. (or ... Ivan finished ...)
    - The two leaders agreed to meet, even though *earlier* talks **had failed** to reach an agreement. (or ... talks **failed** ...)
- The past perfect is often used in reporting what was originally said or thought in the present perfect or past simple. When we report what was said in the past simple, we can use either the past perfect or the past simple (see also Unit 35):

Talking about a past event	Reporting this past event	
(I have met him before.'	I was sure that I had met him before. (not I met him)	
○ 'The village <b>hasn't changed</b> much.'	<ul> <li>I found that the village hadn't changed much. (not the village didn't change)</li> </ul>	
'225 people <b>drowned</b> in the recent floods.'	O Police said that 225 people had drowned in the recent floods. (or drowned)	
(I stole the watch.)	<ul> <li>She admitted that she had stolen the watch. (or stole)</li> </ul>	

We can use either the past perfect or past simple (and often past continuous and past perfect continuous; see Units 4 and 7) when we talk about things that we intended to do, but didn't or won't now do in the future:

- I had hoped to visit the gallery before I left Florence, but it's closed on Mondays. (or I hoped ..., I was hoping ..., I had been hoping ...)
- Aron **planned** to retire at 60, but we have persuaded him to stay for a few more years. (or Aron had planned ..., Aron was planning ..., Aron had been planning ...)

# **Exercises**

The events mentioned in the magazine article are listed below. Write the order in which the events are mentioned and then the order in which they occurred (or were thought to occur). Compare the two lists and consider why the past perfect (in italics) was used. A & B

# How I bought my dream house

When I first saw the old house I had just moved to the area. It had been empty for about a year and was beginning to need some repairs, but the house was exactly what I wanted. But by the time I had put together enough money I learnt that a property developer had bought it and planned to turn it into a hotel. Six months later I had nearly given up hope of finding anywhere to live in the village when I heard that the house was for sale again. The property developer had decided to invest his money in a new housing development on the edge of the village. I bought the house immediately and I've lived there happily ever since.



Dani Bridges

events	order events are mentioned in text	order of events
I moved	2	2
I learnt		
The property developer decided		
I heard		
I first saw the old house	11	
A property developer bought it		
I nearly gave up		
I put together enough money		
It was empty		1

Underline the correct options. In some cases only one is correct, and in others both are correct.

- 1 As Jonas was introduced to Mrs Lopez, he realised that he had met / met her before.
- 2 During the previous week, I had visited / visited the gym every evening.
- 3 He denied that he had taken / took the money from the office.
- 4 I thought it was the best film I had seen / saw in my life.
- 5 The boy told me that he had lost / lost his train ticket and didn't know how he would get home.
- 6 At the conference, scientists reported that they had found / found a cure for malaria.
- 7 The teacher guessed that some of the children had cheated / cheated in the exam.
- 8 She said that she *had made up / made up* her mind who to vote for, and that I couldn't persuade her to change.
- 9 Thomas explained that he had gone / went home early because he felt ill.
- 10 When I asked Maria about Jakub, she admitted that she hadn't heard / didn't hear from him for ages.
- 11 The waiter took my plate away before I had finished / finished eating.
- 12 Julia said she didn't want any dinner. Apparently, she had eaten / ate already.

5.3	Expand these sets of notes using the past perfect to begin each sentence.		
	L/ expect / operation / painful	1 / hope / leave / by nine	

<pre>I / expect / operation / painful</pre>	1 / hope / leave / by nine
He / not mean / insult / her	Lara / not intend / become / dentist
I / not think of / cook rabbit	

1	I had hoped to leave by nine , but I overslept and missed the train.
2	; she always wanted to be a vet
3	", but I didn't feel a thing
4	, until Andrei told me how tasty it was
5	but Daria was very offended

# Present perfect continuous and present perfect

We use the present perfect continuous to express the idea of an activity in progress until recently or until the time of speaking. It may continue beyond this point:  ☐ Have you been working in the garden all day? You look exhausted. ☐ She's been writing the book since she was in her twenties and at last it's finished.
now
Note that we often use time expressions to say how long the activity has been in progress.
We don't use the present perfect continuous with verbs such as <b>belong</b> , <b>know</b> , ( <b>dis</b> )like, and <b>understand</b> that describe unchanging states:  Have you known each other long? (not Have you been knowing)  I haven't liked ice cream since I ate too much and was sick. (not I haven't been liking)
When we talk about situations (general characteristics or circumstances) existing up to the present we can often use either the present perfect or present perfect continuous:   We've been looking forward to this holiday for ages. (or We've looked forward to)
We often use the present perfect or the present perfect continuous to talk about something that has recently finished if we can still see its results. However, we generally use the present perfect continuous with verbs that suggest extended or repeated activity. Compare:  He's broken his finger and is in a lot of pain. (not He's been breaking) and I've been playing squash and need a shower! (more likely than I've played)
We use the present perfect continuous rather than the present perfect when we draw a conclusion from what we can see, hear, etc. We often use this form to complain or criticise:  Who's been messing around with my papers? They're all over the place.  You've been eating chocolate, haven't you? There's some on your shirt.
When we talk about the <i>result</i> of circumstances or an activity, we use the present perfect, rather than the present perfect continuous. When we focus on the <i>process</i> we often use either the present perfect or the present perfect continuous. Compare:  Prices have decreased by 7%. (not Prices have been decreasing by 7%.) and Prices have been decreasing recently. (or Prices have decreased)  I've used three tins of paint on the kitchen walls. (not I've been using three tins of paint on the kitchen walls.) and I've been using a new kind of paint on the kitchen walls. (or I've used)
The present perfect continuous emphasises that an activity is ongoing and repeated, while the present perfect suggests the activity happened only once or on a specified number of occasions:  Miguel has been kicking a football against the wall all day. (more likely than has kicked)  He has played for the national team in 65 matches so far. (not He has been playing for the national team in 65 matches so far.)
Compare:  The workers have been calling for the chairman's resignation. (= emphasises a number of times, probably over an extended period) and  Workers have called for management to begin negotiations on pay. (= maybe a number of times or only once.)

6.1 Complete each pair of sentences using the same verb. Use the present perfect in one sentence and the present perfect continuous in the other. Use negative forms where appropriate. (A-C)

di	sappear	give	put	read	stay	stop	swim
							at since returning to Buenos Aires.
Ь	We		ē	at this ho	tel a coup	ole of tim	nes before.
2 a	All day, tl	ne police			mot	orists to	question them about the accident.
Ь	Good, the	e noise			I can	start con	ncentrating on my work again.
	1						
Ь							nours and I'm still only on page six.
4 a							students for the last ten years.
Ь	Mr Sato			nearl	y a millio	n pounds	s to the charity this year.
5 a	I did 20 le	engths of	the poo	ol today.	Í		that far since I was at school.
Ь	I		and	I I feel exl	nausted.		
6 a	In recent	years, co	mpanie	s		incre	easing resources into internet marketing
Ь		-	9.0				the Calverton Mine up for sale.
7 a	An impor						> 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
b	Street and a second as a second						garden since we had new neighbours.

- 6.2 Here are two views on the government's announcement that it is to cut the money it gives to the Influenza Research Centre. If necessary, correct the present perfect continuous verbs using either the present perfect or past simple. A-C and Unit 3
  - a Dr Petra Adams, the Director of the Centre



It's remarkable to think that since 1950 influenza (1) has been claiming more than 50,000 lives in this country, and in 1957 alone around 6,000 people (2) have been dying. But over the last 20 years we at the Centre (3) have been making considerable progress on understanding the illness. We (4) have been producing over a hundred books and articles reporting the results of our research and in 2012 they (5) have been awarding the National Prize for medicine to one of my colleagues. In our more recent work we (6) have been looking into the effects of influenza on heart disease and we (7) have also been exploring a possible link between climate change and the recent increase in the number of cases of influenza. It is a tragedy that the government (8) has been making this decision now.

b Sabir Khan, the Opposition spokesperson for science



The previous government (1) has been investing huge amounts of money into the Centre and I think it's terrible that the present government (2) has been announcing this cut when, in recent years, the number of cases of influenza (3) has been increasing. The Centre (4) has been running successfully for many years. But this decision is just typical of this government. It (5) has been neglecting health research ever since it was elected, and (6) has been cutting back on spending on science generally. Although the government says that the cut is necessary because of the recent world economic problems, I (7) have been finding evidence that they (8) have been planning this for some time. I (9) have been speaking to the Minister about this yesterday and (10) have also been writing to the Prime Minister demanding that the decision should be reversed.

Unit 7

# Past perfect continuous, past perfect and past continuous

A	We use the past perfect continuous to talk about something that was in Reminder → A14–A15, A18 progress recently before or up to a past point in time, and the past perfect when we talk about a finished activity before a past time:  □ I'd been doing some work in the garden when Lea arrived, so I didn't hear her come in.  (not I'd done some work in the garden when Lea arrived, so I didn't hear her come in.)  □ I'd done all the ironing so I started cleaning the windows. (not I'd been doing all the ironing so I started cleaning the windows.)
	had been doing had done past now past now  We can often use either the past perfect continuous or the past perfect with a similar meaning:
	☐ I'd been working / I'd worked hard all year, so I felt that I deserved a holiday.
В	If we talk about how many times something happened in a period up to a particular past time, we use the past perfect, not the past perfect continuous:  How many times had you met him before yesterday? (not How many times had you been meeting)  I had stayed in the hotel twice in the 1990s. (not I had been staying in the hotel twice)
C	The past perfect continuous can be used to talk about a situation or activity that went on before a particular past time and (i) finished at that time, (ii) continued beyond it, or (iii) finished shortly before it:  (i) We'd been driving for about an hour when the engine suddenly stopped. (ii) She felt terrible during the interview because she had been suffering from flu since the previous day. (iii) When I last saw Omar, he'd been running and was out of breath.  If we are not interested in how long the activity went on, we can use the past continuous instead of the past perfect continuous. Compare:  When the merger was announced it became apparent that the two companies had been discussing the possibility since last year. and A friend told me about a conversation she'd recently overheard. Two women were discussing their holiday plans I first met Mateo and Lucia when they had been going out together for five years, and they didn't get married for another three years after that. and Karin met Lars when she was going out with his best friend.
D	Remember that we don't describe states with continuous tenses (see Unit 1), and we use the past perfect, not the past perfect continuous, even when we focus on the length of a situation up to a particular past time:
E	The past perfect continuous is mainly used in written texts and is less common in speech. Here is an example in a newspaper article:  The body of a climber who went missing in the Alps was finally found yesterday. Carl Sims had been climbing alone near the Harz Waterfall, which has claimed many lives in the past.

Complete each pair of sentences using one verb from the box. Use the past perfect continuous if possible; if not, use the past perfect. (A)

1	ар	ply carry fly	work		
1	a			for the company for a	couple of months,
		so I was surprised to	hear that she'd left.		
	b	She	finally	her way up from tra	inee to a
		management position	n, and she celebrated	her promotion with a big party	y.
2	а	The avalanche	them !	500 metres down the mountai	n but no one was
		hurt.			
	b	She took a bottle from	m the bag she	all the way from	home.
3	a	We	for visas early, bu	t still hadn't got them by the w	eek before the
		holiday.			
	b	She	for jobs, without	success, since leaving universit	Ty.
4	a	He	all the way from N	New York to be at yesterday's n	neeting.
	Ь	When the plane was	diverted, shortly after	take-off, it	from London to
		Frankfurt.			
1		Irs Bishop f 45. ( <i>try</i> )	to have child	dren for years, and only became	e pregnant at the ag
	of	f 45. ( <i>try</i> )		stle, even though we	
	fe	w times before. (visit)			
				two p	
4		mma Willems vrite)	novels to	or ten years before she publishe	ed her first book.
5	Fo	or some time Daniel	ab	oout passing the exams and eve	entually decided to
	ch	nange the course he wa	as taking. (worry)		
		ly teacher was really a		as the third time I	late for
6		chool that week. (arrive	e)		
	sc L.	al	, lways	it would be easy to get a	job, and was
7	sc I di	alsappointed to be rejec	lways ted. ( <i>believe</i> )	it would be easy to get a	

- Study this conversation extract. If the italicised verbs are correct, write ✓. If they are wrong, correct them using either the past perfect (active or passive) or past perfect continuous. A-E
  - A: How was your weekend?
  - B: Not great, actually. I (1)'d really been looking forward to a relaxing couple of days. But early on Saturday morning Mum phoned to say that Dad (2) had been falling ill.
  - A: Oh, no! What (3) had happened?
  - B: She (4) had just been hearing that he (5) had been flown by helicopter to hospital in Edinburgh from a village called Contin where he (6) had fished with my Uncle Mark.
  - A: And is he okay? What's wrong with him?
  - B: Well, Uncle Mark said that Dad (7) had been complaining of a bad headache most of yesterday, but he (8) hadn't been wanting to go back to the hotel and spoil the day. But then in the evening, just as they (9) had stopped fishing for the day, he (10) had been collapsing...

### Present and past time: review

	Treserve and pass sinterventer.
A	Continuous and simple Reminder → Section A
	When we focus on an activity itself, starting before and continuing up to (and possibly beyond) a particular point of time, rather than focusing on actions as completed events, we use continuous forms  Ingrid can't come to the phone. She's washing her hair.  As you're not using your car at the moment, can I borrow it?  This time yesterday, I was flying over the Pacific.  Was she wearing that red dress when you saw her?
	We use simple forms to talk about general situations, habits, and things that are or were always true.  We use the past simple for completed events:  When I worked as a postman I got up at three o'clock every morning.  Miguel doesn't play golf very well.  These birds build their nests on the ground.  The earthquake struck the area at midday yesterday. (past simple for completed events)
	We also use simple forms with state verbs:  She intends to work hard at school and go on to university.  Did you understand the instructions we were given?  However, we can use continuous forms with these verbs when they describe something happening or changing:  She was intending to talk to Tony about the idea, but she didn't get the opportunity.  I'm understanding physics much better now that Mr Davies is teaching us.
В	Perfect  We use perfect verb forms to describe one event or state from the point of view of a later time. The present perfect suggests a connection between something that happened in the past and the present time. Note, however, that the situation or event does not have to continue until the time of speaking only to have some connection or relevance to the present time:  I've finished that book you wanted, so you can borrow it now.  Have you turned the heating off? I don't like it to be on when I'm not at home.  Your nose is bleeding. Has somebody hit you?  The past perfect is used to locate a past event before another past event:  I invited him out to dinner, but he said he had already eaten.  By the time I picked up the phone, they had rung off.
С	Combinations of perfect and continuous  We combine the perfect and continuous forms in the present perfect continuous to describe an activity in progress either at or recently before the time of speaking, and possibly beyond it:  I have been following the discussions on the forum with great interest.  We can also use the present perfect continuous to talk about activities that have recently finished with some result that can be seen, heard, etc.:

O Look at the dirt on your clothes! **Have** you **been digging** in the garden again?

The past perfect continuous has a similar meaning. However, the point of reference is not 'now' (as it is with the present perfect continuous) but a point in the past:

When we met Lena and Marko, they had been riding.

☐ It had been snowing heavily for hours and when I went to the door I couldn't open it.

8.1 Amy is writing a blog for her friends and family as she travels around Australia. Use the present simple, present continuous, past simple or past continuous of the verbs in the box to complete the extract.



8.2 Complete this extract from a newspaper article in the most natural way, using the past simple, present perfect or past perfect of the verbs in brackets. B



- Two friends are discussing someone's health. If the italicised verb is correct, write ✓. If it is wrong, correct it using the past simple, present perfect, past perfect, present perfect continuous or past perfect continuous. A-C
  - a: I hear your Dad's in hospital. Wasn't he on holiday in Scotland? What happened? (1) Did he have any health problems recently?
  - B: Well, he (2) 's been suffering from stress for some time, but we (3) have thought a holiday in Scotland would be relaxing for him. He (4) worked too hard for months, and we (5) 've been trying to persuade him to have a break for ages before he agreed.
  - A: So (6) have you gone up to Scotland when you (7) have heard?
  - B: No, Mum (8) has gone up to be with him, but the doctors (9) have checked him over and (10) had been saying that it's not too serious. They (11) gave him some medicine to bring down his blood pressure and (12) had told him that he needs complete rest for a couple of months. So Mum's driving him back in the car tomorrow.
  - a: Well, send him my best wishes when you speak to him.
  - B: Thanks, I will do.

### Will and be going to

	8 8	
A	We can use either will or be going to to talk about something that is  planned, or something that we think is likely to happen in the future:  We will study climate change in a later part of the course. (or We are going to study)  Where will you stay in Berlin? (or Where are you going to stay?)  The south of the city won't be affected by the power cuts. (or isn't going to be affected)  We often prefer be going to in informal contexts (see also D).	
В	We use will rather than be going to to make a prediction based on our opinion or experience:  Why not come over at the weekend? The children will enjoy seeing you again.  'Shall I ask Lamar?' 'No, she won't want to be disturbed.'  We use be going to rather than will when we make a prediction based on some present evidence:  The sky's gone really dark. There's going to be a storm.  'What's the matter with him?' 'It looks like he's going to faint.'	
С	To predict the future we often use will with the following prediction verbs: I bet (informal), I expect, I hope, I imagine, I reckon (informal), I think, I wonder and I'm sure. We also use will in questions about predictions with think and reckon:    I imagine the stadium will be full for the match on Saturday.   That cheese smells awful. I bet nobody will eat it.   When do you think you'll finish work?   Do you reckon he'll say yes?   Be going to can also be used with these phrases, particularly in informal contexts.	
D	We use will when we make a decision at the moment of speaking and be going to for decisions about the future that have already been made. Compare:    I'll pick him up at eight. (an offer; making an arrangement now) and   I'm going to collect the children at eight. (this was previously arranged)   'Pineapples are on special offer this week.' 'In that case, I'll buy two.' and   When I've saved up enough money, I'm going to buy a smartphone.  However, in a formal style, we use will rather than be going to to talk about future events that have been previously arranged in some detail. Compare:    Are you going to talk at the meeting tonight? and   The meeting will begin at 9 am. Refreshments will be available from 8:30 onwards.	
•	We can use will or be going to with little difference in meaning in the main clause of an if-sentence when we say that something (often something negative) is conditional on something else:  You'll / You're going to knock that glass over if you're not careful.  When the future event does not depend on the action described in the if-clause, we use be going to, not will. This kind of sentence is mainly found in spoken English. Compare:  I'm going to open a bottle of lemonade, if you want some. (= I'm going to open a bottle of lemonade. Do you want some?) and  I'll open a bottle of lemonade if you want some. (= If you say you want some, I'll open it.)  However, we use will, not be going to, when the main clause refers to offers, requests, promises, etc. and ability:  If Erik phones, I'll let you know. (= an offer; ', I'm going to let you know' suggests 'I intend to let you know when Erik phones')  If you look to your left, you'll see the lake. (= you'll be able to see; ' you're going to see' suggests 'I know this is what you can see when you look to your left')  and when one thing is the logical consequence of another:	
	when we say that something (often something negative) is conditional on something else:  You'll / You're going to knock that glass over if you're not careful.  When the future event does not depend on the action described in the if-clause, we use be going to, not will. This kind of sentence is mainly found in spoken English. Compare:  I'm going to open a bottle of lemonade, if you want some. (= I'm going to open a bottle of lemonade. Do you want some?) and  I'll open a bottle of lemonade if you want some. (= If you say you want some, I'll open it.)  However, we use will, not be going to, when the main clause refers to offers, requests, promises, etc. and ability:  If Erik phones, I'll let you know. (= an offer; ', I'm going to let you know' suggests 'I intend to let you know when Erik phones')  If you look to your left, you'll see the lake. (= you'll be able to see; ' you're going to see' suggests 'I know this is what you can see when you look to your left')	

- 9.1 Correct or improve the sentences where necessary by changing the italicised will ('ll) forms to be going to forms. (A–D)
  - 1 Have you seen Nadia recently? She'll have another baby.'s going to have
  - 2 The method is quite simple, and I'm sure it will be familiar to most of you already.
  - 3 A: I can't come over during the day.
    - B: I'll see you tomorrow evening, then.
  - 4 Are these new skis yours? Will you take up skiing?
  - 5 Wherever you go in Brazil, you'll find the people very friendly.
  - 6 Jamie says he'll be a politician when he grows up and he's only five years old!
  - 7 It's getting very humid we'll have a thunderstorm.
  - 8 I hear you'll sell your car. How much do you want for it?
  - 9 Sorry, you can't play football in the garden. I'll cut the grass.
  - 10 A: What's the matter with Paula?
    - в: She says she'll be sick.
    - A: She'll feel better with some fresh air.
  - 11 A: I've been offered a new job in Munich, so I'll leave Camco.
    - в: When will you tell your boss?
    - A: I'm not sure. Perhaps I'll try to see him later today.
  - 12 A: Do you think the weather will be nice on Sunday? Karl was interested in playing tennis.
    - B: I wouldn't do it then the weather forecast says it will rain all weekend.
    - A: In that case, I'll sort out a different day with Karl.
  - 13 A: Did you get the theatre tickets?
    - B: No. I forgot all about them. I'll book them tomorrow.
  - 14 A: We've got small, medium and large. What size do you want?
    - в: I'll have a large one, please.
  - 15 A: Shall I give Ian another ring?
    - B: Yes, I expect he'll be home by now.
  - 16 A: What are those bricks for?
    - B: I'll build a wall at the side of the garden.
- 9.2 Complete the sentences with will ('ll) or be going to and an appropriate verb. If both will and be going to are possible, write them both.

1	If you want me to, I <u>'ll explain</u> how the equipment works.
2	If you want to help us, we these trees at the bottom of the garden.
3	Youyour back if you try to lift that box.
	If I give you the money you me some oranges when you're out?
5	If you press the red button, the machine
6	ILaura this weekend, if you'd like to come too.
7	He's been told that if he's late once more he
Ω	If you listen carefully you an owl in the trees over there



Unit **10** 

### Present simple and present continuous for the future

1	Present simple Reminder → B6 & B7
	We can often use either the present simple or will to talk about future events that are part of some timetabled or programmed arrangement or routine. However, we prefer the present simple for fixed, unchangeable events. Compare:  Does the sale finish on Thursday or Friday? (or Will the sale finish?) and The sun rises at 5:16 tomorrow. (more likely than The sun will rise)
	We avoid the present simple when we talk about less formal or less routine arrangements, or predictions. Instead we use will, be going to, or the present continuous:  Are you staying in to watch TV tonight, or are you coming dancing? (not Do you stay to watch TV tonight, or do you come)  It's only a problem in Britain now, but it will affect the rest of Europe soon. (not but it affects the rest of Europe soon.)
3	We use the present simple, not will, to refer to the future −  in time clauses with conjunctions such as after, as soon as, before, by the time, when, while, until:  When you see Ben, tell him he still owes me some money. (not When you will see Ben)  I should be finished by the time you get back. (not by the time you will get back.)  in real conditional clauses with if, in case, provided, and unless:  Provided the right software is available, I should be able to solve the problem.  I'll bring some sandwiches in case we don't find anywhere decent to eat.
J	when we talk about possible future events with suppose, supposing, and what if at the beginning of a sentence. Note that the past simple can be used with a similar meaning in unreal conditional clauses:  Suppose we miss the bus – how will we get home? (or Suppose we missed)  What if the train's late? Where shall I meet you then? (or What if the train was late?)
	Present continuous
	We can often use either the present continuous or <b>be going to</b> with a similar meaning to talk about planned future events. The present continuous indicates that we have a firm intention or have made a definite decision to do something, although this may not already be arranged:  Are you seeing the doctor again next week? (or Are you going to see?)  I'm not asking Tom to the party. (or I'm not going to ask)
	However, we don't use the present continuous for the future −  when we make or report predictions about activities or events over which we have no control (we can't arrange these):  I think it's going to rain soon.  Scientists say that the satellite won't cause any damage when it falls to Earth.
	<ul> <li>when we talk about permanent future situations:</li> <li>People are going to live / will live longer in the future.</li> <li>Her new house is going to have / will have three floors.</li> </ul>
	Many people avoid <b>be going to + go / come</b> and use the present continuous forms of <b>go</b> and <b>come</b> instead:
	<ul> <li>I'm going to town on Saturday. (rather than I'm going to go to town)</li> <li>Are you coming home for lunch? (rather than Are you going to come?)</li> </ul>

10.1 If possible, use the present simple of a verb from the box to complete each sentence. If not, use will + infinitive. A-C

	accept miss		VD-707/2	get giv read		go stop	lend want	look after		
1	We			our exar	n results	on the 2	Oth Augu	ist.		
				our cat						
				rella in cas			7			
4	There is	a readi	ng list t	o accompa	ny my le	cture, w	hich I		at th	ie end.
								in the prog	ramme.	
								this afterno		
					_	_		onger? Will		enew mv
				Control of the Control of the Control				ays she'll ke		
								won't be ab	80 Š	
11		France			Germ	anv in a	match in	portant for	both team	is.
								ourt's decis		1000
								ibe? How d		?
	0.000				15.00			in New Zea		
3	a will b a: I'm no a will p I'm sorr	know I ouy ot sure oick y I can'i	b an how I'll b an t come f	e going to for dinner.	ew car ne buy concert. pick I	ext week c am B: We ca c are to	? buying n take yo picking o York ton	u. Weight.	ус	ou up at e
5	The high	n-speec	l rail link	n going to	the	journey	time betv	veen the cit	ies significa	antly.
6		o go no	w. I		you back					
	Don't a			n going to	call	c am				
7	a will s		ow. I	n going to n going to	lunch in	a mome	calling ent and it	'll be cold b	y the time	you get b
	a will s	erve	ow. I b an	n going to	. lunch in serve	a mome	calling ent and it serving	'll be cold b	y the time	you get b
	a will s	erve nelp arri	ow. I b an ives wit	n going to	lunch in serve t few da	a mome c am ys, thous	calling ent and it serving sands		y the time	you get b
8	a will s Unless h a will s omplete	erve nelp arri tarve <b>these c</b>	b an ives wit b ard	n going to hin the nex e going to	lunch in serve at few day starve	a mome c am ys, thous c are	calling ent and it serving ands starving		,	
8 C	a will s Unless h a will s omplete vill or goi	erve nelp arri tarve these o	b an ives wit b ard dialogue Units	n going to hin the nexe going to es with an 9 & 10	lunch in serve et few day starve appropri	a momo c am ys, thous c are	calling ent and it serving sands starving	present sin	nple, prese	nt contin
8 C	a will s Unless h a will s omplete rill or goi A: Simo	erve nelp arri tarve these o ing to). n Bianc	b and ives with b and dialogue Units !	n going to hin the nex e going to es with an 9 & 10	lunch in serve et few dag starve appropri	a momo c am ys, thous c are	calling ent and it serving sands starving		nple, prese	nt contin
8 C	a wills Unless h a wills omplete vill or goi A: Simo B: Yes, I	erve nelp arri tarve these o ing to). n Bianc 've reac	b an ives with b are dialogue Units:	n going to hin the nexe going to es with an 9 & 10	lunch in serve at few day starve appropri	a mome c am ys, thous c are sate futu (join) us	calling ent and it serving sands starving are form (	present sin	n <b>ple, prese</b> , the noveli	nt contin
8 C	a will s Unless h a will s omplete vill or goi A: Simo B: Yes, I A: I'm si (com	erve help arri tarve  these co ing to). h Bianco 've reaco ure you e) out a	b an ives with b are dialogue Units: the ere of the ere	n going to hin the nex e going to es with an 9 & 10	lunch in serve at few day starve appropri	a mome c am ys, thous c are iate futu (join) us ke) him.	calling ent and it serving sands starving are form ( for dinne	present sin	n <b>ple, prese</b> , the noveli	nt contin
8 <b>C</b> C <b>w</b> 1	a will s Unless h a will s omplete vill or goi A: Simo B: Yes, I A: I'm si (com a sign	erve these coing to). n Bianco 've reacure you e) out and	b an ives with b are units:  dialogue units:  hi (1)	n going to hin the nexe going to es with an 9 & 10 of his book	lunch in serve at few day starve appropries. (liveek. If you	a momo c am ys, thous c are iate futu (join) us (ke) him. ou want,	calling ent and it serving sandsstarving for dinne His lates I'm sure	present sin r. You know t book (3) he (4)	nple, prese	nt contin
8 <b>C</b> C <b>w</b> 1	a will s Unless h a will s omplete vill or goi A: Simo B: Yes, I A: I'm si (com a sign A: Have	these of the second th	b an ives with b are dialogue Units shi (1)	n going to hin the nexe going to es with an 9 & 10 of his book and of this with BWM (1)	lunch in serve at few day starve appropri	a momo c am ys, thous c are ate futu (join) us (ke) him. bu want,	calling ent and it serving sands starving for dinne His lates I'm sure (sack	present sin r. You know t book (3)	nple, prese t, the noveli	nt contin

Unit 11

## Future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous

	The second secon
Α	Future continuous: I will be doing Reminder → B8
	We can use the future continuous to talk about:  (i) something that is predicted to start before a particular point of future time, and that may continue after this point (often the result of a previous decision or arrangement):  When it goes into orbit, the spacecraft will be carrying 30 kilos of plutonium.  Anna will be helping us to organise the party.  (ii) a future activity that is part of the normal course of events or that is one of a repeated or regular series of events:  Dr Lin will be giving the same talk in room 103 at ten next Thursday.  Will you be driving to work, as usual?
	We can often use either the future continuous or the present continuous when we talk about arranged activities or events in the future (see also Unit 10). Compare:  We will be leaving for Istanbul at 7:00 in the evening. (timetabled; or are leaving) and When the race starts later this afternoon, the drivers will be hoping for drier weather than last year. (not are hoping; not reporting the details of a programme or timetable)
В	When we don't want to indicate willingness, intention, invitation, etc., we prefer to use the future continuous instead of will. For example, if guests have stayed longer than you wanted, and you don't know when they are leaving, you might ask:  Will you be staying with us again tonight? (asking about their plans) rather than Will you stay with us again tonight? (they might think this is an invitation)
С	Future perfect and future perfect continuous: I will have done and I will have been doing
	We use the future perfect to say that something will be ended, completed, or achieved by a particular point in the future:  By the time you get home I will have cleaned the house from top to bottom.  I'm sure his awful behaviour will soon have been forgotten. (= passive form)
	The future perfect is also sometimes used for politeness in more formal contexts:  I hope this email will have reassured you that no further action is required.
	We use the future perfect continuous to emphasise the duration of an activity in progress at a particular point in the future:  • Next year I will have been working in the company for 30 years.
	With both the future perfect and future perfect continuous we usually mention the future time (e.g. <i>By the time you get home, Next year</i> ).
D	The future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous can also be used to say what we believe or imagine is happening around now:  We could ask to borrow Joe's car. He won't be using it today – he went to work by bike.  Most people will have forgotten the fire by now.  Tennis fans will have been queuing at Wimbledon all day to buy tickets.
	We can use the future perfect continuous to say what we think was happening at a point in the past:  Motorist Vicky Hao will have been asking herself whether speed cameras are a good idea after she was fined £100 last week for driving at 33 mph in a 30 mph zone.

Complete both sentences in each pair with one verb from the box. Use the future continuous (will / won't be + -ing) in one sentence and will / won't + infinitive in the other. A & B

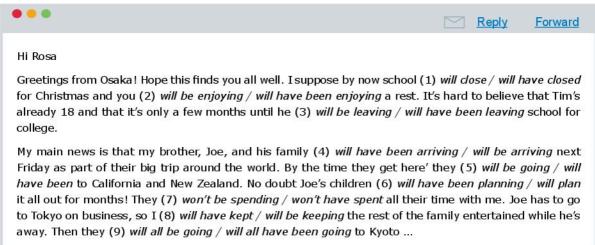
(	giv	ve leave move use work	
1		We in an hour or so, so make sure your suitcase is pa	
_		Without more cheap housing, families the village and find homes in t	
2		youlate at the office again? I want to know when to	cook.
	Ь	A: We need to get this order sent out before Monday.	
		B: Well, Iover the weekend if that will	help.
3	а	Imy car until next week, so you can borrow it if you	
	Ь	My grandada computer. He says he's very happy with his old typew	riter.
4	а	Is your suitcase very heavy? Iyou a hand with it if you	ı like.
		Dr Sankeyevidence at the trial of James Morgan next v	
5		He's parked his car across our drive and says heit. Shall I call the po	
		The two schools to a single campus at the beginning of Septer	

11.2 Make sentences with a beginning from (i), a verb from (ii) (either in the future perfect or future perfect continuous), and an ending from (iii).

(i)	(ii)	(iii)
<ol> <li>The weather forecast says that the rain</li> <li>If the company is making a profit by the end of the year then we</li> <li>In two years' time Morneau</li> <li>I am confident that I</li> <li>This book on Proust is really difficult. On Saturday I</li> <li>As delegates who arrived early</li> <li>I trust that you</li> </ol>	act achieve -clear- find finish discover read	the objective we set ourselves when we took over.  by the morning and tomorrow will be dry.  for 50 years, and shows no sign of retiring from the theatre.  the conference of some interest.  the report before the end of the week.  it for a month, and I'm still only half way.  there have been some late changes to the conference programme.

1 The weather forecast says that the rain will have cleared by the morning and tomorrow will be dry.

Here is part of an email from Emily, an English teacher in Japan, to her friend Rosa. Underline the correct option. A & D



### **Be to** + infinitive; **be about to** + infinitive

Be to + infinitive is commonly used in news reports to talk about events that are likely to happen in the near future:
<ul> <li>Police officers are to visit every home in the area.</li> <li>The main Rome-to-Naples railway line is to be reopened today. (passive form)</li> </ul>
It is also used to talk about formal or official arrangements, formal instructions, and to give orders:  You are not to leave the school without my permission.  The European Parliament is to introduce a new law on safety at work.  Children are not to be left unsupervised in the museum. (passive form)  Passive forms are often used to make orders and instructions more impersonal.
Note that we only use <b>be to</b> + <b>infinitive</b> to talk about future events that can be controlled by people.
Compare:  In the next few years, thousands of speed cameras are to appear on major roads. (or will appear) and  Scientists say they can't predict when or where the disease will appear again. (not the disease is to appear again; the appearance of the disease can't be controlled)  The President is to return to Brazil later today. (or will return) and  The comet will return to our solar system in around 500 years. (not The comet is to return; the movement of the comet can't be controlled)
However, when <b>be to + infinitive</b> refers to the future from the past (see Unit 14B), we often use it to describe what happened to someone, whether they were able to influence events or not:  Matthew Flinders joined the Navy in 1789, but it <b>was to be</b> a further six years before his first voyage to Australia.  Jeanne Pelletier <b>was to write</b> two more books about her experiences in Africa before her death in 1997.
We often use <b>be to</b> + <b>infinitive</b> in <b>if-clauses</b> to say that something must happen first (in the main clause) before something else can happen (in the <b>if-clause</b> ):
Compare the use of <b>be to</b> + <b>infinitive</b> and the present simple for the future in <b>if-clauses</b> :  If López <b>is to win</b> gold at the next Olympics, he needs to work on his fitness. <i>and</i> If López <b>wins</b> gold at the next Olympics, he has said that he will retire from athletics.
Note how the order of cause and effects in <b>if-sentences</b> is reversed with these two tenses:  If López <b>is to win</b> gold (= effect), he needs to work (= cause) and  If López <b>wins</b> gold (= cause), he has said that he will retire (= effect)
We use <b>be about to + infinitive</b> mainly in conversation to say that something will (not) happen in the very near future:  We're about to eat. Do you want to join us? Appearing on TV might make her famous, but it's not about to make her rich.  A: Why don't you switch it off and turn it back on again?  B: Yes, I was about to try that when you came in. (not Yes, I was to try) (referring to the future from the past)

12.1 Complete these news extracts using the verbs in brackets. Use **be to + infinitive** if possible and will + infinitive if not. Use active or passive forms as necessary.

1	Gil Moritz has written his first new play for 15 years. Its first performance (stage) at the New Victoria Theatre.
2	The new safety system (stop) trains automatically if they pass a danger signal.
3	Stafford Boys' School
4	form a new co-educational establishment.  There are fears that sea levels (rise) catastrophically in the next 50 years.
5	The old design and technology programme (replace) with a new computer science course.
N	ow use the verbs in the box to do the same in 6 to 10.
(	become create increase receive retire succeed
6	Managing Director Lars Lindberg, 59,this summer a year early. Heby Christina Fontana, who joined the company last year.
7	As the temperatures fall with the onset of winter, the refugee crisis
8	Production line staff at the Heathcote garden furniture factory in Northam  a pay rise following a big new order from Italy.
9	Seventy new posts at the factory following a major investment by the parent company in the United States.
10	The recent rapid rise in house prices in the south-east the demand for higher salaries among lower-paid workers.

#### 12.2 Underline the correct answers. In some cases both alternatives are possible. B & C

- 1 You need to work much harder if you have / are to have any chance of passing the exam.
- 2 My sister is to start / is about to start a PhD in Physics.
- 3 Mrs Patel is likely to become the Foreign Minister if the party wins / is to win power at the next election.
- 4 If you enjoy / are to enjoy romantic comedies, then this is a film you must see.
- 5 A: Can you type this letter for me?
  B: Sorry, I'm just to go / 'm just about to go home. It'll have to wait until tomorrow.
- 6 If Beckman *recovers / is to recover* from a foot injury, it seems certain that he will play in Saturday's match against Spain.
- 7 If the university *keeps / is to keep* its international reputation, it must first invest in better facilities for students.
- 8 Jonas Fischer has denied that he is to resign / is about to resign as marketing manager.
- 9 It started snowing an hour ago, and from the look of those clouds things are to get / are about to get a lot worse.
- 10 If the railway system is improved / is to be improved, the government should invest substantial amounts of money now.



Unit **13** 

### Other ways of talking about the future

Some phrases are commonly used to refer to actions or events in the future with be about to + infinitive (see Unit 12C). We can use be on the verge of / brin (+ -ing or noun) to say that something will happen soon:  People are on the verge of starvation as the drought continues.  Scientists are on the brink of making major advances in the fight agains Exhausted, mentally and physically, he was on the point of collapse.  Be on the brink of usually refers to something important, exciting, or very bad.	k of / point of
We use <b>be due to</b> (+ <b>infinitive</b> ) to say that something is expected to happen at a <b>be sure</b> / <b>bound to</b> (+ <b>infinitive</b> ) to say that something is likely or certain to hap (+ <b>infinitive</b> ) to say that something is ready to happen:  The company's chief executive <b>is due to</b> retire next year, but following to of further losses she <b>is sure to</b> be asked to leave sooner.  Her new film <b>is set to</b> be a great success.  'Will there be somewhere to get a coffee at the station?' 'Oh, yes, there' <b>There is</b> / <b>are</b> can come before <b>be sure</b> / <b>bound to</b> , but do not normally come be Note that we use <b>due to</b> + <b>noun</b> to give the reason for something, not to talk ab (e.g. <b>Due to fog</b> , all flights from the airport have been cancelled).	oday's announcement  's bound to be.' efore be due / set to.
<ul> <li>We use some verbs with a to-infinitive to talk about intentions:         <ul> <li>We guarantee to refund your money if you are dissatisfied with the computer.</li> </ul> </li> <li>We can use the present simple + to-infinitive or the present continuous + to-infinitive with the verbs marked * to talk about intentions:         <ul> <li>I aim to get to Bangkok by the end of June. (or I'm aiming to get;)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Some people, particularly in speech and in journalism, use be looking + to-infinitive to mean planning a course of action:         <ul> <li>We're looking to create 3,000 jobs in the city over the next year.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Also: aim*, agree, expect*, hope*, intend*, mean, plan*, promise, propose*, resolve, undertake, want*
When the phrases and verbs in <b>A</b> and <b>B</b> are used with past tense forms, they are with future events seen from the past (see also Unit 14):  It was his 64th birthday in 2006 and he was due to retire the following:  Nathan had resolved to become fluent in Spanish before he left univers  The new management had been looking to create 20 new jobs.  I was aiming to get my book finished by the end of the year.	year.
Some people use <b>shall</b> (and <b>shan't</b> ) instead of <b>will</b> (and <b>won't</b> ) in statements all usually with <b>I</b> and <b>we</b> . However, it is more common to use <b>will</b> (particularly its cand <b>won't</b> :  He was a good friend and we <b>shall</b> miss him greatly. ( <i>more commonly</i> I'm just going to buy a newspaper. I <b>shan't</b> be long. ( <i>more commonly</i> I we like the sole judge of fair play.  The match referee <b>shall</b> be the sole judge of fair play.  All people of the world <b>shall</b> live together as brothers.	ontracted form 'll) . we'll miss) on't)

13.1	Expand the notes to complete the news extracts, using the phrases in $oldsymbol{lack}$ .

verge – become sure – face brink – go set – launch set – make sure – provide <del>bound – raise</del> due – return point – sign <del>– point – move</del> verge – quit due – undergo

1/2	The decision of the firm to relocate its international headquarters to Switzerland is bound to raise questions about the government's new profits tax. It seems that other major financial firms are also on the point of moving their headquarters out of London.	
3/4	NASA's latest Mars probe is to Earth later today. A spokesperson for NASA said that the probe would be bringing back rock samples that are exciting new information about the planet.	The state of the s
5/6	The Countryside Conservation Society is a new million-Euro scheme for the protection of endangered plant species. It is estimated that over 200 species are extinct in the country.	
7/8	Sources at the Diplomat's office have said that the governments of North and South Alicia are  an agreement to end their long-running border dispute. However, any agreement is resistance from rebel forces in South Alicia, who have said they will fight on.	
9/10	Tennis star Sancho Gómez is a second operation on his injured shoulder.  He was tennis earlier this year after a first operation was unsuccessful.	
11/12	EU agriculture ministers are an important announcement on increasing support to farmers when they meet in Brussels on Monday. 'Many farmers are out of business,' said the Italian representative, 'and the matter must be decided very soon.'	

Complete the sentences with the verb pairs from the box. Use either the present simple or present continuous for the first verb. If both tenses are possible, write them both. B & C

aim – to study expect – to finish <del>look – to replace</del> intend – to move propose – to deal resolve – to give up guarantee – to find

- 1 My computer is now five years old, and I 'm looking to replace it with a faster one.
- 2 In the first half of the course we'll study microbiology, and in the second half I with genetic engineering.
- 3 We haven't completed the work yet, but we \_\_\_\_\_\_it later this week.
- 4 I haven't done much work at college so far, but I harder from now on.
- 5 Every New Year he playing computer games, but by February he has started again.
- 6 We can't provide the spare parts ourselves, but we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_a supplier who can.

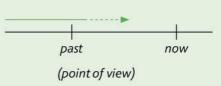
#### 13.3 Underline the possible options. D

- 1 I have passed your letter on to the manager who shall / will reply shortly.
- 2 Sorry, but I shan't / won't be able to give you a lift after all.
- 3 Ithink your parents shall / will be very happy with your decision.
- 4 Only people over the age of 18 shall / will be eligible to vote in the referendum.
- 5 You shan't / won't want to eat your dinner tonight after all that chocolate.

### The future seen from the past

A

There are a number of ways of talking about an activity or event that was in the future at a particular point in the past. In order to express this idea, we can use the past tenses of the verb forms we would normally use to talk about the future. These forms are often used in reporting (see Units 32–36). Compare the following sentences:



The future from now	The future from the past
I haven't got much money, so I think I'll stay at home this summer.	<ul> <li>Eleni decided that she would stay at home for the summer.</li> </ul>
I'm not going to say anything about the exams today, because I don't have time.	<ul> <li>I wasn't going to say anything about the exams, but the students asked me to.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>I'm having a meeting with my tutor tomorrow to discuss my work.</li> </ul>	I couldn't go to the match because I was having a meeting with my tutor.  I couldn't go to the match because I was
Will you be going alone, or is Louise going with you?	<ul> <li>At the time, I thought I would be going alone, but then Jan said he wanted to come.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>The exam will have finished by three o'clock, so I'll see you then.</li> </ul>	The exam was so easy that most people would have finished after 30 minutes.
There is to be a meeting of ministers this evening.	<ul> <li>It was announced that there was to be a meeting of ministers that evening.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>When the school closes, all the children are to be moved to one nearby.</li> </ul>	Mrs Novak heard that she was to be moved to a post in a nearby school.
<ul> <li>As the bell is about to go for the end of the lesson, pack your books away.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The bell was about to go when all the children started to pack their books away.</li> </ul>

If the future seen from the past is still in the future for the speaker, then either form is possible:

It was announced this morning that there is / was to be a statement this evening.

In some cases, we don't know whether the activity or event happened or not. Compare:

- I didn't phone to give him the news because we **were seeing** each other later. He was very upset when I told him. (= we saw each other) and
- We were seeing each other later that day, but I had to phone and cancel. (= we didn't see each other)

B

To talk about an activity or event that was in the future at a particular point in the past, we can use was / were to + infinitive (for things that actually happened) and was / were to have + past participle (for things that were expected, but didn't happen):

- At the time she was probably the best actor in the theatre company, but in fact some of her colleagues **were to become** much better known.
- The boat, which was to have taken them to the island, failed to arrive.
- He was to find out years later that the car he had bought was stolen.

Note, however, that in less formal contexts it is more natural to use **be supposed to**:

☐ I was supposed to help, but I was ill. (more natural than I was to have helped ...)

- 14.1) Write ✓ if the italicised parts are correct. If they are wrong, correct them. (A)
  - 1 I'm going to do the washing, but we'd run out of washing powder.
  - 2 The concert tonight would be over by about 9:30. We could eat after that.
  - 3 When we were passing Ivan's house, we thought we'd drop in and see him.
  - 4 A: Where shall I hang my coat? B: Sorry, I thought Ella will have shown you. Over there.
  - 5 The manager of Newtown United said that the team is to be announced at nine tomorrow.
  - 6 The second half was about to start, so shall we go back to our seats now?
  - 7 I knew that by the morning I would be feeling exhausted, but I just wanted to go dancing.
  - 8 A: Where's Oliver? He *is supposed* to be here yesterday, and there's still no sign of him. B: I'm about to ask the same question.
  - 9 I didn't phone Ben this morning because I was going to see him when I've finished work.
  - 10 DNA testing was to be used by police in the search for the missing Dublin schoolboy. His parents have welcomed the news.
  - 11 We are meeting at seven in the Globe coffee bar. Can you be there, too?
  - 12 We didn't expect that having a rabbit as a pet will cause so many problems.

In which three cases can we use either a past or present tense form in the italicised parts?

- 14.2 Choose the more appropriate option, (a) or (b), to complete these sentences. B
  - 1 The meeting was to have taken place in the hall, ...
    - a but had to be cancelled at the last minute.
    - b and was well attended.
  - 2 She was to have appeared with the actor in his last film...
    - a and was a tremendous success.
    - b but the part went to her sister.
  - 3 Later, in Rome, I was to meet Professor Pearce ...
    - a and was very impressed by his knowledge of Italian culture.
    - b but he left before I got there.
  - 4 The twenty police officers who were to have gone off duty at eight ...
    - a went to the Christmas party.
    - b had to remain in the police station.
  - 5 It was to take 48 hours to get to Japan ...
    - a and we were exhausted when we arrived.
    - b but we managed to do it in only a day.
  - 6 After the war he was to teach at London University ...
    - a but no money was available to employ him.
    - b for ten years.
  - 7 The bridge was to have been completed this year ...
    - a but a number of accidents have led to delays.
    - b and is to be opened by the president next month.
  - 8 The new road was to have a major impact on traffic in the busy town centre, ...
    - a making life much easier for commuters.
    - b but the crowded roads continued.
  - 9 The construction of the cathedral was to have begun in 1650 ...
    - a and go on for over 80 years.
    - b but a shortage of labour delayed the start for a further 20 years.
  - 10 We were to stay with Rodrigo in Lisbon ...
    - a many times before he moved to Madrid.
    - b but he moved to Madrid.

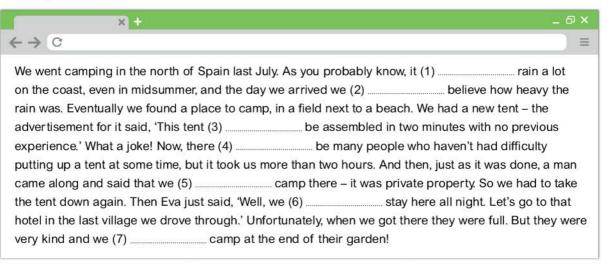
### Can, could, be able to and be allowed to

Α	Can, could and be able to: ability	Reminder → C1 – C7
	We sometimes use <b>be able to</b> instead of <b>can</b> and <b>could</b> to talk about	out ability. We avoid <b>be able to</b> –
	<ul><li>when we talk about something that is happening as we speak:</li><li>Watch me, Mum; I can stand on one leg. (not I'm able t</li></ul>	o stand on one leg.)
	before passives:  Films <b>can</b> now easily <i>be streamed</i> online. ( <i>rather than</i> Films	s are now easily able to be
	streamed)	sale now easily able to be
	when the meaning is 'know how to': <ul><li>Can you cook? (rather than Are you able to cook?)</li></ul>	
=		
В	If we talk about a single achievement, rather than a general ability <b>to</b> rather than <b>could</b> . Compare:	in the past, we usually use <b>be able</b>
	<ul> <li>She swam strongly and was able to cross the river easily,</li> </ul>	
	heavy rain. ( <i>not</i> She swam strongly and could cross; a since Sophie <b>could</b> play the flute quite well. ( <i>or</i> <b>was able to</b>	
	However, could is usually more natural than be able to –	
	in negative sentences:  I tried to get up but I <b>couldn't</b> move.	
	with verbs of the senses, e.g. feel, hear, see, smell, taste, and wi	th verbs of 'thinking', e.g. <b>believe</b> ,
	<b>decide</b> , <b>remember</b> , <b>understand</b> :  I <b>could</b> <i>remember</i> the crash, but nothing after that.	
	after the phrases <b>the only thing / place / time,</b> and after <b>all</b> whe All we <b>could</b> see were his feet.	n it means 'the only thing':
	to suggest that something almost didn't happen, particularly with	almost, hardly, just, nearly:
	I could nearly touch the ceiling.	
С	Can and could: possibility	
	To talk about the theoretical possibility of something happening w	
	use <b>can</b> , not <b>could</b> , to say that something is possible and actually  It <b>could</b> be expensive to keep a cat. (= if we had one, it's pos	
	It can be expensive to keep a cat. (= people find it someting the can be expensive to keep a cat. (= people find it someting the can be expensive to keep a cat. (= people find it someting the can be expensive to keep a cat. (= people find it someting the cat.)	
	We use <b>can't</b> , not <b>couldn't</b> , to say that something is theoretically  There <b>can't</b> be many people in the world who haven't wat	
	<ul> <li>The doctor can't see you this morning; he's busy at the ho</li> </ul>	
D	We use <b>can</b> to indicate that there is a very real possibility of a futu	
	suggests that something is less likely or that there is some doubt a  We can stay with Jake in Oslo. (= we will be able to stay) a	•
	<ul> <li>We could stay with Jake in Oslo. (= it's possible; if he's the</li> </ul>	
E	Could and be allowed to: permission	
	To say that in the past someone had <i>general</i> permission to do som	
	time – we can use either <b>could</b> or <b>was / were allowed to</b> . However particular past action, we use <b>was / were allowed to</b> , but not <b>cou</b>	
	<ul> <li>Anyone was allowed to fish in the lake when the council of</li> </ul>	owned it. (or could fish) and
	<ul> <li>Although he didn't have a ticket, Ned was allowed to con In negative sentences, we can use either couldn't or wasn't / were</li> </ul>	
	permission was not given in general <i>or</i> particular situations:  I couldn't / wasn't allowed to open the present until my	
	- 1 couldn't / wash't allowed to open the present diffit my	on arouy.

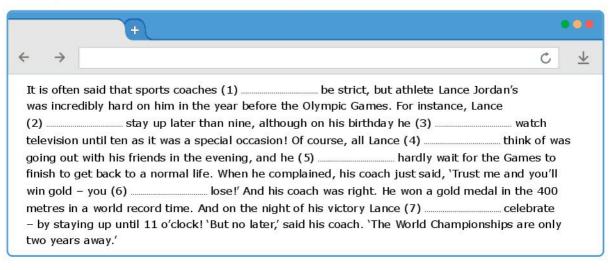
- 15.1 Underline the correct or more natural option (or both if possible). A & B
  - 1 Valuables can / are able to be left in the hotel safe. Please ask at the reception desk.
  - 2 We could / were able to finish the hockey match before it started snowing too heavily.
  - 3 The rebels could / were able to draw on the support of over 20,000 soldiers.
  - 4 Could you / Were you able to understand Professor Larsen's lecture? I found it really difficult.
  - 5 A: Do you want a game? B: Sorry, I can't / 'm not able to play chess.
  - 6 Look at me, I can / 'm able to ride my bike without any help.
  - 7 When the firefighters arrived they *could* / *were able to* put out the flames in a couple of minutes.
  - 8 The air was so polluted in the city centre, I could hardly / was hardly able to breathe.
  - 9 I knew Petra had been decorating. I could / was able to smell the paint when I came in.
  - 10 Can you / Are you able to drive without your glasses?
  - 11 No changes can / are able to be made to this rail ticket after purchase.
  - 12 He could / was able to untie the ropes without the guards noticing.
  - 13 She looked all over the house, but couldn't / wasn't able to find her keys anywhere.
  - 14 I was very busy at work, but I could / was able to have a couple of days off last week.
- Complete these blog posts with can, could and be allowed to (or two forms if possible).

  Use negative forms where necessary. A-E

a



Ь



### Will, would and used to

A	Will and would Reminder → C8 – C14
	We can use will (for the present) and would (for the past) to talk about −  characteristic behaviour or habits:  Every day Dan will come home from work and turn on the TV.  At school she would always sit quietly and pay attention.  things that are or were always true:  Cold weather will kill certain plants.  During the war, people would eat all kinds of things that we don't eat now.  (For the use of will to talk about the future, see Unit 9.)
	We don't use <b>will</b> or <b>would</b> in this way to talk about a particular occasion. Compare:  Each time I gave him a problem he <b>would solve</b> it for me. and  Last night I gave him a problem and he <b>solved</b> it for me. (not he would solve it)  However, we can use <b>will not</b> ( <b>won't</b> ) and <b>would not</b> ( <b>wouldn't</b> ) in either case. Compare:  He <b>wouldn't</b> walk the five miles to his place of work. (characteristic behaviour) and  She <b>wouldn't</b> say what was wrong when I asked her.
В	In speech, we can stress will or would to criticise people's characteristic behaviour or habits:  She just won't do the washing up when I ask her.  I was happy when Ryan left. He would talk about people behind their backs.  We can also express disapproval of something they have done using will:  'I feel sick.' 'Well, if you will eat so much, I'm not surprised.'
С	We can use will to draw conclusions or state assumptions about things that are the case now (see also Unit 9B):  Martina will be at home by now. Let's go and see her.  You will know that Ewan and Lucy are engaged. (= I assume you already know)
D	Would and used to
	When we talk about repeated events in the past that don't happen now we can use either <b>would</b> or <b>used to + infinitive</b> . However, we can use <b>would</b> only if the time reference is clear. Compare:  We <b>used to play</b> in the garden. ( <i>not</i> We would play; time reference not given) and  Whenever we went to my uncle's house, we <b>would / used to play</b> in the garden.  Note that negatives and questions are formed with <b>did / didn't + use to</b> (not I didn't used to).
	We can use <b>used to</b> but not <b>would</b> when we talk about past states that have changed:  The factory <b>used to</b> be over there.  Didn't you <b>use to</b> have red hair?
	We don't use either <b>used to</b> or <b>would</b> when we say exactly how many times in total something happened, how long something took, or that a single event happened at a given past time:  We <b>visited</b> Switzerland four times during the 1990s. (not We would / used to visit)  She <b>went</b> to Jamaica last month. (not She would / used to go to Jamaica last month.)
E	Would / will have + past participle
	To talk about an <i>unreal past</i> situation – that is, an imaginary situation or a situation that might have happened in the past, but didn't – we use <b>would have + past participle</b> :  I would have been happy to see him, but I didn't have time.
	However, to say that we think a past situation actually happened, we use will have + past participle (see also Unit 11C):  As it was cloudy, few people will have seen last night's lunar eclipse. (rather than would have seen)

Complete the doctor and patient speech bubbles using will or would if possible, followed by one of these verbs. If will or would are not possible, use a verb in the past simple. A & C



- 16.2 If necessary, correct these sentences using either would or used to. If neither would nor used to is correct, use a past simple verb form.
  - 1 I would enjoy studying French when I was at school.
  - 2 Jorge would spend winters in Spain and summers in England.
  - 3 We would live in a bungalow on the south coast, and then we moved to a flat in town.
  - 4 You used to teach at Halston University, didn't you?
  - 5 On Saturdays and Sundays the ferry used to take tourists across to the island.
  - 6 The committee would meet four times last week, but still no decision has been reached.
- 16.3 Complete these sentences with will have or would have and the past participle of one of these verbs.

(	approve buy hear hurt notice prefer watch	
1	According to official figures, over half the populationthe final of the song contest on TV last night.	
2	I enjoyed the exhibition – but I don't think my grandmotherof it.	
3	I don't think the dog anyone, but I was still glad whowner took it away.	en the
	· I'm sure by now you about yesterday's robbery at the superr	
5	The train journey was quite comfortable, although I	to fly
6	Regular readers the return of a popular feature to our w	ebsite
7	A: Did you like the present Justin gave you for your birthday? B: Well, an umbrella stand is something Imyself, but I suppose it might be	
C	Complete B's responses below to show criticism or disapproval. B	
1	A: I waste so much time looking for parking spaces. B: Well, if you	
	A: I've got a headache. B: Well, if you	
	A: I'm really hot. B: Well, if you	

## May and might

A	May and might often have a similar meaning when we talk about possibility. Reminder → C15 - C19  However, we prefer may in academic or formal language to talk about characteristics or behaviour:  The seeds from the plant may grow up to 20 centimetres in length. and in speech we prefer might to say what we will possibly do in the future:  We can use may well (or less commonly, might well) to emphasise that something is unexpected:  Keith may well pass the entrance examination after all. (or Keith might well)
В	We don't use may to ask questions about the possibility of something happening. Instead we use, for example, could(n't) or the phrase be likely:  Could it be that you don't want to leave? (not May it be that you?) Are you likely to be in Spain again this summer? (not May you be in Spain?)  It is possible to use might in this type of question, but it is rather formal: Might they be persuaded to change their minds?  Note that we can use may to ask for permission and offer help in a formal way: May I leave now?  May I help you?
С	Might (not 'may') + bare infinitive is sometimes used to talk about what was typically the case in the past. This is a formal or literary use:  During the war, the police might arrest you for criticising the government.  Years ago, children might be sent down mines at the age of six. (passive form)  We can also use could + bare infinitive in examples like this to talk about past ability (see Unit 15). For example, 'During the war, the police could arrest you' means that the police were legally able to arrest you.
D	When we say that a person or thing compensates to some extent for a limitation or weakness by having another characteristic, we can use a pattern with may / might not + bare infinitive but or may / might not have + past participle but:  The painting may not be a masterpiece, but the colours are remarkable.  She might not have danced very gracefully, but she had a lot of energy and enthusiasm.
E	We use may / might (not 'can') + have + past participle and may / might (not 'can') + be + -ing to talk about possible events in the past, present and future:  Do you think Laura may / might have completed the report by now? (past) His maths may / might have improved by the time the exam comes round. (future) Marco isn't in his office. He may / might be working at home today. (present) When I go to Vienna I may / might be staying with Max, but I'm not sure yet. (future)  Note that could can be used in these sentences instead of may or might: Do you think Laura could have completed the report by now?  We can use may / might have been + -ing to talk about possible situations or activities that went on over a period of past time: Callum didn't know where the ball was, but he thought his sister might have been playing with it before she left for school.

If	omplete the sentences with either <b>may</b> or <b>might</b> , whichever is more likely.  neither is possible, use an alternative, and make any other necessary changes. A & B
	Wego to Majorca for our holiday this summer.
	The planet Venus be seen clearly in the night sky this month.
	you see Yasemin this weekend?
	I feel really sore after playing tennis. I think Ihave a bath.
	A: Someone's left their coat. B:it be Nadia's?
	Exceeding the stated dose cause drowsiness.
	It well be the case that the evidence has been tampered with.
Ur	nderline the correct answer. C & E
1	You should have come dancing. You might have enjoyed / might enjoy it.
2	She <i>might have tried / might have been trying</i> to get a book off the top shelf when she fell.
	Dr Carter <i>might have come / might be coming</i> over this evening, so can you tidy the house up a bit?
	As recently as the 1950s, employers <i>might be requiring / might require</i> a woman to leave her just when she got married.
	I've been offered a new job, so I may be moving / may have moved to Dubai.
	Why not come and see us in March? The weather may have been improving / may have improving by then.
7	and the first term and the contract of the con
8	He said he was in a lot of pain, but he may have been exaggerating / may exaggerate.
	In the past, left-handed children <i>might be punishing / might be punished</i> for not holding a pen their right hand.
	I may have told / may tell you this before. I can't remember.
	omplete these sentences in any appropriate way.
	He may not be the best singer in the world, but
- 1	He may not be the best singer in the world, but
2	Hugh's old car might not be terribly comfortable, but
3	Her English grammar may not be very accurate, but
	ow expand these notes to complete the sentences below.
N	
	sound / exciting agree / him express / feelings openly work / quickly
4	He may / might not work very quickly but at least he's very reliable.
4 5	He may / might not work very quickly but at least he's very reliable.  , but his opinions on music make you think.
4 5 6	He may / might not work very quickly but at least he's very reliable.

## Must and have (got) to

A	We use <b>must</b> and <b>must not</b> in formal rules and regulations and in w  Bookings <b>must</b> be made at least seven days before departure  The government <b>must not</b> be allowed to appoint judges.	
	In spoken English we often use <b>must</b> and <b>mustn't</b> (= must not) to p such as a meeting or social event, without making detailed plans:  We <b>must</b> get together more often.  We <b>mustn't</b> l	eave it so long next time.
	We can also use I must to remind ourselves to do something:  I must charge my phone. I meant to do it yesterday, but I for	orgot.
В	To draw a strong conclusion about —  something that happened in the past, we use must + have + past    That's not Clara's car. She must have borrowed it from here  something happening at or around the time of speaking, we use must  I can't hear a noise. You must be imagining things.  something that is likely to happen in the future, we use must be go what are all those workmen doing?' 'I think they must be go was wrong about the meeting being today. It must be happen a present situation, we use must be, or have (got) to be in information.  Their goalkeeper has got to be at least two metres tall! (or we can use must have to to draw a conclusion based on what we keep must have had to to draw a conclusion about a past situation:  I can't access the database. You must have to put in a pass matter wasn't at home when I went round. He must have had	parents.  ust be + -ing:  ping to or must be + -ing: going to dig up the road.' pening next Friday.  al speech: must be)  now about a present situation and  word. (= a password is necessary)
C	Note that we can't say 'must've (got) to' but we can say <b>must've</b> had In questions that hope for or expect a negative answer we prefer <b>ha</b>	
	contexts <b>must</b> is sometimes used:  Do we have to answer all the questions? (or Have we got to the second of the s	e used, although some people in sentences like this:
D	Sometimes we can use either have to or have got to. However –  we use have to with frequency adverb (see Unit 75B):  I often have to work at the weekend to get everything done.  with the past simple we use have to, especially in questions and not one when did you have to give it back? (not When had you got	to give it back?)
	<ul> <li>○ We didn't have to wait too long for an answer. (not We had if have is contracted (e.g. I've, He's, It'd) then we must include got:</li> <li>○ I need a new pair of shoes, and they've got to be blue. (not we don't use have got to with other modal verbs:</li> </ul>	
	Motorists will have to wait until next year to use the bridge wait)	e. (not Motorists will have got to
	Note also that <b>have got to</b> is often preferred in informal speech.	

	When I left my laptop on the train, I thought I'd never see it again. But someone
_	it and handed it in to the lost property office. (find)
	Luisa owns a big car and a yacht. She incredibly rich. (be)
3	A: Everyone's going into the hall. B: The meetingsoon. Let's go.
	(start)
4	Without things like washing machines and dishwashers our grandparents
_	much harder in the kitchen than we do today. (work)
	I didn't think Rob was coming to the meeting. Hehis mind. (change
6	A: I wonder how you get past security.
	в: I suppose yousome form of ID. (show)
7	A: I thought Paul would be home.
	в: HeLotta to work. He said he would. (take)
8	Look at all those birds. There at least a thousand of them. (be)
	rite new sentences with a similar meaning. Use have / has got to where possible or
pr	eferable; if not, use <b>have / has to</b> . D
1	It is necessary to do all of this photocopying before lunchtime.
	All of this photocopying has got to be done / has to be done before lunchtime
2	It is rarely necessary to ask Hannah to tidy her room. Hannah
	Is it necessary for us to hand in the homework tomorrow? Have
	It wasn't necessary for me to go to the hospital after all. /
	Was it necessary for Ben to go alone? Did
	It is sometimes necessary for Adam to start work at 6:30. Adam
	It is necessary to extend the college to accommodate the new students. <i>The college</i>
	It may be necessary to cancel our holiday because my mother is ill. We
0	it may be necessary to carreer our notiday because my mother is it. We
If	necessary, correct the italicised parts of this email message. A-D
	necessary, correct the italicised parts of this email message. A-D  Reply Forward
•	Reply Forward
• Ma	ria,
Mai	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) <i>must have been wondering</i> what's been happening. Well, I mus
Mai	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) <i>must have been wondering</i> what's been happening. Well, I muse had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The
o Mai y I ha it l've 's ve	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) <i>must have been wondering</i> what's been happening. Well, I muse had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ery stiff, and I (2) <i>always have got to pull</i> it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) <i>Have</i>
Mai / I hat I l've 's ve	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I muse had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ery stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have any the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have
Man I ha I l've Is ve Is ve	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The rry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small
Mar I ha I l've s ve to ba	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The rry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small
Mai I hat I've s ve to ba	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very smathave to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) must leave it open, but I didn't
Mar I ha I l've s ve to ba eed co	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ery stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have any the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) must leave it open, but I didn'nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) must have come through the house and opened the front door for
Mar t l've s ve to ba ed c nust ct ar	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must have had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ery stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) must leave it open, but I didn't nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) must have come through the house and opened the front door for so. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) mustn't wait very long for them to get here
Mai y I have a like in the second of the sec	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) <i>must have been wondering</i> what's been happening. Well, I muse had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ery stiff, and I (2) <i>always have got to pull</i> it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) <i>Have ang</i> the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) <i>must have</i> over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) <i>must leave</i> it open, but I didn'nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) <i>must have come</i> through the house and opened the front door for some only thing I did was to call the police and I (8) <i>mustn't wait</i> very long for them to get here ely, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) <i>must be disturbed</i> , perhaps when the
Mai I have to be to be to be	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) <i>must have been wondering</i> what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ry stiff, and I (2) <i>always have got to pull</i> it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) <i>Have</i> and the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) <i>must have</i> over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) <i>must leave</i> it open, but I didn't ryone to be able to get in. Then they (7) <i>must have come</i> through the house and opened the front door for s. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) <i>mustn't wait</i> very long for them to get here ely, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) <i>must be disturbed</i> , perhaps when the came. So now (10) <i>I've to get</i> a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) <i>must put</i> some
Mai I ha I l've s ve co ba ed c ed c tust thera thera nan on	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must be had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The bry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) must leave it open, but I didn't hyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) must have come through the house and opened the front door for s. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) mustn't wait very long for them to get here ely, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) must be disturbed, perhaps when the came. So now (10) I've to get a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) must put some the windows. I suppose I (12) must have to get a burglar alarm, too. I must say I've never really wanted
Mal y I have 's verto be beed of conust conust inate man son but i	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ery stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) must leave it open, but I didn't nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) must have come through the house and opened the front door for so. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) mustn't wait very long for them to get here ely, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) must be disturbed, perhaps when the came. So now (10) I've to get a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) must put some the windows. I suppose I (12) must have to get a burglar alarm, too. I must say I've never really wanted needs must!
Man	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) must leave it open, but I didn' nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) must have come through the house and opened the front door for s. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) mustn't wait very long for them to get here ely, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) must be disturbed, perhaps when the came. So now (10) I've to get a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) must put some the windows. I suppose I (12) must have to get a burglar alarm, too. I must say I've never really wanted needs must!  (13) I've to go. Hope the family is well. Jessica (14) must get ready to go back to university. And you
Mai t l've s ve to ba ed c to tar ther: nate nan on but i	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) <i>must have been wondering</i> what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The rry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) <i>must have</i> over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) <i>must leave</i> it open, but I didn'nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) <i>must have come</i> through the house and opened the front door for so. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) <i>mustn't wait</i> very long for them to get here ally, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) <i>must be disturbed</i> , perhaps when the came. So now (10) I've to get a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) <i>must put</i> some the windows. I suppose I (12) <i>must have to</i> get a burglar alarm, too. I must say I've never really wanted needs must!  (13) I've to go. Hope the family is well. Jessica (14) <i>must get</i> ready to go back to university. And you to be busy with the new school year just about to start. When you have time, we (16) have to get together
Mailive s ve o ba ed co ust tan ate nate on out ay, must	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) must have been wondering what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) must have over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very small have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) must leave it open, but I didn'nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) must have come through the house and opened the front door for s. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) mustn't wait very long for them to get here ely, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) must be disturbed, perhaps when the came. So now (10) I've to get a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) must put some the windows. I suppose I (12) must have to get a burglar alarm, too. I must say I've never really wanted needs must!  (13) I've to go. Hope the family is well. Jessica (14) must get ready to go back to university. And you
Mailives veo	ria, aven't been in touch for a while. You (1) <i>must have been wondering</i> what's been happening. Well, I must had a pretty awful week. When I got home from work last Monday, the front door was wide open. The ry stiff, and I (2) always have got to pull it very hard to shut it. My neighbour's always saying, '(3) Have ang the door so hard?' When I went in, I found that the house had been burgled. They (4) <i>must have</i> over the fence in the back garden. None of the windows and doors were damaged, so someone very sma have to squeeze through the tiny window in the kitchen. I suppose I (6) <i>must leave</i> it open, but I didn'nyone to be able to get in. Then they (7) <i>must have come</i> through the house and opened the front door for so. Of course, the first thing I did was to call the police and I (8) <i>mustn't wait</i> very long for them to get here ally, the only thing that was taken was my TV. I think the burglars (9) <i>must be disturbed</i> , perhaps when the came. So now (10) I've to get a new lock for the front door and replace the TV, and I (11) <i>must put</i> some the windows. I suppose I (12) <i>must have to</i> get a burglar alarm, too. I must say I've never really wanted needs must!  (13) I've to go. Hope the family is well. Jessica (14) <i>must get</i> ready to go back to university. And you to be busy with the new school year just about to start. When you have time, we (16) have to get together

### Need(n't), don't need to and don't have to

4	We can use <b>need</b> as an ordinary verb:  ☐ I <b>needed</b> to leave early. ☐ She's thirsty. She <b>needs</b> a drink.  We can also use it as a modal verb (followed by a bare infinitive). As a modal verb, it doesn't change
ı	its tense and doesn't add '-s' for the third person singular.  When it is a modal verb, <b>need</b> is most commonly used in negative sentences:
ı	<ul> <li>You needn't speak so loudly.</li> <li>I've already cleaned the car so you needn't bother to do it.</li> <li>I was very nervous before the interview, but I needn't have worried – I got the job!</li> </ul>
ı	Other verbs often used with need not (needn't): apply, bother, concern, fear, involve, mean, panic, worry
ı	'Note that needn't bother can be used with both to-infinitive (You needn't bother to check) or (about) + -ing (You needn't bother (about) checking) with little difference in meaning.'  It is sometimes used in questions, but we prefer to use need as an ordinary verb or have to:  Need you go so soon? (= modal verb; less common and rather formal)  Do you need to go so soon? (= ordinary verb) or Do you have to go so soon?
ı	It is rarely used in affirmative sentences (that is, not questions or negatives), but is sometimes found in written English, particularly in fiction:  We <b>need</b> have no fear for Nicole, she can take care of herself.
J	In other styles of formal written English it is used in this way with negative words such as hardly, never, nobody / no one, and only:  The changes need only be small to make the proposals acceptable. (less formally The changes only need to be)  Nobody ever need know about the money. (less formally Nobody ever needs to know)  'I don't want my parents to know.' 'They need never find out.' (less formally They never need to find out.)
В	To say it is not necessary to do something, we can use either <b>needn't</b> or <b>don't need to</b> :  You <b>needn't cut</b> the grass, I'll do it later. (or You <b>don't need to cut</b> the grass)
J	To talk about a general necessity, we prefer <b>don't need to</b> :  You <b>don't need to be</b> over 18 to take driving lessons. ( <i>rather than</i> You needn't be)
	We can often use either <b>needn't</b> or <b>don't have to</b> with little difference in meaning to say that it is unnecessary to do something:  Or You <b>needn't</b> whisper. Nobody can hear us. ( <i>or</i> You <b>don't have to</b> )
J	However, some people prefer <b>needn't</b> when it is the speaker who decides something is unnecessary, and <b>don't have to</b> when somebody else or external rules make something unnecessary. Compare:  As you worked late yesterday you <b>needn't</b> come in until ten tomorrow morning. (the speaker's decision) and  We've been told that we <b>don't have to</b> be at work until ten tomorrow. (reporting someone else's decision.)
	We can use needn't (or don't have to) to say that something is not necessarily true. We don't use mustn't in this way (see also Unit 18C):  Volcanoes needn't erupt constantly to be classified as 'active'. (or Volcanoes don't have to erupt; not Volcanoes mustn't erupt)  Nowadays it needn't cost a fortune to own an eBook reader. (or Nowadays it doesn't have to cost; not Nowadays it mustn't cost)

19.1 Match the sentence beginnings and ends. Join them with needn't and the bare infinitive of one of the verbs from the box. (A)

bother change concern panic worry

- 1 I'll give you a lift to the station so you ...
- 2 The questions are in the book so you ...
- 3 All the windows have screens so you ...
- 4 Our software provides full computer security so you ...
- 5 The new tax laws don't come into force until next year so you ...
- ... the details on the form.
- ... yourself with viruses.
- ... to copy them down.
- ... about booking a taxi.
- ... about being bitten by mosquitoes.

### 19.2 Rewrite the following in a formal style using need. (A

- 1 It is hardly necessary for us to remind you that the money is now due.

  We need hardly remind you that the money is now due.
- 2 It is only necessary for us to look at the rainfall figures to see the seriousness of the problem.
- 3 With such a lead in the opinion polls, it is hardly necessary for the Democrats to bother campaigning before the election.
- 4 It is not necessary for anyone to know who paid the ransom to the kidnappers.
- 5 After such a huge lottery win, it is not necessary for him to work again.
- 19.3 Underline the more likely option. If the options are equally likely, underline them both. 📵
  - 1 In most developed countries, people needn't / don't need to boil water before they drink it.
  - 2 You needn't / don't need to walk. I'll give you a lift.
  - 3 I'll email a summary of the lecture so you needn't / don't need to take notes.
  - 4 You needn't / don't need to have a university degree to become a police officer.
  - 5 You needn't / don't need to buy me a birthday present.
  - 6 In most cities, you needn't / don't need to pay to get into galleries and museums.
- 19.4 Correct any mistakes in the extracts from a speech made by the managing director of a company to her employees. A-D



## Should, ought to and had better

A	We can often use either <b>should</b> or <b>ought to</b> to talk about obligations and recommendations (e.g. You <b>should</b> / <b>ought to</b> finish your homework before you go out) and probability (e.g. It <b>should</b> / <b>ought to</b> be ready by now) although in general <b>should</b> is used more frequently. <b>Ought to</b> is used particularly in speech and most often to talk about obligation rather than probability.
	When we conclude, on the basis of some evidence we have, that something is certain or very likely we can use <b>must</b> (see Unit 18) but not <b>should / ought to</b> :  It's the third time she's been skating this week. She <b>must</b> really enjoy it.
	Note also the following details –  we prefer <b>should</b> when we say what an outside authority recommends:  The manual says that the computer <b>should</b> be disconnected from the power supply before the cover is removed. ( <i>rather than</i> ought to be disconnected)
	we use <b>should</b> (or <b>would</b> ), not <b>ought to</b> , when we give advice with I:  I <b>should</b> leave early tomorrow, if I were you. ( <i>or</i> I <b>would</b> leave; <i>or</i> I' <b>d</b> leave)
	<ul><li>we prefer should in questions, particularly wh-questions:</li><li>What should I do if I have any problems?</li><li>Should I ring you at home?</li></ul>
В	We use <b>should / ought to + have + past participle</b> to talk about something that didn't happen in the past and we are sorry that it didn't:  We <b>should / ought to have waited</b> for the rain to stop. (I'm sorry we didn't)  We often use this pattern to indicate some regret or criticism and the negative forms <b>shouldn't / oughtn't to have</b> are almost always used in this way.
	We also use <b>should / ought to + have + past participle</b> to talk about an expectation that something happened, has happened, or will happen:  If the flight was on time, he <b>should / ought to have arrived</b> in Jakarta early this morning.
С	We can use <b>should</b> in questions that are offers or that request confirmation or advice:  Should I phone for a taxi for you?  Who <b>should</b> I pass the message to?  Note that in sentences like these we can also use <b>shall</b> with a very similar meaning.
	Compare the use of <b>shall</b> and <b>should</b> in sentences such as the following, where 'I shall' means 'I intend to' and 'I should' means 'I ought to':  I <b>shall</b> read the script on the train tomorrow. (or I'll read) and I <b>should</b> read the script on the train tomorrow but I know that I'll be too tired.
D	We can use had better instead of should / ought to, especially in spoken English, to say that we think it is a good idea to do something:  If you're not well, you'd better ask Clare to go instead. (or you should / ought to) although we don't use it to talk about the past or to make general comments:  You should / ought to have caught a later train. (not You had better have caught) I don't think parents should / ought to give children sweets. (not parents had better give)
	We prefer <b>had better</b> if we want to express particular urgency or in demands and threats:  There's someone moving about downstairs. We'd better call the police, quickly.

Complete these sentences with should / ought to + infinitive (active), should / ought to be + past participle (passive), or should / ought to have + past participle using each of the verbs from the box once only. (A & B)

	answer	arrive	be	go	put	remove	resign	send	wear	win
1		s running s netres eas		at the r	moment	that he				
2	2 Where the cheese? In the fridge?									
						a co			we go on	holiday.
	Payment for the full amount with this application form.  All packaging before switching on the printer for the first									
	time.									
6		tant to loo	ok smar	t at the	e intervie	ew. You				a suit
	Office and the second of the second of the					sident				
		50.00	•			SIGCITE				-
O		in French			VVC					questions
0							h.	train rath	or than a	
U	I Call Lillia	agine wha	с с парр	ened to	) Vila. Si	ne			rie	re by no
In	which ser	ntences ca	n vou i	ise sho	ould or i	must and in	which can	vou only	use must	? Where
			5 <del>5</del> 3			etween <b>sh</b>				
								ust.		
						ithdrawing t	Control of the Contro			
					h	ave been he	ld up at wo	rk.		
3	A: I wonde									
						r, so he			over 50.	
4	If you sm	ell gas, yoı	J L		pho	one the eme	gency num	iber.		
5	You		try to	visit N	Nepal – i	t's a beautifu	ıl country.			
6	a: I know	I'm always	s compl	aining	that my	house is small	all, but it's	very conv	enient for	work.
	в: Yes, it .			be han	dy living	so close to	your office.	1.57		
Ιf	necessary	correct t	hese co	nversa	tions us	sing <b>should</b>	/ ought to	must sl	nall or ha	d hetter
	rite 🗸 . A,		iicsc co	1110130	itions as	ing should	ought to	mast, si	idit, or ric	o Dette.
			g wrong	with [	David's c	omputer yet	again.			
-			0			J	-6			
			e'd neve	er hous	ont it					
2		uld wish h								
2	A: The nex	uld wish h kt meeting	s on 3r	d April		not				
	a: The nex в: I'd bett	uld wish h kt meeting er make a	s on 3r note of	d April that, c	or I'll for		.2			
	A: The nex в: I'd bett A: It's hard	uld wish h kt meeting er make a d to keep f	s on 3r note of it when	d April that, o you ha	or I'll forg ave a des	sk job, isn't it				
3	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh	uld wish h kt meeting er make a d to keep f nall do mo	s on 3r note of it when re exerc	d April that, o you ha	or I'll forg ave a des at I never	sk job, isn't it seem to hav	ve time.			
3	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi	uld wish h kt meeting er make a d to keep f nall do mo ldren from	s's on 3r note of it when re exerc n next d	d April that, o you had ise, bu oor had	or I'll forg ave a des at I never ve been	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto	e time. nes at our	windows.		
3	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th	uld wish h kt meeting er make a d to keep f nall do mo ldren from ney should	s's on 3r note of it when re exerc n next d	d April that, o you had ise, bu oor had	or I'll forg ave a des at I never ve been	sk job, isn't it seem to hav	e time. nes at our	windows.		
3	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free	uld wish heat meeting er make and to keep for all do moldren from ey should ezing.	is on 3r note of it when re exerc next do n't do in	that, of that, of you have cise, but oor have tagain	or I'll forg ave a des at I never ve been , otherw	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto	e time. nes at our	windows.		
3 4 5	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b	uld wish heat meeting er make a do to keep for all do mo ldren from ney should exing.	is on 3r note of it when re exerc next do n't do in	that, of that, of you had been depended as thicked	or I'll forgave a des it I never ve been otherw	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th	ve time. nes at our v e police.			
3 4 5	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b	uld wish heat meeting er make a do to keep for all do mo ldren from ney should exing.	is on 3r note of it when re exerc next do n't do in	that, of that, of you had been depended as thicked	or I'll forgave a des it I never ve been otherw	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto	ve time. nes at our v e police.			
3 4 5	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b	uld wish heat meeting er make and to keep for all do moldern from the should exing.  The setter have assess had be	is on 3r note of it when re exerc next do n't do in	that, of that, of you had been depended as thicked	or I'll forgave a des it I never ve been otherw	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th	ve time. nes at our v e police.			
3 4 5 6	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally	uld wish heat meeting er make and to keep for all do moldren from the second externation and because had because had because had because and because a	is on 3r note of it when re exerce n next d n't do in worn a exter no	d April that, c you had cise, bu oor had t again a thicke of be al	or I'll forgave a des et I never ve been , otherw er coat. lowed to	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th	ve time. nes at our v e police.			
3 4 5 6	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally A: When h	uld wish heat meeting er make and to keep for all do mon ldren from the should exing.  The setter have sees had be granged agree.  The sees had be granged agree.  The sees had be granged agree.  The sees had be granged agree.	g's on 3r note of it when re exerce n next d in't do in worn a etter no	d April that, c you have cise, bu oor have t again a thicke of be al in Bris	or I'll forgave a des tot I never ve been , otherw er coat. lowed to	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th	ve time. nes at our v e police.			
3 4 5 6 7	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally A: When h B: By four	uld wish heat meeting er make a do to keep food mould be represented by a gree. It think we we go at think we we we go at think we we we we we we we go at think we	g's on 3r note of it when re exerce n next do n't do it worn a etter no ot to be e'd bett	that, control that, control that, control that, control that again thicker that all the all that are gets	or I'll forgave a destit I never ve been on the control of the control of the control of the control of the control?	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th	ve time. nes at our v e police.			
3 4 5 6 7	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally A: When h B: By four A: Do you	uld wish heat meeting er make a do to keep for all do mon aldren from they should exing. The sees had be a gree. In think we want to get a meeting want to	g's on 3r note of it when re exerce n next do in't do it worn a etter no ot to be of betto o out fo	that, control th	or I'll forgave a dest I never ve been on the coat. lowed to tol?	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th o give money	ve time. nes at our v e police. v to politica			
3 4 5 6 7 8	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally A: When h B: By four A: Do you B: Well, I sh	uld wish heat meeting er make and to keep for all do mo ldren from they should exing.  The etter have existed by agree.  The agree we go want to go should be should be	g's on 3r note of it when re exerce next do n't do it worn a etter no ot to be to out for revising	that, control th	or I'll forgave a dest I never ve been of the coat. I never toler toler toler toler was a toler toler toler toler y maths	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th o give money exam but	ve time. nes at our ve police. To politication			
3 4 5 6 7 8	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally A: When h B: By four A: Do you B: Well, I sh A: I've loo	uld wish heat meeting er make and to keep for all do mon and the sees had been are we go want to go should be ked all over the sees had be want to go should be ked all over the sees had be want to go should be ked all over the sees had be ked all o	g's on 3r note of it when re exerce n next d n't do it worn a etter no ot to be of d bett o out for revising er the h	that, con you had been dead to be all in Brise er get soor lunch for my ouse and ous	or I'll forgave a destit I never ve been of the control of the con	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th give money exam but find the keys	ve time. nes at our v e police.  to politica okay. s.			
3 4 5 6 7 8	A: The next B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally A: When h B: By four A: Do you B: Well, I sh A: I've lood B: Well, I sh	uld wish heat meeting er make a d to keep food moldren from hey should ezing. etter have sees had be a gree. I think we want to go should be ked all over they're not they're not to go they're not they are not they are not they are not they are not they're not they're not they are n	g's on 3r note of it when re exerce n next do n't do it worn a etter no ot to be e'd bett to out for revising er the ho	that, con you have a constant again a thicker of be all a constant again and the constant again at the constant again at the constant again and the constant again	or I'll forgave a destit I never ve been of the control of the con	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th o give money exam but	ve time. nes at our v e police.  to politica okay. s.			
3 4 5 6 7 8	A: The nex B: I'd bett A: It's hard B: Yes. I sh A: The chi B: Well, th A: I'm free B: You'd b A: Busines B: I totally A: When h B: By four A: Do you B: Well, I sh A: I've loo B: Well, if A: It's so e	uld wish heat meeting er make a d to keep food mould deep should exing. The sees had be a gree. In think we want to go should be ked all over they're no expensive to go and they're no expensive to make they're not expensive to make they're make they're not expensive to make they're not expensive to make they're make they are they are they are they're make they make they make they make they make they're make they make they make they make they make they make they're make they make the	g's on 3r note of it when re exerce next do n't do it worn a exter no ot to be e'd bett o out for revising er the ho ot here, to park	that, of that, of you have a thicked to be all in Brisser gets for lunch they make the make they make the make they make the make they make the make the mak	or I'll forgave a destit I never ve been on the control of the con	sk job, isn't it seem to hav throwing sto ise I'll call th give money exam but find the keys	ve time. nes at our ve police. v to politica okay. s.			

### Linking verbs: **be**, **appear**, **seem**; **become**, **get**, etc.

A	When an adjective or noun phrase is used after a verb to describe the subject or say what or who the subject is, the adjective or noun phrase is a <i>complement</i> and the verb is a <i>linking verb</i> :  Clara is a doctor.  My cat's getting old  She seemed unable to concentrate.
	Other linking verbs:
	'being' linking verbs: e.g. <b>be, keep, prove, remain, stay</b> Most of these verbs can be followed by either an adjective or noun phrase (e.g. It <b>sounds nice / a nice place</b> ).
	'becoming' linking verbs:  e.g. become, come, end up, get, grow, turn out  When they are used as linking verbs, come and grow  (e.g. come to know, grow thoughtful) can't be followed by a noun phrase.
J	'seeming' linking verbs: e.g. appear, look, seem, sound  Keep is only followed by a noun if an adjective follows it (e.g. It kept him awake).
В	After the verbs appear (= seems true), look (= seem), prove, seem, and turn out we can often either include or omit to be:  The room appears (to be) brighter than when I last saw it.  However, following these verbs to be is usually included before the adjectives alive, alone, asleep, and awake, and before the -ing forms of verbs:  I didn't go in because she appeared to be asleep. (not she appeared asleep.)  Before a noun we include to be when the noun tells us what the subject is, but often leave it out when we give our opinion of the person or thing in the subject. We leave out to be in formal English. Compare:  He walked into what seemed to be a cave. (not what seemed a cave.) and  She seems (to be) a very efficient salesperson.
C	We use the linking verb <b>become</b> to describe a process of change. A number of other linking verbs can be used instead of <b>become</b> , including <b>come</b> , <b>get</b> , <b>go</b> , <b>grow</b> , <b>turn</b> ( <b>into</b> ).  We use <b>get</b> rather than <b>become</b> : in informal speech and writing before some adjectives including <b>difficult</b> , <b>ill</b> , <b>interested</b> , <b>pregnant</b> , and <b>worried</b> ; in imperatives; and in phrases such as <b>get changed</b> (clothes), <b>get dressed</b> , <b>get married</b> / <b>divorced</b> :  I first <b>got</b> <i>suspicious</i> when he looked into all the cars. ( <i>more formally</i> <b>became</b> <i>suspicious</i> )  Don't <b>get</b> <i>upset</i> about it!  Where did you live before you <b>got</b> <i>married</i> ?
J	We prefer become for a more abstract or technical process of change:  O He became recognised as an expert.  Their bodies have become adapted to high altitudes.  We use become, not get, if there is a noun phrase after the linking verb:  Or Morales became an adviser to the government.
D	We use <b>go</b> or <b>turn</b> , not usually <b>get</b> or <b>become</b> , when we talk about colours changing:  The traffic lights <b>turned</b> / <b>went</b> <i>green</i> and I pulled away.  We often use <b>go</b> to talk about changes, particularly for unwanted situations. For example:
	go deaf / blind / bald; go mad / crazy / wild; go bad / off / mouldy / rotten; go bust; go dead; go missing; go wrong.  But note: get ill, get old, get tired.  The company went bust and had to close.  My computer's gone wrong again.  Some people get ill very easily.
	After the verbs <b>come</b> , <b>get</b> , and <b>grow</b> (but not after <b>become</b> ) we can use a <b>to-infinitive</b> . <b>Come</b> and <b>grow</b> are often used to talk about gradual change: <ul> <li>I eventually <b>came</b> / <b>grew</b> to appreciate his work. (not became to appreciate his work.)</li> </ul>

- 21.1 Put brackets around to be in these sentences if it can be left out. B
  - 1 The job turned out to be far easier than I'd expected.
  - 2 When I looked through the window, Ella appeared to be alone.
  - 3 What he called his 'little cottage in the country' proved to be a castle.
  - 4 Hassan proved to be an excellent source of information about the town.
  - 5 She appeared to be satisfied with the work I'd done.
  - 6 I've adjusted the aerial and the television seems to be working okay now.
  - 7 When I picked the crab up I thought it was dead, but it turned out to be alive and pinched me.
  - 8 With only five minutes of the match left, Spain look to be heading to victory.
  - 9 A: We've decided to buy a Ford. B: That seems to be a very good choice.
  - 10 He only looked to be about ten years old, but I knew he must be a lot older.

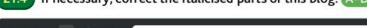
### 21.2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of become or get. C

- 1 Give me a few minutes to ......changed, and then I'll be ready to go.
- 2 The state of the railways a major political issue during the last election campaign.
- 3 It is widely recognised that people who ......worried about work suffer more from disturbed sleep.
- 4 The reasons for my decision will .......clear at the next meeting.
- 5 Don't ...... annoyed with me, but I've lost the car keys.
- 6 I didn't finish the book. I just couldn't ...... interested in it.
- 7 After the strange events in the house she .......convinced that it was haunted.
- 8 I had just ......divorced when I met Marianne.

### -berserk blind bust dead to know to like red tired

- 1 I was at a zoo once when an elephant went berserk and attacked its keeper. (go / turn)
- 2 A few seconds later, the line and Marc put down the handset. (go / turn)
- 3 After the spider bit Rachel, her ankle ...... and started to swell up. (go / get)

- 6 We soon \_\_\_\_\_each other and have been great friends ever since. (become / come)
- 8 The company ......when the bank wouldn't lend it any more money. (qo / qet)
- 21.4 If necessary, correct the italicised parts of this blog. A-D



The morning we were going on holiday everything seemed to (1) *turn wrong*. The taxi was due at 8:00 to take us to the airport. When I looked in on Adam at 7:00 he (2) *seemed awake*, so I went downstairs to make breakfast. When I opened the fridge I found that the milk (3) *had gone off*, so we couldn't have breakfast. Then Adam (4) *seemed taking* a long time to come down, so at 7:30 I went back upstairs and he still (5) *hadn't become dressed*. He said he wasn't feeling well, but I just shouted, 'You can't (6) *get ill* when we're going on holiday!' After that the keys to the luggage (7) *got missing*, but Adam eventually found them in his jacket pocket. By 8:30 the taxi hadn't arrived and I was starting (8) to become worried. It was (9) *getting obvious* that we were going to miss our plane if we didn't leave soon. But just then the taxi arrived and we made it to the airport with minutes to spare. Surprisingly, after such a bad start, it (10) *turned out to be* an excellent holiday.

### Using passives

We typically use a passive rather than an active in the

	following situations.  Using a passive allows us to omit the agent (= the subject of the corresponding active sentence) by leaving out the prepositional phrase with by. We prefer passives when the agent:  is not known:  My office was broken into when I was on holiday.  is 'people in general':  An order form can be found on page 2.  is unimportant:  Be is thought to be somewhere in Russia.  is obvious:  She is being treated in hospital. (the agent is clearly 'medical staff')  In factual writing (e.g. describing procedures or processes) we often omit the agent, and use passives:  Nuclear waste will still be radioactive even after 20,000 years, so it must be disposed of very carefully. It can be stored as a liquid in stainless-steel containers which are encased in concrete. The most dangerous nuclear waste can be turned into glass which will be stored in deep underground mines.  In informal contexts, particularly in conversation, we often use active sentences with a subject such as people, somebody / someone, something, they, we, or you even when we do not know who the
	agent is. In more formal contexts, we often prefer to use a passive so that we can avoid any mention of an agent. Compare:  They're installing the new computer system next month. and  The new computer system is being installed next month. (more formal)
В	Note also that some verbs have related nouns which express the same meaning. These nouns can be used as the subject of passive sentences, with a new passive verb introduced. Compare the example above and:  The installation of the new computer system will be completed by next month.
С	In English we usually prefer to put the topic (what is already being talked about) at the beginning of a sentence (or clause) and a comment on that topic at the end. Choosing the passive often allows us to do this. Compare these two texts and note where the topic (in <i>italics</i> ) is placed in the second sentence of each. The second text uses a passive where the emphasis is on the (safety) valves:  The three machines tested for the report contained different types of safety valve. The Boron Group in Germany manufactured all the valves.  The three machines tested for the report contained different types of safety valve. All the valves were manufactured by the Boron Group in Germany.
	Using the passive allows us to put long subjects at the end of a sentence. So, for example:  I was surprised by Dev's decision to give up his job and move to Sydney. is more natural than 'Dev's decision to give up his job and move to Sydney surprised me', although the choice can depend on considerations of style and context.
D	Instead of making a <b>that-clause</b> the subject of a passive sentence, it is normal to use an <b>it-clause</b> (see also Unit 25):    Everybody <b>believed</b> (that) the plan would fail. ( <i>active</i> )

Reminder → Section D & Appendix 2

Write passive sentences about the development of an Olympic Games site starting with the italicised words. A & Appendix 2



- Rewrite these sentences beginning with a noun formed from the italicised verb (with the if necessary). Use a passive form of the verb in brackets, and make any other necessary changes.
  - 1 They will consider the issue at next week's meeting. (give)

    Consideration will be given to the issue at next week's meeting.
  - 2 They will appoint a new managing director next week. (make)
  - 3 People have accused the local council of corruption. (make)
  - 4 They demolished the building in only two days. (complete)
  - 5 They will *present* the trophy after the speeches. (make)
  - 6 Local residents will certainly resist the proposed new industrial area. (expect)
- 22.3 Complete the text with appropriate forms (active or passive) of the verbs in brackets. A-D

Slowly but surely the coastline of Britain (1) <u>is being worn away</u> (wear away) by an advancing sea. The country which once 'ruled the waves' now (2)(rule) by them, with huge
forces threatening to destroy vast areas of human and wildlife habitat. Already some of Britain's last
wild, natural areas (3) (disappear), and experts (4) (fear)
that this is just the beginning. It (5)(estimate) that there will be a 38–55 cm rise
in average sea levels by the year 2100. According to the Department of the Environment, during the
next 50 years at least 10,000 hectares of farmland (6)
salt marshes by the increases in sea levels. Rather than trying to prevent the erosion, the present
government (7)
further inland and allowing low-lying coastal farmland (8)
the sea. However, many of the country's major cities could also (9)
London, Bristol and Cardiff all (10) (expect) severe flooding as our sea defences
(11)(destroy) by the rising tides.

## Forming passive sentences: objects, complements and multi-word verbs

A

Verbs such as **give** take both a direct object (DO) and an indirect object (IO) in two patterns: **V** + **IO** + **DO** or **V** + **DO** + **preposition** + **IO**. These verbs have two corresponding passives:

Reminder → Section D & Appendix 2

active V + IO + DO V + DO + prep + IO	passive
Alice gave us that vase. 🗸	We were given that vase (by Alice). ✓
Alice gave that vase to us. 🗸	That vase was given (to) us (by Alice). 🗸

Also: award, hand, lend, offer, send, throw (= 'giving' verbs); ask, read, teach (= 'telling' verbs)

The passive form you choose depends on which is more appropriate in a particular context. If we specify an agent (see Appendix 2), this follows **by** at the end of the clause. Note that in informal contexts 'to' can be left out in the second passive pattern.

Verbs that can't be followed by IO + DO in the active must use preposition + IO in the passive:

active V + DO + prep + IO	passive
He explained me the problem. X He explained the problem to me. ✓	- I was explained the problem.   The problem was explained to me.   ✓

Also: announce, demonstrate, describe, introduce, mention, propose, report, suggest (= 'reporting' verbs)

В

Verbs followed by **object** + **complement** in the active have one passive form:

active V + object + complement	passive
They elected her president.	She was elected president.

Also: appoint, declare, make, nominate, vote (to do with giving a particular position); call, name (= 'naming' verbs)

C

Some verbs that are followed by **object** + **bare infinitive** (= an infinitive without 'to') in the active are followed by a **to-infinitive** in the passive:

active V + object + bare infinitive	passive
They have made him return the money.	He has been made to return the money.

Also: feel, hear, help (also + object + to-infinitive), observe, see (see also Unit 23A)

D

#### Transitive multi-word verbs (see also Unit 94)

Some have passive forms:

active	passive
Ella <b>looked after</b> him.	He was looked after (by Ella).

Also: carry out (= put into practice), deprive of, disapprove of, fence off, hold over (= delay), look up to, phase out, prevent from, talk down to (= patronise)

Some are not used in the passive:

active	no passive
We <b>came up against</b> a problem.	A problem was come upagainst. X

Also: brush up on (= revise), cast (your mind)
back (= try to remember), get (something) down
(= write), take after (= resemble)

Some can be only used in the passive with certain senses:

active	passive		
They <b>put out</b> the fire. I <b>put out</b> a hand to steady myself.	The fire was put out.  A hand was put out to steady myself. X		

Also: (passive possible meaning / no passive meaning): call (someone) up (order to join the army / telephone); call (someone) back (ask to return / telephone); let in (allow into a place / allow rain, etc. in); let out (allow to leave / let out a sound)

2	Rewrite the sentences using one or, if possible, two passive forms. Look carefully at the tense.  Someone handed me a note. I was handed a note. / A note was handed to me  Someone offered her a second-hand bicycle.						
			ed improvements to				
	Someone suggested some interesting changes to me. Someone awarded him a prize.						
6	A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR						
			ned the password	to the thie	ves.		
		has lent me					
		_	ne a lot of spam er				
10	Someone	is going to e	explain the change	s to the st	udents.		
	appoint	declare	the same verb and demonstrate	tne passi <del>help</del>	introduce	see	
1			b to his feet after his feet after				
2	Tony me to Mrs Rossi at his birthday partyl						
	Has anyone Chris this morning? Has Chris						
3							
	They			egional Sa	lles Director fo		
4	They Sven Lo	arsen ain that Sara any doubt	Sven Larsen R h I am certain th	egional Sa her su at Sarah	iles Director fo	or Scandinavia. mpany director to those wh as company director	
4 5	They Sven Lo I am certa still have	arsen ain that Sara any doubt.	Sven Larsen R	egional Sa her su at Sarah	iles Director fo	or Scandinavia. mpany director to those wh as company director	
4 5 6	They Sven Lostill have They Alan W	arsen ain that Saral any doubt. Al	Sven Larsen R h	egional Sa her su at Sarah of the elec	iles Director fo uitability as con s suitability ction after a re	or Scandinavia.  mpany director to those wh as company director  ecount.	
4 5 6 lf w	They Sven Lostill have They Alan Woodsible, I	arsen ain that Saral any doubt.  Al /atson  rewrite each assive'.  Doften look up	Sven Larsen R h	egional Sa her su at Sarah of the elec	iles Director for uitability as con 's suitability ction after a re orm of the ital	or Scandinavia. mpany director to those wh as company director	
4 5 6 lf w 1	They Sven Lostill have They Alan W possible, in the 'No particle 'No p	arsen ain that Saral any doubt. Al Vatson rewrite each assive'. Doften look up	Sven Larsen R h I am certain th an Watson winner sentence using a	egional Sa her su at Sarah of the electors passive for	iles Director for iitability as con 's suitability ction after a re orm of the ital	or Scandinavia.  mpany director to those wheas company director ecount.  dicised multi-word verb. If r	

- 4 The decision has deprived many people of the right to vote.
- 5 People often brush up on a foreign language just before a holiday.
- 6 Ben called Mrs Patel back as soon as he got home.
- 7 The chairperson *held over* the last two items until the next committee meeting.
- 8 The farmer prevented walkers from crossing the field after he fenced it off.

Unit **24** 

## Forming passive sentences: verb + -ing or to-infinitive

Α	Active patterns with verb + -ing						
	Verbs followed by <b>object</b> + <b>-ing</b> in the active are made passive with 'be' + past participle + <b>-ing</b> :  They saw the monkey climbing over the fence. (= active)  The monkey was seen climbing over the fence. (= passive)  Also: bring, catch, hear, find, keep, leave, notice, observe, send, show						
В	Some verbs that can be followed by an -ing form can be used with a passive form being + paparticiple:  I really love being given presents. The children enjoyed being taken to the zoo.  Also: avoid, deny, describe, dislike, fa (not) imagine, like, remember, report						
С	Verbs which in the active are followed by an object consisting of a noun phrase and -ing clause usually have no passive:  I dread him (or his) finding out.  (but not He is dreaded finding out)  Also: anticipate, appreciate, dislike, forget, hate, imagine, like, (not) mind, recall, remember						
D	Active patterns with verb + to-infinitive  The active pattern verb + object + to-infinitive infinitive. Compare:  Mr Wang has taught Peter to sing for Peter has been taught to sing (by Mr for years.	Also: advise, allow, ask, believe, consider, expect, feel, instruct, mean, order, require, tell, understand					
	Note that in some contexts it is possible to make both verbs passive:  Changes to the taxation system are expected to be proposed. (compare the active We expect the government to propose changes to the taxation system.)  Some verbs followed by an object + to-infinitive in the active have no passive:  Susan liked Karl to be there. (but not Karl was liked to be there.)  Also: (can't) bear, hate, love, need, prefer, want, wish (= 'liking' and 'wanting' verbs)						
E							
	Some verbs have corresponding meanings in the active and passive. Compare:  People have come to see organic food as something only the wealthy eat. (active) corresponds to  Organic food has come to be seen as something only the wealthy eat. (passive)  Also: appear, begin, continue, seem, start, tend  The meaning of some other verbs does not correspond. Compare:  Petra wanted to help me. (active) does not correspond to  I wanted to be helped by Petra. (passive)  Also: agree, aim, arrange, attempt, hope, refuse						

avoid – take

leave - hold

Complete each sentence using one pair of verbs from the box. Use either was / were + past participle + -ing or past simple + being + past participle. A & B

deny - involve

observe - hide

face - expel

remember - bite

find – wander

resent - give

keep - wait

send - tumble

		ed him, Waynein the robber
3	1	the baby while Karen went to answer the door.
4	When I woke up in hospital, I	by the snake but nothing after the
5	They	prisoner by pretending to be dead.
		a suspicious package under a seat in the train.
		to the ground.
8	Two teenagers yesterdaywith over a hundred stolen mo	bile phones.
9	The man was taken to hospital forest.	when helost and alone in the
10	Tarik had worked in the compa	ny for 30 years and he rather
	orders by people who had bee	an Salangan and Salangan and the Salangan and the property of the contract of
R	orders by people who had been ewrite the sentences using one articiple + -ing, past participle -ask - show catch - shople	an Salangan and Salangan and the Salangan and the property of the contract of
Repe	orders by people who had been ewrite the sentences using one articiple + -ing, past participle -ask - show catch - shople hate - tease mind - critical order.	there only weeks.  P pair of words from the box. Use passive forms with past P + to-infinitive, or past simple + being + past participle.  A-lift expect – attract hear – argue Se observe – enter require – complete
Re pa	orders by people who had been ewrite the sentences using one articiple + -ing, past participle ask - show catch - shople hate - tease mind - critical They wanted us to show our page were asked to show they could hear Emil and Laur	there only weeks.  P pair of words from the box. Use passive forms with past P + to-infinitive, or past simple + being + past participle.  A-D  If expect – attract hear – argue Se observe – enter require – complete  Assports at the border.
Repair	ewrite the sentences using one articiple + -ing, past participle - ask - show catch - shopl hate - tease mind - critice  They wanted us to show our p We were asked to show they could hear Emil and Laure Emil and Laura  The other children made Ollie	there only weeks.  It pair of words from the box. Use passive forms with past  It e + to-infinitive, or past simple + being + past participle.  If expect – attract hear – argue  Is essports at the border.  It is border.  It is a shouting at each other next door.

24.3 Make sentences including passives, beginning with the italicised word(s).

5 They think that over 20,000 people will go to the pop concert.

7 They said I had to fill in two copies of the customs declaration.

6 They criticised her but she wasn't unhappy about it.

8 They caught Mrs Dee taking things from the shop.

- 1 Kay's questions began to irritate Marco.

  Marco began to be irritated by Kay's questions. (corresponding meaning)
- 2 The team captain hopes to select *Omar*.
- 3 Alastair arranged to take Kathy to the station.
- 4 Critics have come to recognise Galdós as one of Spain's greatest novelists.
- 5 The south coast continues to attract *holidaymakers*.
- 6 Harris has agreed to interview the Finance Minister.

Do the sentences you have written have a corresponding meaning to the original, or a different meaning? Look carefully at the tense in the sentences given.

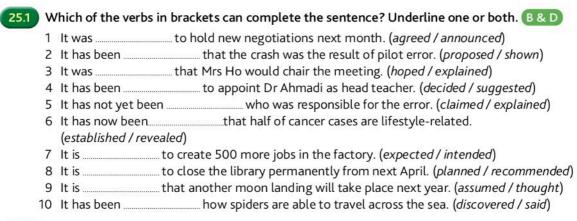
The burglar...

Mrs Dee ...

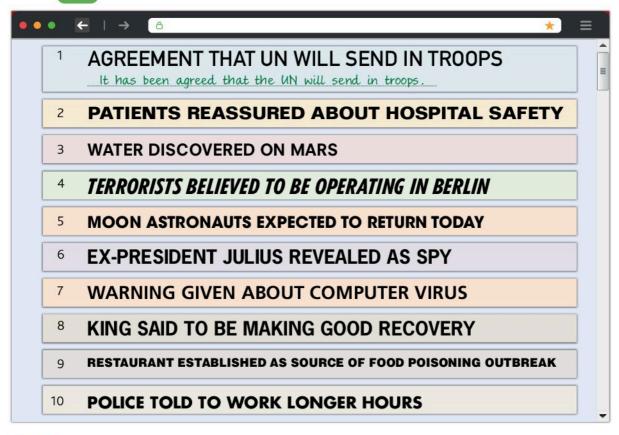
The pop concert ...

# Reporting with passives; It is said that ...

A	We often use a passive to report what people say, think, etc., particularly if it is not important to mention who is being reported:  People in the area have been told that they should stay indoors.  Everyone was asked to bring some food to the party.
В	Another common way of reporting what is said by an unspecified group of people is to use it +  passive verb + that-clause (see Unit 33 for more on that-clauses). Using this pattern allows us to  put important information at the end of the sentence (see Units 22C and 22D):  It is reported that the damage is extensive. (compare The damage is extensive, according to  government sources.)  It was decided that the meeting should be cancelled. (or It was decided to cancel the  meeting.)
	Also: allege, announce, assume, believe, calculate, claim, consider, demonstrate, discover, establish, estimate, expect, feel, find, know, mention, recommend, reveal, say, show, suggest, suppose, think, understand  These verbs can also be followed by a to-infinitive clause: agree, decide, hope, intend, plan, propose
	Note that many other verbs connected with reporting are not used with it + passive verb + that- clause, but can be used as in A:  We have been informed that we have to leave. (but not It has informed us)  Also: encourage, persuade, reassure, remind, tell, warn
	These verbs need a personal object before the <b>that-clause</b> in an active form (e.g. They have informed <b>us</b> that)
С	An alternative to it + passive verb + that-clause is to use subject + passive verb + to-infinitive if we want the subject to be the topic of the sentence (see Unit 22C). Compare:  It is reported that the damage is extensive. and The damage is reported to be extensive.
	Most of the verbs listed in the first white box in <b>B</b> can also be used in this pattern except for <b>announce</b> , <b>decide</b> , <b>mention</b> , <b>propose</b> , <b>recommend</b> , <b>suggest</b> .
	We can only use <b>tell</b> in this pattern when it means 'order'. So we can say:  I was told (= ordered) to go with them to the railway station.  but not 'The accident was told (= said) to have happened just after midnight'.
D	With some verbs we can also use it + passive verb + wh-clause to report information given or found out:  It has now been revealed who was responsible for the accident.  The decision to build the bridge was taken before it was established whether it was actually needed.
	Also: discover, explain, find, know, reveal, show, understand
E	When a that-clause begins that + there, we can make a corresponding passive form there + passive verb to be (present) / to have been (past). Compare:  It is thought (that) there are / were too many obstacles to peace. and There are thought to be / to have been too many obstacles to peace.  We can use the same verbs in this pattern as with subject + passive verb + to-infinitive (see C).



25.2 If possible, rewrite these newspaper headlines as passive sentences with it. If not, write X.



Write two new sentences for each numbered sentence below, using it + passive verb + thatclause in one sentence and subject + passive verb + to-infinitive in the other. (The second pattern may not always be possible.)



(1) We have discovered that a mechanical fault caused the problem. (2) We don't think that the fault is serious. (3) We expect that it will take several weeks to correct the fault. (4) We have decided to postpone the next rocket launch, and (5) we suggest that the next launch should take place in May.

<sup>1</sup> It has been discovered that a mechanical fault caused the problem. / A mechanical fault was discovered to have caused the problem.

# Wh-questions with who, whom, which, how and whose

A	Who refers to people, and can be used as subject,  ○ Who owns that car? ○ Who did yo	
	Whom is used as a formal alternative to who as o  ○ Whom did you meet? ○ To whom w	object, and also directly after prepositions: vere you talking?
	Which is used to refer to people or things when w 'Which is your brother?' 'The one next to and we can use which instead of who to talk abou Which do you think earns more, a teache	Luka.' (talking about a photograph)
В	We usually use <b>which</b> , rather than <b>who</b> or <b>what</b> , commonly used to ask or talk about a choice betw  I've decided to buy one of these jumpers.  Which of you would like to go first? (rath	veen one or more things:  Which one do you think I should choose?
С	is expected:	hat follows is usually singular, even if a plural answer
	However, the verb can be plural in echo questions consisting of two or more noun phrases joined by  'Mr Almeida and his family are here to see and when who and what function as complement who are those people over there?	and: e you.' 'Who are here?' (or Who's here?)
D	How or what?	
D	How or what?  How How was the journey? (asking a general opinion) How is your brother? (asking about general health) How do you like your coffee? (asking about food and drink preferences)	What What was the journey like? (asking a general opinion) What do you like about the job? (asking for details) What if your plan doesn't work? (asking about consequences) What's it called? (asking about a name)
D	How How was the journey? (asking a general opinion) How is your brother? (asking about general health) How do you like your coffee? (asking about food and drink preferences)  How / What (about) How / What about a swim? (making a second control of the swim?)	<ul> <li>What was the journey like?         <ul> <li>(asking a general opinion)</li> <li>What do you like about the job?</li> <li>(asking for details)</li> <li>What if your plan doesn't work?</li> <li>(asking about consequences)</li> <li>What's it called? (asking about a name)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<b>26.1</b> U	nderline the correct option (or both if possible). A & B
2 3 4 5 6 7	To whom / who should the documents be sent?  Which / Who of you is Dr Hansen? I have a message for you.  A: Here's a photo of our children at the fancy dress party. B: Who / Which is Isabella?  A: Is your sister at home? B: What / Which one do you want to speak to?  Whom / Who do you hold responsible for the damage?  Who / Which will captain the team if Zeinab isn't available?  Which / Who would you rather be — a doctor or a vet?  Who / Whom translated the book?
1 2 3 4 5	What those cakes made from? (be) Who you for Maths and English? (teach) Who there to see on the island? (be) Who the major decisions in the company? (make) A: The Turners are in France. B: Who their textbook with them? Put your hands up. (have)
	rst, complete the sentences with <b>how</b> , <b>what</b> , or <b>how / what</b> if both are possible. Then choose n appropriate answer for each question.
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	what do you like about your new job?' if Omar calls while you're out?' b 'I'd love one.' c 'I mean you've got to wear a suit.' d 'Tell him I'll call back.' e 'It was great.' f 'Lucía García.' g 'It's never boring.' h 'Quite well, thanks.' i 'We had an excellent time.' j 'She works us really hard.'
	orrect any mistakes in the italicised words or, if necessary, suggest ways of making the entence more natural. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓. B, C & E
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Who's caravan were you staying in?  Whose are all these books?  He asked us who's car was parked in front of his house.  A: Who live in the flat upstairs? B: The Thompson family.  Whose going with you to Canada?  About whose travels in Nepal did Liam Wilson write a book?  What one of the following statements is true?  Who of us has not told a lie at some time in our lives?  A: Can you post the books to us? B: Whose address to?  A: Ants have got into the fridge! B: What has got into the fridge?

# Negative questions; echo questions; questions with **that-clauses**

Α	Negative questions Reminder → E5– E7
	We usually make a negative <b>yes / no</b> or <b>wh-question</b> with an auxiliary verb ( <i>have, did, would,</i> etc.) + <b>-n't</b> to suggest, persuade, criticise, etc.
	○ Wouldn't it be better to go tomorrow? ○ Why don't we go out for a meal? In formal contexts, or when we want to give some special emphasis to the negative (perhaps to show
	that we are angry, very surprised, or to strongly persuade someone), we can use <b>not</b> after the subject
	in negative questions. This happens particularly in <b>yes</b> / <b>no</b> rather than <b>wh-questions</b> :  Did she not realise that she'd broken it? (more emphatic than Didn't she realise that?)
	Can you not get there a bit earlier? (more emphatic than Can't you?)
В	We sometimes use negative words instead of -n't such as never, no, nobody, nothing, nowhere:
	<ul><li>Why do you never help?</li><li>Have you nowhere to go? (or Do you have nowhere to go?)</li></ul>
	or less emphatically or more informally:
	○ Why do <b>n't</b> you ever help?
	<ul> <li>Haven't you got anywhere to go? (or Don't you have anywhere?)</li> </ul>
С	We can make a suggestion with <b>Why not + bare infinitive</b> or <b>Why don't / doesn't + subject + bare infinitive</b> (but not Why do not / does not):
	Why not decorate the house yourself? (or Why don't you decorate?)
	Why didn't isn't used to make a suggestion, but can show that we think an action was wrong. For
	example, depending on intonation and context, it can be used to criticise someone:  Why didn't you tell me that in the first place? (I'm annoyed that you didn't)
D	We use negative question forms with falling intonation for exclamations when we expect agreement:
	☐ Have <b>n't</b> you grown! ☐ Does <b>n't</b> she look lovely! ☐ Did <b>n't</b> it snow a lot!
E	Echo questions
	Echo questions are used when we haven't understood what has been said or to check that we
	heard correctly, perhaps because we found it very surprising. We might repeat, usually with a rising intonation, the whole of what was said:
	(Tala's lost her job.' 'Tala's lost her job?'
	or focus on part of what was said using a stressed wh-word or a phrase with how:
	'Leon's arriving at 6:30.' 'When's Leon arriving? / Leon's arriving when?'
	(We paid £3,000 for the painting.' 'How much did you pay? / You paid how much?'
	We can use <b>what</b> or <b>do + what</b> to focus on the verb or part of the sentence beginning with the verb:
	(we paid £3,000 for the painting.' 'You what?' (or 'You did what?')
-	(or 'She's doing what?')
F	Questions with that-clauses
	A wh-question can refer to a following that-clause, particularly after verbs such as expect, hope, reckon, say, suggest, suppose, and think. We can leave out that in these questions:
	When do you reckon (that) you'll finish the job?
	However, when the <b>wh-word</b> is the subject, object or complement of the verb in the subordinate
	clause, we do not use <b>that</b> :  What did you <i>think</i> was in the box? ( <i>not</i> What did you think that was in the box?)

27.1		/rite negative questions for B in these dialogues, using -n't with the words in brackets. 🗛
	1	A: Can you lend me €10?
		B: Again? Haven't you got any money left? ( money left?)
	2	A: I'm annoyed that you didn't come to the meeting.
		B: Why? ( my email / on holiday?)
	3	A: I've had to bring the children with me.
		B: Why? ( babysitter?)
	4	A: I'll just finish my homework before I go to school.
	_	B: But ( be supposed to / last night?)
	5	A: I've put my bike in the sitting room.
	_	B: The sitting room! ( outside?)
	6	A: I'm taking the coach to Vienna.
		B: But that will take ages. ( rather / plane?)
27.2	U	se the notes to complete these dialogues with two negative questions. In the first use -n't; in
		ne second use never, no, nobody, nothing or nowhere.
		(ever / considered you might / wrong)
	ŀ	A: Haven't you ever considered you might be wrong? / Have you never considered
		you might be wrong?
		B: No, I'm sure I'm right.
	2	(you / any interest / maths at all) A:?
	_	B: No, I've always hated it.
	3	A: I spent the night in the railway station. (could / find anywhere else / sleep)
	ی	B:?
	4	(can / remember anything about / accident) A:
		?
		B: Not after getting into the car, no.
	5	(why / ever do well / exams) A:?
		B: Perhaps you don't revise enough.
	6	(there anybody / you can ask / help) A:?
		B: I can't think of anyone.'
27.3	C	omplete the echo questions using appropriate question words or phrases.
		A: Jake's going to Chile. B: He's going where? / He's doing what? / He's what?
		A: He's leaving at the end of next week.
	-	B: He's leaving?/ He's doing?
	3	A: He'll be away for three months. B: He'll be away for?/ He'll?
		A: It will cost about £15,000. B: It'll cost? / It'll?
		A: He's sold his house to pay for the trip.
	,	B: He's sold?/ He's done?/ He's?
	6	A: He's going climbing in the Andes.
	O	B: He's going climbing?/ He's doing?/ He's?/ He's?
		b. The 3 going cumoning
27.4	-	necessary, correct any mistakes in these sentences. Put a tick if they are already correct.
	(	C, D & F
	1	A: Mariam isn't answering her phone. B: Why do you not email her?
		Who do you expect that will read your blog?
		Why did they suggest that we should avoid using the motorway?
		Was not it a brilliant film!
		If she really wants to go rock climbing, why not let her?
		What did you say that is in these biscuits?
		How do you think that Twitter will have changed our lives in ten years' time?
		Why did not you tell me you'd changed your number?

# Verbs, objects and complements

A	Some verbs can be either transitive or intransitive, allowing us to focus on either the person or thing performing the action, or the person or thing affected by the action. Compare:  She closed the door. (transitive) and The door closed. (intransitive) I've ripped my shirt. (transitive) and My shirt has ripped. (intransitive)  Also: begin, bend, break, burn, change, decrease, drop, finish, increase, move, open, shut, start, vary, wake (most are 'change' verbs)
В	Some transitive verbs don't need an object when the meaning is clear from the context:  I often sing (songs) in the shower.  She plays (the saxophone) beautifully.  Also: answer, ask, change, cook, dance, drink, drive, eat, fail, park, phone, read, smoke, study, wash, wash up, wave, win, write
С	After some verbs we usually add a <i>complement</i> – a phrase which completes the meaning of a verb, noun or adjective – which is an adverb or prepositional phrase:  The disease <b>originated</b> <i>in Britain</i> . ( <i>not</i> The disease originated. We need to add something about where or how it originated.)  Other verbs usually have a complement but may not. Compare:  He <b>paused</b> <i>for a few moments</i> . <i>and</i> He <b>paused</b> . (no complement needed)
D	Some verbs are commonly followed by a particular preposition or prepositions and then an object (see also Unit 94):  We had to deal with hundreds of complaints. (not We had to deal.)  I'm sure that blue car belongs to Murad. (not I'm sure that blue car belongs.)  Also: adhere to, aspire to, culminate in / with, detract from, differentiate between, incline to / towards, specialise in
E	Some verbs are usually followed by an <b>object</b> + <b>prepositional phrase</b> complement:  I always <b>associate</b> <i>pizza with Italy.</i> ( <i>not</i> I always associate pizza.)  She <b>put</b> <i>the report on the floor.</i> ( <i>not</i> She put the report.)  Also: attribute to, base on / upon, equate with, inflict on, mistake for, regard as / with, remind of
F	Some verbs are often followed by an object + adjective (or adjective phrase) complement:  The people of this country will hold the government responsible.  Conti pronounced herself fit for the match.  Also: assume, believe, consider, declare, find, judge, prove, report, think.  (The object after declare, find, pronounce and prove is usually a reflexive pronoun, e.g. myself, yourself.)  Sentences with an object + adjective complement after these verbs are usually rather formal. Adding to be after the object or using a that-clause can make sentences less formal:  Dr Adams argues that house prices will fall, but other economists believe the opposite true. (or less formally believe the opposite to be true. or believe that the opposite is true.)

28.1 If it is possible to omit the object (in italics) after the underlined verbs, put brackets around it. B

Aya was (1) reading (a book) when the telephone rang. It was Val. She said, 'I called you earlier, but nobody (2) answered the phone. Would you like to come over to (3) eat dinner tonight with me and Tom? Is eight okay?' Aya (4) thanked Val and said that she'd love to come. At about seven Aya started to get ready. She (5) washed herself and (6) brushed her hair. Then she (7) changed her clothes and (8) put on some makeup. After that, she (9) drove her car to Malstowe, the village where Val and Tom lived. Val was gardening when Aya (10) reached their house and she (11) waved her hand when she saw Aya. Aya (12) parked her car on the drive and walked over to Val. Val said, 'Tom's still (13) cooking dinner, so I thought I had time (14) to pick some flowers. By the way, my sister Kate is staying with us. She's (15) studying French at university, but is on holiday at the moment. I forgot to (16) mention her when I spoke to you earlier. I'll (17) introduce you when we go inside.' Aya (18) enjoyed the evening very much. The food was excellent and they talked a lot about their holiday plans. Aya hoped to go to Canada, but wasn't sure yet that she could (19) afford it. Before she left, Aya helped (20) wash up the dishes. As she drove home, she decided that she must (21) invite Val and Tom for a meal at her house very soon.

Complete sentences 1–4 with a correct verb + preposition + noun phrase. Complete 5–8 with a correct verb + noun phrase + preposition. D & E

Verbs (Use an appropriate form.)	Prepositions	Noun phrases			
-aspire attribute base culminate differentiate inflict mistake specialise	between for in in on on <del>to</del> to	the black car national leadership his success the discovery of penicillin a surprise defeat fantasy and reality her new novel seafood			

- 28.3 Complete these sentences with any appropriate adjective.
  - 1 The scientific evidence proved him guilty ...
  - 2 She declared herself ...... with the result.

  - 4 I'm surprised the plumber hasn't turned up. I've always found him ......
  - 5 We believed her \_\_\_\_\_ at school.

Now write less formal versions using either to be after the object or a that-clause.

1 The scientific evidence proved him to be guilty. / The scientific evidence proved that he was guilty.

# Verb + two objects

Some verbs can be followed by two objects. Usually the first object (= the <i>indirect object</i> (IO)) is a person or group of people and the second object (= the <i>direct object</i> (DO)) is a thing:  Can you <b>bring</b> me (= IO) some milk (= DO) from the shops?  He <b>made</b> himself (= IO) a cup of coffee. (= DO).						
Many verbs that can have two objects may also be used with a DO only (e.g. I read a story). With many verbs that can have two objects, it is possible to reverse the order of the objects if we put <b>for</b> or <b>to</b> before the IO (this is then called a <i>prepositional object</i> ). Compare:						
<ul> <li>I built my daughter a doll's house. and</li> <li>I built a doll's house for my daughter.</li> <li>Can you pass me that bandage? and</li> <li>Can you pass that bandage to me?</li> </ul>	Other verbs with for + object: book, buy, catch, choose, cook, fetch, find, get, make, order, pour, save					
cuit you puss that surface to me.	Other verbs with to + object: award, give, hand, lend, offer, owe, show, teach, tell, throw					
use it if the IO is a lot longer than the DO:	cular attention on the object after <b>for / to</b> . We also children at the school. ( <i>not</i> Jasmin taught a large					
If the DO is a pronoun, a pattern with <b>DO</b> + <b>prepo</b> are avoided because they are considered to be bad  I gave them <b>to</b> Isa. ( <i>rather than</i> I gave Isa t  We bought it <b>for</b> them. ( <i>rather than</i> We bo	hem. / I gave them Isa.)					
A STATE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE						
Also: bring, leave, pay, play, post, read, sell, se	nd, sing, take					
Sometimes, however, the meaning is very similar:  He played the piece to (or for) me. Can you sing that song again to (or for) us?  Note that when object + object is used after these verbs it usually has a similar meaning to the verb with object + to + object. For example: I sold him the car. (means I sold the car to him, not I sold the car for him.)						
Some verbs that are followed by two objects cannot have their objects reversed with <b>for / to</b> :  We all <b>envied</b> him his lifestyle. (but not We all envied his lifestyle for / to him.)						
Also: allow, ask, cost, deny, forgive, guarantee	, permit, refuse					
Some verbs, such as <b>describe</b> and <b>fix</b> , can <i>only</i> have with <b>to</b> (see also Unit 23A). Compare:  She <b>described</b> the situation ( <b>to</b> me). ( <i>but</i> and the second of the s	Also: admit, announce, demonstrate, explain, introduce, mention, point out, prove, report, say, suggest					
O I booked a room (for her) or I booked he						

D

29.1	Complete each sentence with a suitable form of a verb from the box and insert to or for in an
	appropriate place. Write to / for if either can be used. A & B

			pass	pay	post	read	save	sell	take	teach
	-1.						for			
	Elias hasr	1970	S 1570							
	Kaspar ha	100 200		7.0						
		5, 25				500		J	th	is present h
	I can't rea			53 <sub>55</sub>		(8)				
	When Mr		_					9		
	He's got a									
7	I haven't	got my gl	asses. Car	า you		these i	nstructio	ns me, p	lease?	
8	Jane		the letter	me on h	ner way to	o work be	cause I h	ad flu ar	id couldn	't go out.
9	1	my	old bike h	nim, but l	he said h	e wanted	somethi	ng more	modern.	
10	I'll be in l	ate tonigh	nt. Can yo	u	sc	ome dinn	er me, pl	ease?		
If	necessary	, correct	these sen	tences	If the ser	ntence is	already	correct	write 🗸	C&D
	He kindly						aca c <sub>j</sub>			
	He admit									
	I have to									
	Can I ask		-							
	A special I'd like to		and enter the control of the control		le to all t	he muse	ıms in th	e city.		
(				. A-D her p	hotogra	ph / me	th	e glass /	/ him	
	the probl another h an email a drink / I	em / our nalf an ho <del>/ him</del> Ben	teacher	her p his si his b	hotogra ister / mo roken ca per aerop	e	th th	e mone	time stor	ries / him
	the probl another h an email a drink / l a fortune	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you	teacher our / us	her p his si his b a pap	ister / mo roken ca per aerop	e r / him blane / hi	th th m <del>t</del> l	nree bed ne mone ne probl	time stor y / me <del>em / him</del>	-
	the probl another h an email a drink / I a fortune A: Samue B: But tha	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you l phoned.	teacher our / us	her p his si his b a pap s to come	roken ca per aerop e and stay with us.	r / him blane / hi y with us I'll have t	th th m th at the be	nree bed ne mone ne probl ginning o	time stor y / me em / him of Septem	-
1 2	the probl another h an email a drink / l a fortune A: Samue B: But tha him ar When he	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you l phoned. at's when in email / described	teacher our / us  He wants my parent an emai	her p his si his be a pap to come ts will be il to him	e and stay with us.	e r / him olane / hi y with us I'll have t xplain t	the the been to send the problem	ginning of the to his	time stor y / me em / him of Septem em. ner, but w	nber. hen he sho en her at w
1 2	the problanother han email a drink / la fortune  A: Samue B: But that him ar  When he	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you l phoned. ht's when he email / described	teacher our / us  He wants my parent an emai	her p his si his b a pap s to come ts will be til to him	e and stay with us.	y with us I'll have t	the the best of send the problem of the problem	ginning of the the money of the problem to his listed that the money of the money o	time stor y / me em / him of Septem em. ner, but w	nber. hen he sho
1 2 3	the probl another h an email a drink / I a fortune A: Samue B: But tha him ar When he The clock she allow	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you l phoned. at's when a memail / described	teacher our / us  He wants my paren ' an emai	her p his si his b a pap to come ts will be it to him	e and stay with us. to ex	e r / him plane / hi y with us I'll have t xplaint inited out	the the best of send the problem of the problem of the think the t	ginning of the high t	time stor y / me em / him of Septem er, but w t I had see	hber. hen he sho en her at w exam.
1 2 3	the problanother han email a drink / I a fortune  A: Samue B: But the him ax When he  The clock she allow My three	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you l phoned. at's when a memail / described con the world year-old	He wants my parent an email	her p his si his b a pap to come ts will be to him	e and stay with us. to ex	e r / him plane / hi y with us I'll have t xplain t in I did sinted out	the the been to send the problem of	ginning of the problem to his listed that to foodbysit. L	of Septem em / him of Septem er, but w t I had see inish the	hen he sho en her at v exam.
1 2 3	the problem another han email a drink / I a fortune  A: Samue B: But the him ar When he  The clock she allow My three make mend	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you l phoned. It's when in email / described	He wants my parent an email	her p his si his b a pap s to come ts will be to him	e and stay with us. to exercise we possessed to exercise the control of the contr	e r / him plane / hi y with us I'll have t xplain I dic	th the metal at the bear or send he probled of the	ginning of the problem to his lised that the problem to his lised that the problem to for abysit. L	time stor y / me em / him of Septem er, but w t I had sec inish the ast night	hber.  then he shoen her at we warm.  I first had the shoen in the sho
1 2 3 4	the problem another han emailed a drink / I a fortune  A: Samue B: But the him ax When he  The clock she allow My three make mend insisted to	em / our half an ho / him Ben / you l phoned. hat's when he email / described con the world yed -year-old hat I read	He wants my paren an emai	her p his si his bi a pap to come ts will be to him	e and stay with us. to ex	e r / him olane / hi y with us I'll have t xplain t inted out	the the been or send the problem of	ginning of the problem to his lised that to food abysit. L	of Septemer, but we till had see ast night	hen he sho en her at w exam. I first had , then I h nd after th
1 2 3 4	the problem another han email a drink / I a fortune  A: Samue B: But the him ar  When he  The clock she allow My three make mend insisted to allow are yellow.	em / our half an ho / him Ben / you l phoned. ht's when in email / described con the wired -year-old hat I read ew motori	He wants my parent an email	her p his si his bi a pap s to come ts will be the him rong. Wh	e and stay with us. to ex	e r / him plane / hi y with us I'll have t xplain I dic	th th m th at the be so send he proble dn't think l rea the when I b	ginning of the problem to he	time stor y / me em / him of Septem em, her, but w t I had see inish the ast night	hen he sho en her at w exam. I first had , then I h nd after th
1 2 3 4	the problem another han emailed a drink / I a fortune  A: Samue B: But the him are When he The clock she allow My three make mend insisted to A: Your near B: Well, and the she well well, and the she well well well well well and the she well well well well well well well we	em / our half an ho / him Ben / you I phoned. hat's when he email / described con the word year-old hat I read ew motorictually, m	He wants my parent an email	her p his si his bi a pap s to come ts will be it to him rong. Wh	e and stay with us. to example we po	e r / him olane / hi y with us I'll have t xplain I dic	th th th m th at the be o send he proble dn't think I rea the when I b	ginning of the problem to his liked that to foodbysit. L	time stor y / me em / him of Septem em, her, but w t I had see inish the ast night	hen he sho en her at w exam. I first had , then I h nd after th
1 2 3 4	the problem another han email a drink / I a fortune  A: Samue B: But the him ax  When he  The clock she allow My three make mend insisted the insist	em / our nalf an ho / him Ben / you I phoned. at's when a email / described con the w red -year-old hat I read ew motorictually, m	He wants my parent an email all was wi	her p his si his bi a pap s to come ts will be it to him rong. Wh	e and stay with us. to ex	e r / him plane / hi y with us I'll have t xplain t inted out	th th th th at the be to send the proble dn't think I rea the when I b	ginning of the problem to his lised that to foodbysit. L	time stor y / me em / him of Septem em. ner, but w t I had see inish the ast night	hen he shen her at vexam.  I first had men, then I lend after the

### Verb + -ing forms and infinitives 1

A	Some verbs can be followed either by an <b>object</b> + -ing or a <b>possessive</b> +  -ing with a similar meaning, although the <b>possessive</b> + -ing form is usually considered to be rather formal:  ☐ I resented <b>Tom</b> winning the prize.  ☐ (more formally I resented <b>Tom's</b> winning the prize.)  ☐ Mia recalled <b>him</b> buying the book.  ☐ (more formally Mia recalled <b>his</b> buying the book.)  ☐ (but not the horse's winning)  ☐ I remember <b>the horse</b> winning the race. (but not the horse's winning)
В	Some verbs can be followed by to + -ing where to is a preposition:  She confessed to stealing the money. You don't object to working late tonight, do you?  Also: adapt, adjust, admit, look forward, own up, resort  Note that these verbs can also be followed by to + noun phrase: She confessed to the crime.  You don't object to the work, do you?
С	Other verbs can be followed by different prepositions + -ing. For example:  by + -ing (begin, close, end, finish (off / up), open, start (off / out))  Can you begin by cleaning the floors, and then do the windows?  on + -ing or on + object + -ing (concentrate, count, depend, focus, insist, rely) If no object is added, the verb refers to the subject.  Clare insisted on (Jack) wearing a suit to the party.  of + -ing or of + object + -ing (approve, hear, know, speak, talk, tell)  Have you ever heard of (anyone) getting arrested for gossiping before?  object + from + -ing (deter, discourage, keep, prevent, prohibit, stop - note that prevent and stop can be used without from)  The noise from next door prevented me (from) sleeping.
D	Some verbs (feel, hear, notice, observe, overhear, see, watch) can be followed by an object and then either by an -ing form or bare infinitive, but the meanings may be slightly different. Compare:  I saw them playing football from my window. (-ing indicates an action in progress) and I saw him smash the bottle. (bare infinitive indicates a completed action) I was able to watch them building the new car park from my office window. (-ing suggests that I watched, but not from start to finish) and I watched him climb through the window, and then I called the police. (bare infinitive suggests I watched the whole action from start to finish)
E	After the verbs dare and help we can use either a bare infinitive or to-infinitive:  I was angry with him, but I didn't dare (to) say anything.  We hope the Twitter campaign will help (to) raise awareness of the problem.  When dare has an object, we can only use a to-infinitive. Compare:  I dared him to cross the river. (not I dared him cross) and  I helped them (to) pack.  Note that dare can sometimes be used as a modal verb in questions. Here it is followed by a bare infinitive not to-infinitive.  Dare anyone question the director's instructions? (not Dare anyone to question)  After have, let and make we can use an object + bare infinitive but not to-infinitive:  His exam results might make him work harder. (not might make him to work)  I had Irena clean up her bedroom before I let her go out to play.

- 30.1 If possible, rewrite these sentences using the possessive form of the object. If not, write X. (A)
  - 1 I really hate you having to be away from home so much.

    I really hate your having to be away from home so much.
  - 2 We don't approve of the developer locating the factory so close to houses.
  - 3 I have always detested the dog jumping up at me when I visit them.
  - 4 No one heard the man shouting for help.
  - 5 It is difficult to imagine him accepting the decision without any objection.
  - 6 No one in the crowd that day will forget Ashe fighting so hard to win the match.
  - 7 I remember them arguing a great deal when they were children.
  - 8 The police investigated him for stealing cars from the city centre.
- Rewrite the italicised part of each sentence so that it has a similar meaning. Use one of the verbs from the box and an -ing form. B & C

adapt	approve	discourage	end	own up	rely
-------	---------	------------	-----	--------	------

- 2 I don't think children should wear jewellery in school.
- 3 I would like to finish with a summary of the main points of my talk.
- 4 My parents said they thought I shouldn't go to university.
- 5 You can't trust Sophie to turn up on time.
- 6 I grew up in the countryside, and I found it difficult to get used to life in a big city.
- 30.3 Underline the most likely verb form. Consider why it is the most likely. A
  - 1 I heard the tyre burst / bursting and then the lorry skidded across the road.
  - 2 Carl noticed someone watch / watching him from an upstairs window.
  - 3 She felt the wasp *sting / stinging* her just before she brushed it off her arm.
  - 4 With a good telescope you can see the eagles feed / feeding their chicks in the nest.
- Match the sentence beginnings and endings, adding an appropriate object where necessary and write (to) where this might be included.
  - 1 When Lana thought of going on the roller-coaster it made ...
  - 2 The new course is intended to help ...
  - 3 Scientists hope the new drug will help ...
  - 4 We didn't agree with the decision, but we didn't dare ...
  - 5 When Ethan arrives, have ...
  - 6 The dial on the left lets ...
  - 7 Nacho is so rude! How dare ...

- a prevent hay fever.
- b feel quite ill.
- c control the speed of the fan.
- d wait outside my office.
- e understand modern art.
- f protest against it.
- g invite ... to my party without asking!
- 1+b When Lana thought of going on the roller-coaster it made her feel quite ill.



# Verb + -ing forms and infinitives 2

A	After some verbs we need to include an object before a <b>to</b> in active sentences:	-infinitive Reminder → F4– F13
	<ul> <li>The police warned everyone to stay inside with their windows closed. (not The police warned to stay)</li> </ul>	Also: advise, allow, believe, cause, command, enable, encourage, entitle, force, invite, order, persuade, remind, teach, tell
	After other verbs, however, we can't include an object before	ore a <b>to-infinitive</b> :
J	We've decided to leave early. (not We've decided us to leave early.)	Also: agree, consent, fail, hope, manage, offer, pretend, refuse, start, threaten, volunteer
В	After some verbs we have to put a preposition, usually <b>for infinitive</b> (see also Unit 29):	, between the verb and the <b>object + to-</b>
	<ul> <li>They arranged for Rania to stay in London.         <ul> <li>(not They arranged Rania to stay)</li> </ul> </li> <li>They applied for the court appearance to be postponed.</li> </ul>	Also: advertise, campaign, long, plan, wait (After apply and campaign, the to-infinitive is usually passive.)
	Other verbs can be followed by different prepositions + ob  at + object + to-infinitive (go on [= to criticise continua times], scream, shout, yell):  I shouted at the man to open the door.	lly], <b>keep on</b> [= to talk about something many
	<ul> <li>on + object + to-infinitive (call [= to officially ask some rely):</li> <li>We're depending on you to find a solution soon.</li> </ul>	one to do something], <b>count</b> , <b>depend</b> , <b>prevail</b> ,
J	to + object + to-infinitive (appeal, gesture, motion, signalled to the pilot to take	
c	A number of other <b>to-infinitive</b> and <b>-ing</b> forms can also fo	llow verbs –
	<ul> <li>verb + negative to-infinitive and negative -ing forms:</li> <li>We decided not to go to Paris after all. (compare was their political leaders.)</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Some of my friends have considered not going to haven't considered going to college – I don't war</li> </ul>	
	verb + to have + past participle:  The accident seems to have happened at around	
	Simmons is alleged to have assaulted a police of This form is often used to give an opinion (after verbs like s to report what is or was said (after passive verbs like is / w past events.	seem and appear) about a past event, or
	<ul> <li>☆ verb + having + past participle:</li> <li>The verb + -ing and verb + having + past participle forms</li> <li>☐ I now regret buying the car. and ☐ I now regret forms</li> <li>This form is most often used with admit, deny, forget, red</li> </ul>	gret having bought the car.

	on	iplete each sentence with one of the verbs in brackets. 🔼	
1	a	My mother me to throw away my old toys.	(threatened / tolo
	Ь	My mother to throw away my old toys.	
2	а	Theyto visit Riko in hospital.	(allowed / offered
		Theyus to visit Riko in hospital.	
3	а	Ito carry the heavy boxes up the stairs.	(managed / persuaded
	Ь	I Hamza to carry the heavy boxes up the stairs.	, =, r
4	a	SheLars to help in the garden.	(agreed / encouraged
	Ь	Sheto help in the garden.	
5		Iher to tidy up the house.	(pretended / reminded
	Ь	Ito tidy up the house.	
6		Jonas to study economics at university.	(advised / hoped
		Jonas me to study economics at university.	•

Write one word that is missing from each line in these texts. Put a \( \times \) where the word should be. \( \text{B} \)

a 1 2 3 4	When I advertised $\angle$ a website designer for the business, Greta got the job. But I've now learnt that you can't rely Greta to do anything. I waited ages her to come up with some initial ideas for the site, and then I had to keep on her to do any more work on it. Finally, she said she couldn't do it after all.	for
b 1 2 3 4	Managers of the National Electricity Company have appealed workers to end their strike, and have called the government to intervene in the dispute. The Energy Minister said that he has arranged employers and employees to meet next week, and he prevailed strikers to return to work in the meantime.	

31.3 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets using one of the patterns in section C opposite. Give alternatives where possible.

1	I	anyone Marta's new address. ( <i>agree – not tell</i> )
2	The prisoners	through a
	broken window last night. (think - esca	
3	3 1	him at the conference. (not recall – see)
4	ł He	any stolen property. (deny – receive)
5	5 He	as the person who donated the money. (ask – not name)
6	5 She	all the way back home. (not feel
	like – walk)	
7	'I am sure my phone was on the shelf a	few minutes ago, but now it
	(seem – disappear)	
8	The Etruscan civilisation	in Italy in the 8th or
	9th Century BC. (believe - emerge)	



### Reporting people's words and thoughts

A	Quoting and reporting	g in our own words	Reminder → G1– G11
		ople think or what they have said, we often give the th sentences that have a <i>reporting clause</i> and a <i>repo</i>	
	reporting clause	reported clause	
	She explained He didn't tell me	(that) she couldn't take the job until January. where to put the boxes.	
В	done in a <i>quotation</i> :  'I suppose you've 'Of course,' Carte The <i>reporting clause</i> can of In the English used in storthe subject when the <i>reporting clause</i> .	heard the latest news,' she said to me. replied, 'you'll have to pay him to do the job.' come before, within, or at the end of the quotation. ies and novels, the reporting verb (e.g. ask, continue orting clause comes after the quotation except when e back?' asked Jimin. (or Jimin asked.)	) is often placed before
	○ 'And after that I r	noved to Italy,' she continued. ( <i>not</i> continued she	:.)
C	Negatives in reporting	3	
		r <b>didn't</b> say or think, we make the reporting verb neg how he would get to London.	gative:
	○ 'You're right, it is although it may be report ○ 'I disagree. It's no However, with some verb clause negative:	gative sentence, then we usually report this in the $re$ of a good idea.' $\rightarrow$ He <b>agreed</b> that it <b>wasn't</b> a good idea in the <i>reporting clause</i> , depending on meaning: that a good idea at all.' $\rightarrow$ He <b>didn't agree</b> that it was as a s, to report a negative sentence we usually make the transfer of the come.' $\rightarrow$ She <b>didn't</b> that it come.' $\rightarrow$ She <b>didn't</b> the come.' $\rightarrow$ She <b>didn't</b> that is the come.' $\rightarrow$ She didn't that is the come.' $\rightarrow$ She didn't that is the come.'	idea. a good idea. e verb in the <i>reporting</i>
	Also: believe, feel, inter	nd, plan, propose, suppose, think, want	
D	Reporting questions		
		we use a <i>reporting clause</i> and a clause with a <b>wh-w</b> e <b>at</b> the problem was.	
	either <b>if</b> or <b>whether</b> (but	o question we use a reporting clause followed by a note that we can't use if + to-infinitive; see Unit 34 ow if / whether we had any photos of our holiday.	
	<ul> <li>'Have you seen P However, if the original que the complement before</li> </ul>	wh-, if-, or whether-clause is the one we would us all recently?' $\rightarrow$ She wanted to know if <i>I had seen</i> Pauestion begins what, which, or who followed by be one or after be in the report:  nner?' $\rightarrow$ I asked who the winner was. (or who was	aul recently. + <b>complement</b> , we can

Note that we don't use a form of **do** in the **wh-**, **if-**, or **whether-clause**:

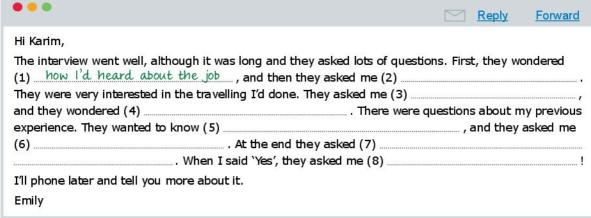
He asked (me) why I didn't want anything to eat.

○ She asked me where I found it. (not ... where did I find it. /... where I did find it.)

However, if we are reporting a negative question, we can use a negative form of **do**:

Report what was said, quoting the speaker's exact words using one of the reporting verbs from the box. Put the reporting clause after the quotation and give alternative word orders where possible. B & G8-G11

E	oast	chorus	-command-	confess	explain	grumble	suggest	wonder
			rain now. (her r					
			f the rain now		ea rier moi	mer / ner n	notrier comm	ianaea.
	-		for a coffee? (s	ne)				
			t was me. (he) nore exciting tha	n an Agatha	Christia thr	illor (cho)		
	-		umbrellas with	_			(ana)	
			again. (Matt)	ille because	III always to	osing them. (	Lenaj	
		1000 mm	ss Novak. (the c	hildren)				
			tht thing? (1)	imareri)				
U	i lave i d	ione the ng	gric timig: (/)					
Co	mplete	each sente	ence using a pa	ir of verbs fro	m the box.	Make one o	f the verbs n	egative. 🕻
	nnound	- ao	expect – be	feel – could	l inton	l – hurt		
	nsist – t		nise – would	think - wo		aten – repay	,	
	5 5 5 6	4.7 <b>.</b>						
			pset Astrid.' $\rightarrow$ I					
2	'I won't	give you th	ne money back i	f you keep or	at me.' $\rightarrow$	He		the
		if she kept o						
3	'I can't a	ask my pare	ents to help me	again.' $\rightarrow$ He		that he		ask his
Ĭ	parents	to help hin	n again.					
4	'I wasn't	anywhere	near the schoo	l at the time	of the break	-in.' $ ightarrow$ He		that he
		anyv	where near the s	school at the	time of the	break-in.		
5	'I'm not	going back	to college.' $\rightarrow$	She	that s	he	back to	college.
			at Mum was ang					angry.
7	'Adam w	von't mind	waiting.' $\rightarrow$ She	<u></u>	Adam	m	nind waiting.	
8	'I won't	be late aga	in.' $ ightarrow$ She	tha	t she	be lat	e again.	
_								0
			by reporting th	25%	s using a w	n-, if- or who	etner-claus	e. 😈
		-	about the job?					
		-	ng-term career p					
			ages do you spe	ak?'				
			arn Chinese?'					
			eadsheet?'					
	-	100	ed international					
			ling to live over	seas for perio	ds of time?			
8	'When	can you sta	art work?'					
•						_	2 6 1	Territoria
						~	Reply	Forward



# Reporting statements: **that-clauses**

A	When we report statements, we often use a <b>that-clause</b> clause (see Unit 32):  He <b>said</b> ( <b>that</b> ) he was enjoying his work.	*	Reminder → G1– G7
	<ul> <li>○ The members of the Security Council warned the After the more common reporting verbs such as agree, roften leave out that, particularly in informal speech. Howafter less common reporting verbs such as complain, confer the common reporting verbs answer, argue, and in formal writing</li> <li>☆ if the that-clause doesn't immediately follow the verb</li> <li>○ She agreed with her parents and brothers that it (rather than and brothers it would be safer)</li> </ul>	mention, notice, pro wever, it is not usual onfide, deny, grumb reply) : would be safer to bu	omise, say, and think, we lly left out – ole, speculate, warn (and
В	Some reporting verbs which are followed by a <b>that-clau to-infinitive</b> (often <b>to be</b> ), although the alternatives are		
J	<ul> <li>I felt that the results were satisfactory. and</li> <li>I felt the results to be satisfactory.</li> </ul>	Also: acknowledge	e, assume, believe, expect, find, presume,
C	If we use a <b>that-clause</b> after an active form of some verlowerb and the <b>that-clause</b> . This object can't be a preposite I notified the bank that I had changed my address the bank that I)  Also: assure, convince, inform, persuade, reassure, resulting the promised (me) that they would come to the complete that they would come to the complete that they advise, show, teach, warn	ional object (see <b>D</b> tess. (but not I notified emind, tell emind, tell end alway	pelow): ed that I / I notified to
D	After some verbs we can use a <b>that-clause</b> with or withor However, if we <i>do</i> include an object, we put a preposition After some verbs we use <b>to</b> :  She <b>admitted</b> ( <b>to me</b> ) <b>that</b> she was seriously ill.  I <b>pointed out</b> ( <b>to the driver</b> ) that he had parked across the entrance.	n before it.  Also: announ explain, india	ce, complain, confess, cate, mention, propose, report, say, suggest
	After some verbs we use with:  We agreed (with Ella) that the information sho	uld go no further.	
	Also: argue, check, disagree, joke		
	After the verbs ask, demand and require we use of:  The club asks (of its members) that they pay the This pattern is usually used in formal contexts. Less form ask and require (e.g. The club asks its members to pay the can't use a to-infinitive clause after demand (not The company).	should be at work by ally we can use a <b>to</b> neir fees by 31st Dec	y 8:30. p-infinitive clause after dember). However, we

- 33.1 Underline the correct verb. If both are possible, underline them both. 📵
  - 1 The doctors advised / persuaded that I should rest for three months.
  - 2 The police assured / promised residents that everything possible was being done to catch the thieves.
  - 3 A spokesperson for the company *reminded | warned* that there may be delays on the railways this summer due to major engineering work.
  - 4 We should *inform / teach* children that diet is of vital importance to health.
  - 5 Scientists have shown / have convinced that honey can prevent the growth of bacteria.
  - 6 The company has reassured / has advised customers that cars ordered before 1st August would be delivered by the end of the month.
  - 7 Katarina told / promised that she would be home before midnight.
- 33.2 If possible, rewrite these sentences in a more formal way with a to-infinitive clause. If not, write X. B
  - 1 Two days after the launch, Houston reported that the satellite was missing.

    Two days after the launch, Houston reported the satellite to be missing.
  - 2 The employees argued that the reduction in wages was unlawful.
  - 3 The judge thought that his explanation was unconvincing.
  - 4 I expected that her plans would fail.
  - 5 She stressed that her stories were aimed primarily at children.
  - 6 Lucas acknowledged that his chances of winning the race were slim.
  - 7 We found that the rugby supporters were very well behaved.
  - 8 The president's spokesman commented that the election result was a victory for democracy.
- Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of a verb from the box + to, with, or of. More than one verb may be possible, but use each verb at least once.

(	announce	complain	disagree	joke	mention	require	)
1	Martina		the shop assi	stant tha	t the laptop s	he'd bought	there was faulty.
2	She	her ı	neighbours th	nat their o	dog was keepi	ng her awak	e at night.
3	He	his fr	iends that he	'd won th	e lottery and	was going to	o Barbados.
4	The minister	•	shocked	journalis	ts that she wa	as to resign i	mmediately.
5	The college		its stude	nts that t	hey attend al	l classes.	
6	1	Mr Jaco	bs that the s	tudents v	vere lazy. I tho	ought they w	vere very enthusiastic.
7	I forgot to	_	Chris that	'd be hor	ne late.		anatematika —paremet <del>-a</del> n — em tali bibli i kalifir bibli ilika i

33.4 Suggest corrections to the italicised words in this news article. A, C & D

### PIK TO CUT WORKFORCE

PIK, the toy manufacturer, (1) has warned they are to make over 100 employees redundant over the next month. Managing Director Beth Edwards yesterday (2) explained employees that a national fall in demand for traditional toys is to blame. She (3) confessed her audience that management had been surprised by the downturn, but she (4) denied management had been incompetent. When asked whether staff would receive redundancy pay, Ms Edwards (5) replied an announcement would be made within a few days, but (6) reassured that they would receive financial compensation. She (7) went on to complain government help for small businesses was insufficient and (8) demanded ministers that they provide more support. She (9) asked staff that they continue to work as normal until details of the redundancies were given. She (10) reassured that the company would not close completely.

# Verb + wh-clause

A	Some verbs can be followed by a clause beginning with a <b>wh-word</b> ( <b>how</b> , <b>what</b> , <b>when</b> , <b>where</b> , <b>which</b> , <b>who</b> , or <b>why</b> ):
	<ul> <li>That might explain why he's unhappy.</li> <li>I couldn't decide which train to catch.</li> <li>Let's consider how we can solve the problem.</li> <li>Many of these verbs can also be followed by −</li> <li>a that-clause (see Unit 33):</li> <li>I decided that I ought to leave.</li> <li>a wh-clause (except 'why') + to-infinitive:</li> <li>Did you find out where to go?</li> </ul> Also: arrange, calculate, check, choose, debate, determine, discover, discuss, establish, find out, forget, guess, imagine, know, learn, notice, plan, realise, remember, say, see, talk about, think (about), understand, wonder
	Note that if we add a subject in the <b>wh-clause</b> we don't use a <b>to-infinitive</b> :  I can't imagine what <b>he</b> likes about jazz.
В	Some verbs must have an object before the wh-clause:  She reminded me what (I had) to do. I told Linda how to get to my house.  Also: advise, inform, instruct, teach, warn
	The verbs <b>ask</b> and <b>show</b> often have an object before a <b>wh-clause</b> , but not always:  I asked (him) how I could get to the station, and he told me.
	These verbs can also be followed by <b>object</b> + <b>wh-word</b> + <b>to-infinitive</b> :  She <b>taught me</b> how to play chess.  I <b>showed her</b> where to put her coat.
С	We can often use <b>the way</b> instead of <b>how</b> referring to either the route or the means:  Go back <b>the way</b> (that / by which) you came. ( <i>or informally</i> Go back <b>how</b> you came.)  Have you noticed <b>the way</b> (that / in which) he spins the ball? ( <i>or</i> noticed <b>how</b> he spins?)
	Note that we don't use 'the way how'. (e.g. <i>not</i> Go back the way how you came.)
D	Whether  We can use whether as the wh-word in a wh-clause when we want to show possible choices.
	Whether has a similar meaning to 'if' (see Unit 86):  He couldn't remember whether / if he had turned the computer off.
	Some verbs can be followed by <b>whether + to-infinitive</b> to talk about the choice between two or more possibilities. Note that 'if' is never used before a <b>to-infinitive</b> :  You have 14 days to <b>decide whether to keep</b> it or not. (not to decide if to keep it or not.)
	Also: choose, consider, debate, determine, discuss, know (in questions and negatives), think about, wonder (= 'talking' or 'thinking about choices' verbs)
	Some other 'talking' and 'thinking about choices' verbs are <i>not</i> used with <b>whether + to-infinitive</b> , including <b>conclude</b> , <b>explain</b> , <b>imagine</b> , <b>realise</b> , <b>speculate</b> , <b>think</b> .
E	Note the difference between these sentences. The first has a wh-clause with whether and the second has a that-clause (see Unit 33):  I didn't know whether the shop was shut. (= if the shop was shut or not)  I didn't know that the shop was shut. (suggests that the shop was shut)
F	In rather formal contexts, particularly in writing, we can use <b>as to</b> with a meaning similar to 'about' or 'concerning' before a <b>wh-clause</b> . This is most common before <b>whether</b> :  Opinion was divided <b>as to whether</b> the findings from the study were representative of the population as a whole. (or less formally divided whether)

a ... to fit the parts back together.

... many sweets were in the jar.

b ... she went after that.

e ... Helen wasn't with him.

g ... they had to do in the test.

j ... to hold the golf club properly.

h ... the path was dangerous.

c ... to put their coats.

... everyone was.

d ... to meet next.

f

i

#### **Exercises**

- Match sentence beginnings 1–10 to endings a–j and choose an appropriate wh-word to connect them. If necessary, add an appropriate object. A & B
  - 1 Before the meeting finished they arranged ...
  - 2 He took my hands and showed ...
  - 3 I explained carefully so that the students understood ...
  - 4 Anna was new in the office and I had to keep reminding ...
  - 5 I saw Sarah leave the building, but I didn't notice ...
  - 6 When I saw Hugo alone at the party I wondered ...
  - 7 As we walked over the hills the guide warned ...
  - 8 After I'd dismantled the motor I couldn't remember ...
  - 9 To win a prize you had to guess ...
  - 10 As the guests came in Diego told ...
  - 1. I Refer the meeting finished they arranged when I where to meet next
  - 1+d Before the meeting finished they arranged when / where to meet next.
- 34.2 Underline the correct or more appropriate verb. If both are possible, underline them both. D
  - 1 She was thinking / debating whether to invite Jeremy over for dinner.
  - 2 The council is meeting this morning to discuss / ask whether to increase local taxes.
  - 3 Apparently Louis and Eva are considering / speculating whether to emigrate to Australia.
  - 4 I have to imagine / choose whether to get a job or apply to go to college.
  - 5 Scientists will have to decide / conclude soon whether to start testing the new drugs on people.
- Zak Miles has written a book about mountain climbing in the Andes. Correct any mistakes in these extracts. A-F

The villagers warned  $\stackrel{\text{me}}{\stackrel{}}$  what the conditions were like at higher altitudes, and advised to take enough food for a week. There was some discussion through the day as whether the snow would arrive before my descent from the mountain, but I never imagined how hard the conditions would be. In the morning they showed me the way how to get to the track up the mountain.

When the snow started falling it was very light, and I couldn't decide if to carry on or go back down. Soon, however, I couldn't see where to go.

I wondered if to retrace my steps and try to find the track again, but by the time I decided whether I should go back, the track had disappeared.

As the snow got heavier I began to realise whether my life was in danger. Fortunately, my years in the Andes had taught what to do in extreme conditions. I knew that there was a shepherd's hut somewhere on this side of the mountain that I could shelter in, but I didn't know that it was nearby or miles away.

### Tense choice in reporting

1	The state of the s
A	Verb tense in the <i>reported</i> clause Reminder → G1– G7
	When the situation described in the <i>reported</i> clause (see Unit 32) is in the <i>past</i> when we are reporting it, we use a past tense (past simple, past continuous, etc.):  'I don't want anything to eat.' → Yusuf <b>said</b> that he <b>didn't want</b> anything to eat.  'I'm leaving!' → Lamar <b>announced</b> that she <b>was leaving</b> .
	When the situation described in the <i>reported</i> clause was <i>already</i> in the past when it was spoken about originally, we often use the past perfect to report it:  ○ 'We have found the missing girl.' → Police <b>said</b> that they <b>had found</b> the missing girl.
	However, if it is clear that one event took place before another, then it may not be necessary to indicate this by using the past perfect and we use the past simple instead:  'I've sent out the invitations. I did it well before the wedding.' → She <b>reassured</b> me that she <b>sent</b> out the invitations well before the wedding. (or <b>had sent</b> )
В	When the situation described in the <i>reported</i> clause is a <i>permanent / habitual situation</i> , or still exists or is relevant at the time we are reporting it, then we use a present tense (or present perfect) if we also use a present tense for the verb in the <i>reporting</i> clause:  Dr Weir <b>thinks</b> that he <b>spends</b> about five minutes on a typical appointment with a patient.  US scientists <b>claim</b> that they <b>have developed</b> a new vaccine against malaria.  Note that the present perfect focuses attention on the <i>result</i> of the action, not the action itself.
	However, when we use a past tense in the <i>reporting</i> clause we can use either a present or past tense (or present perfect or past perfect) in the <i>reported</i> clause:  She <b>argued</b> that Carl <b>is / was</b> the best person for the job.  They <b>noted</b> that the rate of inflation <b>has / had slowed</b> down.
J	If we are not sure that what we are reporting is necessarily true, or a situation may not still exist now, we prefer a past rather than a present tense. Compare:  Yasemin told me that she has two houses. (= suggests that this is true) and  Yasemin told me that she had two houses. (= suggests either that this is perhaps not true, or that she once had two houses but doesn't have two houses now)
	Verb tense in the reporting clause
	To report something said or thought in the past, the verb in the <i>reporting</i> clause is often in a <i>past</i> tense:  ☐ Just before her wedding, she <b>revealed</b> that she had been married before.
	When we report current news, opinions, etc. we can use a present tense for the verb in the <i>reporting</i> clause. In some cases, either a present or past tense is possible, although we prefer a present tense to emphasise that what was said is true or still relevant when we report it:  She <b>says</b> that she'll have to close the shop unless business improves. (or <b>said</b> )
	We often prefer a present rather than a past tense –  to report information that we have been told or heard, but don't know whether it is true:  I hear you're unhappy with your job.
	🖈 to report what is said by some authority:

The law says that no one under the age of 16 can buy a lottery ticket.

Every teacher I've spoken to **tells** me that standards of spelling are in decline.

☆ to report what many people say:

Report these sentences using the verbs from the box in the reporting clauses and either the past simple or past perfect (or both if possible) in the **that-clause**.

1	I have never been in love with Oliver.' →
	She denied that she had ever been / was ever in love with Oliver.
2	Markus has stolen jewellery from my house.' $ ightarrow$ She
3	I think the vase is around 250 years old.' $ ightarrow$ She
4	I've told you once. I've already seen the film.' $ ightarrow$ She
5	Well, perhaps you're right. Maybe I did treat Lara unkindly.' $ ightarrow$ She
5	I seem to remember that Wilma's great-grandmother was from Spain.' $ ightarrow$ She

Complete the sentences with a verb chosen from a suitable pair. If both verbs in the pair are possible, write both. B

has / had is / was looks / looked solved / have solved states / stated understand / understood

1	Engineers hope that they	the problems with the bridge now that new
	supports have been built, and	they plan to reopen it next week.
2	The current law	that an employee has the right to appeal against dism

- The current law \_\_\_\_\_\_ that an employee has the right to appeal against dismissal.
   Simon is already a good tennis player, but he accepts that he still \_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot to
- learn.
- 4 I ......that you want to buy a second-hand car. Your brother just told me.
- 5 Health officials warn that anyone who .................................directly at the sun during an eclipse may put their sight at risk.
- 6 They reassured us that the path \_\_\_\_\_perfectly safe.

Jamie Barnes and Daniel Nokes have been interviewed by the police in connection with a robbery last week. In these extracts from the interview reports: (i) correct any verb tenses in the that-clauses that are wrong; and (ii) suggest any alternative tenses possible for the verbs in the that-clauses. A-C

1

When I mentioned to Nokes that he had been seen in a local shop last Monday, he protested that he is at home all day. He swears that he didn't own a blue Ford Focus. He claimed that he had been to the paint factory two weeks ago to look for work. Nokes alleges that he is a good friend of Jamie Barnes. He insisted that he didn't telephone Barnes last Monday morning. When I pointed out to Nokes that a large quantity of paint had been found in his house, he replied that he is storing it for a friend.

2

At the beginning of the interview I reminded Barnes that he is entitled to have a lawyer present. He denied that he knew anyone by the name of Daniel Nokes. Barnes confirmed that he is in the area of the paint factory last Monday, but said that he is visiting his mother. He admitted that he is walking along New Street at around ten. He maintains that he was a very honest person and would never be involved in anything illegal.

# Reporting offers, suggestions, orders, intentions, etc.

Α	Verb + (object) + to-infinitive clause				
	When we report offers, suggestions, orders, intentions, promises, requests, etc. we can follow some verbs in the reporting clause (see Unit 33) with −  ∴ a to-infinitive clause  ∴ 'The theatre will be built next to the town hall.' → They propose to build the theatre next to the town hall. (not They propose them to build)				
	Also: agree, demand, guarantee, offer, promise, swear, threaten, volunteer				
	<ul> <li>an object + to-infinitive clause</li> <li>'You should take the job, Fran.' → She encouraged Fran to take the job.</li> </ul>				
	Also: advise, ask, call on, command, instruct, invite, order, persuade, recommend, remind, request, urge, warn, tell				
	The object usually refers to the person who the offer, suggestion, etc. is made to; that is, the person who performs the action in the reported clause.				
	Compare the use of <b>ask</b> with and without an object before a <b>to-infinitive clause</b> :  We <b>asked</b> to leave our bags outside the exam room. (= this is something we wanted) and They <b>asked</b> us to leave our bags outside the exam room. (= this is something they wanted)				
В	Verb + that-clause <i>or</i> verb + to-infinitive clause				
	After some verbs we can use a <b>that-clause</b> instead of a <b>to-infinitive clause</b> :  He <b>promised</b> to arrive on time. or He <b>promised</b> that he would arrive on time.  Also: agree, demand, expect, guarantee, hope, propose, request, vow				
	With a <b>that-clause</b> the person promising, etc. and the person referred to in the <i>reported</i> clause may be different:  He <b>promised</b> <i>that</i> he wouldn't be late. ('He' and ' he' may refer to different people)				
С	After the verbs <b>insist, order, say</b> and <b>suggest</b> we use a <b>that-clause</b> but not a <b>to-infinitive clause</b> :  There were cheers when he <b>suggested</b> <i>that</i> we went home early. ( <i>not</i> suggested to go)				
	Advise and order can be used with an object + to-infinitive clause (see A) or a that-clause:  I advised that she should accept. (or I advised her to accept.; but not I advised to accept)				
D	Verb + to-infinitive clause (not verb + that-clause)				
	After some verbs we use a <b>to-infinitive clause</b> but not a <b>that-clause</b> :  Carolyn <b>intends</b> to return to Dublin after a year in Canada.  (not Carolyn intends that she should return)  Also: long, offer, refuse, volunteer, want				
E	When we report a suggestion, either what the person reported might do themselves, or what some else might do, we can use a reporting clause with advise, propose, recommend or suggest followed by an -ing clause rather than a that-clause:  The lecturer recommended reading a number of books before the exam. (or recommended that the students should read a number of books before the exam.)				

Report each sentence using a verb from the box and a **to-infinitive clause**. Use each verb once only. If necessary, add an appropriate object after the verb.

-advise- agree ask call on expect hope order urge vow

- 1 'If I were you, I'd read the exam questions very carefully.' → He advised us to read the exam questions very carefully.
- 2 'Okay, I'll collect Declan from school.'  $\rightarrow$  He ...
- 3 'Be quiet!'  $\rightarrow$  He ...
- 4 'Please stay for a few more days.' → He ...
- 5 'I will fight the ban on smoking in public places.'  $\rightarrow$  He ...
- 6 'I imagine I'll see Olivia at the party.' → He ...
- 7 'Can you lend me ten pounds?'  $\rightarrow$  He ...
- 8 'The government should do more to help the homeless.'  $\rightarrow$  He ...
- 9 'If I leave early, I'll avoid the heavy traffic.'  $\rightarrow$  He ...
- Replace any incorrect verbs with a verb from the boxes. (It may not be necessary to use all the boxed verbs.) B, C & D

expected promised refused said In a major speech today, the Health Minister



In a major speech today, the Health Minister (1) suggested to improve the country's health care. She (2) guaranteed to reduce waiting times for operations, and (3) intended that this could be done without raising taxes. She said that she (4) insisted to see significant improvements within a year.

The President of Guwandi has (5) demanded Narian troops to withdraw from the border area between the two countries, and said that he (6) wanted that the Narian president would act now to prevent war. In a separate development, the UN Secretary General has (7) agreed to meet the leaders of both countries and has (8) offered that a peace conference should be held in New York early next week.

rdered	proposed	volunteered
	rdered	rdered proposed

- 36.3 Complete the sentences in any appropriate way using a clause beginning with the -ing form of a verb.
  - 1 To avoid the road works, police have advised leaving the motorway at Junction 3.
  - 2 To encourage people to use public transport the council proposed ......
  - 3 Ricardo said the play was very entertaining and he recommended ......
  - 4 To find my way around London, Reza suggested

  - 5 I'd been feeling unwell for a few days and my mother advised
  - 6 The capital urgently needs a new airport, and the government proposes
  - 7 I feel very unfit, so my doctor has recommended \_\_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 It was a lovely morning and Nina suggested

Can any of these sentences be rewritten with a to-infinitive clause without an object?

## Modal verbs in reporting

	A		
á	Δ	۱	
4		۰	

В

D

F

When there is a modal verb in the original statement, suggestion, etc., it sometimes changes when we report what was said or thought. The changes are summarised here (the numbers indicate examples below):

	modal verb in original	modal verb in report		
В	B could, would, should, might, needn't, ought to, used to, could have, should have, etc. could have, should have, should have, etc.			
present tense verb in reporting clause) <b>6</b> ○ will or would, can or could, may or might (existing or future situations and past tense verb in reporting clause)		<ul><li>will, can, may (existing or future situations and present tense verb in reporting clause)</li></ul>		
D shall would (talking about the future) 8 should (offers, requests for advice, etc.) 9				
E	must (= necessity) must (= conclude; see Unit 18B) mustn't	must or had to 10 must 11 mustn't 12		
<ul> <li>'I could meet you at the airport.' → He said that he could meet us at the airport. 1</li> <li>'We might drop in if we have time.' → They said they might drop in if they have time. 2</li> <li>'You should have contacted me earlier.' → She said I should have contacted her earlier. 3</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>'She may have already left.' → He thought she might have already left. 4</li> <li>If the situation we are reporting still exists or is still in the future and the verb in the reporting clause has a present tense, we use will, can, and may in the reported clause (see Unit 32). Compare:         <ul> <li>'Careful! You'll fall through the ice!' → I warned him he would fall through the ice.</li> <li>'I'll be in Paris at Christmas.' → She tells me she'll be in Paris at Christmas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>				
If the situation we are reporting still exists or is still in the future and the verb in the <i>reporting clause</i> has a <i>past</i> tense, we can use either <b>would</b> or <b>will</b> , <b>can</b> or <b>could</b> , or <b>may</b> or <b>might</b> in the <i>reported clause</i> :  ☐ 'The problem can be solved.' → They <b>said</b> the problem <b>can</b> / <b>could</b> be solved. ?				
<ul> <li>'I shall (I'll) call you on Monday.' → She told me she would call me on Monday. (3)</li> <li>'Where shall I put this box?' → He asked where he should put the box. (9)</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>'You must be home by 9 o'clock.' → She said I must / had to be home by 9 o'clock. (had to is more natural in speech)</li> <li>'I didn't hear the phone. I must be going deaf.' → Alex thought he must be going deaf. (1)</li> <li>'You mustn't tell my brother.' → He warned me that I mustn't tell his brother. (2)</li> </ul>				
Note that we sometimes use a modal verb in a reported sentence when there is no modal verb in the original:  'You're not allowed to smoke here.' → She told me that I <b>mustn't</b> smoke there.  'My advice is to look for a new job now.' → She said that I <b>should</b> look for a new job now.				

- 37.1 Underline the more appropriate verb. If both are possible, underline them both. 🕒
  - 1 The doctor says that he will / would see you in 20 minutes.
  - 2 In her letter, Elizabeth revealed that she may / might be getting married soon.
  - 3 Maxim tells me that he can / could come for dinner with us tonight after all.
  - 4 Inge promised that she will / would be at home by nine, so I phoned her shortly after that.
  - 5 The mechanic admitted that he can't / couldn't repair the radiator and had to replace it instead.
  - 6 Olivia reckons that she can / could save enough money to go on holiday to Canada.
  - 7 Mario explained that he will / would be living in Austria for the next six months.

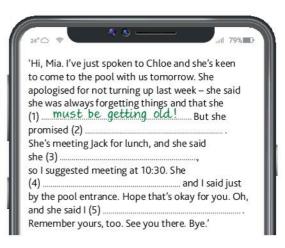
#### 37.2 Complete the reported sentences using a that-clause with a modal verb. A & C

- 1 'If all goes to plan, I'll study medicine.' → He hoped that he would study medicine but instead he became a yet.
- 2 'I won't be late.' → She promised \_\_\_\_\_\_ and she kept her word.
- 3 'Perhaps we can go to Paris for the weekend.'  $\rightarrow$  He suggested .....
- but I was busy.

  4 'I can get you there in good time.' → She guaranteed
- but I didn't believe her.

  5 'I'll pay for the meal.' → He insisted and I accepted, of course.
- Complete the text message by reporting what Chloe said, using modal verbs in the reports. D & E





- Complete the reported sentences using appropriate modal verbs. Give alternative modal verbs where possible.
  - 1 'It's vital that you attend the meeting.' →
    She said that I had to / must attend the meeting.
    - 2 'If you want to travel with us, that's fine.'  $\rightarrow$  She said that .....
    - 3 'I'm not prepared to answer his questions.'  $\rightarrow$  She said that
    - 4 'Karl's likely to be back soon.' → She said that.....
    - 5 'There's a possibility that I'll have to move to Milan.'  $\rightarrow$  She said that ......
    - 6 'I refuse to accept that Jason is dishonest.'  $\rightarrow$  She said that.....
    - 7 'Maria is sure to be disappointed if you leave without seeing her.'  $\rightarrow$  She said that ...

### Reporting what people say using nouns and adjectives

В

#### Reporting using nouns

We sometimes report people's words and thoughts using a **noun** in the reporting clause followed by a

reported clause beginning with <b>that</b> , a <b>to-infinitive</b> -, or <b>wh-word</b> . Most of these nouns are related to reporting verbs (acknowledgement – acknowledge, statement – state, etc.). Note that when we report using <b>nouns</b> and <b>adjectives</b> (see <b>C</b> ) the exact original words are not necessarily reported. Instead we might use our own words, or report that something was said without reporting <i>what</i> was said  Noun + <b>that-clause</b> :  The <b>claim</b> is often made <i>that</i> smoking causes heart disease.  The jury came to the <b>conclusion</b> <i>that</i> the woman was guilty.				
Also: acknowledgement, advice, allegation, announcement, answer, argument, comment, decision, explanation, forecast, guarantee, indication, observation, promise, recommendation, reply, speculation, statement, suggestion, threat, warning				
Note that we don't usually leave out <b>that</b> in sentences like this (see Unit 33)				
Also: decision, instruction, order, promise, recommendation, refusal, threat, warning				
Note that all the nouns above (except refusal) can be followed by a <b>that-clause</b> :  They carried out their <b>threat</b> to dismiss workers on strike. (or their <b>threat</b> that they would dismiss workers on strike.)				
Noun + wh-clause:  Juan raised the question of when the money would be collected.  Our previous meeting looked at the issue of how to increase income.  Also: explanation, discussion, problem				
We usually use <b>of</b> after these nouns in reporting.				
After many of the nouns listed in <b>A</b> , we can use <b>as to</b> + <b>wh-clause</b> or <b>as to</b> + <b>wh-word</b> + <b>to-infinitive</b> to introduce a topic (see also Unit 34F). Note that an alternative preposition can usually be used instead of <b>as to</b> :  She asked my <i>advice</i> <b>as to</b> <i>what</i> subject she should study at university. ( <i>or</i> advice <b>on</b> )  There was some <i>discussion</i> <b>as to</b> <i>whether</i> the price included tax or not. ( <i>or</i> discussion <b>of</b> )  Before we left we gave them strict <i>instructions</i> <b>as to</b> <i>how to cook</i> it. ( <i>or</i> <b>about</b> how to)				
Reporting using adjectives				
Some adjectives used to report a speaker's feelings or opinion are followed by a <b>that-clause</b> :  The builders are <b>certain</b> that they'll be finished by the end of next week.				
Also: adamant, agreed, angry, annoyed, grateful, insistent, sure				
Adjectives expressing uncertainty are usually followed by a <b>wh-clause</b> :  Scientists are <b>n't sure</b> where the remains of the satellite will land.				
Also: doubtful (usually + whether), uncertain, not certain, unsure				
Some adjectives are usually followed by a preposition + noun phrase:  Today's newspapers are very <b>critical</b> of the President's decision to appoint Mr Walters.				
Also: apologetic, complimentary, insulting, tactful (+ about); dismissive, scornful (+ of); abusive, sympathetic (+ to / towards)				

announcement

Complete the sentences with the nouns from the box and the notes in brackets. Use a that-, to-infinitive or wh-clause. Suggest alternatives where possible.

encouragement

invitation issue observation promise question warning 1 The turning point in his life came when he took the decision to become an actor. / ... that he would become an actor (become - actor) 2 He failed to address the ... (who - pay - repairs - building) (spend the holidays - them - Scotland) 3 I was delighted to get an ... 4 I think it was P T Barnum who made the ... (no such thing – bad publicity)

explanation

5 Amazingly the police accepted Rudi's ... (taken – wallet – mistake) 6 On the webinar they debated the ... (assisted suicide – criminal offence)

7 The letter from the company gave a final ...

8 The government has broken its ...

9 The positive reaction to my work gave me considerable ...

10 Waiting passengers were angry when they heard the ...

decision

(flight - cancelled)

(pay - bill by - end of - week) (reduce - rate - income tax)

(take up photography - career)

#### 38.2 Complete the rewritten sentences using a noun formed from the italicised verb + as to and then a wh-word. B

1 At the end the writers suggest when it is appropriate to correct students' grammar mistakes. The writers end with suggestions as to when it is appropriate to correct students' grammar mistakes.

2 People have argued a great deal about how to define poverty. There has been ...

- 3 For months people have speculated about whether President Malik would stand again. There have been months ...
- 4 Scientists might conclude something about what their results imply. Scientists might ...
- 5 We have still not explained definitely why the dinosaurs disappeared. There is still ...
- Complete each sentence using an adjective from the box with that, a wh-word, or a preposition.

abusive adamant agreed angry apologetic doubtful not certain complimentary dismissive unsure 1 The climbers were doubtful whether the clothes would be warm enough at high altitudes. 2 My boss is very unsympathetic and was ..... .....my complaints about the new software. .... the child car seats are safe. 3 The company is ... 4 Mona tried to pick up the rabbit, but was ..... to hold it. 5 She was very. ..... the window had been broken. 6 Rachel is normally very reliable and was extremely ...... ..... turning up late. 7 Karim left for New York in September but he was ...... he would return. a police officer and was arrested. 8 The court heard that Hughes became. 9 Judi doesn't normally like spicy food, but was quite ..... .. my fish curry. 10 All the players are ..... .... the game should go on despite the weather.

## **Should** in **that-clauses**; the present subjunctive

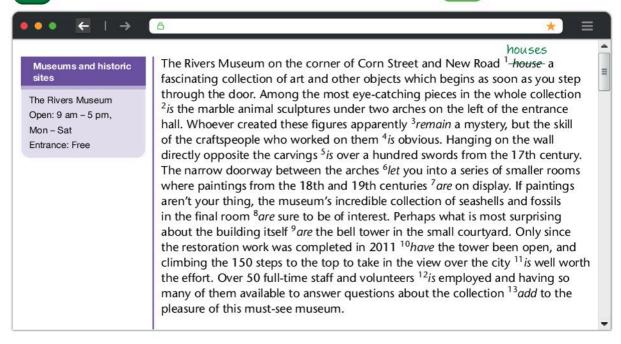
A	We can sometimes report advice, orders, requests, suggestions, etc. about things that need to be done or are desirable using a <b>that-clause</b> with <b>should + bare infinitive</b> :  They have proposed that Felix <b>should</b> move to their Munich office.  We advised <b>that</b> the company <b>should not</b> raise its prices.  After <b>should</b> we often use <b>be + past participle</b> (passive) or <b>be + adjective</b> :  They directed <b>that</b> the building <b>should</b> be pulled down.  We insist <b>that</b> the money <b>should</b> be available to all students in financial difficulties.			
В	In formal contexts, particularly in written English, we can often leave out <b>should</b> and use only the bare infinitive. This form is the <i>present subjunctive</i> (see Unit 85A for the <i>past subjunctive</i> ) and is used to describe bringing about the situation expressed in the <b>that-clause</b> :  Otherworks used with the present subjunctive.			
	move to their Munich office.  They directed that the building be pulled down.  Other verbs used with the present subjunctive: advise, ask, beg, command, demand, insist, instruct, intend, order, prefer, recommend, request, require, stipulate, suggest, urge, warn			
	To make a negative form, we use <b>not</b> (without 'do') before the verb:			
	<ul> <li>We advised that the company not raise its prices.</li> <li>In less formal contexts we can use ordinary forms of the verb instead of the subjunctive. Compare: <ul> <li>I suggested that he should give up golf. (negative: that he shouldn't give up)</li> <li>I suggested that he give up golf. (more formal) (negative: that he not give up)</li> <li>I suggested that he gives up golf. (less formal) (negative: that he doesn't give up)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>			
C	We can also use <b>that-clauses</b> with <b>should</b> or the subjunctive after <i>reporting clauses</i> with nouns related to the verbs in <b>B</b> (e.g. <b>advice, order, proposal, warning</b> ):  The police issued an <b>order</b> that all weapons (should) be handed in immediately.  The weather forecast gave a <b>warning</b> that people (should) prepare for heavy snow.			
D	We can also use <b>should</b> or the subjunctive in a <b>that-clause</b> after <b>it + be + adjective</b> :  It is inappropriate that he (should) receive the award again. (or that he receives)			
	Also: advisable, appalling, appropriate, (in)conceivable, crucial, essential, imperative, important, obligatory, (un)necessary, urgent, vital			
E	We can use <b>should</b> in a <b>that-clause</b> when we talk about our own reaction to something we are reporting, particularly after <b>be</b> + <b>adjective</b> .			
	Also: amazed, amused, anxious, astounded, disappointed, shocked, surprised, upset			
	Note that when we leave out <b>should</b> in sentences like this (= less formal) we use an ordinary tense, not a subjunctive.  'I am upset that she <b>thinks</b> I stole the money.'			
F	We can use <b>should</b> in a <b>that-clause</b> to talk about a situation that exists now:  It's not surprising that they <b>should</b> be seen together – they're brothers.  or one that may exist in the future:  We believe it is important that she <b>should</b> take the exam next year.			
	If we are talking about an intention or plan, we can often use a <i>subjunctive</i> rather than <b>should</b> :  I've arranged that she <b>come</b> to the first part of the meeting. ( <i>or</i> that she <b>should come</b> / for her <b>to come</b> )			

sh	eport these statements from an engineering company board meeting. Use a <b>that-clause</b> rould (should + bare infinitive or should + be + past participle).
1	Lee said: 'I think it's important to expand business in South America.'
	Lee felt that business in South America should be expanded.
	Lee said: 'Mara Bianchi would make an excellent export manager. Let's promote her.'  Lee urged
3	Alice said: 'It would be valuable for us to send a sales representative to South Africa.'  Alice recommended
4	Alice recommended  Alice said: 'The Centenary Bridge project ought to be completed by August next year.'  Alice reported
5	Simon said: 'It is vital to keep to our work schedules.' Simon insisted
6	Simon said: 'I'd like all monthly reports sent to me directly.'  Simon instructed
7	Alina said: 'Perhaps we could use web conferencing for meetings to save money on air fares.'  Alina suggested
8	Alina said: 'Our head office must remain in London.'  Alina declared
9	Nathan said: 'It's okay for us to sponsor the European chess league for the next three years.  Nathan agreed
	Nathan said: 'In future, all claims for travel expenses are to be made in US dollars.'
	Nathan announced
sti	ook again at your answers for 39.1. Can any of the sentences be written without <b>should</b> a ill be correct? Write 'yes' if it is possible and 'no' if not. A-C  Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No
sti 1 Ex	ill be correct? Write 'yes' if it is possible and 'no' if not. A-C
sti 1 Ex rep	ill be correct? Write 'yes' if it is possible and 'no' if not. A-C  Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No
sti 1 Ex rep	Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No
sti 1 Ex rep	Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No
sti 1 Ex rep 1	Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No spand the notes using a that-clause with should and an adjective from the box to make porting sentences. More than one adjective may be possible, but use each once only. Damused appalling astounded imperative inconceivable shocked upset urgent  It is / she / marry Ben.  It is inconceivable that she should marry Ben.
sti 1 Ex rep 1 2	Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No  pand the notes using a that-clause with should and an adjective from the box to make porting sentences. More than one adjective may be possible, but use each once only. Deamused appalling astounded imperative inconceivable shocked upset urgent  It is / she / marry Ben.  It is inconceivable that she should marry Ben.  I am / Kristina / behave so badly.
sti 1 Ex rep 1 2 3 4	Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No spand the notes using a that-clause with should and an adjective from the box to make porting sentences. More than one adjective may be possible, but use each once only. Define amused appalling astounded imperative inconceivable shocked upset urgent  It is / she / marry Ben. It is inconceivable that she should marry Ben.  I am / Kristina / behave so badly.  I am / anyone / vote for him.
sti 1	Lee felt that business in South America be expanded.  Lee felt that business in South America be expanded.  Ipand the notes using a that-clause with should and an adjective from the box to make porting sentences. More than one adjective may be possible, but use each once only.  Image: America be expanded.  It is / she / marry Ben.  It is inconceivable that she should marry Ben.  It is inconceivable that she should marry Ben.  It is / he / return home immediately.  It is / he / return home immediately.
sti 1	Lee felt that business in South America be expanded. No  spand the notes using a that-clause with should and an adjective from the box to make porting sentences. More than one adjective may be possible, but use each once only.  amused appalling astounded imperative inconceivable shocked upset urgent  It is / she / marry Ben.  It is inconceivable that she should marry Ben.  I am / Kristina / behave so badly.  I am / anyone / vote for him.  It is / he / return home immediately.  I am / he / take his appearance so seriously.

## Agreement between subject and verb 1

A	If a sentence has a singular subject, it is followed by a singular verb, and if it has a plural subject, it is followed by a plural verb; that is, the verb agrees with the subject. Compare:  She lives in China. and More people live in Asia than in any other continent.  When the subject of the sentence is complex, the following verb must agree with the main noun in the subject. In the examples below the subject is underlined and the main noun is circled. Note how the following verb, in italics, agrees with the main noun:  Many leading members of the opposition party have criticised the delay.  The only excuse that he gave for his actions was that he was tired.  The verb must agree with the subject when the subject follows the verb (see Units 99 & 100):  Displayed on the board were the exam results. (compare The exam results were displayed)		
В	If the subject is a clause, we usually use a singular verb:  To keep these young people in prison is inhuman.  Having overall responsibility for the course means that I have a lot of meetings.  Whoever took them remains a mystery.  However, if we use a what-clause as subject (see Unit 98B), we use a singular verb if the following main noun is singular, and either a singular or a plural verb if the following main noun is plural (although a plural verb is preferred in more formal contexts):  What worries us is the poor selection process.  What is needed are additional resources. (or more colloquially needed is)		
С	Some nouns with a singular form, referring to groups of some kind, can be used with either a singular or plural form of the verb. These nouns are sometimes called <i>collective nouns</i> :  The council has (or have) postponed a decision on the new road.  We use a singular verb if the institution or organisation is thought of as a whole unit, and a plural verb if it is thought of as a collection of individuals. Often you can use either with very little difference in meaning, although in formal contexts (such as academic writing) it is common to use a singular verb.  Also: army, association, audience, class, club, college, commission, committee, community, company, crew, crowd, department, electorate, enemy, family, federation, generation, government, group, institute, jury, opposition, orchestra, population, press, public, school, team, university; the Bank of England, the BBC, IBM, Sony, the United Nations (specific organisations)		
	In some contexts we have to use a singular or a plu	ral form of the verb.	
	The committee usually <b>raise</b> their hands to vote 'Yes'. ( <i>not</i> The committee usually raises its hands)	This is something the individuals do, not the committee as a whole.	
	The school <b>is</b> to close next year. (not The school are to close)	This is something that will happen to the school as a building or institution, not to the individuals in the school.	
D	When names and titles ending in -s refer to a single unit we use a singular verb. Examples include countries; newspapers; titles of books, films, etc.; and quoted plural words or phrases:  At this time of the year the Netherlands is one hour ahead of the UK.  The Machine Gunners was one of Robert Westall's most successful books.  'Daps' is the word used in the south-west of the country for sports shoes.		

40.1 Correct ten mistakes in the italicised verbs in this museum review. A & B



40.2 Complete each sentence with a noun from the box and an appropriate form of the verb in brackets (singular, plural or both).

orchestra

	team the United Nations	university
1	The volleyball team play	/ plays twice a week in the summer. (play)
2	If theto hold it. (refuse)	to host the conference, I just don't know where we will be able
3	The worldwide television200 million. ( <i>be</i> )	for tomorrow's cup final expected to be
4	The	classical concerts throughout the year. (perform)
5	The Junior Book Prize	three adults and three children. (include)
6	The	all passed the end-of-year exam. (have)
		a picture of chaos in our schools, but it's just not like that at all.
8	keeping force in war zones arour	ered an investigation into the capture of members of its peace- nd the world. ( <i>have</i> )

press

- 40.3 If necessary, correct the mistakes in these sentences or write ✓ if they are already correct.
  - 1 The United States come top of the list of countries ranked by economic performance.
  - 2 The people I know who have seen the film say that it's really good.
  - 3 The New Straits Times report that tourism is booming in Malaysia.
  - 4 Northern Lights are one of Suzanne's favourite books.
  - 5 The stairs leading to the first floor were steep and poorly lit.
  - 6 Chequers is the country house of the British Prime Minister.
  - 7 Whoever made all the mess in the kitchen have to clear it up.
  - 8 The phrase 'men in white coats' are used to talk about psychiatrists.
  - 9 The public needs to be kept informed about progress in the peace talks.
  - 10 Musical chairs are a party game where everyone dashes for a seat when the music stops.

audience

class

jury

# Agreement between subject and verb 2

В

D

With any of, each of, either of, neither of, or none of and a plural noun / pronoun we can use a singular or plural verb. (We use a singular verb in formal written English.)	<ul> <li>I don't think any of them knows (or know) where the money is hidden.</li> <li>Neither of the French athletes has (or have) won this year.</li> </ul>			
With a / the majority of, a number of, a lot of, plenty of, all (of), or some (of) and a plural noun / pronoun we use a plural verb. (We use a singular verb with the number of.)	<ul> <li>A number of refugees have been turned back at the border.</li> <li>The number of books in the library has risen to over five million.</li> </ul>			
After one of and a plural noun / pronoun we use a singular verb. However, after one of + plural noun / pronoun + who we can often use either a singular or plural verb. (A plural verb is more formal.)	<ul> <li>One of the reasons I took the job was that I could work from home.</li> <li>He's one of those teachers who insist / insists on pupils sitting silently in class.</li> </ul>			
With any of, none of, the majority of, a lot of, plenty of, all (of), some (of) and an uncountable noun we use a singular verb.	<ul> <li>All the furniture was destroyed in the fire.</li> <li>None of the equipment appears to be damaged.</li> </ul>			
With <b>every</b> or <b>each</b> and a <b>singular noun</b> or <b>noun phrase</b> with <b>and</b> , we use a <i>singular</i> verb. (For <b>each of</b> , see above.)	<ul> <li>Every room looks over the harbour.</li> <li>Every boy and girl takes part in the activity.</li> <li>Each child has drawn a picture. but</li> <li>The children have each drawn a picture.</li> </ul>			
With <b>everyone</b> , <b>everybody</b> , <b>everything</b> (and similar words beginning <b>any</b> -, <b>some</b> - and <b>no</b> -) we use a <i>singular</i> verb.	O Practically <b>everyone</b> <i>thinks</i> that Phil should be given the job.			
When a subject has two or more items joined by <b>and</b> , we usually use a plural verb:  Ingrid and Tobias are moving back to Australia.  However, phrases connected by and can also be followed by singular verbs if we think of them as making up a single item:  The lorry, its cargo and passengers weighs around 35 tonnes. (or weigh)				
When a subject is made up of two or more items joined by (either) or or (neither) nor we use a singular verb if the last item is singular (although a plural verb is sometimes used in informal English), and a plural verb if the last item is plural:  Either the station or the cinema is a good place to meet. (or are in informal English)  The President or his representatives are to attend the meeting.  If the last item is singular and previous item plural, we can use a singular or plural verb:  Either the teachers or the principal is to blame for the accident. (or are to blame)				
In there + be / have (see Unit 95) we use a singular verb form with singular and uncountable nouns and a plural form with plural nouns. However, in informal speech we often use a shortened singular form of be or have (= There's) with plural nouns:  Over the last few years there have been many improvements in car safety.  There's been lots of good films on lately. (or There've been)				

(i)	(	his early	paintings	my children	Dr Jones's acquaintances	the food
(ii)				-		
		remain	remembe		know	
	b I c I r	t's unlikely most of the don't think restaurant i	that any of work he pro cany ofs s rather disap	duced during th	remember / remembers my . It see e 1930s. particular	ems that he destroy
		where he is.		,		
(i)	(	vegetaria	ans victir	ns other m	useums medicines	
(ii)	(	exceed	charge	expect rel	ieve	
2		5.50			nvolving beef and chicken, the	number of
					atically in the next five years the symptoms of influenza, bu	it none can cure it
					of the flo	
				100,000.		
					ım for free, although a number	
				in the capita	alp	eople for entry.
(i)	(	player	these fact	ors the cars	the pieces	
(ii)	/		est influ	ence try		
200000		last t				
	a T	The whole o	concert inclu	des twenty shor	t items from young musicians. ninutes.	Each of
3	a 1  b 1	The whole o	concert inclu	about five muite simple. Eac		
3	а 1 ь 1	The whole o	the game is conthe board	about five m Juite simple. Eac as possible.	ninutes. :ht	o buy as many
3	a 1 b 1 c 1	The whole of the aim o	the game is control	about five mulite simple. Each as possible.	ninutes. :ht safety, fuel economy and reliab	o buy as many ility.
3	a 1 b 1 c E d 1	The whole of the aim of the aim of the aim of the aim of the act of the are for	the game is con the board	about five multe simple. Each as possible. for summers on exchange and summers of exchange and exch	ninutes. cht safety, fuel economy and reliab ange rates: price levels, tariffs, p	o buy as many ility. preference for impo
3	a 1	The whole of the aim of the aim of the aim of the aim of the act of the are for	the game is control the game is control the board our major influred	about five multe simple. Each as possible. for summers on exchange and summers of exchange and exch	ninutes. :ht safety, fuel economy and reliab	o buy as many ility. preference for impo
3	a 1 6 1 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6	The whole of the aim of the oroperties of the aim of the control o	the game is control the game is control the board our major influored productivity.	about five muite simple. Each as possible. for summer for summer for summer there we investigate.	ninutes.  cht  safety, fuel economy and reliab  ange rates: price levels, tariffs, page to the same to the	o buy as many ility. preference for imp
3 Co	a 1	The whole of the aim of the aim of the aim of the aim of the are followed and beautiful to the are followed and beautiful to the aim of the aim	the game is con the board our major influoroductivity.	about five muite simple. Each as possible. for suences on exchange there we investight present simple.	ninutes.  cht  cafety, fuel economy and reliab  cange rates: price levels, tariffs, page is the seconomy and reliab  cange rates: price levels, tariffs, page is the seconomy and reliab  cange rates: price levels, tariffs, page is the seconomy and reliab  cange rates: price levels in bracket	o buy as many ility. preference for imp
3 Co plu	a ] b ] c [ d ] emp	The whole of the aim of the aim of the aim of the aim of the are followed as a constant of the aim	the game is continuous the board on the board our major influence with the continuous tenses with the continuous tenses are possible of the contin	about five muite simple. Each as possible. for suences on exchange Here we investigate, write both.	ninutes.  cht  safety, fuel economy and reliab  ange rates: price levels, tariffs, price to the same and the same are same	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular
Co plu	a 1  p f  c i d 1  g  mmp  mp  ural	The whole of the aim of the aim of the aim of the aim of the are followed as a constant of the aim	the game is continued the game is continued the board our major influenced the continued the continu	about five muite simple. Each as possible. for suences on exchange Here we investigate, write both.	ninutes.  cht  cafety, fuel economy and reliab  cange rates: price levels, tariffs, page is the seconomy and reliab  cange rates: price levels, tariffs, page is the seconomy and reliab  cange rates: price levels, tariffs, page is the seconomy and reliab  cange rates: price levels in bracket	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular
3 Coplu 1 2	a 1 b 1 c [ d 1 emp	The whole of the aim of the properties of Each of	the game is continued the game is continued the board for major influence with the sare possible of those questimates.	about five multiple. Each as possible. for suences on exchange the present simple, write both. available, but	ninutes.  cht  cafety, fuel economy and reliable ange rates: price levels, tariffs, page to how each of  e forms of the verb in bracket  no one them become that the government's economic can be seen as a second of	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular ause they're so po-
Coplu	a 1	The whole of the aim of the properties of Each of Interest are for goods, and pexchange randolete the selection of jobs. Into the control of jobs. In the cont	the game is continued the game is continued the board for major influences with a repossible of those questiff those questiff in the continued	about five multiple simple. Each as possible. for suences on exchange the present simple, write both. available, but	e forms of the verb in bracket no one that the government's eco	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular ause they're so po-
Cooplu 1	a ] b ] c [ d ] emp ural Ple paid fail tha	The whole of the aim of the coroperties of Each of	the game is continuous the game is continuous the board our major influorements. The continuous	about five multiple simple. Each as possible. for suences on exchange the present simple, write both. available, but tioned appearance of the property of the present simple and the pr	e forms of the verb in bracket no one that the government's economy the Education Minister	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular rause they're so po
3 Coplu 1 2 3	a 1 for the state of the state	The whole of the aim of the properties of Each of There are for goods, and exchange range of jobs of the first ting the first ting the second of the seco	the game is continued the game is continued the board out major influences with sare possible of those quest the neither the ficies will change that either	about five muite simple. Each as possible. for suences on exchange and the present simple, write both. available, but tioned are prime Minister ange. (think / have r of us	rinutes.  cht  cafety, fuel economy and reliable ange rates: price levels, tariffs, page how each of  e forms of the verb in bracket  no one them become that the government's econor the Education Minister  e) been to China, but everyone.	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular rause they're so po-
3 Cooplu 1 2 3	a ]  b ]  f  c [ [ d ]  gmp  ural  Plei  paid  fail  tha  lt's	The whole of the aim of the properties of Each of There are for goods, and exchange randolete the selection of jobs of the first time.	the game is continued the game is continued to the board for major influences with the sare possible of those questions will change that either the been very we	about five muite simple. Each as possible. for suences on excharge we investible available, but tioned for each available, but tioned for each available, but tioned for each available with the prime Minister ange. (think / have of us for each and he elcoming and he	e forms of the verb in bracket no one that the government's economy the Education Minister	o buy as many ility. preference for imposition the s. If both singular ause they're so po pnomic policies ha indicate the we've met here
3 Copplu 1 2 3 4	a 1 February Pleist The fail that It's	The whole of the aim of the aim of the aim of the are for goods, and exchange randolete the selection of jobs of the first tinger.	the game is content included the game is content included the game is content included the game includ	about five multiple simple. Each as possible. for such the present simple, write both. available, but tioned Prime Ministeringe. (think / have of us selecoming and he pers	rinutes.  cht  cafety, fuel economy and reliable ange rates: price levels, tariffs, pagete how each of  e forms of the verb in bracket  no one them becomes that the government's econor the Education Minister  e) been to China, but everyout the following the page of the company of the company of the company of the end of the company of the end of the company of the c	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular ause they're so position policies ha indicate the we've met here d its cargo
3 Cooplu 1 2 3 4 5	a ] b ] c [ [ c ] emp ural Ple paid tha lt's Pro	The whole of the aim of the properties of Each of There are for goods, and exchange rands of the set of the se	the game is continued in the board our major influored in the board our major influored in the sare possible of those questions will change that either been very wear a danger to leausages and our method of the sare possible of the sare pos	about five multiple simple. Each as possible. for such the present simple, write both. available, but tioned for such the present simple. A prime think / have the prime think / have t	rinutes.  cht  cafety, fuel economy and reliable ange rates: price levels, tariffs, pagete how each of  e forms of the verb in bracket  no one them becomes the Education Minister  e) been to China, but everyoutleful. (have / have) that the wreck of the ship an	o buy as many ility. preference for imposite the s. If both singular rause they're so portion policies ha indicate one we've met here d its cargo stitute)

	Agreement between sul	bject and verb 3					
A	Plural nouns						
	Some nouns are usually plural and take a plural verb:  The company's earnings have increased for the last five years.	Also: belongings, clothes, congratulations, goods, outskirts, overheads, particulars (= information), premises (= building), riches, savings, stairs, surroundings, thanks					
	Note that whereabouts can be used with either a singular or plural verb, police and people always take a plural verb, and staff usually does:  Police believe that Thomas is in Brazil, although his exact whereabouts are / is unknown.  Staff say that the new computer system has led to greater levels of stress in their work.						
В	Plural nouns used with singular verbs						
	Although the words data and media (= newspaper, television, etc.) are plural (singular datum and medium), they are commonly used with a singular verb. However, in formal contexts such as academic writing a plural verb is preferred. Note that other similar plurals such as criteria and phenomena (singular criterion and phenomenon) are always used with plural verbs. Compare:  All the data is available for public inspection. (or are available) and  I agree that the criteria are not of equal importance. (not the criteria is not)						
С	Uncountable nouns ending in -s						
	Some uncountable nouns always end in -s and look as if they are plural, but when we us them as the subject they have a singular verb  The news from the Middle East seem very encouraging.	rb: unguistics, matnematics, pnonetics, physics;					
	However, compare:						
	academic subject	general use					
	O Politics is popular at this university.	<ul><li>Her <b>politics</b> are bordering on the fascist.</li><li>(= political belief)</li></ul>					
	Statistics was always my worst subject	Statistics are able to prove anything you want them to. (= numerical information)					
	<ul> <li>Economics has only recently been recognised as a scientific study.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>The economics behind their policies are unreasonable. (= the financial system)</li> </ul>					
$\equiv$		200					
D	Agreement with measurements, percentages, etc.  With a phrase referring to a measurement, amount or quantity we usually prefer a singular verb:  Only three metres separates the runners in first and second places. (rather than separate) and a singular verb must be used when the complement is a singular noun phrase (e.g. a long time):  Three hours seems a long time to take on the homework. (not Three hours seem)						
	When the first noun in a complex subject is a percentage or a fraction the verb agrees with the noun closest to the verb. Compare:  An inflation rate of only 2% makes a difference to exports. (verb agrees with main noun) and About 50% / half of the houses need major repairs. (verb agrees with closest noun)						
	Where we use a singular noun that can be the individuals, we can use either a singular or plus Some 80% of <b>the electorate</b> is expe						

#### 42.1 If necessary, correct the italicised verbs. A & B

- 1 Dr Darsee's present whereabouts is unknown.
- 2 Phenomena such as sun spots have puzzled scientists for centuries.
- 3 Over the last decade the company's overheads has increased dramatically.
- 4 The research data was collected during the period 12th–29th July of last year.
- 5 Congratulations *goes* to Ricky Branch for his excellent exam results.
- 6 The coastal surroundings of the village is particularly attractive.
- 7 He feels that the media have criticised him unfairly.
- 8 Further particulars about the house is available from the owner.
- 9 People says the house is haunted.

1 2 3 4 5 6	Modern linguistics often said to have begun at the start of the 20th century.  I think the Senator's politics extremely right-wing.  If athletics neglected in schools, this will have a big impact on future national teams.  Measles responsible for the death of a large number of children in the region.  Contact us by whatever means most convenient for you: phone, email or text.  Recent statistics evidence of a rapid increase in living standards in Asia.
	mplete these extracts from news articles with a singular or plural form of the verbs in ackets. If both singular and plural forms are possible, write both. (A–D; also Unit 40)
1	The outskirts of our cities
2	On average, 25 litres of water
3	Some 36% of the office space in London(be) presently empty and the opposition parties(blame) high property prices.
4	Three centimetres (be) all that separated the first two runners in last night's 10,000 metres and the sports club (have) declared the race a dead-heat.
5	The research group now(admit) that the criteria they used(be) not totally reliable, and that the figure of 85%(be) exaggerated.
6	Following last week's major art theft from the Arcon Art Gallery, the premises  (be) searched by police last night and the owner's belongings  (have) been taken away for further inspection.
7	A survey of the opinions of students
8	Sufferers from diabetes

## Compound nouns and noun phrases

A	In a compound consisting of <b>noun</b> + <b>noun</b> , often the second noun gives the general class of things to which the compound belongs and the first noun indicates the type within this class. The first noun usually has a singular form:  an address book (= a book for addresses; not an addresses book)
	However, there are a number of exceptions. These include –  when the first noun only has a plural form:  a savings account a customs officer a clothes shop (compare a shoe shop)  the arms trade (arms = weapons) a glasses case (glasses = spectacles. Compare 'a glass  case' = a case made of glass) an arts festival (arts = music, drama, film, dance, painting, etc. Compare 'an art festival'; art = painting, drawing and sculpture)
	when we refer to an institution (an industry, department, etc.), such as  the building materials industry the publications department which deals with more than one kind of item or activity (different types of building material, different forms of publication).
J	Note that to make a compound noun plural we usually make the second noun plural:  coal mine(s) office worker(s) tea leaf / leaves
В	Sometimes a noun + noun is not appropriate and instead we use noun + -'s + noun (possessive form) or noun + preposition + noun. In general, we prefer noun + -'s + noun -  when the first noun is the user (a person or animal) of the item in the second noun:  a baby's bedroom a lion's den a women's clinic a girls' school birds' nests  Note that we use 's after singular nouns (baby's, lion's) and plural nouns that don't end in -s (women's) and s' after plural nouns ending in -s (girls', birds').  when the item in the second noun is produced by the thing (often an animal) in the first: goat's cheese duck's eggs cow's milk (but note lamb chops and chicken drumsticks)  when we talk about parts of people or animals; but we usually use noun + noun to talk about parts of things. Compare:  a woman's face a boy's arm but a pen top a computer keyboard  We prefer noun + preposition + noun -  when we talk about some kind of container together with its contents. Compare:  a cup of tea (= a cup with tea in it) and a tea cup (= a cup for drinking tea from)  when the combination of nouns does not refer to a well-known class of items. Compare:  income tax (a recognised class of tax) and a tax on children's clothes (rather than 'a
9	Some compound nouns are made up of verbs and prepositions or adverbs, and may be related to a
2	multi-word verb (see Unit 94). Compare:  He <b>broke out</b> of the prison by digging a hole through the wall. (= escaped) and  There was a major <b>break-out</b> from the prison last night. (= prisoners escaped)
	Countable compound nouns like this have a plural form ending in -s:  printout(s) push-up(s) intake(s) outcome(s)  However, there are exceptions. For example:  looker(s)-on (or onlooker[s]) runner(s)-up passer(s)-by hanger(s)-on
	We can form other kinds of hyphenated phrases that are placed before nouns to say more precisely what the noun refers to:
	<ul> <li>a state-of-the-art (= very modern) tablet PC</li> <li>up-to-date information</li> </ul>

#### 43.1 If necessary, correct the italicised words. A & B

- 1 Ali worked for a long time in (a) the parks department, but a few years ago he retrained, and now he's (b) a computers programmer. Of course, what he really wants to be is (c) a films star!
- 2 I was waiting at (a) the bus stop this morning when a cyclist on her way to the (b) girl school up the road got knocked off her bike. Someone got out of a car without looking and (c) the car's door hit her. She was very lucky not to be badly hurt, although she did have (d) a head cut.
- 3 I shouldn't be long at (a) the corner shop. I've just got three things on my (b) shopping list (c) a milk bottle, (d) a biscuit packet, and (e) some teethpaste. I'll also look for (f) some goat's cheese, but I don't think they'll have any.
- 4 The tracks on his latest album range from (a) love songs to (b) pollution songs.
- 5 Marta hated going into her grandfather's old (a) tools shed. It was full of (b) spider webs.
- 6 When Jake was cleaning his (a) armschair, he found a lot of things that had slipped down the back. There was an old (b) pentop, a piece from (c) the 500-pieces jigsaw puzzle that his daughter had been doing, and his (d) glass case with his sunglasses inside.
- Underline the multi-word verbs in sentences 1–4, then complete sentences 5–8 with the corresponding compound nouns.
  - 1 Nathan tried to cover up the fact that he had lied and lost most of his money.
  - 2 It is reported that cholera has broken out in the refugee camp.
  - 3 I'm flying to Sydney, but I'm stopping over in Singapore for a few days on the way.
  - 4 On the first Friday of each month, a few of us get together and go ten-pin bowling.
  - 5 The minister was taken ill in Iceland during a short .............................. on his way back to Canada.
  - 6 We didn't have a big party for Jo's 50th birthday, just a family .......
  - 7 Allegations of a ...... of a major leak of radioactive waste from the nuclear power plant have been strongly denied by the Energy Ministry.
  - 8 Only two years ago there was a serious ...... of malaria in the town.
- Match the halves of these phrases, then use them to complete the sentences below. The meaning of the correct phrase is given in brackets.

	<del>day-to-</del> down-to- larger-than- man / woman-in-the- once-in-a- step-by- middle-of-the- round-the
(	clock <del>day</del> earth life lifetime road step street
1	Although the Managing Director of the company was involved in major decisions, she left the day—to—day running of the company to her staff. (routine)
2	The party will never regain power unless it can persuade
3	Since the attempt to assassinate him last year, the Defence Minister has been given protection by the police. (all day and all night)
4	The bookcase came with simple,instructions on how to assemble it. (progressing from one stage to the next)
5	When the comet passes close to Earth next week, scientists will have a opportunity to study its effects on our atmosphere. (very rare
6	Eleni has a refreshing, approach to management. She's much less concerned with theory than with getting things done in the most efficient way possible. (practical)
7	Theisn't interested in the finer points of the government's tappolicy. They just want to know if they are going to take home more or less pay. (ordinary person)
8	Her father was acharacter who was well known throughout

the village for his eccentric way of dressing and outspoken views. (more exaggerated than usual)

## A / an and one

A	We use a before nouns and noun phrases that begin with a consonant sound.  If the noun or noun phrase starts with a vowel letter but begins with a consonant sound, we also use a:  a university (/ə ju:n/)  We use an before words that begin with a vowel sound, including a silent letter 'h':  an orange an Italian an umbrella an hour an honour and abbreviations that when said as individual letters, begin with a vowel sound:  an MP (/ən em pi:/)  But compare abbreviations said as words:  a NATO general (/ə neɪtəʊ /) a FIFA official (/ə fiːfə /) but an OPEC meeting (/ənəʊpek /)  Note that we say:  a history (book) but an (or a) historical (novel)
В	We use a / an (not one) to talk about a particular but unspecified person, thing or event:  I really need a cup of coffee.  You never see a police officer in this part of town, do you?  We also use a / an, not one, in number and quantity expressions such as:  three times a year half an hour a quarter of an hour a day or so (= 'about a day')  50 cents a (= each) litre (note we can also say '50 cents for one litre')  a week or two (= between one and two weeks; note we can also say 'one or two weeks')  a few a little a huge number of  We use a rather than one in the pattern a of with possessives, as in:  She's a colleague of mine.  That's a friend of Gabriel's.
C	Before a singular countable noun, one and a / an both refer to one thing:  We'll be in Australia for one year. (or a year.)  Wait here for one minute, and I'll be with you. (or a minute)  Using one gives a little more emphasis to the length of time, quantity, amount, etc.:  That panda weighs one hundred and twenty kilos! Would you believe it! (using one emphasises the weight more than using a)  However, we use one rather than a / an if we want to emphasise that we are talking about only one thing or person rather than two or more:  Do you want one sandwich or two?  Are you staying only one night?  I just took one look at her and she started crying.  We use one, not a / an, in the pattern one other / another:  Close one eye, and then the other.  Bees carry pollen from one plant to another.  We also use one in phrases such as one day, one evening, one spring, etc. to mean a particular, but unspecified, day, evening, spring, etc.:  Hope to see you again one day.  One evening, while he was working late at the office

	0 N21	-
44.1	Write a or an in the spaces.	A

1	unpaid bill	8	U-turn
2	DIY shop	9	heirloom
3	MP3 player	10	NASA launch
	Euro	11	UN decision
5	STEM subject	12	SOS message
6	Olympic medal	13	F grade
7	AGM	14	hero

- 44.2 If necessary, correct a / an or one in these sentences, or write √. In which sentences are a / an and one both possible? B & C
  - 1 I usually go to the gym four times one week.
  - 2 There's more than one way to solve the problem.
  - 3 I phoned the council to complain, but just got passed on from a person to another.
  - 4 The rate of pay is really good here. You can earn over £30 one hour.
  - 5 Maybe we could go skiing one winter.
  - 6 The apples are €1.50 one kilo.
  - 7 Are you hungry? Would you like one piece of cake?
  - 8 The rules say that there is only one vote per member.
  - 9 You can get 128GB of data on one flash drive.
  - 10 A: What would Leah like for her birthday?
    - в: Why don't you ask Moritz? He's one good friend of her and will have some ideas.
  - 11 There's one pen on the floor. Is it yours?
  - 12 The library books are due back in one month.
  - 13 Do you want some of my chips? There are too many here for a person.
  - 14 I'm going to London for one day or two.
  - 15 Either I'll work late tonight or I'll come in early tomorrow, but the report's got to be finished by lunchtime a way or another.
  - 16 It will take more than one morning to finish the decorating.

## Which is more appropriate, a / an or one? If both a / an and one are possible, write them both.

1	If you waitsecond I'll get my coat and come too.
2	I want to see the riverlast time before I leave.
3	The President is visiting the cityday in November.
4	It was announced that the plane would be approximatelyhour late.
5	I could hear the sound ofhelicopter in the distance.
6	I'd just like to say thing before I go.
7	Misaki's baby isyear old already.
8	Dinner should be ready in hour or so.
9	Hugo came overevening last week.
10	I've painted wall already and I'll do the other tomorrow.
11	I'd like to makepoint here, Carlos, if I may.
12	large number of people had gathered in the square

## A / an, the and zero article 1

	We usually use <b>the</b> when we talk about –  things which are unique; that is, there is only one of them (or one set of them):  the world the sky the atmosphere the sun the ground the climate the horizon the human race the environment the travel industry the internet  general geographical areas with <b>the</b> as in:
	<ul> <li>the beach the town the sea(side) the land the country(side)         (where 'the country' or 'the countryside' means 'the area where there are no towns')     </li> </ul>
	the past the present the future  Note, however, that some nouns like this can be used with zero article (i.e. no article) to refer to a
	<ul> <li>Climate is one of the many factors involved in changing farming methods. (or The climate)</li> <li>These flowers grow best in sandy soil and sun. (= sunshine)</li> <li>In autumn the temperature difference between land and sea decreases. (or the land and the sea)</li> </ul>
	If we want to describe a particular instance of these we can use <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> . Compare:  I could see the plane high up in <b>the sky</b> . and When I woke up there was <b>a bright blue sky</b> . What are your plans for <b>the future</b> ? and She dreamt of <b>a future where she could spend more time painting</b> .
	We can use <b>the</b> when we make generalisations about classes of things using singular countable nouns.  (See also Unit 47A.) Compare the use of <b>the</b> and <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> in these sentences:  The computer has revolutionised publishing. (this refers to computers in general) but not A computer has revolutionised publishing. (not an individual computer)  The computer is an important research tool. and A computer is an important research tool. (this statement is true of both the general class and the individual item)  As an alternative to <b>the</b> + <b>singular countable noun</b> we can use a plural countable noun to talk about a class of things:  Computers are an important research tool.
	Note that if <b>the</b> is used with plural and uncountable nouns we refer to a specific thing or group:  The computers have arrived. Where shall I put them? The music was wonderful. I could have listened to the orchestra all night.
J	When we define something or say what is typical of a particular class of people or things, we generally use a / an rather than the:  A corkscrew is a gadget for getting corks out of bottles.  A garden is there to give you pleasure, not to be a constant worry.
	Some nouns can be used uncountably when we talk about the whole substance or idea, but countably when we talk about particular instances of it. When these nouns are used countably we can use <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> (and plurals). Compare:  O I don't drink <b>coffee</b> . and O Would you like <b>a coffee</b> ? (= a cup of coffee)  He shook with <b>fear</b> . and He has <b>a fear</b> of heights.
	There are many other nouns like this, including <b>conversation</b> , <b>iron</b> , <b>pleasure</b> , <b>shampoo</b> , <b>sound</b> . Some of these nouns (e.g. <b>iron</b> , <b>paper</b> ) have different meanings when they are used countably and uncountably.

Complete both sentences in each pair using one word from the box. Add **the** or **a / an** in an appropriate place in each sentence.

l	each	future	past	world	
1	a Ith	ink the best	Australiar	wine is as	s good as any in
		a child, Dariy y different fr		-	ream about travelling forward in time tod in.
2				FORTO SEL JENIO 50	policies on the simple belief that our purpose is to create n rather than achieving short-term goals for ourselves.
		hough our cu I			tion is worrying, we have many new orders for our product ositive.
3	a Ire	member		better th	an things that happened recently.
	ь Ма	ny tourists co	ome to th	e village lo	ooking forthat never really existed.
	a Ify			The second secon	you can take a small boat to desertedon on
		ar Mum and nding most o			great holiday. The weather's wonderful and we're

- 45.2 Underline the correct or more likely answer. If both answers are possible, underline them both.
  - B
  - 1 We get some strange requests in our shop. We had *the customer | a customer* in the other day who wanted to buy chocolate-covered ants.
  - 2 It often seems that the individual / an individual can have little impact on government policy.
  - 3 The invention of a car / the car is normally attributed to the German engineer Gottlieb Daimler.
  - 4 The television / A television has changed the way we think more than any other modern invention.
  - 5 The campaign against smoking in public places argues that its harmful effects are not confined to the smoker / a smoker.
- Complete the sentences using the nouns from the box. Use each noun twice. If necessary, insert a / an in the correct place.

(	conversation shampoo iron pleasure sound	
100	a	
1	My sisters were clearly having / serious conversation so I didn't like to disturb them.	
2	It now gives me greatto introduce that marvellous performer, Marco Lutman.	
3	As we walked through the rainforest we heard we weren't expecting – the ring mobile phone.	of a
4	You can usually find little bottles ofin hotel bathrooms.	
5	Most red meat is relatively high in	
6	travels at different speeds, depending on the temperature of the air.	
7	It's real to travel by rail in Sweden. The trains are clean and punctual.	
8	I needthat's good for dry hair.	
9	Although he's gothe never seems to use it. His shirts are always creased.	
10	As she walked into the garden,ceased and everyone at the party stared at her.	00



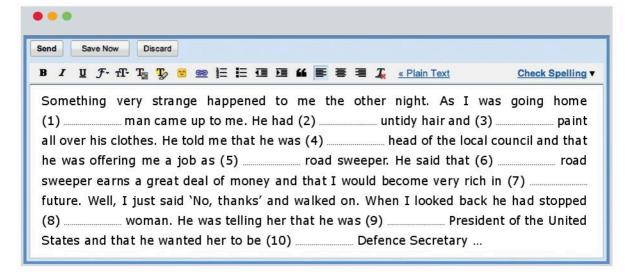
# A / an, the and zero article 2

A	We use a / an to talk about a type of job:  She was a company director when she retired.  Against her parents' wishes, she wants to be a journalist.  However, when we give a person's job title, or their unique position, we use the or zero article (i.e. no article), not a / an. Compare:  She's been appointed (the) head of the company. and  I'm a production manager at Fino. (= there may be more than one production manager)  After the position of, the post of, or the role of we use zero article before a job title (Note that job titles often start with capital letters):  Dr Simons has taken on the position of Head of Department.
В	We usually use zero article before the name of an individual person or place. However, we use the −  when there are two people with the same name to specify which one we mean:  That's not the Stephen Fraser I went to school with.  but compare 'There was a Stephen Fraser in my class.' (= a person named Stephen Fraser)  when we want to emphasise that the person we are referring to is the most famous person with that name. Used this way, the is stressed and pronounced /ðiː/:  Do they mean the Neil Armstrong, or someone else?  with an adjective to describe a person, or another noun which tells us their job:  the late Stephen Hawking (= no longer alive)  (the) artist Joseph Turner ('the' is sometimes left out, particularly in journalism)  when we talk about a family as a whole:  The Robinsons are away this weekend.
С	Note that a / an, or sometimes zero article, is used with a name when referring to the particular excellent qualities of the person named:  Majid plays tennis well, but he'll never be (a) Roger Federer.  We also use a / an when we refer to an individual example of a product made by a particular manufacturer (e.g. I've just bought a Mercedes) or a work by a particular artist (e.g. Do you think it could be a Van Gogh / a Rembrandt?).  You can use a / an before a person's name if you don't know the person yourself. Compare:  Dr Lee is here for you. (= I know Dr Lee) and  There's a Dr Amy Lee on the phone. (= I haven't heard of her before) Do you want to talk to her?
D	When telling stories and jokes, <b>this</b> is commonly used instead of <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> to introduce a new person or thing. Using <b>this</b> highlights the person or thing as the topic of what is to come next:  As I was walking along, <b>this</b> spider (= a spider) landed on my head, and  This man (= a man) goes into a chemist and he says
E	We use <b>the</b> before a <i>superlative adjective</i> ( <b>the biggest</b> , <b>the most expensive</b> , etc.) when the superlative adjective is followed by a noun or defining phrase:  He is <b>the finest</b> <i>young player</i> around at the moment.  However, we can often leave out <b>the</b> , particularly in an informal style, when there is no noun or defining phrase after the superlative adjective. Compare:  A: Why did you decide to stay in this hotel?  B: It was ( <b>the</b> ) <b>cheapest</b> . <i>and</i> It was <b>the cheapest</b> I could find.

- 46.1 If necessary, correct any mistakes in these sentences. If they are already correct, write ✓. A-C
  - 1 She was determined to be author one day.
  - 2 She recently became the minister in the new government.
  - 3 A: What make is your computer? B: It's Mac.
  - 4 I found myself talking to Mariah Carey! Not Mariah Carey, of course, but someone with the same name.
  - 5 I didn't even know Clara was interested in art until I heard that she owns Van Gogh.
  - 6 I've been offered the position of Director of Personnel.
  - 7 We're going on holiday with Nielsens.
  - 8 He's really keen on athletics. He likes to think of himself as the Usain Bolt.
- 46.2 Put a / an, the or zero article (-) in the spaces. Give all possible answers. A-C
  - 1 I'm ..... marketing adviser at Dozzle.
  - 2 Leon's ..... manager of his local football team.
  - 3 She has been appointed ...... Minister for Industry.
  - 4 A special award was given to ......novelist Ian McMurphy.

  - 6 We met our good friend \_\_\_\_\_ Bliza Borg when we were in \_\_\_\_ Malta.
  - 7 When Lucia was young she knew ...... Picasso.
  - 8 .....Linda Green is outside. Do you want to see her?
- 46.3 If the italicised the can be left out of these sentences, put brackets around it. 🗈
  - 1. It's the best ice-cream I've ever tasted.
  - 2 Rodrigo's boat wasn't the most elegant in the harbour, but it was certainly the biggest.
  - 3 I thought the second competitor was the best, even though he didn't win a prize.
  - 4 This is by far the most valuable painting in the collection.
  - 5 A: Why did you ask Martina to go first? B: Because she's the oldest.
  - 6 Sapphires occur in a variety of colours, but blue ones are the most valuable.
  - 7 The Pacific is *the* biggest ocean in the world.
  - 8 It's supposed to be the oldest post office in the country.
- Complete the email with a / an, the, zero article or this. Give alternatives where possible.

  Units 45 & 46



Unit **47** 

# A / an, the and zero article 3

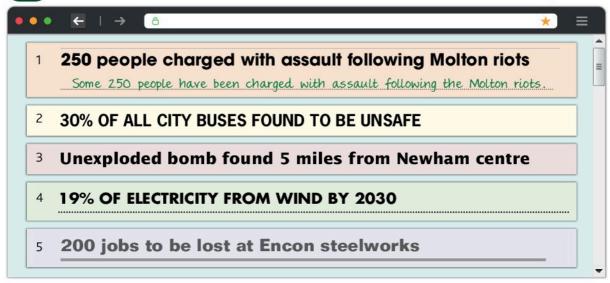
A	With plural and uncountable nouns, <b>zero article</b> is used to talk generally, without definite people or things in mind. <b>The</b> is used when we are referring to specific people or things. Compare:  The government has promised not to tax <b>books</b> . (= books generally) and The books have arrived. (= the books you ordered)  Music played an important part in his life. (= music generally) and I thought <b>the music</b> used in the film was the best part. (= that particular music)
В	We often use zero article with the names of holidays, special times of the year, months, and days of the week including Easter, Ramadan, New Year's Day. But compare:    I'll see you on Saturday. (= next Saturday)   We met on Saturday. (= last Saturday)   They came on a Saturday as far as I can remember. (we are only interested in the day of the week, not which particular Saturday)   They came on the Saturday after our party. (a particular Saturday, specifying which one)  With winter, summer, spring, autumn, and New Year (meaning the holiday period), we can use either zero article or the:   In (the) summer I try to spend as much time as I can in the garden.  We use the when it is understood or we go on to specify which summer, spring, etc. we mean:   I'd like to go skiing in the autumn. (= this year)   I first went skiing in the spring of 2002.  We say 'in the New Year' to mean near the beginning of next year:   I'll see you again in the New Year.
	When we want to say that a particular holiday, season or period of time was somehow special, we can use It / That was + a / an + noun + modifying phrase. Compare:  That was a winter I'll never forget. (= compared to other winters it was unforgettable) and That was the winter we went to Norway. (= a statement about a particular winter)
С	We use <b>zero article</b> with times of the day and night such as <b>midnight</b> , <b>midday</b> , and <b>noon</b> :  If possible, I'd like it finished by <b>midday</b> .  Midnight couldn't come quickly enough.  But note that we can say either <b>the dawn</b> or <b>dawn</b> :  He got back into bed and waited for ( <b>the</b> ) <b>dawn</b> .
	We use the + morning / afternoon / evening for a day which is understood or already specified:  I enjoyed the morning, but in the afternoon the course was boring.  But compare:  Morning is the time I work best. (= mornings in general; The morning is also possible)  I'll be there by (the) morning / evening. (but by the afternoon, not by afternoon)  I waited all morning. (more usual than all the morning / afternoon, etc.)  'You look upset.' 'Yes, I've had a terrible morning.' (= compared to other mornings)
D	We use by + zero article with some verbs to talk about means of transport and communication.  Compare:  I generally go by bus to work. and I generally take the bus to work.  Also: go / travel by car / taxi / bus / plane / train / air / sea; contact / communicate by post / email / phone

(	ag	riculture	children	fire	holidays	islands	money	parents	rain
1	a		as you	ung as te	en are working	g in the clotl	ning industr	у.	
	b	While you	're painting tl	ne sittin	g room, I'll ta	ke	ove	r to the park	
2	а	As the soil	quality deter	iorated,	so too did			on which the	e region
		depended							Ü
	Ь	5.0		our force	e in the count	y is support	ed by		
3					are being				
					oast of Malay				
4					I'm really lo				
			-		n rainforests a	_			ellers.
5					i				
6		_			you on your	lesk.			
					is the root of				
7					use this soft		k their child	d's use of the	intern
10707					as claimed tha				
8					s ctarried the				
-					more than an				
					AND 18 - 18 - 18 - 18 - 18 - 18 - 18 - 18				
		•	_		, the or zero	2. 5.			/. Whe
m	ore	than one	answer is po	ssible, c	onsider any o	lifference ir	meaning.	B & C	
1	A:	What's the	matter?						
	B:	I've been v	vorking in the	garden	all	afternoon a	ind my back	aches.	
2			member whe				,		
			Sunda						
3			you get your l	5 550	es Process and section of the contract				
				50 50	ecause it was	also	dav I pa	assed my driv	ving tes
4					. в: He's beei				
					on the phone				
					Sunday				
		40.70			did all the co				
					istmas the res		flu		
8					Christmas.			oliday	
					warm enough				
,			t. I need a ne		chough				
10		-			ad that terrib	le row?			
					day		ant to go th	mugh again	
	υ.	riow could	rriorget. The	t was		Wouldn't W	une to go ti	nough again	
C	om	plete the s	sentences usi	ng the v	words from th	ne box (mor	e than once	e). Add any o	ther
n	ece	ssary word	ds. D						
1	air	car	email p	ost					
1	all	Cai	emait p	ost					
1	A:	I got		from C	Carla yesterda	y. в: How i	s she now?		
					come				
					nts are efficie			nts in	
							_		
			I think I'll tal				3		
0		10.000		(e					
	A:	Shall I send					t in touch w	vith him is	
7			d Goran a lett	er? в: N	No, the quicke	st way to ge			
7	Th	ailand – G	d Goran a lett	er? в: N		st way to ge			

## Some and any

A	Some Reminder → I10–I21
	Before plural and uncountable nouns we sometimes use <b>some</b> or <b>zero article</b> (i.e. no article) with very little difference in meaning:  'Where were you last week?' 'I was visiting ( <b>some</b> ) friends.'  Before serving, pour ( <b>some</b> ) yoghurt over the top.  With both <b>some</b> and <b>zero article</b> , we are referring to particular people or things but in an indefinite way. When it is used in this way, <b>some</b> is usually pronounced /səm/.
	We don't use <b>some</b> to make general statements about whole classes of things or people:  Machinery can be dangerous unless used properly.  Babies need a lot of attention.
В	Some is used before a number to mean 'approximately':  Some eighty per cent of all residents took part in the vote. (= approximately eighty per cent)  When it is used in this way, some is usually pronounced /s^m/.
С	When we don't know, can't remember, or it is not important exactly which person or thing we are talking about, we can use <b>some</b> instead of <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> with a singular noun. When it is used in this way, <b>some</b> is usually pronounced /snm/.  He was interrupted twice by <b>some</b> troublemaker in the audience.
	We use the phrase <b>some (thing) or other</b> in a similar way:  I bought them from <b>some</b> shop <b>or other</b> in New Street. (not from a shop or other)
D	Any  We usually use any not some (and anyone, anything, etc. not someone, something, etc.) −  in non-affirmative contexts.  to refer to non-specific, unspecified things.  For example, we generally use any in sentences with a negative meaning:  There's hardly any sugar left.  I closed the windows to prevent any flies getting in.  It was impossible to see anything in the dark.  We got to the airport without any difficulty.
	Also with: barely, never, rarely, scarcely, seldom (= negative adverbs); deny, fail, forbid, prohibit, refuse (= negative verbs); reluctant, unable, unlikely (= negative adjectives)
	However, we use <b>some</b> with these negative words—  when <b>some</b> (pronounced /sʌm/) has the implication 'not all':  I talk to colleagues before I make <b>some</b> decisions, but I had to make this one on my own.  when the basic meaning is positive:  Somebody isn't telling the truth. (= There is some person [who isn't telling the truth])  when we are talking about a particular but unspecified person or thing:  I was reluctant to repeat <b>something</b> so critical of Paul. (= a specific criticism)
E	<ul> <li>We often use any in clauses that begin with before, and with comparisons:</li> <li>I cleared up the mess before anyone saw it. (' before someone saw it' suggests that I have a particular person in mind who might see it)</li> <li>The material felt softer than anything she had ever touched before.</li> <li>Anything can be used in clauses where some words have been left out:</li> <li>Anything you need, just ask. (= If there is anything you need)</li> </ul>

- 48.1 If necessary, correct these sentences by writing some in an appropriate place or crossing it out. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓. A & Reminder I10–I14
  - 1 If you're going to the library, could you take back books that I've finished reading?
  - 2 The price of some coffee is at an all-time low.
  - 3 Tony knows more about some jazz than anyone I've ever met.
  - 4 The door kept flying open in the wind so I tied it up with string.
  - 5 Sports are dangerous.
  - 6 I need to get some bread from the supermarket.
  - 7 Money can't buy you some happiness.
  - 8 Children are taller than expected at a given age.
- 48.2 Rewrite these news headlines as full sentences using some to mean 'approximately'. B



48.3 Complete the sentences in any appropriate way using some + singular noun or some + singular noun + or other.

1	I don't know where I got the information from. I must have heard it
	on some radio programme (or other).

- 2 I don't know where Jakub is. He's probably out with ..... 3 Idon't know where the book is. Maybe I lent it.
- 4 Idon't know where Zuzanna works. I think it's in ...
- 5 Idon't know why Nika is still at work. Perhaps she's got to finish ......
- 48.4 Complete these sentences with some, someone, something, any, anyone or anything.

W	there both <b>some(one / thing)</b> or <b>any(one / thing)</b> are possible, write both and consider an
di	fference in meaning. D & E
1	Elias worked hard at learning Japanese but failed to makereal progress.

- 2 I was unable to eat ...... of the food.
- 3 I always offer to help organise school concerts, but there is seldom .......for me to do.
- 5 He denied that he had done ......wrong.
- 6 I always get to work before .....else.
- 7 The theatre is unlikely to have \_\_\_\_\_\_tickets left for tonight's performance.
- 8 ......you want to ask me, my office is just across the corridor.
- 9 ......parents never seem to have time to sit down and talk to their children.
- 10 When I last lent my laptop out it got damaged, so I'm reluctant to lend it to

## No, none (of) and not any

A	We can use <b>no</b> and <b>none</b> ( <b>of</b> ) instead of <b>not a</b> or <b>not any</b> for particular emphasis. Compare:  There is <b>n't a</b> train until tomorrow. and There's <b>no</b> train until tomorrow. (more emphatic)  Sorry, there is <b>n't any</b> left. and Sorry, there's <b>none</b> left.  He did <b>n't</b> have <b>any</b> of the usual symptoms. and He had <b>none of</b> the usual symptoms.  We use other pairs of negative words and phrases in a similar way:  There is <b>n't anyone</b> / <b>anybody</b> here. and There's <b>no one</b> / <b>nobody</b> here. (more emphatic)  She was <b>n't anywhere</b> to be seen. and She was <b>nowhere</b> to be seen.  Why do <b>n't</b> you <b>ever</b> call me? and Why do you <b>never</b> call me?
В	We don't usually use <b>not a / any</b> , <b>not anyone</b> , etc. to begin a sentence or clause, or straight after <b>and</b> , <b>but</b> or <b>that</b> . Instead we use <b>no</b> , <b>none of</b> , <b>no one</b> , etc.:  No force was needed to make them move. (not Not any force was needed)  Most players are under 16 and <b>none of</b> them is over 20. (not and not any of them)  I'm sure that <b>nothing</b> can go wrong. (not that not anything can)
С	In a formal or literary style we can use <b>not a</b> in initial position or after <b>and</b> , <b>but</b> or <b>that</b> (see also Unit 100):  Not a sound came from the room. (less formally There wasn't a sound from the room.)  She kept so quiet that <b>not a</b> soul in the house knew she was there.
D	After no, we can often use either a singular or a plural noun with little difference in meaning, although a singular noun is usually more formal:  No answers could be found. (or more formally No answer)  We want to go to the island but there are no boats to take us. (or more formally there is no boat.)  However, we use a singular noun in situations where we would expect one of something, and a plural noun where we would expect more than one. Compare:  I phoned Sarah at home, but there was no answer. (not but there were no answers.) and  He seems very lonely at school, and has no friends. (not no friend.)
E	We can give special emphasis to <b>no</b> or <b>none of</b> using phrases like <b>no amount of</b> with uncountable nouns, <b>not one</b> / <b>not a single</b> with singular countable nouns, and <b>not one of</b> with plural nouns:  The company is so badly managed that <b>no amount of</b> investment will make it successful. <b>Not one</b> person remembered my birthday. (or <b>Not a single</b> person) <b>Not one of</b> the families affected by the noise wants to move.  Whatsoever can also be added after a negative phrase to add emphasis:  I have no interest whatsoever in taking up running.
F	Some phrases with <b>no</b> are commonly used in informal spoken English: <b>No wonder</b> (= it's not surprising); <b>No idea</b> (= I don't know); <b>No comment</b> (= I have nothing to say); <b>No way, No chance</b> (= emphatic ways of saying 'no', particularly to express refusal to do or believe something); <b>No problem, No bother</b> (= it isn't / wasn't difficult to do something):  'The computer's not working again.' ' <b>No wonder</b> . It's not plugged in!'  'Thanks for the lift.' ' <b>No problem</b> . I had to go past the station anyway.'

no none none of no one nothing relation  a drop else going to get heard the hote in the cupboard point wrong  Where are the biscuits? There are none in the cupboard was spossible and was severe.	
a drop else going to get heard the hote in the cupboard point wrong  Where are the biscuits? There are none in the cupbo We left the house as quietly as possible and	
in the cupboard point wrong  Where are the biscuits? There are none in the cupbo We left the house as quietly as possible and	
2 We left the house as quietly as possible and	pard.
3was s	
4 She was determined to leave and I knew there was	
The door was locked and he had	
5 I found that	3
7 Liam's so lazy. Is he	
5 The doctors reassured Entity that they could find	
ause there (2) <i>is no train or bus</i> on the island. But it was incredibly eatbelt. And then when I had a puncture I discovered there (4) we h, and as there (5) were no people around to help, I phoned the cone to turn up. It was hot and there (6) was no shade as there (7) is much better. There (8) were no swimming pools — even though it:	ere no spare tyres either. It was in the hills car hire company and had to wait hours for s no tree in that part of the island. The hote
risions in my room, and on the first night there (10) was no hot wa in, there (11) were no replies. The food was awful at the hotel, but there (13) were no choices – I had to eat there. But I (14) have no soon,	ater. But when I phoned down to reception tas there (12) were no restaurants for mile
Complete these sentences in any appropriate way begin	nning not one (of) or no amount of
Complete these sentences in any appropriate way beging I made lots of cakes for the party but mot one of the	tion of the second of the seco
I made lots of cakes for the party but not one of the	tion of the second of the seco
I made lots of cakes for the party but <u>not one of the</u> Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and	e children liked them.
I made lots of cakes for the party but not one of the	e children liked them. ut
I made lots of cakes for the party but not one of the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sir	e children liked them. ut
I made lots of cakes for the party but not one of the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sir The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and	e children liked them. ut nce 1978
I I made lots of cakes for the party but not one of the Month of Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sire. The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit	e children liked them.  ut  nce 1978  te to complete these dialogues.
I I made lots of cakes for the party butnot_one_of_the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sir The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and  Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit A: Can you give me a lift to the station? B:	e children liked them.  ut  nce 1978  te to complete these dialogues.
I I made lots of cakes for the party butnot_one_of_the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sir The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and  Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit A: Can you give me a lift to the station? A: I've got a headache.	e children liked them.  ut  nce 1978  te to complete these dialogues.   [F]
I I made lots of cakes for the party butnot_one_ of_ the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sire The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and  Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit A: Can you give me a lift to the station?  A: I've got a headache. B:	e children liked them.  ut  nce 1978  te to complete these dialogues.   [F]
I I made lots of cakes for the party butnot_one_ of_ the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sin The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and  Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit A: Can you give me a lift to the station? B:	e children liked them.  ut  nce 1978  te to complete these dialogues. F
I I made lots of cakes for the party butnot_one_of_the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sin The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and  Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit A: Can you give me a lift to the station? B:	e children liked them.  ut  nce 1978  te to complete these dialogues. F
I I made lots of cakes for the party butnot_one_of_the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sin The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and  Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit A: Can you give me a lift to the station? B:	te to complete these dialogues.  I'll pick you up at eight.  uter screen for hours.  h.
I I made lots of cakes for the party butnot_one_of_the Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but Smallpox used to be common all over the world but sin The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and  Choose one of the No phrases from section F opposit A: Can you give me a lift to the station? B:	e children liked them.  ut  nce 1978  te to complete these dialogues.   I'll pick you up at eight.  uter screen for hours.  h.  kitchen.

## Much (of), many (of), a lot of, lots (of), etc.

A	much (of) and many (of), particularly in informal contexts. However, there are a number of exceptions –  in formal contexts, such as academic writing, much (of) and many (of) are preferred. We can also use phrases such as a large / considerable / substantial amount of (with uncountable nouns), or a large / considerable / great / substantial number of (with plural nouns):  Much debate has been heard about Thornton's new book.  There could be many explanations for this.  Much of her fiction describes women in unhappy marriages.  A large amount of the food was inedible. (or Much of)  The book contains a large number of pictures, many in colour. (or many)  in formal contexts we can use much and many as pronouns:  There is no guarantee she will recover. Much depends on how well she responds to treatment.  Many (= many people) have argued that she is the finest poet of our generation.  Not once did I see a tiger in the jungle, although I heard many. (referring back to 'tiger(s)')  We usually use many rather than a lot of or lots of with time expressions (days, minutes, months, weeks, years) and number + of (e.g. thousands of voters, millions of pounds):  We used to spend many hours driving to Melbourne and back.  He was the founder of a company now worth many millions of pounds.
В	We can use <b>many</b> following <b>the</b> , <b>my</b> , <b>its</b> , <b>his</b> , <b>her</b> , etc. and plural countable nouns:  Among the <b>many</b> unknowns after the earthquake is the extent of the structural damage.
	The gallery is exhibiting some of his many famous paintings of ships.
	We can use the phrase <b>many a</b> with a singular noun to talk about a repeated event or a large number of people or things:  Many a pupil at the school will be pleased that Latin is no longer compulsory.
C	To emphasise a large number we can use <b>a good</b> / <b>great many</b> with a plural noun:  She has <b>a good</b> / <b>great many</b> friends in New Zealand.
	To emphasise a large amount we can use <b>a good / great deal of</b> with a singular or uncountable noun:  • A good / great deal of the exhibition was devoted to her recent work.
D	We use far (not 'much' or 'many') before too many + a plural countable noun or too much + an uncountable noun:
	Far too many students failed the end-of-year maths exam. (not Much / Many too many) Far too much time is wasted filling in forms. (not Much / Many too much time)
E	We often use <b>plenty of</b> instead of <b>a lot of</b> or <b>lots of</b> with uncountable and plural countable nouns. However, <b>plenty of</b> means 'enough, or more than enough' and is therefore not always appropriate.
	Compare:  We took <b>lots of / plenty of</b> food and drink on our walk through the hills. and  Nina doesn't look well. She's lost <b>a lot of</b> weight. ('plenty of' is unlikely here)
F	We can use quantifiers like <b>millions of</b> (+a plural countable noun), <b>loads of</b> and <b>tons of</b> (+ uncountable or plural countable noun) in informal contexts, exaggerating to stress large numbers or quantities:
	<ul> <li>I've got tons of work to do before I get away on holiday.</li> <li>There were millions of people out shopping today. It was unbearable.</li> </ul>

espresso.

Make corrections or improvements to these academic writing (4–6). A, C, D, E & F	extracts from conversations (1–3) and from
Lola's had many problems with her back for a lot of years. She's having an operation next week and she won't be back at work for a good deal of weeks afterwards.	A lot have claimed that Professor Dowman's study on current attitudes to politics is flawed. One criticism is that much too many people questioned in the survey were under 18.
2 (a: There's bound to be much traffic on the way to the station. Perhaps we should leave now.	A lot of research has been conducted on the effects of diet on health, with a lot of studies focusing on the link between fat intake and heart disease. However, a lot remains to be done.
B: No, there's plenty time left, and at this time of day many	
people will already be at work.	While it is true that a lot of thousands of jobs were lost with the decline of the northern
A: Many think that hedgehogs are very rare nowadays, but when I was in Wales I saw many.	coal and steel industries, a lot of advantages have also followed. Much too many cases of lung disease were recorded in the region, but with lower levels of pollution the number has declined. In addition, a great deal of hi-tech
B: Oh, there's millions of wildlife in Wales.	companies have moved in to take advantage of the newly available workforce.
coffee shops expeditions German emails ship sunny afternoon to She went to stay in Munich with one of	y / its / his / her many or many a / an, and one relatives golf courses eacher er many German relatives. sitting on the terrace looking out over the hills
	as been lost in the dangerous waters off the south
coast of the island.	0
4 The area is most famous for	"which attract players fro
all over the world.	
5 Since the end of last year he has refused to	speak to me on the phone or answer
6 Oliver Svensson accompanied the professor	r on
to the Himalayas and the Andes.	
	ill be looking forward to the start of the school
holidays.	
8 I went into the first of	along New Street and ordered

## All (of), whole, every, each

A	All (of) Reminder → 143–146
	We sometimes use all after the noun or pronoun it refers to:  — His songs all sound much the same to me. (or All [of] his songs sound)  — We all think Kushi's working too hard. (or All of us think)
	Note that we usually put <b>all</b> after the verb <b>be</b> and after the first auxiliary verb if there is one:  They are <b>all</b> going to Athens during the vacation. (not They all are going)  You should <b>all</b> have three question papers. (not You all should have; however, note that we can say 'You <u>all</u> should have' for particular emphasis in spoken English)
В	To make negative sentences with <b>all</b> ( <b>of</b> ) we usually use <b>not all</b> ( <b>of</b> ) rather than <b>all not</b> :  Not all ( <b>of</b> ) the seats were taken. <i>or</i> The seats were <b>not all</b> taken.
J	Note that <b>not all (of)</b> and <b>none of</b> have a different meaning. Compare:  Not all (of) my cousins were at the wedding. (= some of them were there) and  None of my cousins were at the wedding. (= not one of them was there)
C	All and whole
	Before singular countable nouns we usually use <b>the whole</b> rather than <b>all the</b> :  They weren't able to stay for <b>the whole</b> concert. ( <i>rather than</i> for all the concert.)
	However, we can say all + day / week / night / month / winter, etc. (but not usually all October / 2001 / 21st May, etc.; all Monday / Tuesday, etc. are only usually used in informal contexts); all the time, all the way; and in informal speech we can use all the with things that we see as being made up of parts (all the world / house / city / country / department, etc.):  After the fire the whole city was covered in dust. (or all the city in informal speech)  Note that we can use entire instead of whole immediately before a countable noun:  The whole / entire building has recently been renovated.
J	Before plural nouns we can use <b>all</b> ( <b>of</b> ) or <b>whole</b> , but they have different meanings. Compare:  All ( <b>of</b> ) <b>the towns</b> had their electricity cut off. (= every town in an area) and  After the storm, <b>whole towns</b> were left without electricity. (= some towns were completely affected; note that we don't say ' whole the towns')
D	Every and each
	Often we can use every or each with little difference in meaning. However, we use every — with almost, virtually, etc. + noun to emphasise we are talking about a group as a whole:  Almost every visitor stopped and stared. (not Almost each visitor)  with a plural noun when every is followed by a number:  I go to the dentist every six months. (rather than each six months.)  with abstract uncountable nouns such as chance, confidence, hope, reason, and sympathy to show a positive attitude to what we are saying. Here every means 'complete' or 'total':  She has every chance of success in her application for the job.  in phrases referring to regular or repeated events such as: every other (kilometre), every single (day), every so often, every few (months), and every now and again (= occasionally).
	We use each —  before a noun or one to talk about both people or things in a pair:  □ I only had two suitcases, but each one weighed over 20 kilos.  as a pronoun:  □ I asked many people and each gave the same answer. (or each / every one gave)

51.1	Put all in the more appropriate space in each sentence.	A	6
- 1.1	Tat att in the more appropriate space in each sentence.	443	,

They were	sitting around the table	e waiting for me.
-----------	--------------------------	-------------------

- 2 You \_\_\_\_ can \_\_\_ stay for dinner if you want.
- going to be late if we don't hurry. .... are .....
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_started to speak at once.
- 6 We have \_\_\_\_\_ been \_\_\_\_ involved in the decision.

#### 51.2 Underline the more appropriate answer. If both are possible, underline them both.



- 1 All the process / The whole process takes only a few minutes.
- 2 All areas of the country / Whole areas of the country have been devastated by the floods, although others haven't had rain for months.
- 3 All the trip / The whole trip cost me less than \$1,000.
- 4 The new rail network links all of the towns / whole towns in the region.
- 5 When I picked up the book I found that all of the pages / whole pages had been ripped out. There wasn't a single one left.
- 6 The new heating system makes all the building / the whole building warmer.
- 7 All the room / The whole room was full of books.

#### 51.3 Complete these sentences with every or each, whichever is more appropriate. If you can use either every or each, write them both.

- reason to believe that she would keep my secret.
- 2 The ten lucky winners will receive £1,000.
- 3 We've discussed the problem in virtually ...... meeting for the last year.
- 4 Hugh sends us a photo from ......place he visits.
- 5 In a rugby league game ......side has 13 players.
- 6 They had to take out \_\_\_\_\_ single part of the engine and clean it.
- 7 Antibiotics were given to \_\_\_\_\_ child in the school as a precaution.
- 8 The two girls walked in, ...... one carrying a bouquet of flowers.
- 10 You should take two tablets \_\_\_\_\_four hours.

#### Find any mistakes in the italicised parts of this blog post and suggest corrections. A-D

x + (1) Each so often I like to invite (2) my entire family – my parents, six brothers and their families - over for dinner on a Saturday evening. My parents are quite old now, so I like to see them (3) each few weeks. It's quite a lot of work and I usually spend (4) all Friday shopping and cooking. Some of my family are fussy about what they eat, so I generally have to cook different things for (5) every of them. Fortunately, (6) all the food doesn't usually get eaten, so I have plenty left for the rest of the week. (7) None of my brothers always come, but the ones who live locally usually do. Last Saturday (8) Neil and his family all were on holiday so they couldn't make it. Anyway, (9) the rest of us had all a great time and we spent (10) the whole evening talking about when we were children.

## Few, little, less, fewer

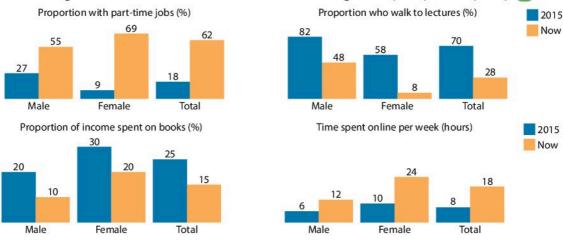
A	We often use (a) few and (a) little with nouns. However, we can also use them as pronouns:  Reminder → 147–152
	<ul> <li>It is a part of the world visited by few. (= few people)</li> <li>Do you want a chocolate? There's still a few left. (= a few chocolates)</li> <li>Little is known about the painter's early life.</li> <li>'Do you know anything about car engines?' 'A little.' (= I know a little about car engines)</li> </ul>
	Note that <b>quite a few</b> means 'quite a large number':  She's been away from work for <b>quite a few</b> weeks.
В	We can use <b>the few</b> and <b>the little</b> followed by a noun or noun phrase to suggest 'not enough' when we talk about a group of things or people (with <b>few</b> ) or part of a group or amount (with <b>little</b> ):  It's one of <b>the few</b> shops in the city centre where you can buy food.  We should use <b>the little</b> time we have available to discuss Jon's proposal.
	Instead of the few / little we can use what few / little to mean 'the small (number / amount)':  She gave what little money she had in her purse to the man. (or the little money)  What few visitors we have are always made welcome. (or The few visitors)  Note that we can also say 'She gave what / the little she had' and 'What / The few we have' when it is clear from the context what is being referred to.
	We can use <b>few</b> (but rarely <b>little</b> ) after possessive determiners ( <b>my</b> , <b>her</b> , etc.) and <b>these</b> and <b>those</b> :  I learned to play golf during <b>my few</b> days off during the summer.  These <b>few</b> miles of motorway have taken over ten years to build.
C	In speech and informal writing, we use <b>not many</b> / <b>much</b> or <b>only</b> / <b>just a few</b> / <b>little</b> to talk about a small amount or number, and we often use <b>a bit</b> ( <b>of</b> ) in this way instead of <b>a little</b> :  Sorry I haven't finished, I <b>haven't</b> had <b>much</b> time today. (rather than I had little time)  I won't be long. I've <b>only</b> got <b>a few</b> things to get. (rather than I've got few things)  Want <b>a bit</b> of chocolate? (rather than a little chocolate?)
J	In more formal contexts, such as academic writing, we generally prefer <b>few</b> and <b>little</b> :  The results take <b>little</b> account of personal preference. ( <i>rather than</i> don't take much)
D	Less (than) and fewer (than)
	We use less with uncountable nouns and fewer with plural countable nouns:  You should eat less pasta.  There are fewer cars on the road today.  Less is sometimes used with a plural countable noun (e.g less cars), particularly in conversation. However, this is grammatically incorrect.
	We use <b>less than</b> with a noun phrase indicating an amount and <b>fewer than</b> with a noun phrase referring to a group of things or people: <ul> <li>I used to earn <b>less than</b> a pound a week when I first started work.</li> <li>There were <b>fewer than</b> 20 students at the lecture. (or informally <b>less than</b>; but note that some people think this use of 'less than' is incorrect)</li> </ul>
	When we talk about a distance or a sum of money we use <b>less than</b> , not <b>fewer than</b> :  The beach is <b>less than</b> a mile away.
	To emphasise that a number is surprisingly large we can use <b>no less than</b> or <b>no fewer than</b> :  The team has had <b>no fewer than</b> ten managers in just five years. (or <b>no less than</b> )  Note that we prefer <b>no less than</b> with percentages, periods of time and quantities:  Profits have increased by <b>no less than</b> 95% in the last year. (rather than no fewer than)

- 52.1 Complete the sentences with (a) few, (a) little, the few, the little, what few or what little, giving alternatives where possible. A & B
  - 1 Thomas was named sportsperson of the year, and ......would disagree.
  - 2 .....remains of the old castle walls except the Black Gate.
  - 3 She called her .....remaining relatives together and told them she was leaving.
  - 4 Simpson is among ......foreign journalists allowed into the country.
  - 5 A: Has my explanation helped? B: ....., yes.
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_belongings she had were packed into a small suitcase.
  - 7 Maya hasn't been looking well recently, and I'm ......worried about her.
  - 8 A: Have there been many applications for the job? B: Yes, quite ......
  - 9 The children weren't well so I had to take ......days off.
  - 10 I don't have much money, but I'm happy to lend you ......I have.
- 52.2 Suggest improvements to the italicised text in these examples from conversations (1–4) and from academic writing (5–8).
  - 1 A: Did you do anything last night?

    2 Take some sweets if you want, although there are few left.

    3 (I've tried to help her, but there's little more I can do.)

    4 See that old car over there? There's few like that left now.
  - 5 The country hasn't had many female politicians since independence.
  - 6 It is thought that the two leaders didn't exchange many words on their first meeting.
  - 7 Teachers were found to be a bit more confident after the extra training.
  - 8 There doesn't seem to be much prospect of ever recovering the missing manuscript.
- A survey of British university students was conducted in 2015 and recently repeated. Some of the results are given below. Comment on them in sentences using fewer (than) or less (than).



- 1 Proportion with part-time jobs (%)
  Fewer students had a part-time job in 2015 than now.
- 2 Proportion of money spent on books (%)
- 3 Proportion who walk to lectures (%)
- 4 Time spent online per week (hours)

Are there any results that surprise you? Comment on them using no less than or no fewer than.

### Relative pronouns

Λ	

Relative clauses usually begin with a relative pronoun (which, that, who etc.). However, we can sometimes omit the relative pronoun:

【Reminder → J1-J5 】

We went to a beach (which / that) Ali had recommended to us.

Here the relative pronoun refers to 'a beach', and the subject of the relative clause is 'Ali'. Compare:

☐ I know a man **who / that** ran in the New York Marathon last year.

where the relative pronoun refers to 'a man', and the subject of the relative clause is also 'a man'. In this case, the relative pronoun can't be omitted.

В

Relative pronouns are used to add information in defining relative clauses as follows:

#### adding information about things

subject	which	that	
object	which	that	no relative pronoun

#### adding information about people

subject	who	that		
object	who	that	no relative pronoun	whom

- When we add information about things, we can use **that** (or **no relative pronoun**) when the thing is the object in informal contexts and **which** in more formal contexts:
  - O Decorating's a job (that) I hate. (rather than '... which ...' in this informal context)
- When we add information about people, we can use **that** (or **no relative pronoun**) when the person is the object in informal contexts and **who** or **whom** in more formal ones:
  - He's the man (that) I met at Aisha's party (rather than ... who / whom I met ...)
- whom is very formal and rarely used in spoken English:
  - The boy whom Elena had shouted at smiled. (less formally that, no relative pronoun or who)
- We use **that** as the subject after: **something** and **anything**; words such as **all**, **little**, **much**, and **none** used as pronouns; and noun phrases that include superlatives. **Which** is also used as the subject after **something** and **anything**, but less commonly:
  - These walls are all **that** remain of the city. (not ... which remain of the city.)
- Note that we can use **that** (or **no relative pronoun**) as the object after **something / anything**; **all**, etc.; and noun phrases with superlatives. For example:
  - She's one of the kindest people (that) I know. (not ... one of the kindest people who I know.)

C

Relative pronouns are used to add information in *non-defining relative clauses* as follows:

#### adding information about things

subject	which	that	
object	which	that	

#### adding information about people

subject	who	
object	who	whom

- Note that we must include a relative pronoun in a non-defining relative clause.
- When we add information about things, we can use **which** when the thing is the subject or the object. **That** is sometimes used instead of **which**, but some people think this is incorrect:
  - The Master's course, which I took in 2015, is no longer taught. (or ... that I took ...)
- We can use **who** or **whom** when the person is the object in the clause, although **whom** is very formal:
  - Professor Johnson, who(m) I have long admired, is to visit the university next week.

- 53.1 Put brackets around the italicised relative pronoun if it can be omitted. (A
  - 1 We talked about the party which Natalia wants to organise for my birthday.
  - 2 To get to Maxim's house, take the main road that bypasses the village.
  - 3 The paintings which Mr Flowers has in his house are worth around £100,000.
  - 4 Let's go through the main points that she made in her lecture.
  - 5 He received a low mark for his essay, which was only one page long.
  - 6 Mrs Yang, who is 42, has three children.
  - 7 Dev is a friend who we stayed with in Australia.
  - 8 In the shop window there's a sign that says '10% off'.
  - 9 The couple who live next to us have 16 grandchildren.
  - 10 There was little that we could do to help her.
- Rewrite these sentences including the information in brackets as relative clauses (defining or non-defining). Give alternative relative pronouns if possible. (Use (–) to indicate 'no relative pronoun'.) B & C
  - 1 Oliver said something. (I couldn't hear it clearly) Oliver said something that / which / I couldn't hear clearly.
  - 2 Eva's father has just come back from a skiing holiday. (he is over 80)
  - 3 The problems faced by the company are being resolved. (I'll look at these in detail in a moment)
  - 4 She was greatly influenced by her father. (she adored him)
  - 5 He pointed to the stairs. (they led down to the cellar)
  - 6 These drugs have been withdrawn from sale. (they are used to treat stomach ulcers)
  - 7 The singer had to cancel her concert. (she was recovering from flu)
  - 8 The minister talked about the plans for tax reform. (he will reveal them next month)
  - 9 I have two older sisters. (I love them very much)
- If necessary, correct or make improvements to these sentences. If they are already correct, write ✓. A–C
  - 1 There's something which I should tell you.
  - 2 The doctor whom Ingrid went to see was very thorough.
  - 3 Yesterday was the hottest day I can remember.
  - 4 There isn't much can go wrong with the machine.
  - 5 Thieves whom stole paintings from Notford art gallery have been arrested in Paris.
  - 6 It may be the most important decision which you will ever take.
  - 7 The boy took the photograph was paid £100.
  - 8 I heard many different accents in the room, but none which I could identify as Polish.
  - 9 He just said anything which came into his head.
  - 10 There's this dream which I have every night about falling downstairs.

## Other relative words: whose, when, whereby, etc.

7	
	Clauses with whose Reminder → J1–J5
	We use a relative clause beginning with the relative pronoun whose + noun, particularly in written  English, when we talk about something belonging to or associated with a person, animal or plant:  Stevenson is an architect whose designs have won international praise.  Suzy was taking care of a dog whose ears were badly damaged in a fight with a cat.  We can use whose in both defining and non-defining relative clauses.  We often avoid using whose to talk about something belonging to or associated with a thing:  I received a letter, and its poor spelling made me think it was written by a child. (more natural than I received a letter, whose poor spelling made me think)  However, we sometimes use whose when we talk about towns, countries, places or organisations:  The film was made in Botswana, whose wildlife parks are larger than those in Kenya.  We need to learn from companies whose trading is healthier than our own.  In academic writing whose is used to talk about a wide variety of 'belonging to' relationships:  Students have to solve problems whose solutions require a knowledge of calculus.
	Clauses with when, whereby, where and why  We can begin relative and other clauses with when (referring to time), whereby (method or means; used mainly in formal contexts), and where (location). In formal English in particular, a phrase with preposition + which can often be used instead of these:  The camera records the time when the photo is taken. (or the time at which)  Do you know the date when we have to hand in the essay? (or the date on / by which)  We need to develop a system whereby workers and management can communicate more effectively. (or the system in / by which workers)  This was the place where we first met. (or the place at / in which we)
	In academic English, we can also use <b>where</b> to refer to features other than location, particularly after words such as <b>case</b> , <b>condition</b> , <b>example</b> , <b>situation</b> , <b>system</b> :  Later in this chapter we will introduce <i>cases</i> <b>where</b> consumer complaints have resulted in changes in the law. ( <i>or more formally</i> cases <b>in which</b> )
	We can also use <b>a</b> / <b>the reason why</b> or <b>a</b> / <b>the reason that</b> or just <b>a</b> / <b>the reason</b> :  I didn't get a pay rise, but this wasn't <b>the reason why</b> I left. (or <b>the reason (that)</b> I left.)
	Clauses with who and what; whatever, whoever and whichever
	Some clauses beginning with a <b>wh-word</b> are used like a noun phrase in a sentence. These are sometimes called <i>nominal relative clauses</i> :  Can you give me a list of <b>who's</b> been invited? (= the people who have been invited)  I didn't know <b>what</b> I should do next. (= the thing that I should do next)  Note that we can't use <b>what</b> in this way after a noun:  I managed to get all the <i>books</i> <b>that</b> you asked for. ( <i>not</i> all the books what you asked for.)
	We use clauses beginning with whatever (= anything or it doesn't matter what), whoever (= the person / group who or any person / group who), or whichever (= one thing or person from a limited number), to talk about things or people that are indefinite or unknown:  I'm sure I'll enjoy eating whatever you cook.  Whoever wins will go on to play Barcelona in the final.

• Whichever one of you broke the window will have to pay for it.

				(ii)	
	<ul><li>2 The new group.</li><li>3 Parents a survey.</li><li>4 Children</li><li>5 My aunt</li></ul>	n has had to do all spaper is owned by are being asked to t do better in exami is now CEO of a de rowing plants.	the Mears take part in the	b c d -	Its chairperson is Miss Jiu Kim. Their diets contain high levels of protei Their flowers are attractive to bees. Her secretary resigned two weeks ago. Her first job was filling shelves in a supermarket. Their children are between four and six
1	+d Dr Ro	owan, whose secr	etaru resigned t	wo wee	eks ago, has had to do all her ow
	typing.				
2	A widow i	y is a person			
4	A furnace				
	Polo is				
6					and when, whereby, where or why.
	omplete th	ese sentences usir	18 Dillases Iroin L	ne box	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	omplete th	an agreement	a condition	a met	hod the moment the reason
C	the area	an agreement	a condition	a met	
C	the area	an agreement	a condition	a met	the moment the reason the whole of the sun's disc
1	the area  Sunset is of disappears	an agreement  defined in astronoms s below the horizon	a condition  ny as	a met	the whole of the sun's disc
1	Sunset is disappears	an agreement  defined in astronoms s below the horizon	a condition  ny as  n.	a met	
1 2	Sunset is disappears In 2016, 18 measures	an agreement  defined in astronom s below the horizon 88 countries signed to tackle climate ch	a condition  ny as  i. d hange.	a met	the whole of the sun's disc
1 2 3	Sunset is of disappears In 2016, 18 measures The coast!	an agreement  defined in astronom s below the horizon 88 countries signed to tackle climate ch	a condition  ny as  n. d hange.	a met	the whole of the sun's disc
1 2	Sunset is of disappears In 2016, 18 measures The coast!	an agreement  defined in astronom s below the horizon 88 countries signed to tackle climate ch	a condition  ny as  n. d hange.	a met	the whole of the sun's disc all parties would agree to adopt d meets the sea or ocean.
1 2 3 4	Sunset is of disappears In 2016, 18 measures The coast! The river it towns alo	an agreement defined in astronom s below the horizon 88 countries signed to tackle climate ch ine is	a condition  ny as  d  hange.  flooding which is	a met	the whole of the sun's disc all parties would agree to adopt d meets the sea or ocean.
1 2 3 4	Sunset is of disappears In 2016, 18 measures The coast! The river it towns alo	an agreement defined in astronom s below the horizon 88 countries signed to tackle climate ch ine is s prone to sudden f ng its banks.	a condition  ny as  d  hange.  flooding which is	a met	the whole of the sun's disc  all parties would agree to adopt d meets the sea or ocean. there are no maj

#### 54.4 If the italicised word is correct, write ✓. If not, suggest another word. C

- 1 I think whatever was responsible for damaging the trees should be fined or sent to prison.
- 2 Do they really understand that they are doing?
- 3 I don't envy whoever buys that house. It's in a terrible condition.
- 4 Now that I no longer have to wear a school uniform, I'll be able to wear which I want.
- 5 I think the government should improve the health service, whichever the cost.
- 6 It's a question that I've been asking for many years.
- 7 The clock makes a noise what keeps me awake at night.
- 8 I'm sure that Rashid will do well at university, which one he goes to.

## Prepositions in relative clauses

In formal styles noun + of which is often preferred to −  whose + noun:  A huge amount of oil was spilled, the effects of which are still being felt. (more natural than whose effects are still being felt.)  that / which of in relative clauses:  The school of which she is head is closing. (less formally The school (that / which) she is head of is closing.)  After both we can use of which and of whose, but not usually which or whose:  Lotta was able to switch between German and Russian, both of which she spoke fluently.  (not both which she spoke fluently.)  Also after: all, each, many, most, neither, none, part, some, a number (one, two, etc.; the first, the second, etc.; half, a third, etc.), and superlatives (the best, the biggest, etc.)
In formal English, whose can come after a preposition in a relative clause. Putting the preposition at the end of the clause is more natural in informal English:  I now turn to Freud, from whose work the following quotation is taken. (less formally Freud, whose work the following quotation is taken from.)
When a preposition is needed with the relative pronouns which and whom we usually put it before the relative pronoun in formal styles:  The rate at which a material heats up depends on its chemical composition. There are 80 teachers in the Physics Department, among whom 24 are professors.  After a preposition we usually use whom rather than who in formal styles: Is it right that politicians should make important decisions without consulting the public to whom they are accountable? (rather than the public to who they are accountable.) and we don't use that or no relative pronoun: The valley in which the town lies is heavily polluted. (not The valley in that the town lies is heavily polluted.; not The valley in the town lies is heavily polluted.)  In less formal English we usually put the preposition later in the relative clause: The office that Juan took us to was filled with books. (rather than The office to which Juan took us) and we prefer who (or that) rather than whom (see also Unit 26A): The playground wasn't used by the children who it was built for.
If the verb in the relative clause is a two-word verb (e.g. come across, fill in, look after, take on) we don't usually put the preposition before the relative pronoun (see Unit 94):  The Roman coins, which a local farmer came across in a field, are now on display in the National Museum. (not coins, across which the local farmer came, are)  With three-word verbs, we only put the preposition before the relative pronoun in a very formal or literary style, and many people avoid this pattern:  She is one of the few people to whom I look up. (or less formally who I look up to.)

- Rewrite these sentences so that they are more appropriate for formal written English. Use preposition + which or preposition + whose, as appropriate. A & B
  - 1 Fleming's discovery of penicillin, which he was awarded the Nobel Prize for, had a major influence on the lives of people in the 20th century. Fleming's discovery of penicillin, for which he was awarded the Nobel Prize, had a major influence on the lives of people in the 20th century.
  - 2 Thomas Cromwell had a daughter, Jane, whose early life we know very little about.
  - 3 It is her unmarried name which she is better known by.
  - 4 Mr Wang, whose land the road will be built across, is unhappy about the plans.
  - 5 The election result, which there can be no doubt about, is a great disappointment.
  - 6 The building which Marcus emerged from was little more than a ruin.
  - 7 It is a medieval palace, whose tower the king hid in during the civil war.
  - 8 I am grateful to Aarav Basu, whose book on the history of the bicycle this information comes from.
- Complete the sentences using **which** or **whom** after an appropriate preposition and an ending from the box. C

the furniture is to be delivered. she was divorced in 2015. he had shown his novel. Had great respect. it was named. the printer was supplied. most world trade was conducted. you should be aware.

- 1 My Maths teacher, Mr Kato, was someone for whom I had great respect.
- 2 Until 1914 the pound sterling was the currency
- 3 The suppliers have changed the date ......
- 4 Pasteurisation was discovered by the French chemist Louis Pasteur, .....
- 5 The author was persuaded to stay in England by Virginia Woolf, .....
- 6 There are a number of safety procedures
- 7 Details are in the instruction manual ....
- 8 Ms Park was left the money by her former husband, .....
- Rewrite the sentences from 55.2 in a less formal way, putting the preposition at the end of the relative clause. A
  - 1 My Maths teacher, Mr Kato, was someone who / that / I had great respect for.
- If necessary, suggest corrections or improvements to these sentences or write ✓ if they are already correct. A, C & D
  - 1 The house into which the thieves broke is owned by Caleb Cruz.
  - 2 The school has been given 20 laptops, half of which are brand new.
  - 3 JLK Motorbikes sells six different models, the first which they started making in 1985.
  - 4 The party, to which I've been looking forward all week, is at Maxine's house.
  - 5 The water that she fell into was freezing cold.
  - 6 I have heard her on the violin and clarinet, both which she plays extremely well.
  - 7 The film was made at Tulloch Castle, part which dates back to the 12th century.
  - 8 The college is home to 30 students from Nepal, almost all of who are studying economics.

Unit **56** 

# Other ways of adding information to noun phrases: additional noun phrases, etc.

A	We sometimes add information about a person or thing referred to in one noun phrase by talking about the same person or thing in a different way in a following noun phrase:  \[ \textstyle A hooded cobra, one of the world's most dangerous snakes, has escaped from Dudley Zoo. \[ \textstyle Dr Alex Parr, director of the State Museum, is to become the government's arts adviser. \]
	In writing, the items are usually separated by a comma, and in speech they are often separated by a pause. However, when the second item (usually a name) acts like a defining relative clause, there is usually no punctuation in writing or pause in speech:  My friend Mia has moved to Sweden. (more likely than My friend, Mia,)  The current champion is expected to survive her first-round match with the Italian Silvia Farina. (more likely than the Italian, Silvia Farina.)
В	<ul> <li>We can add information to a noun phrase with a conjunction such as and or or:</li> <li>Kurt Svensson, her teacher and well-known concert pianist, thinks that she has great talent.</li> <li>(= her teacher is also a well-known concert pianist)</li> <li>Phonetics or the study of speech sounds is a common component on courses in teaching English as a foreign language.</li> </ul>
С	<ul> <li>The adverb namely and the phrase that is are used to add details about a noun phrase:</li> <li>This side effect of the treatment, namely weight gain, is counteracted with other drugs.</li> <li>The main cause of global warming, that is the burning of fossil fuels, is to be the focus of negotiations at the international conference.</li> </ul>
D	We can also add information to a noun phrase using a participle clause beginning with an -ing, -ed or being + -ed verb form. These are often similar to defining relative clauses:  The people living next door come from Italy. (or The people who are living next door)  The weapon used in the murder has now been found. (or The weapon that was used)  The prisoners being released are all women. (or The prisoners who are being released)  Note that -ing participle clauses correspond to defining relative clauses with an active verb, while -ed and being + -ed clauses correspond to defining relative clauses with a passive verb.
	We can also use a <b>to-infinitive clause</b> , as in:  Have you brought a book <b>to read</b> ?  My decision <b>to resign</b> from the company was made after a great deal of thought.  I thought that the management's offer, <b>to increase</b> staff holidays, was a good one.
E	In written English, particularly in newspapers, -ing and -ed clauses are also used instead of non-defining relative clauses. These are usually written between commas or dashes (–):  The men, wearing anoraks and hats, made off in a stolen Volvo estate.  The proposals – expected to be agreed by ministers – are less radical than many employers had feared.

- Add the information in brackets to the sentences and rewrite them in an appropriate way, using the examples in A and B as models. A & B
  - 1 Gofast Technology has launched its new generation of high-speed trains. (Gofast Technology is part of the Maddison Enterprises Group)

    Gofast Technology, part of the Maddison Enterprises Group, has launched its new generation of high-speed trains.
  - 2 I went on an IT training course with my colleague. (My colleague is Mateo)
  - 3 Rubella is still a common childhood disease in many countries. (Another name for rubella is German measles)
  - 4 Four kilos of Beluga caviar has been ordered for the reception. (Beluga caviar is among the most expensive foods in the world)
  - 5 One of the most popular modern writers for children is John Marsden. (John Marsden is Australian)
  - 6 Tanya's father was in the crowd to watch her victory. (Tanya's father has also been her trainer for the last ten years)
  - 7 Dr Sofia Lopez has criticised government plans to cut health funding. (Sofia Lopez is head of Downlands Hospital)
  - 8 Klaus Schmidt is running in the Stockholm Marathon. (Klaus Schmidt is the current European champion) (The German 10,000 metres record holder is also the current European champion)
- Make sentences by matching the beginnings (in i) to the endings (in ii) and joining them with appropriate information (from iii) after namely or that is.

(i)

- Leo Tolstoy's most celebrated novel,
- 2 The two countries having land borders with the USA,
- 3 The three most popular pets in Britain,
- 4 The capital of Estonia,
- 5 The largest island in the world,
- 6 The 'consumers' of education,

(ii)

- a are found in 25% of households.
- b covers over 2 million square kilometres.
- should have ways of complaining about poor teaching.
- d have complained to the President about the new customs regulations.
- e was published in 1869.
- f is situated on the Gulf of Finland.

(iii)

Tallinn students
cats, dogs and rabbits
-War and Peace
Mexico and Canada
Greenland

1+e Leo Tolstoy's most celebrated novel, namely War and Peace, was published in 1869.

Complete the sentences with an -ing, -ed or being + -ed form of the verbs from the box. Then rewrite each sentence using a relative clause instead of the participle clause.

(	drive	educate	flow	introduce	need	print	say	tell off	)
	The man		the bus	is my brother.	The ma	un who is	drivin	g the bus	is my
2	I went to 1990s.	a reunion f	or studen	ts	i	n the phys	sics depa	rtment dur	ring the
3	As my au headtea		what she	thought, I felt	like a scho	oolboy		t	y his
5	Across th	ne river were	e some of	the deer		into	the par	k in the 19t	h century.
6	Rivers		int	o the Baltic Se	a are mud	ch cleaner	now tha	an ten years	ago.
7	The boo	klets		as we spea	ak will be	on sale la	ter this a	fternoon.	
8	Anyone		f	urther informa	ition can s	see me in	my offic	e.	

Unit **57** 

# Other ways of adding information to noun phrases: prepositional phrases, etc.

We commonly add information about a person or thing using a prepositional phrase. Often these have a meaning similar to a relative clause:  What's the name of the <i>man</i> by the window? (or the man who's by the window?)  It's in the <i>cupboard</i> under the stairs. (or the cupboard that's under the stairs.)  She lives in the <i>house</i> with the red door. (or the house which has the red door.)
In some cases, however, these prepositional phrases do not have a corresponding relative clause:  You need to keep a careful <i>record</i> <b>of</b> what you spend.  There is likely to be an <i>increase</i> <b>in</b> temperature tomorrow.
We often prefer a relative clause rather than a prepositional phrase in non-defining relative clauses with <b>be + preposition</b> or with <b>have</b> as a main verb:  Output Mr Chen, who was in the store at the time of the robbery, was able to identify two of the men. (rather than Mr Chen, in the store)  Davide Gallo, who has a farm near Pisa, has decided to grow only organic vegetables. (rather than Davide Gallo, with a farm near Pisa, has)
In written English, particularly in academic writing, a series of prepositional phrases and relative clauses is often used to add information about a previous noun phrase. Note that prepositional phrases can also be used with an adverbial function (e.g. ' taken the drug in the last six months' in the sentence below):  Doctors are contacting patients with diabetes who have taken the drug in the last six months.
Scientists in Spain who have developed the technique are optimistic that it will be widely used in laboratories within the next decade.
We can also use participle clauses and noun phrases (see Unit 56) in a series of clauses / phrases which add information to the preceding noun phrase:
The waxwing is the only bird found in Britain with yellow and red tail feathers.
Mr Bob Timms, leader of the Democratic Party, MP for Threeoaks, has announced his resignation.
Note that adding a series of prepositional phrases can often lead to ambiguity. For example:  The protesters were demonstrating against the mistreatment of animals on farms. could mean either that the place the protesters were demonstrating was 'on farms' or that the animals were 'on farms'. We could make the meaning less ambiguous by changing the word order of the sentence:  The protesters were demonstrating on farms against the mistreatment of animals. or add a participle clause:  The protesters were demonstrating against the mistreatment of animals kept on farms.

57.1 Match the sentence halves (there ma	y be more than one possible answer), adding an	
appropriate preposition. (A)		
1 Maja's the girl	a green shirts.	
2 She's in the photograph	b the back garden.	
3 I plan to cut down the tree	c blonde hair.	
4 There's a team of people	d the canal.	
5 We took the footpath	e the piano.	
6 The children can't get over the fenc		
7 Go along the lane	g the houses.	
8 Nico's a boy	h New Zealand.	
9 Follow the main road	i the pool.	
10 She's a teacher	j a quick temper.	
1+c Maja's the girl with blonde	nair.	
57.2 Rewrite the sentences in 57.1 using de	fining relative clauses. (A)	
1 Maja's the girl who has blond	e hair.	
57.3 Complete the sentences by adding the	e information in brackets. Use relative clauses (Unit 5	3),
additional noun phrases and particip	e clauses (Unit 56) and prepositional phrases (Unit 57	<b>r</b> ).
<ol> <li>Police are questioning men bet to have a criminal record.</li> </ol>	veen 25 and 30 living in the village who are know	wn
(The men are between 25 and 30. The	y live in the village. They are known to have a criminal reco	ord.)
2 Teachers		
	e. Queen's College is in the city centre. The teachers went	
strike last week. They have appointed	Kristina Borg as their spokesperson. She is the head of Eng	lish.)
3 Joyce Clements		
-	ed 95. She was educated at Marston College. She was the	first
woman to be educated there. Marsto	,	
4 The conference		
(The conference was held in Singapo	e. It approved the world trade agreement. The agreement	was
drawn up by European and Asian stat		
5 A book		
(The book is on gardening. It is called	All about Plants. Anna wanted to borrow it. It wasn't avail	
in the library.)		
6 A painting		
	and shop. It was found by Lara Gruber. She is an antique	
dealer. She is from Austria. The paints	ng is thought to be by J.M.W. Turner. Turner was a British	
landscape artist.)		
57.4 Why are these sentences ambiguous	Can you rewrite them to remove the ambiguity?	
	er carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes.	
	room with my parents.	
5 . 5.5cassed my planto decorate the		

# Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 1

A	We can use <b>present participle</b> (-ing) and <b>past participle</b> (-ed) clauses with an adverbial meaning. (See also Unit 59.) They often give information about the timing, causes, and results of the events described:  Opening her eyes, the baby began to cry. (= When she opened her eyes)  Faced with a bill for £10,000, Ivan has taken an extra job. (= Because he is faced)  Looked after carefully, the plant can live through the winter. (= If it is looked after)  Having finished the book, I had a holiday. (perfect; = When / Because I had finished)  The fruit was expensive, being imported. (simple passive; = because it was imported)  Having been hunted close to extinction, the rhino is once again common in this area. (perfect passive; = Although it had been hunted close to extinction)
В	The implied subject of a participle clause (that is, a subject understood but not directly mentioned) is usually the same as the subject of the main clause:  Arriving at the party, we saw Ruth standing alone. (= When we arrived we saw)  However, sometimes the implied subject is not referred to in the main clause:  Having wanted to drive a train all his life, this was an opportunity not to be missed.  We should avoid different subjects for the participle and main clause:  When I turned round quickly, the door hit me in the face. not  Turning round quickly, the door hit me in the face. (first implied subject = 'I'; second subject = 'the door')
С	In formal English, the participle clause sometimes has its own subject, which is often a pronoun or includes one:  The collection of vases is priceless, <b>some</b> being over 2000 years old.  Her voice breaking with emotion, Vasiliki spoke about her father's illness.  We use the present participle (-ing) clause to talk about something happening at the same time as an event in the main clause, or to give information about the facts given in the main clause.
D	When we use <b>not</b> in a participle clause it usually comes before the participle. However, it can follow the participle, depending on meaning:  Not understanding the rules, I found the cricket match boring. (= because I didn't understand the rules)  Hoping <b>not</b> to be recognised, I chose a seat in a dark corner. (= I hoped that I wouldn't be recognised)
E	We use a clause beginning with having + past participle rather than a present participle if the action in the main clause is the consequence of the event in the participle clause:  Having broken her leg the last time she went, Giorgia decided not to go on the school skiing trip this year. (or After breaking her leg; not Breaking her leg)  We can use either a present participle (-ing) clause or a having + past participle clause with a similar meaning when the action in the participle clause is complete before the action in the main clause begins. Compare:  Taking off his shoes, Ram walked into the house. (Having taken off has a similar meaning) and  Running across the field, I fell and hurt my ankle. (= While I was running; 'Having run' would suggest that I fell after I had run across the field)

- Rewrite the sentences beginning with one of the clause forms from sections A and D opposite.
  - 1 When she saw the dog coming towards her, she quickly crossed the road. Seeing the dog coming towards her, she quickly crossed the road.
  - 2 As she was dressed all in black, she was almost invisible in the starless night.
  - 3 As I don't have a credit card, I found it difficult to book an airline ticket online.
  - 4 Antonio spent a lot of time filling in job application forms because he was unemployed.
  - 5 Because I was walking quickly, I soon caught up with her.
  - 6 The house was built of wood, so it was clearly a fire risk.
  - 7 I was eager to catch the bus in good time because I had been told off the day before for arriving late.
  - 8 She didn't know where the theatre was, so she asked for directions at the hotel reception.
  - 9 As she was a nurse, she knew what to do after the accident.
  - 10 He had spent his childhood in Oslo, so he knew the city well.
- 58.2 If the implied subject of the two clauses is the same write S and if it is different write D. Rewrite the D sentences to make them more acceptable.
  - 1 Waiting for the bus, a car went through a puddle and splashed water all over me.
  - 2 Known mainly as a writer of novels, Rashid has now written a successful biography.
  - 3 Keeping a careful eye on the spider, Suzanne hurried out of the bathroom.
  - 4 Looking down from the hill, the town spread out before us towards the coast.
  - 5 Feeling rather sick, the boat ploughed through the huge waves.
  - 6 Found only in the Andes, the plant is used by local people to treat skin diseases.
- 58.3 Write not in the more appropriate place in each sentence.

1	wishing to boast, she said nothing about her success.
2	pretendingto notice that people were staring at me, I carried on looking on
	the floor for my lost contact lens.
3	determined to be beaten, she put all her energy into the serve.
4	feelingwell, she went home early.
5	bothering to put on his coat, he left the house.
6	tryingto cry, she waved to Harun as the train pulled out.

- Join these sentences using having + past participle or the -ing form of the first verb. Which sentences can have either form?
  - 1 I moved house recently.
  - 2 I looked over my shoulder.
  - 3 I walked through the tunnel.
  - 4 I waited six weeks for the washing machine to be delivered.
  - 5 I suffered from depression myself as a teenager.
  - 6 I parked the car about a kilometre from the stadium.
  - 7 I reached my mid-thirties.
  - 8 I learned some Swahili as a child.

- a I decided to cancel the order.
- b I felt I needed to change my life.
- c I could see Ida running after me.
- d I don't yet have internet access.
- e I was able to understand most of what she said.
- f I banged my head on the low roof.
- g I could understand how Nathan was feeling.
- h I walked the rest of the way.
- 1+d Having moved house recently, I don't yet have internet access.

Unit **59** 

## Participle clauses with adverbial meaning 2

	Tarticipie claases with adverblat filea	111118 =
A	We can use prepositions such as after, before, besides, by, in, on, since, through, while, with, and without in a present participle (-ing) clause with an adverbial meaning (see also Unit 58):  While understanding her problem, I don't know how I can help. (= Although I understand)  After spending so much money on the car, I can't afford a holiday.  Before being changed last year, the speed limit was 70 kph. (passive form)  An alternative is a clause with a verb that can change according to tense and subject. Compare:  Since moving to London, we haven't had time to go to the theatre. and  Since we moved to London, we haven't had time to go to the theatre. (less formal)	
В	by, in, on + -ing	
	<ul> <li>By working hard, she passed her maths exam.</li> <li>They only survived by eating roots and berries in the forest.</li> </ul>	= the <b>-ing clause</b> indicates 'the method or means used'
ı	<ul> <li>On returning from Beijing, he wrote to the Chinese embassy.</li> <li>Josh was the first person I saw on leaving hospital.</li> </ul>	= the <b>-ing clause</b> indicates 'when'
ı	<ul><li>In criticising the painting, I knew I would offend her.</li><li>In choosing Marco, the People's Party has moved to the left.</li></ul>	= the <b>-ing clause</b> indicates 'cause'
	We can often use by + -ing or in + -ing with close meanings, although informal contexts:  In / By writing about Spanish culture, I came to understand th' = the consequence of writing was to understand; 'By writunderstand the country better was to write)  But compare:  By telephoning every hour, she managed to speak to the doct the method is the focus here, not the consequence)	ne country better. ('In writing ting' = the method I used to
C	with -ing; without -ing	
	With + -ing often introduces a reason for something in the main clause.  Note that a subject has to come between with and -ing:  With Louise living in Spain, we don't see her often. (= Because With and what with can also be used with a noun phrase to introduce With my bad back I won't be able to lift a heavy suitcase.  What with the traffic and the heavy rain, it's no wonder you we	e Louise lives in Spain) e a reason:
	We can use without + -ing to say that a second action doesn't happen I went to work without eating breakfast. They left without paying. Often, however, it has a similar meaning to 'although not' or 'unless' Without meaning to, I seem to have offended her. (= Although without using the app, I can't judge how good it is. (= Unless)	s': h I didn't mean to)
D	In adverbial clauses beginning with a <b>conjunction</b> (e.g. while) or <b>adject</b> followed by <b>subject + be</b> , we can omit the <b>subject + be</b> in formal Englare given in brackets):  While in Poland, they will play two concerts in Warsaw. (or Warsaw. (or Warsaw. (or Although just two feet apart, they didn't speak. (or Although I try to use public transport whenever possible. (or whenever Double of the polarity of the decision, Johnson swore at the referee. (or	ish (more informal alternatives  /hile they are in Poland)  h they were just)  ver it is possible.)

(i)	(ii)		
after before since through while	-come- interview leave overthrow sell take welcome work		
1 Since coming out of hosp	ital, I have been to the gym every day.		
	on TV last night, the minister mentioned that she would be		
retiring soon.			
3	the back off the computer, make sure it is unplugged.		
4	the government's new policy, I think it should have been		
introduced months ago.			
	in a military takeover, the king has been under house arrest		
	with young children for the last 40 years, she has come to		
understand their behaviour be	etter than most.		
	to the public, most milk is pasteurised.		
	Oxford University in 1983, Painter spent three years teachi		
local school.			
Join the sentences, beginning th	hem with <b>by + -ing, on + -ing,</b> or <b>in + -ing</b> . B		
1 She returned home.	a She soon began to sleep better.		
2 She gave up coffee.	b She saved over a hundred pounds a month.		
3 She turned down the job.	c She knew that she might offend him.		
4 She moved to a smaller flat.	d She found Dave waiting outside her front doo		
5 She entered the classroom.	e She gave up the possibility of a huge salary.		
6 She criticised her father.	f She was surprised when all the children stood		
1+d On returning home, she	e found Dave waiting outside her front door.		
Rewrite these sentences beginn	ning Withing or Withouting.		
We couldn't go on holiday because Maryam had flu.			
	unless I have more information.		
2 I won't be able to advise you i			
3 He had solved the problem, al	Ithough he didn't realise it.		

examples in section D opposite), and making any other necessary changes.

Revise this biography by replacing six more full clauses with reduced clauses (as in the

#### Although from a poor background

Although she was from a poor background, Paula Regis gained a place at Southam University. She was always fascinated by the stars and she took a first degree in astrophysics. Once she was at university she also became interested in student politics and, because she was popular with her fellow students, was elected University President in her second year. This didn't distract her from her studies, however, and while she was in the final year of her degree, she won the International Young Scientist of the Year award for her work on star classification. When she was asked what was the secret of her success she said, 'Just hard work and a little luck.' She is determined to continue her research and she has recently begun work on her PhD.

Unit **60** 

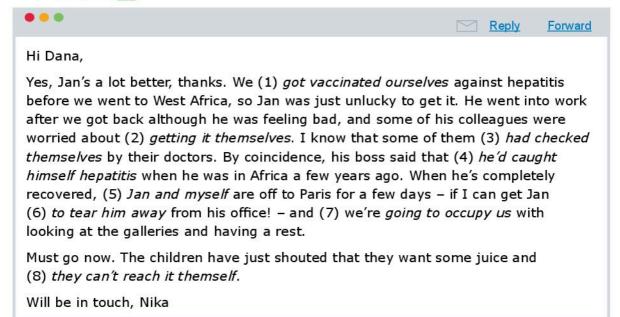
# Reflexive pronouns: herself, himself, themselves, etc.

A	In addition to the usual reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself, etc.) some people use themselves to refer to the person who is the subject of the sentence, to avoid using a male or female reflexive pronoun:    The author of the letter describes themselves as 'a senior government official'.  Who wants to go through life by themselves, without friends?  Oneself (or less formally yourself) is used to refer to people in general:  I think one has to have the courage to be oneself and say whatever comes naturally. (less formally I think you have to have the courage to be yourself)		
В	<ul> <li>We can use reflexive pronouns for emphasis in various ways. Compare: <ul> <li>Salma worked hard and got promoted.</li> <li>Salma worked hard and got herself promoted. (emphasises that it was through her own efforts)</li> <li>Salma encouraged me to apply for the senior manager position, but she got promoted herself. (emphasises that Salma got promoted, not me)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
С	If the object of a transitive verb refers to the same person or thing as the subject, then that object must be a reflexive pronoun. Compare:  He walked around the golf course to familiarise himself with it. and We walked around to familiarise the children with their new surroundings.  Also: absent from*, avail of*, busy* with*, concern with*, occupy by / with*, pride on*, tear away from, trouble about / with		
	Note that the verb patterns marked * can only be used with reflexive pronoun objects.  With some verbs we can use a reflexive pronoun or leave it out with little difference in meaning:  We are confident that both sets of fans will behave (themselves) at the match.  Also: acclimatise, adapt, (un)dress, hide, move, prepare, shave, wash  We include the reflexive pronoun if we want to emphasise that the person or thing referred to in the subject is affected by the action:		
D	Although she helped other athletes in their preparations for competing at high altitudes, she found it difficult to acclimatise herself.  When the subject and object after a preposition refer to the same person or thing we use a reflexive pronoun after the preposition:  He was pleased with himself. (not pleased with him.)  If the verb has a direct object we use a personal pronoun, not a reflexive pronoun:  I remember closing the door behind me. (not closing the door behind myself.)  However, if we need to make it clear that the subject and prepositional phrase refer to the same person or thing, we use a reflexive pronoun after the preposition:  She bought the bracelet for herself. (' for her' suggests it was bought for someone else)		
E	Myself is sometimes used after and and or rather than 'I' or 'me', although some people consider this use incorrect:  I believe that Lizi and myself have done a pretty good job.  When you've finished the job can you send the bill either to Mrs Petrov or myself?  Using myself reduces focus on the speaker or writer and so sounds less forceful or more polite.		

60.1 Complete each sentence with a suitable form of a verb from the box followed by a reflexive pronoun and, if necessary, a preposition. If the reflexive pronoun can be omitted, put brackets around it.

absen	t adapt	-concern-	dress	occupy	prepare	pride	trouble
She w	orks for a cha	arity which	oncerns i	tself with	the welfare	of childre	en.
She		fo	or the inte	erview by rea	ading the job	description	on again.
It is a	town that			being welc	oming to vis	itors.	
While	I was workin	g, the children			playir	g comput	er games.
		ne time to					
		be given a job				on't even	
Wher		er arm she cou				oroperly, s	o I had to go ro
	_	vith his father i			oany for the f	irst time i	n his life so tha

- 60.2 Underline the correct option. If both options are possible, note the difference in meaning.
  - 1 Can you post this letter for myself / me, please?
  - 2 All my friends were away, I was bored, and I just didn't know what to do with myself / me.
  - 3 We put the voice recorder on the table between ourselves / us.
  - 4 They dragged the tree behind themselves / them all the way to the trailer.
  - 5 Now that you're a famous actor, you must hear a lot about yourself / you in the media.
  - 6 He ought to be ashamed of himself / him, being rude to his parents like that.
  - 7 She should take care of herself / her better. She's looking really ill.
  - 8 Topened the window in front of myself / me and took a deep breath of fresh air.
- 60.3 If necessary, correct the italicised parts of this email or write ✓. Give alternatives where possible. A=E



## One and ones

A	We can use <b>one</b> instead of repeating a singular countable noun and <b>ones</b> instead of repeating a plural noun when it is clear from the context what we are talking about:  'Can I get you a drink?' 'It's okay, I've already got <b>one</b> .' (= a drink)  I think his best poems are his early <b>ones</b> . (= poems)  We don't use <b>one</b> / <b>ones</b> instead of an uncountable noun:  If you need any more paper, I'll bring you some. (not I'll bring you one / ones.)  I asked him to get apple juice, but he got orange. (not but he got orange one / ones.)  We can't use <b>ones</b> without defining precisely which group of things we are talking about. Instead, we use <b>some</b> . Compare:  'We need new curtains.' 'Okay, let's buy <i>green</i> <b>ones</b> this time. / <b>ones</b> with flowers on / those <b>ones</b> .' and  'We need new curtains.' 'Okay, let's buy <b>some</b> .' (not Okay, let's buy ones.)
В	We don't use one / ones after nouns used as adjectives:  I thought my memory stick was in my trouser pocket, but it was in my coat pocket. (not my coat one.)  Instead of using one / ones after possessive determiners (my, your, her, etc.) we prefer mine, yours, hers, etc. However, a possessive determiner + one / ones is often heard in informal speech:  I'd really like a smartphone like yours. (or ' like your one' in informal speech)  We usually use ones to refer to things rather than people:  We need two people to help. We could ask those men over there. (not ask those ones)  However, ones is more likely to be used in comparative sentences to refer to groups of people:  Older students seem to work harder than younger ones. (or than younger students.)  Note also that we use ones to refer to people in the little ones (= small children), (your) loved ones (= usually close family), (one of) the lucky ones.
С	We can leave out one / ones –  after which:  When we buy medicines, we have no way of knowing which (ones) contain sugar.  after superlatives:  Look at that pumpkin! It's the biggest (one) I've seen this year.  after this, that, these, and those:  The last test I did was quite easy, but some parts of this (one) are really difficult.  Help yourself to grapes. These (ones) are the sweetest, but those (ones) taste best. (Note that 'those / these ones' is less common in formal, written academic English.)  after either, neither, another, each, the first / second / last, (etc.):  Karl pointed to the paintings and said I could take either (one). (or either (one) of them.)  She cleared away the cups, washed each (one) thoroughly, and put them on the shelf.
D	We don't leave out one / ones −  after the, the only, the main, and every:  When you cook clams, you shouldn't eat the ones that have broken shells.  After I got the glasses home, I found that every one was broken.  after adjectives:  My shoes were so uncomfortable that I had to go out today and buy some new ones.  However, after colour adjectives we can often leave out one / ones in answers:  'Have you decided which jumper to buy?' 'Yes, I think I'll take the blue (one).'

- 61.1 If necessary, correct these sentences. If they are already correct, write ✓. 🗛
  - 1. Bilal brought in wood and put ones on the fire.
  - 2 Normally I don't like wearing a scarf, but it was so cold I put one on.
  - 3 A: We've run out of potatoes. B: I'll get ones when I go to the shops.
  - 4 We haven't got lemon tea, but you could have mint one instead.
  - 5 Those aren't your gloves. You must have picked up the wrong ones.
  - 6 A: What kind of cakes do you like best? B: Ones with cream inside.
  - 7 I couldn't fit all the boxes in the car, so I had to leave ones behind and pick it up later.
  - 8 Most of the trees in our garden are less than ten years old but ones are much older than that.
- 61.2 If appropriate, replace the italicised words or phrases with one or ones. If it is not possible or unlikely, write 'No' after the sentence. (A & B)
  - 1 I answered most of the questions, but had to miss out some very difficult questions.
  - 2 The female violinists in the orchestra outnumber the male *violinists* by about three to one.
  - 3 He used to work for a finance company, but he's moved to an insurance company.
  - 4 The issue discussed at the meeting was an extremely complicated issue.
  - 5 Many people are happy about the new road being built, but there are some angry *people*, too.
  - 6 A: Was it these earrings you wanted? в: No, the earrings on the left of those, please.
  - 7 Diana is really good at taking photos of old buildings. There's an excellent *photo* of a local church in her office.
  - 8 A: Are you picking Jo up at the train station? B: No, she's arriving at the bus station.
  - 9 On one channel was a war film and on the other was a horror film, so I turned the TV off.
  - 10 There are lots of gloves here. Are these your gloves?
- 61.3 If the italicised **one** or **ones** can be omitted in these sentences, put brackets around it. If not, write ✓. C & D
  - 1 The children had eaten all the pizza and were still hungry so I had to make them another (one).
  - 2 I drove around the houses, looking for the *ones* with 'For Sale' notices outside.
  - 3 I'm not keen on those ones with the cherry on top. I think I'll have a chocolate biscuit instead.
  - 4 I like both of these jackets. I don't know which one to choose.
  - 5 The vases are all handmade and every one looks different.
  - 6 Each winter seemed to be colder than the last one.
  - 7 There are many excellent food markets in town but the main one is near the port.
  - 8 He tried on lots of pairs of shoes and finally chose the purple ones.
  - 9 The books were so disorganised that I soon lost track of which ones I had already counted.
  - 10 Can you remember where you bought this one? I'd like to get one myself.
- 61.4 Complete these sentences with one or ones followed by an ending of your own. C & D
  - 1 Carmen drove to the restaurant because she was the only ...
  - 2 To help keep fit, go to shops you can walk or cycle to rather than ...
  - 3 A number of causes of climate change have been suggested, but the main ...
  - 4 Camera tripods come in a variety of sizes and materials, but the most convenient ...

## **So** and **not** as substitutes for clauses, etc.

A	We can use <b>so</b> instead of repeating an adjective, adverb, or a whole clause: Reminder → K10–K12  The workers were angry and they had every right to be <b>so</b> . (= angry)  Joe took the work seriously and Petra perhaps even more <b>so</b> . (= took the work seriously)  Usman's giving us a lift. At least I presume <b>so</b> . (= that he's giving us a lift)				
В	We often use <b>so</b> instead of a clause after verbs concerned with the and speaking:  'Is Lewis going back to Scotland to see his parents this summer?' 'I've no idea, but I'd <b>imagine so</b> . He goes most years.' (= that he is going back to Scotland)  I found it ridiculous, and <b>said so</b> . / and <b>told them so</b> . (= that I found it ridiculous)  Note that after 'tell' we include an indirect object.  We don't use <b>so</b> after certain other verbs:  'Will Stefan know how to mend it?'  'I <b>doubt</b> it. / I <b>doubt</b> (that) he will.'  (not I doubt so.)  Note that in informal English, particularly in an argument, we can	Also: be afraid (expressing regret), appear / seem (after 'it'), assume, believe, expect, guess, hope, presume, suppose, suspect, think  Also: accept, admit, agree, be certain, hear, know, promise, suggest, be sure			
C	In negative sentences, we use <b>not</b> or <b>not so</b> :  Is the Socialist Party offering anything new in its statemed. They want to buy the house, although they didn't say so with appear, seem, suppose 'I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I don't suppose there'll be any seats left.' 'No, I don't suppose the will be afraid (expressing regret, imagine, think. With 'Will we need to show our passports?' 'I don't think so.' We use <b>not</b> with <b>be afraid</b> (expressing regret), <b>assume</b> , <b>guess</b> (ihope, presume, suspect:  'You'd better do it yourself. Eva won't help.' 'No, I guess Compare the use of <b>not</b> (to) and <b>not so</b> with <b>say</b> :  'Do we have to do all ten questions?' 'The teacher said in have to) or 'The teacher said <b>not to</b> .' (= the teacher said 'Do we have to do all ten questions?' 'The teacher didn't we should do all ten, but perhaps we should)	codirectly.  codir			
D	We can use <b>so</b> instead of a short answer with 'Yes,', when we something that we have been told, particularly if we are surprise <b>pronoun</b> + <b>auxiliary verb</b> ( <i>be</i> , <i>can</i> , etc.):  'Lisa and Sara are here.' ' <b>So they are</b> .' ( <i>or</i> <b>Yes</b> , <b>they are</b> . However, if we already know something we use 'Yes,', not 'So 'Your bike's been moved.' ' <b>So it has</b> . / <b>Yes</b> , <b>it has</b> . I wond you told me) <i>and</i> 'Your bike's been moved.' ' <b>Yes</b> , <b>it has</b> . Philip borrowed it told me; <i>not</i> So it has.)	d. In answers like this we use <b>so</b> +  ) (= I can now see that, too)'. Compare: der who did it.' (= I didn't know before			
F	We can use <b>so</b> in a similar way in short answers with verbs such <b>believe</b> , <b>gather</b> , <b>hear</b> , <b>say</b> , <b>tell</b> (e.g. So she tells me.), <b>understar</b> pattern implies 'I knew before you told me':  'I found that lecture really boring.' 'So I gather (= I knew	nd. However, with these verbs, the			

#### Evercices

LA	-11	
62.1	If	possible, complete the dialogues with <b>so</b> . If not, use an appropriate <b>that-clause</b> .
	1	A: Is Zak ill again? B: Well, he hasn't come to work, so I assume
		A: Will we need to pay to get in? B: I doubt that we will.
		A: Will you be able to come over this weekend? B: I hope
		A: Can you give me a lift to work? B: I suppose
		A: Is this one by Van Gogh, too? B: I think
	6	A: Apparently Carol's getting married again. в: Yes, I hear
	7	A: The weather's awful, so we'll need to take a taxi. B: I guess
	8	A: Will the decorator be finished this week? B: He says
	9	A: You will remember to pick me up at one, won't you? B: I promise
		A: I hope I'll be able to get a ticket. B: I'm sure
62.2	U	nderline all the correct B responses. B & C
	1	A: With the children being ill I haven't had time to do much housework.
		B: No, I suppose not / don't suppose / don't suppose so.
	2	A: Did I leave my handbag in your car yesterday?
		B: I don't think / don't think so / think not.
	3	A: I'm sure the bank has charged me too much. Will they refund the money?
		B: I don't suspect / suspect not / don't suspect so.
	4	A: Didn't Alice hear you? B: It doesn't appear so / appears not / doesn't appear.
	5	A: What did you think of Sadia's work?
		B: Well, I thought it was pretty awful, although I didn't say so / said not / said so.
62.3	C	omplete B's responses with short answers beginning Yes, If possible, give an alternati
	re	sponse with So D
	1	A: That horse is walking with a limp.

1	A: That horse is walking with a limp.				
	B.	Yes.	it is.	/ So it is	5. Perhar

- / So it is. Perhaps we should tell the owner. 2 A: The children from next door are taking the apples from our trees.
- 4 A: I told you I'd be late for work today.



62.4 Choose any appropriate short answer beginning So ... to respond to A's comments below, to say that B already knew what is being said. Use the verbs in E opposite.

<ol> <li>A: My car won't start again. в</li> </ol>	: 50	l hear.
--	------	---------

- 2 A: Maria's not very well. B:
- 3 A: The class has been cancelled again. B:
- 4 A: I see income tax is going up. B:
- 5 A: Fred's moving to Berlin. B:

## Do so; such

A Do so

We use do so (or does so, did so, doing so, etc.) instead of repeating a verb phrase (a verb and its object or complement) when it's clear what we are talking about:  She won in 2018 and seems likely to do so (= win) again this year.  Dr Lawson said, 'Sit down.' Katia did so (= sat down), and explained her problem.  The climbers will try again today to reach the summit of the mountain. Their chances of doing so (= reaching the summit of the mountain) are better than they were last week. (In very formal English we can also use so doing.)  When he was asked to check the figures, he claimed that he had already done so. (= checked the figures)
Do so is most often used in formal English. In informal English we can use do it or do that instead:  ○ Mrs Chen waved as she walked past. She does so / it / that every morning.  ○ Ricardo told me to put in a new battery. I did so / it / that, but the radio still doesn't work.
We can also use <b>do</b> alone rather than <b>do so</b> in less formal English, especially after modals or perfect tenses (see also <b>B</b> ):  'Will this program work on your computer?' 'It should <b>do</b> .'  I told you that I'd finish the work by today, and I have <b>done</b> . ('have' is stressed here)
We can use <b>do so</b> instead of verbs that describe <i>actions</i> , but we avoid <b>do so</b> with verbs that describe <i>states</i> and <i>habitual actions</i> . Compare:    65% of the members voted for Katie Brown this time, whereas 84% <b>did so</b> last year.    Kenyon confessed to the murder, although he only <b>did so</b> after a number of witnesses had identified him as the killer.    I gave her the medicine, and I take full responsibility for <b>doing so</b> . <i>and</i>   Lars doesn't like Facebook but Emma <b>does</b> .    He earned a lot more than I <b>did</b> .    I don't have time to go swimming every day, but I <i>usually</i> <b>do</b> .
We can use such + (a / an) + noun to refer back to something mentioned before, with the meaning 'of this / that kind'. We use such + noun when the noun is uncountable or plural, and such + a / an + noun when the noun is countable and singular. Such is used in this way mainly in formal language:  The students refer to teachers by their first names and will often criticise them for badly prepared lessons. Such behaviour is unacceptable in most schools. (more informally Behaviour like this)  When asked about rumours that the company is preparing to lose more than 200 jobs, a spokeswoman said: 'I know of no such plans.' (more informally no plans of this kind.)  They needed someone who was both an excellent administrator and manager. Such a person was not easy to find. (more informally A person like this)  We allow both men and women to have time off work to look after children. We were the first department to introduce such a scheme. (more informally a scheme like this.)

63.1		in each pair of sentences with either <b>and</b> or <b>but</b> , replacing the repeated verb + object / Implement with a form of <b>do</b> followed by <b>so</b> . A
		Marks never won an Olympic medal. He twice came close to winning an Olympic medal.  Marks never won an Olympic medal, but twice came close to doing so.
	2	She was asked to teach more classes. She was happy to teach more classes.
	3	My French hosts gave me snails to eat. I ate them very reluctantly.
	4	The company wanted to build a new dam on the site. They were prevented from building the dam by local opposition.
	5	All EU countries agreed to implement the new regulations on recycling plastic. So far only Finland and Austria have implemented the new regulations.
	6	The water freezes in the cracks in rocks. As it freezes, it expands.
63.2	C	omplete these sentences with a form of do (+ so if possible). B
		If you have not already handed in the form, then please without delay.
		Olav drives much faster than you
	3	He jumped down from the window, but intwisted his ankle.
		I know that many people don't enjoy Felipe's blog, but I
		Anyone crossing the railway at their own risk.
		I thought Julie was joking when she said these apples smell like oranges. But they!
		When we play tennis Leyla usually wins, and she gets upset if I
	8	She pointed to the old box, her hand shaking as she
63.3		omplete the sentences with <b>such</b> or <b>such a / an</b> followed by a word from the box in the ngular or plural.
	-	claim destruction <del>device</del> project research tactic
	1	Manufacturers often claim that their washing machines have built-in computers, but is there really a computer in such a device?
	2	After Professor Sharma spoke about her work on climate change, she called on the government
		to put more money into
	3	Television is sometimes said to harm children's social development, yet the evidence for
	4	Building a new power station would undoubtedly create new jobs, but has the environmental
		impact ofbeen considered fully?
	5	The earthquake demolished thousands of buildings. The country has rarely seen before.
	6	United played very defensively in the second half, but were criticised by the
		team's supporters.
63.4	Re	ewrite the sentences in 63.3 to make them less formal. C
		but is there really a computer in a device like this? / like that?

## More on ellipsis after auxiliary verbs

A	To avoid repeating words from a previous clause or sentence we use an auxiliary verb (be, have, can, will, would, etc.) instead of a whole verb or a verb and its object or complement:  She says she's finished, but I don't think she has. (instead of has finished.)  'Would any of you like to go to Paris?' 'I would.' (instead of I would like to go to Paris.)  If there is more than one auxiliary verb in the previous clause or sentence, we can leave out all except the first. Alternatively, we can use two (or more) auxiliary verbs:  'They could have been delayed by the snow.' 'Yes, they could.' (or could have (been).)
	They could have been delayed by the show. Tes, they could. (or could have (been).)
В	If there is no auxiliary verb in the previous clause or sentence, or if the auxiliary is a form of <b>do</b> , we can use a form of <b>do</b> instead of repeating the main verb. We use <b>do</b> when the main verb is a present simple form and <b>did</b> when it is a past simple form:  Mona <b>plays</b> golf on Saturdays, and I <b>do</b> too. ( <i>instead of</i> and I play golf on Saturdays too.; ' and so do I' is also possible)  'I <b>didn't steal</b> the money.' 'No one thinks that you <b>did</b> .' ( <i>instead of</i> thinks that you stole it.; 'No one thinks so' is also possible.)
	If <b>be</b> is the main verb in the previous clause or sentence, we repeat a form of the verb <b>be</b> :  Or 'The children <b>are</b> noisy again.' 'They always <b>are</b> .'
	If have or have got is the main verb in the previous clause or sentence, we can usually use a form of either do or have:  'Do you think I have a chance of winning?' 'Yes, I think you have.' (or you do.; 'Yes, I think so' is also possible.)  Even if he hasn't got a map himself, he may know someone who has. (or who does.)  However, if we use have + noun in the previous clause or sentence to talk about actions (have a shower, have a shave, have a good time, etc.) we prefer do:  I wasn't expecting to have a good time at the party, but I did.  Note that sometimes we can use either do, be or have with a similar meaning (see also C):  I asked Clara to tidy her room, and she has / did. ('has' replaces 'has tidied her room'; 'did' replaces 'tidied her room'.)
С	If we use <b>have</b> as an auxiliary verb, we can often follow it with <b>done</b> instead of repeating the main verb. This happens particularly in spoken English:  'She's never made a mistake before.' 'Well, she <b>has</b> ( <b>done</b> ) this time.'  However, this is usually not possible when the verb being substituted is intransitive:  'They've already gone.' 'I don't think Daniel <b>has</b> .' (not Daniel has done.)
	Similarly, after a <i>modal</i> auxiliary verb (can, could, may, might, must, ought to, shall, should, will, would) we can use do, particularly in spoken English:  'Will you be seeing David today?' 'I might (do).'
	Sometimes we can use <b>be</b> instead of <b>do</b> with a similar meaning (see also <b>D</b> ):  'Will you be seeing Felix today?' 'I <b>might</b> ( <b>do</b> / <b>be</b> ).' ('do' replaces 'see Felix today'; 'be' replaces 'be seeing Felix today'.)
D	If we use <b>be</b> as an <i>auxiliary</i> verb in the previous clause or sentence, we can use <b>be</b> after a modal:  'Is Ella staying for lunch?' 'Yes, I think she <b>will (be)</b> .' ( <i>or</i> she will <b>do</b> .)  However, if <b>be</b> is used as a <i>main</i> verb in the previous clause or sentence, or as an auxiliary verb within a passive, we can usually leave out <b>be</b> after a modal in informal contexts only. Compare:  'Lina's late again.' 'I thought she <b>might (be)</b> .' <i>and</i> It has been found that the comet is made entirely of gas, as it was predicted it <b>would be</b> .

- Make B's replies shorter by crossing out some of the words in italics. Give alternatives if possible.
  - 1 A: Have you ever played squash before? B: Yes, I have played squash before.
  - 2 A: I suppose we should have booked tickets. B: Yes, we should have booked tickets.
  - 3 A: Will you be staying in Brazil permanently? B: Yes, we will be staying in Brazil permanently.
  - 4 A: All the parking places will probably have been taken by now. B: Yes, I'm sure they will have been taken by now.
  - 5 A: Have you had dinner yet? B: No, I haven't had dinner yet.
  - 6 A: Are you going to Katalin's party? B: Yes, I am going to Katalin's party.
  - 7 A: If Diane hadn't given you a lift, you would have missed the train. B: Yes, I would have missed the train.
  - 8 A: Can you see Joe anywhere? B: No, I can't see him anywhere.
  - 9 A: Did you see that cyclist go through the red light? He couldn't have been looking. B: No, he *couldn't have been looking*.
- 64.2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of do, be or have (plus any alternatives). Put brackets around the word if it can be omitted. B & C
  - 1 I haven't finished doing the translation yet, but I will have (done) by tomorrow morning.
  - 2 As a child I always enjoyed watching cartoons on TV, and I still ......
  - 3 A: Has the post arrived yet? B: No, I don't think it ......
  - 4 Have a shower if you want, but take a towel from the cupboard when you ......
  - 5 A: It costs a fortune to rent a flat in the city centre. B: I'm sure it must ......
  - 6 I was hoping Ryan had an electric drill that I could borrow, but he ......

  - 10 A: I've got £100 with me. Will that be enough? B: It should ......
- 64.3 Complete the sentences with **might**, **should**, **will** or **would**, (plus any alternatives). If necessary, write **be** after the modal, or (**be**) if it is possible to omit it.
  - 1 It's not snowing at the moment, but they say it will / might (be)

  - 4 A: Are you revising a lot for the exams? B: Not as much as I

  - 8 A: My photograph was awarded first prize. B: I thought it .....



## Ellipsis of **to-infinitives**

We can sometimes use <b>to</b> instead of a clause beginning with a <b>to-infinitive</b> when it is clear from the context what we are talking about:  I wanted to come with you, but I won't be able <b>to</b> . (instead of to come with you.)  It might have been better if Rosa had asked for my help, but she chose <b>not to</b> . (instead of chose not to ask for my help.)  However, when we use the verb <b>be</b> in the previous sentence or clause, the <b>to-infinitive</b> form of <b>be</b> is repeated in the next:  Leon <b>was</b> frightened – or maybe he just pretended <b>to be</b> . (not just pretended to.)			
After most nouns and adjectives that can be followed by a to-infinitive clause or just use to:  I'm not going to write another book – at least I don't have any plans (to). (or plans to write another book.)  'Could you and Tom help me move house?' 'Well, I'm willing (to), and I'll ask Tom.'  We can also leave out a to-infinitive or use to with some verbs:  Alex will collect us by 10 o'clock. He promised (to).  'You were supposed to buy some sugar.' 'Sorry, I forgot (to).'  After verbs which must have a complement we can't leave out to:  I admit that I took her watch, but I didn't mean to.  Have you thought about getting vaccinated against cholera before going there? I'd certainly advise you to.	Also: agree, ask, begin, refuse, start, try  Also: afford, be able, choose, deserve, expect, fail, hate, hope, intend, love, need, prefer		
After would like and want in if-clauses and wh-clauses we can deto:  You're welcome to dance if you'd like (to). You can do whatever you would like (to). Call me Ben if you want (to). Come and see us when you want (to). In other clauses (not if- and wh-clauses) we include to: I was planning to see you tomorrow, and I would still like I offered to clean your car because I really want to, not be In if-clauses and wh-clauses we usually leave out to after like. Con you can have one if you like. and You can have one if you'd leave whenever you'd like (However, we include to with negative forms of want, like, and wowh-clauses: Shall we go and visit Laura?' 'I don't really want to.' I should have phoned Jo last night, but it was so late when 'He won't mind you asking him for a loan.' 'Oh, no, I would	to. cause I hope to be paid. compare: d like (to). to). puld like, including in if-clauses and		

Rewrite the italicised part of each sentence so that it has a similar meaning. Use a verb from the box (use each verb twice) followed by **to** or **to be**.

(	claimed	expected	pretended	used
1	Was she re	eally as good a	at tennis as she	e said she was? claimed to be
2	She occup	ies a much les	ss important rol	ole in the company than she did before.
3	Lucia was	frightened – o	r maybe she ju	ust acted as if she was.
4			He's much hapբ	pier than he was before.
5			ln't represent th	the majority of people, although it said that it did
6			inging, or at lea	ast they made believe that they did.
7			wasn't anything	g like I <i>imagined it</i> .

65.2 Complete the sentences. Write to if it is necessary; write (to) if it can be included or omitted.

- 6 Spain won 3–0, and deserved ....., after a fine performance.

8 I didn't get an interview for the job although I thought that I would.

- 7 A: Shall we ask Dad before we borrow the car? B: Yes, it might be a good idea ......
- 8 A: Would you present the prizes for the competition? B: I'd be delighted......
- 9 A: Would you like to travel first class? B: Well, yes, I'd certainly prefer ......
- 10 I was hoping to go to Russia this year, but I can't afford ......
- 65.3 If necessary, correct B's responses. If they are already correct, write ✓. □
  - 1 A: Can I have a biscuit? B: Take more than one if you like to.
  - 2 A: When shall we start playing the music? B: Whenever you'd like.
  - 3 A: Will Sara be able to play? B: I asked her, but she says she doesn't want.
  - 4 A: I can't come out tonight, I'm seeing Emma. B: She can join us, if she'd like to.
  - 5 A: Where are you going to in Norway? B: I haven't decided yet. I'll just go where I want.
  - 6 A: I don't think I'll go after all. B: That's okay. You don't have to if you don't want.
  - 7 A: Can the children come too? B: Yes, of course, if they want.
  - 8 A: Shall we go out walking tomorrow? B: Yes, I'd like very much.
  - 9 A: Could I ask you a personal question? B: Of course. Ask anything you like to.
  - 10 A: Did you ask Dr Mori to help you? B: No, he was very busy, so I didn't like.



## Position of adjectives

A	Many adjectives can be used either before the noun they describe, or following linking verbs such as appear, be, become, feel, get, and seem (see Unit 21). Compare:  The high price surprised him. and The price seemed high.					
В	Some adjectives are seldom or never used by some 'a-' adjectives:  The horse was alone in the field. (but not The alone horse)	pefore the noun they describe. These include –  Also: afraid, alike, alive, ashamed, asleep, awake, aware				
	Some have related adjectives that can The animal was alive. and A living (or A live animal. / The animal was	animal.  Also: a		or after a linking verb. Compare:  fraid – frightened, alike – similar, – lone, asleep – sleeping		
	some adjectives used to describe health and feelings:  My son felt unwell. (but not My unwell son) These are sometimes used between an adverb and noun e.g. 'a terminally ill patient'.			ontent, fine (in a health context), Il (but 'ill health'), sorry, (un)sure, (but 'an upset stomach'), well He's really not a well man')		
С	Emphasising adjectives are used to emphasise your feelings about something. Compare:  I felt like a fool. and I felt like a complete fool. (for emphasis)  Some emphasising adjectives (such as complete, and also absolute, entire, mere, sheer, total, utter) are seldom or never used after a linking verb:  It was a total failure. (but not usually The failure was total.)					
	Classifying adjectives are used to say that something is of used after a linking verb, unless we want to emphasise a complex a nuclear explosion (but not usually 'The explosion was nuclear', unless we environ					
	Qualitative adjectives are used to describe a or after a linking verb. Compare:  a beautiful sunset	thing or person				
	Note that some classifying adjectives can also be used wi adjectives and placed after a linking verb. Compare:  The country's <b>economic</b> reforms. and The process isn't <b>economic</b> . (= not profitable)		h differe	Also: academic, conscious, educational, (il)legal, scientific		
D	Many adjectives can be used immediately a (see Unit 69B). For example −      adjectives before a to-infinitive, or a pre     It was a speech likely to appeal to the samanager capable of making some -ible and -able adjectives such as a these adjectives immediately after a nou     This was the most difficult decision.     It is a treatment suitable for all child the adjectives concerned, involved, oppodifferent meanings when they are used bout the people present (= who were a lives asked for my present address.)	positional phras the unions. difficult decision available, imagi n only when it for imaginable. Idren with asthmosite, present, efore a noun and	e as part ons. nable, p ollows th na. proper, d immed ed of the	c of the adjective phrase:  cossible, suitable. However, we use the or when it is defined:  cresponsible. These words have diately after it. Compare:		

lf	necessary, correct these	sentences, or writ	e 🗸 if they are alr	eady correct. B	
1	After the accident I tried After the accident			r. he car, who was upset.	
2	In the distance I could se	ee an alone figure w	alking towards me		
3	It wasn't a great surprise	when Rahim died a	as he hadn't been a	a well man for years.	
4	I remember her as a glac	d person who was al	ways smiling.		
5	He stood at the bedroon	n door, looking at h	is asleep daughter	•	
6	The fire on the ship is un	der control, but the	ere are still many a	fraid passengers on board.	
7	She spent most of her life	fe nursing seriously	ill children in the h	nospital.	
8	The two children were of	f an alike age.			
9	We were unsure which w	vay to go.			
10	The sorry girls apologise	d to their teacher fo	or their behaviour.		
	used in both sentences		9	rom the box. If an adjective can	
		gal – stupid sei	_	: )	
1	a The experiment was a	a / an	failure.		
	b After Dr Owen left the				
2	a None of the equipme	15 5			
	b The shop doesn't sell				
3	a The trip to the wildlife			experience.	
	b The toys were				
4	_			rupt all the work in the office.	
	b The				
5				is neighbour over a tree in the	
	garden.		S		
	b It's completely	to cl	narge a fee for enti	ry into the museum.	
no	oun (or both if possible).	(Use a dictionary	if necessary.) D	ce, either before or after the	
	The party was excellent,	and I d like to than		people	
	(concerned)				
	As the mir			vice, I think he should resign.	
2	As the mir (responsible)	nister	for the health ser	vice, I think he should resign.	
2	As the mir (responsible) The new machinery was	nister	for the health ser		8
2	As the mir (responsible) The new machinery was effect (op	nisterintended to increas	for the health serse output, but it se	vice, I think he should resign.	ai a
2	As themir (responsible) The new machinery was effect	nisterintended to increas	for the health serse output, but it se	vice, I think he should resign.	60
2 3 4 5	As themir (responsible) The new machinery was effect	intended to increase opposite) eed when accompar	for the health serse output, but it sensed by a / an	vice, I think he should resign.  ems to have had theadult	
2 3 4 5	As the mir (responsible) The new machinery was effect (op Children are only admitt (responsible) It's the only The pond on the village (see See See See See See See See See See	intended to increase opposite) eed when accompar	for the health serse output, but it sensed by a / an	vice, I think he should resign.  ems to have had theadult	
2 3 4 5 6	As the mir (responsible) The new machinery was effect (op Children are only admitt (responsible) It's the only The pond on the village gresidents. (apparent)	intended to increase oposite) ed when accompar room green was filled in v	for the health sense output, but it sense output, but it sense output an	vice, I think he should resign.  ems to have had the adult at night. (available) of loca	
2 3 4 5 6	As the mir (responsible) The new machinery was effect (op Children are only admitt (responsible) It's the only The pond on the village gresidents. (apparent)	intended to increase oposite) ed when accompar room green was filled in v	for the health sense output, but it sense output, but it sense output an	vice, I think he should resign.  ems to have had theadult	

## Gradable and non-gradable adjectives: using adjectives with adverbs

A

*Gradable adjectives* can be used with *grading adverbs* such as **very** or **extremely** to say that a thing or person has more or less of a particular quality. Here are some examples of adjectives used as gradable in their most common meanings:

in their m	nost common meanings:					
Grading adverbs	a bit, dreadfully, extremely, hugely, immensely, intensely, rather, reasonably, slightly, very	+	angry, big, busy, clever, common, different, fast, friendly, happy, important, low, popular, quiet, rich, strong, weak, young	Gradable adjectives		
	<ul><li>She was extremely rich.</li><li>It's hugely popular.</li></ul>		<ul><li>The people there are reasonably fr</li><li>They're slightly different.</li></ul>	iendly.		
adjective can use n complete almost, e	Non-gradable adjectives are not used with adverbs such as <b>very</b> or <b>extremely</b> because these adjectives do not refer to qualities which have different degrees. With non-gradable adjectives we can use non-grading adverbs which emphasise their extreme or absolute nature, such as <b>absolutely</b> , <b>completely</b> , etc. Many classifying adjectives (see Unit 66C) are usually non-gradable. Adverbs such as <b>almost</b> , <b>exclusively</b> , etc., which indicate the extent of the quality, are commonly used with classifying adjectives. Here are some examples of non-gradable adjectives in their most common meanings:					
Non- grading adverbs	absolutely, completely, entirely, perfectly, practically, simply, totally, utterly, virtually; almost, exclusively, fully, largely, mainly, nearly, primarily	+	awful, excellent, huge, impossible, superb, terrible, unique, unknown, wrong; domestic, environmental, agricultural	Non- gradable adjectives		
	<ul><li>She's completely wrong.</li><li>He was practically unknown to the public.</li></ul>		<ul><li>It was absolutely superb.</li><li>The region is largely agricultural.</li></ul>			
example,	t not all the adverbs can go with all the we can say 'absolutely huge', but we w r emphasis or for humour.					
Gradable adjectives are sometimes used with non-grading adverbs, and non-gradable adjectives with grading adverbs to give special emphasis or to be humorous:  What you're asking isn't just difficult – it's extremely impossible! (grading adverb + non-gradable adjective)  You've won a hundred pounds? Wow, you're virtually rich! (non-grading adverb + gradable adjective)						
The adverbs fairly (= to quite a large degree, but less than 'very'), really (= 'very [much]') and pretty (= similar to 'fairly'; used in informal contexts) are commonly used with both gradable and nongradable adjectives:  She's fairly popular at school. It was a fairly awful film. I'm really busy at the moment. The flooding was really terrible. It's a pretty important exam. The bill was pretty huge.						
indicate t						

Also: invaluable, superb, tremendous, wonderful

В

67.1 Complete the four sentences which contain gradable adjectives using very. Complete the remaining sentences with the adverbs from the box. Try to use a different one each time. A

1 The bridge is now complete. 2 The material is cotton. 3 The food was excellent. 4 Her explanation was clear. 5 Their actions were illegal.	sively	mainly	practically
<ul> <li>2 The material is cotton.</li> <li>3 The food was excellent.</li> <li>4 Her explanation was clear.</li> </ul>			
4 Her explanation wasclear.			
6 The new restaurant ispopula	ır.		
7 I was in a / an permanent sta	te of sus	pense.	
8 I thought she was attractive.			
9 Until last year the club was m	nale.		
O Small black cars are notvisibl	le.		

- 67.2 Answer the questions using an adverb + adjective. A How would you feel if ...
  - 1 ... a friend said s/he had just won a million pounds? I'd be absolutely delighted.
  - 2 ... your best friend told you s/he was emigrating to Australia?
  - 3 ... someone broke a window in your house or flat?
  - 4 ... a complete stranger told you that you were very beautiful / handsome?
  - 5 ... you lost some concert tickets you had just bought?
- 67.3 If necessary, correct the adverbs in italics in this email. If they are already correct, write  $\checkmark$ . (A)



I'm writing this email in my new flat in Stratford. It's in an (1) absolutely old building which was (2) totally renovated last year. Fortunately, I didn't have to do much decorating when I moved in. As you know, I'm (3) hugely useless at DIY so I was (4) absolutely happy about that. The building is (5) reasonably unique in this part of Stratford, as most others around are (6) rather modern, and the view across the river from my sitting room is (7) simply superb. The flat's (8) simply small, but (9) completely comfortable for me.

My neighbours are (10) *very* friendly and usually (11) *fully* quiet. The only problem is that the woman upstairs plays the trumpet and I find it (12) *a bit* impossible to read when she's playing. I get (13) *slightly* angry about this, but she doesn't play for long each time, so it's not an (14) *extremely* terrible problem.

I know that the weather has been (15) *dreadfully* awful recently, so it's been difficult for you to get here, but you must come over one evening. There's an (16) *absolutely* marvellous restaurant nearby that we could go to.

Hope all is well,

Lea

- 67.4 Cross out any incorrect or unlikely alternatives. B
  - 1 Her advice was fairly / really invaluable.
  - 2 Our neighbours are really / fairly friendly.
  - 3 I thought his performance as Hamlet was fairly / really tremendous.
  - 4 The children kept pretty / very quiet during the concert.
  - 5 The view from the window was very / pretty wonderful.
  - 6 Their cooperation is pretty / very essential if we want the project to go ahead.
  - 7 The weather was *really / fairly* perfect for a long walk.
  - 8 In this photograph she looked really / very young.
  - 9 The workmanship in the furniture was *pretty / very* superb.
  - 10 The disease is fairly / pretty common in this part of the country.

# Gradable and non-gradable adjectives: differences in meaning

8
Some adjectives have both gradable and non-gradable senses.
(i) Some adjectives have different senses when they are gradable and non-gradable. Compare:  Smith is a very common name. (= frequently found; gradable) and  We have a lot of common interests. (= shared; non-gradable; not very)  The house is very old. (= existed many years; gradable) and  I met my old politics professor the other day. (= former; non-gradable; not very)
Also: civil, clean, critical, electric (= 'exciting' when gradable), empty, false, late, odd, original, particular, straight
<ul> <li>(ii) Some adjectives have similar meanings when they are gradable and non-gradable. However, when they are gradable we talk about the quality that a person or thing has (i.e. they are qualitative adjectives), and when they are non-gradable we talk about the category or type they belong to (i.e. they are classifying adjectives). Compare:         <ul> <li>She did a very professional job in painting the living room. (= having the qualities of an expert; gradable) and</li> <li>Can I ask your professional advice about this problem?' (= relating to work; non-gradable)'</li> <li>They had a very public argument. (= seen / heard by a lot of people; gradable) and</li> <li>He was forced to resign by public pressure. (= from many people in the community; non-gradable)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Also: academic, adult, average, diplomatic, foreign, genuine, guilty, human, individual, innocent, mobile, private, scientific, technical, true, wild
In spoken English in particular, we can use <b>good and</b> , <b>lovely and</b> , and <b>nice and</b> followed by another gradable adjective in order to emphasise it. Possible patterns include – <b>good and ready</b> and more colloquially <b>good and proper / relaxed / strong (</b> but not usually good and beautiful / rich / tall):  If you're all feeling <b>good and relaxed</b> after the break, let's get on with the meeting.
<ul> <li>lovely and dry / soft / sunny / warm (but not usually lovely and decent / empty / short):</li> <li>It's lovely and warm in here. Freezing outside, though.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>nice and bright / clean / cold / comfortable / early / fresh / quiet / simple / soft / tidy / warm (but not usually nice and interesting / handsome / exciting):</li> <li>'Shall we get some strawberries?' 'Yes, they look nice and fresh.'</li> </ul>
We can also link comparative adjectives (see Unit 72) with <b>and</b> to talk about an increasing degree of the quality described in the adjective. We use <b>more and more + adjective</b> in a similar way:  As she got <b>more and more excited</b> , her voice got <b>higher and higher</b> and <b>louder and louder</b> The taxi driver just drove <b>faster and faster and faster</b> until I told him to stop, and I got out.

(	cri	tical	false	late	original	straight	)			
1	Th	ne nove	l was prai	ised by th	ne judges foi	rits very o	riginal	use of lang	uage.	
2	Th	ne train	is		again. I w	onder if the b	oad weath	er has dela	yed it.	
3	Tŀ	ne repo	rt was		of the	police office	ers involve	d in the inv	estigation.	
4	11	nad a /	an		choice be	tween worki	ng for my	father and	having no jo	b at
						informa				
						in a / an			on in hospita	al las
						en removed a			e modern or	ies.
0		120				ncere, but so	me seeme	:d b	, sc	that
				,	what they					
	dje (la	ctive in	both ser	ntences, c <del>(f</del>			n only on	e. <mark>Aii</mark> diplomatio		se th
a	dje (la (v	ctive in argely) ery) hu	both ser academi man	ntences, c <del>(f</del> (intens	but include <del>airly) avera</del> ely) private	the adverb i	n only on tremely) o y) technic	e. Aii diplomatic		se th
a	dje (la (vo a	ctive in argely) ery) hu	both ser academi man average	ntences, c <del>(f</del> (intens tempe	but include airly) avera ely) private rature on the	the adverb i e (ext highly	in only one tremely) one () technic bleasant 2	diplomatical		se th
1	(la (vo a b a	rgely) ery) hu The Brecst The in	academinan  average on is a / - structions	tempe tempe fai	but include airly) avera ely) private rature on the rly average	the adverb in the adverb in the adverbe (extended to the adverbed to the adver	tremely) on tremely) on technic oleasant 23 ne south o learly mea	diplomatical  3.4°C. f England.	xpert.	
1 2	(la (v a b a b	The Brecst The in	academic man average on is a / - structions got a job	tences, c (fintens tempe an fai s were	but include airly) avera ely) private rature on the rly average	the adverb in the adverb in the adverbe island is a part town in the and common summer and common in the adverbe is a part town in the adverbe is a part to a part to a part town in the adverbe is a part to a part to a part to a part to a part town in the adverbe is a part to a part to a part to a part to a part town in the adverbe is a part to	tremely) (  tremel	diplomatical  3.4°C. f England. ant for an epeople hav	xpert.	er pro
1 2	(la (v a b a b a	The	academic man average on is a / - structions got a job frightened and of.	temces, c (fintens tempe an fai s were providing d in this s	but include airly) avera ely) private rature on the rly average situation is a	the adverb inge (extended (highly extended (highly extend	tremely) ( //) technic bleasant 2: ne south o learly mea pport for p	diplomatical  3.4 °C. f England. ant for an epeople haves	xpert. ing compute	er pro o be
1 2 3	(la (vo ababa b	The	average on is a / - structions got a job frightened and of. the top of ites old.	temces, c (fintens tempe an fai s were providing d in this s	but include  airly) avera ely) private  rature on the rly average  situation is a	the adverb in the second secon	tremely) ( //) technic  bleasant 2: ne south o  learly mea  pport for p	diplomatical  3.4°C. f England. ant for an epeople haves	xpert. ing compute nd nothing t	er pro o be , perl
1 2 3	(labababaabaab	The	academic man average on is a / - structions got a job frightened and of. the top of ries old. d it difficu	tempe fair swere providing d in this state to unce	but include (airly) avera ely) private rature on the ruy average situation is a untain there	the adverb in the second secon	tremely) on tremely) of the chnic oleasant 2: the south of the chnic olearly means of the chnic of the chnic olearly means of the chnic olearly	diplomatical  3.4°C.  f England.  ant for an epeople have response ar	xpert. ing compute nd nothing t	er pro o be , perl
1 2 3	(lababababab	The	academic man average on is a / - structions got a job frightened and of. the top of ties old. d it difficu	temces, c (fintens tempe an fair s were providing d in this s the mount	but include airly) avera ely) private rature on the rly average situation is a untain there derstand the standards	the adverb inge (extended (highly extended (highly extend	tremely) ( //) technic  bleasant 2: ne south o learly mea pport for p	diplomatical  3.4 °C.  f England.  ant for an epeople have esponse are  alk that Provide.	xpert. ing compute nd nothing t habitation ofessor Dow	er pro o be , perh ns ga
1 2 3	(la (vo ababa baba	The	average on is a / -i structions got a job frightened of. he top of ries old. d it difficult worked ha	temces, c (fintens tempe an fai s were providing d in this s the mou	but include airly) avera ely) private rature on the rly average situation is a untain there derstand the standards a ord a	the adverb inge (extern (highly extern) is a permission of the content of the con	tremely) ( //) technic  bleasant 2: ne south o learly mea pport for p	diplomatical  3.4°C. f England. Int for an epeople have response are alk that Provide the conformation of their portion for their	xpert. ing compute nd nothing t habitation ofessor Dow	er pro o be , perh ns ga
1 2 3	(la (v) ababa bababab	The	average on is a / - structions got a job frightened and of. the top of ries old. d it difficu	temces, c (fintens tempe an fai s were providing d in this s the mou	but include fairly) avera ely) private rature on the rly average situation is a intain there derstand the standards a ord a	the adverb inge (extern (highly extern) is a property and community and community were signs of the school person and h	tremely) ( //) technic  bleasant 2: ne south o  learly mea  pport for p  t  are very h  education  ad few clo	diplomatical  3.4°C. f England. Int for an epeople have response are alk that Propingh. In for their passe friends.	xpert. ing compute nd nothing t habitation ofessor Dow	er pro o be , perh ns ga een.
1 2 3	(la (vo abababababa	The	academic man average on is a / - structions got a job frightened and of. the top of ries old. d it difficult vorked has as a / an and	temces, c (fintens tempe an fai s were providing d in this s the mou	but include airly) avera ely) private rature on the ruy average situation is a untain there derstand the standards a ord a y she worke	the adverb inge (extern (highly extern) is a permission of the content of the con	tremely) of the control of the contr	diplomatical  3.4°C.  f England.  Int for an epeople have esponse are alk that Propiet.  In for their ose friends.  Serv	xpert. ing compute nd nothing t habitation ofessor Dow three childr ice for a nur	er pro o be , perh ns ga en. nber

2 I've put you in the spare room at the back of the house, so it'll be \_\_\_\_\_\_.
3 A: Have you felt the material my new coat's made of? B: Oh, it's \_\_\_\_\_.

4 The oranges looked quite old, but when I cut into them they were ......

1 Now that the room is painted yellow, it looks <u>lovely</u> and <u>bright</u>.

## Participle adjectives and compound adjectives

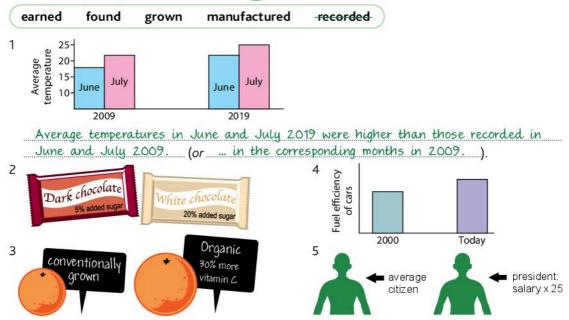
	Participle adjectives					
	Some -ing forms (present participles) and -ed forms (past participles) of verbs can be used as adjectives. Most of these participle adjectives can be used before the noun they describe or following linking verbs (see Unit 21):  The hotel had a welcoming atmosphere.  I found this broken plate in the kitchen cupboard.  The students' tests results were pleasing.  My mother seemed delighted with the present.					
3	We can use many participle adjectives <i>immediately</i> after nouns when they identify or define the noun.  This use is similar to <i>defining relative clauses</i> and they are often called 'reduced relatives':  We had to pay for the <i>rooms</i> used. (or the <i>rooms</i> that were used.)					
	Some of these are rarely used before the noun:  My watch was among the <i>things</i> <b>taken</b> . (but not the taken things.)  Also: applying, caused, found, included, provided					
	Others can be used before or immediately after nouns:  The crowd watching grew restless. or The watching crowd grew restless.  Also: affected, allocated, broken, chosen, identified, infected, interested, remaining, resulting, stolen					
	In formal English, that and those can be used as pronouns before a participle adjective:  The flour is of a higher quality than that produced by other varieties of wheat. (= the flour which is produced)  The touchscreens perform less well than those manufactured elsewhere. (= the touchscreens which are manufactured elsewhere)  Here is some advice for those (= people) preparing to go on holiday.					
	Compound adjectives  Many compound adjectives include a participle adjective. Common patterns are:  adverb + -ed participle					
	We can use some participle adjectives only in adjective compounds. For example, we can't say ' behaved children' or ' a making enterprise' as the sense is incomplete without the adverb or noun.  Also: New York-based, Paris-born, brick-built, easy-going, peace-keeping, long-lasting, good-looking, home-made, hair-raising, far-reaching, well-resourced, sweet-smelling, strange-sounding, soft-spoken, sour-tasting, nerve-wracking					
	Note that many other compound adjectives do not include participle adjectives:  The problem is <b>short-term</b> .  It was just a <b>small-scale</b> project.					

69.1 Replace the italicised parts of these sentences with present or past participle adjectives formed from the verbs in the box. Give alternative positions for the adjective if possible. B

cause identify include interest provide remain result

- 1 I offered to pay for any damage that was the result. \_\_caused \_\_ (not ... any caused damage.)
- 2 Steps are being taken by telephone engineers to solve the problems which have been noticed.
- 3 Visitors who want to find out more can buy a booklet with further information.
- 4 Please answer the questions on the sheet that has been given to you.
- 5 The holiday cost £1,200, with flights which were part of the total.
- 6 I didn't want to be on TV but the publicity that was the consequence was good for business.
- 7 Just before serving the pasta, sprinkle over any cheese that is left over.

69.2 Write a sentence to describe each set of information using either that or those followed by one of the participle adjectives from the box.



- 69.3 Complete each second sentence using a compound adjective from D to replace the italicised information in each first sentence.
  - 1 The company is organised from New York. It is a New York-based company.
  - 2 The school has all the things it needs, with sufficient books and computers. The school is , with sufficient books and computers.
  - 3 I found that the whole experience *made me tense and worried*. I found the whole experience
- 69.4 Match the words to form compound adjectives and use them to rewrite the italicised parts of these sentences. D

clean eye ill wide catching equipped ranging shaven

- 1 At the age of 16 children do not have the ability or experience to take on the role of parents.

  are ill-equipped
- 2 The discussions dealt with a great variety of topics.
- 3 When I last saw him he had a beard, but now he has no beard.
- 4 The advertisements for the new car are very noticeable.

## Adjective + to-infinitive, -ing, that-clause, wh-clause

Α

When an adjective comes after a linking verb (e.g. **appear**, **be**, **become**, **seem**; see Unit 21) we can use a number of patterns after the adjective including a **to-infinitive**, **-ing**, **that-clause**, and **wh-clause**. (For It + linking verb + adjective, see B.)

	adjective +	example adjectives used in this pattern
i	to-infinitive  You're free to leave at any time you want.	(un)able, careful, crazy, curious, difficult, easy, foolish, free, good, hard, impossible, inclined, mad, nice, prepared, ready, stupid, welcome, willing
ii	-ing  ○ He was busy doing his homework.	busy, crazy, foolish, mad, stupid; (after the verb feel) awful, awkward, bad, good, guilty, terrible
iii	that-clause  He became worried (that) she might fall down.	afraid, alarmed, amazed, angry, annoyed, ashamed, astonished, aware, concerned, disappointed, glad, (un)happy, pleased, shocked, sorry, upset, worried; certain, confident, positive, sure
iv	wh-clause  I'm not certain (of / about) why he wants to borrow the money	afraid, not aware / unaware, not certain / uncertain, doubtful, not sure / unsure, worried
V	to-infinitive or that-clause  ○ She was afraid to say anything. ○ I was afraid that I would be late.	the adjectives in (iii) above, except <b>aware</b> , <b>confident</b> and <b>positive</b>
vi	to-infinitive or -ing  He'd be stupid to leave now.  He'd be stupid giving up the job.	crazy, foolish, mad, stupid
vii	<ul> <li>ing or that-clause</li> <li>She felt awful leaving him with all the clearing up.</li> <li>She felt awful that she was late.</li> </ul>	(after the verb <b>feel</b> ) <b>awful</b> , <b>awkward</b> , <b>bad</b> , <b>good</b> , <b>guilty</b> , <b>terrible</b>

It + linking verb + adjective

to-infinitive, -ing or that-clause:

angry to discover that ...)

It made me angry (to discover) that so

much money was wasted. (or It made

me angry discovering that ... or I was

We can sometimes use it + linking verb + adjective + to-infinitive as an alternative to subject + linking verb + adjective + to-infinitive (see also Units 96 and 97):					
<ul><li>The fireworks were amazing to watch. or</li><li>It was amazing to watch the fireworks.</li></ul>	Also: annoying, awkward, easy, good, interesting, lovely, simple, terrific, wonderful				
In informal speech we can use an -ing form instead of a to-infinitive:  It is easy understanding her.  It was amazing watching the fireworks.  We can use a similar pattern with adjective + wh- or that-clause (see Unit 96A):  It is not clear why he did it.  It was odd that she left so suddenly.					
After certain adjectives we often include <b>of + subject</b> between the adjective and a <b>to-infinitive</b> :					
<ul><li>It was rude (of them) to criticise her. or</li><li>They were rude to criticise her.</li></ul>	Also: brave, generous, kind, mean, thoughtful, unprofessional, unreasonable				
When we talk about how somebody reacts to a situation we can use <b>it + make</b> with an adjective and					

Also: ashamed, furious, glad, happy,

miserable, nervous, sad, tired, uncomfortable

cheat

know

leave

70.1 Complete the sentences with a **to-infinitive** or an **-ing** form of the verbs in the box. Give alternatives where possible. A

open

(	resign	talk	turn	underestimate	
1	I'm afra	id I can't	afford th	at much. Would you be prepare	edthe price if I pay cash?
2	Kenzo w	as stupi	db	in the exam. He was bour	nd to get caught.
3	He felt	good		that he had helped solve the p	oroblem.
4	Don't fe	el that y	ou need t	o stay to the very end. You're fr	eeat any time.
5	Anyone	trying to	climb th	e mountain would be foolish	the challenge facing them.
6	People s	said I was	s crazy	a shop in the village	e, but it's been a success so far.
7	She was	too bus	y	on the phone to notice th	hat Roya had come into the room.
8	It's so d	ifficult to	get a job	at the moment you'd be mad	
9	Some p	eople wo	ould be in	clined if they sme	elt smoke in the house.
0	I felt aw	/ful		people away from the concert,	but there just wasn't any more room.

panic

reduce

Reply

**Forward** 

70.2 Correct any mistakes in the italicised parts of this email about a holiday in Thailand. 🗛

• • •

... After a couple of days Mark announced that he was going walking in the hills near the hotel. I thought he was (1) stupid that he would go alone and that it was dangerous. But he said that he was (2) confident not to get lost. We ended up arguing and finally he stormed off, saying he (3) wasn't sure when he'd be back. I went into town, but I felt a bit (4) guilty to shop all day. On the bus on the way back to the hotel I got talking to a local woman and (5) was concerned learning that it got very cold in the hills at night. I started (6) to get worried that he might be in danger, but I (7) wasn't certain what to do. But when I got back to the hotel, there was Mark (8) busy to drink orange juice by the pool. He'd decided not to go walking after all! He said he (9) was sorry upsetting me. At first I was angry and said he was stubborn and that he just (10) wasn't prepared admitting that I'd been right. But really I was just (11) pleased that he was safe ...

- 70.3 Rewrite these sentences using It + be + adjective. If possible, use of + a personal pronoun after the adjective. B
  - 1 She was brave to spend the night in the old house alone. It was brave of her to spend the night in the old house alone.
  - 2 Such a magnificent performance was wonderful to hear.
  - 3 You were mean to eat all the cake and not leave any for me.
  - 4 They were unreasonable to complain about the exam results.
  - 5 The top of the jar was awkward to get off.
  - 6 The shelves were simple to put up.
  - 7 He was unprofessional to criticise the headteacher in front of the staff.
  - 8 You were kind to give birthday presents to the children.
- 70.4 Complete these sentences with It made me + any appropriate adjective. B

1	It made me angry to hear how she had been insulted.
2	listening to his lies.
3	that we wouldn't be working together again.
4	to learn how badly we treated immigrants in the 1950s
5	hearing the dentist's drill as I sat in the waiting room.

## Adjectives and adverbs

☐ The door was **wide** open so I just went

straight in. (= completely)

ridjectives and adverbs					
Some adverbs of manner (saying how something is done) are formed from an adjective + -ly: sudden → suddenly, happy → happily, etc. When an adjective already ends in -ly (e.g. cowardly, elderly, friendly, kindly, lively, lonely, lovely) we don't add -ly to it to make an adverb. Instead we can use a prepositional phrase with fashion, manner, or way:    He smiled at me in a friendly way.   She waved her hands around in a lively fashion.   Most participle adjectives ending in -ed (see Unit 69) don't have an adverb form and so we use a prepositional phrase instead:   They rose to greet me in a subdued manner. (not subduedly.)   or we use a preposition and a related noun if there is one:   She looked at me in amazement. (not amazedly.)   However, some do have an adverb form with -ly. Compare:   The storm was unexpected. and   The weather turned unexpectedly stormy.   Also: agitatedly, allegedly, deservedly, determinedly, disappointedly, excitedly, hurriedly, pointedly, repeatedly, reportedly, reputedly, supposedly, worriedly					
Some adverbs have two forms, one ending in -ly and the other not. We can sometimes use either form without changing the meaning, although the form ending in -ly is grammatically correct and more formal:  She ran quick / quickly towards the door. and must be used if the adverb comes immediately before the verb:  She quickly ran towards the door. (not She quick ran)					
Some adverbs have different meanings with and without -ly. Compare:  She gave her time free. (= for no money) and She gave her time freely. (= willingly)  I arrived late for the concert. (= not on time) and I haven't seen Amy lately. (= recently)  Compare also:					
He wandered <b>deep</b> into the forest and got lost. (= a long way)	<ul> <li>He felt deeply hurt by her criticisms. (= very)</li> <li>They loved each other deeply. (= very much)</li> </ul>				
O You don't have to change trains. You can go direct. (= without stopping)	<ul><li>I'll be with you directly. (= very soon)</li><li>He saw Hassan directly ahead. (= straight)</li></ul>				
<ul> <li>It sounded awful – one of the choir members was singing flat.</li> <li>This time I flatly refused to lend himoney. (= definitely; completely)</li> <li>He kicked the ball high over the goal.</li> <li>Everyone thinks highly of her teach (= they think her teaching is very g</li> </ul>					
		<ul><li>'Is Emil here yet?' 'He's just arrived.'</li><li>She looks just like her mother.</li></ul>	<ul> <li>You can be justly proud of your musical achievements. (= rightly; justifiably)</li> </ul>		
Which of these cheeses do you like most?	<ul> <li>Her novels are now mostly out of print.</li> <li>(= most of them)</li> <li>We mostly go on holiday to France.</li> <li>(= usually)</li> </ul>				
They cut <b>short</b> their holiday when Lina fell ill. (= went home early)	The speaker will be arriving <b>shortly</b> (= soon). Please take your seats.				

O You won't have any problems getting the

book. It's widely available. (= in many places)

Rewrite the italicised words using a -ly form of the participles in the box. If a -ly form isn't possible, use a prepositional phrase or a preposition + related noun. (A)

despaired determined disappointed agitated anticipated organised relaxed repeated reputed satisfied

- 1 I warned him again and again of the dangers on the mountain, but he insisted on going on.
- 2 The class was out of control and he put his head in his hands feeling that he could do nothing.
- 3 As his mother took the roast chicken out of the oven, Rod licked his lips because he was looking forward to eating it.
- 4 It is said to be, although no one knows for certain, the smallest post office in the country.
- 5 'Still no news from Paul,' she said in a sad way.
- 6 She ran the company in a calm way and rarely let anything annoy her.
- 7 She shook her head as if she had made a firm decision.
- 8 When he had finished the painting, he looked at it in a way that showed he was happy.
- 9 Victor runs the office carefully and tidily, so I don't think we should change things now.
- 10 Sofia paced about in an anxious way as she waited to go into the interview.
- 71.2 Complete the sentences with suitable pairs of adverbs from C. Use the form with -ly in one sentence and the form without -ly in the other.
  - 1 a What she hated ......was having to get up at 5:30 every morning.
    - b We don't go out much in the evening. We ...... watch television.
  - 2 a The firm paid compensation, but stopped ...... of admitting they were to blame.
    - b The book is due to be published .....
  - 3 a I'm not in my office at the moment, but if you leave your name and number I'll get back to
  - b I used to have to change in Amsterdam to get to Moscow, but now I can fly ......
  - 4 a I got very little sleep on the flight, but I felt ...... awake when I arrived in Tokyo.
    - b French is .....spoken in North Africa.
  - 5 a She is one of the most regarded researchers in the university.
    - b We could just see the plane flying ......overhead.
- 71.3 Correct any mistakes in these sentences. If there are no mistakes, write ✓. (A-C)

- 1 The rise in car crime in the area is deeply worrying.
- 2 She waved friendlily to me.
- 3 Cut the onions up finely and fry them with garlic.
- 4 I asked the boys to move their bicycles off the football pitch but they flat refused.
- 5 I couldn't understand what he was saying. He didn't speak very clearly.
- 6 He was accused of behaving cowardlily in the
- 7 Pierre Evene manufactured the glass for which the town became just renowned.
- 8 I called Elena and she slow turned to face me.
- 9 Spread some butter on the bread as thin as possible.
- 10 The prime minister was loud applauded by her audience.



# Adjectives and adverbs: comparative and superlative forms

A	Comparatives: -er vs more / less than	Reminder → L7–L8
	We usually add <b>-er</b> to one-syllable adjectives and adverbs to make their continuous However, we use <b>more</b> + <b>adjective</b> − with one-syllable past participle adjectives (see Unit 69) such as <b>bored</b> , continuous After I'd ironed my shirt it looked <b>more creased</b> than before. (not	reased, pleased, worn:
	<ul> <li>☆ with fun, real, right and wrong:</li> <li>☐ I expected the film to be rather dull, but I couldn't have been more</li> <li>☆ when we are comparing two qualities:</li> <li>☐ 'Wasn't he brave to swim across?' 'I think he was more mad than</li> <li>☐ Although the paint was called 'Sky Blue', I thought it was more greaters.</li> </ul>	brave.'
	We can also use ' he was <b>n't so much</b> brave <b>as mad</b> ' and ' it was b We can sometimes use <b>more</b> as an alternative to the <b>-er</b> form to emphasis You might think it's dark here but it's <b>more dark</b> in the cellar. (or .	se the comparison:
В	Also: clear, cold, deep, fair, rough, soft, true  The majority of adjectives with two syllables are most commonly used wit  participle adjectives (e.g. worried, boring)  adjectives ending in -ful and -less (e.g. careful, careless)	th <b>more / less,</b> particularly:
	Also: active, afraid, alert, alike, alone, ashamed, aware, cautious, certain, complex, direct, eager, exact, formal, frequent, modern, special, recent	
	However, two-syllable adjectives ending <b>-y</b> , <b>-ow</b> , <b>-er</b> and <b>-ure</b> can take eit <b>adjective</b> form, although the <b>-er</b> form is more frequently used.	ther an <b>-er</b> or the <b>more</b> +
	Some adjectives (e.g. complete, equal, favourite, ideal, perfect, unique) superlative meaning so are not often used with -er / more / less or -est / can use comparative or superlative forms for special emphasis:  The weather today was good, but less perfect than yesterday.	. N. S.
С	Superlatives	
	We usually use <b>the</b> , a possessive form (with <b>-'s</b> ), or a possessive pronoun bor adverb. In informal contexts we sometimes leave out <b>the</b> before an <b>-es</b> superlative after a linking verb, particularly at the end of a sentence:  'Why did you go by bus?' 'It was ( <b>the</b> ) <b>cheapest</b> .'  Which was ( <b>the</b> ) <b>most expensive</b> ?  However, we can't leave out <b>the</b> when we go on to say what group of thing	t or most + adjective
	<ul> <li>'Why did you buy these oranges?' 'They were the cheapest ones I cheapest ones)</li> </ul>	could find.' (not They were
	When <b>most</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> is used without <b>the</b> , <b>most</b> means somet very formal/literary:  I checked the form <b>most carefully</b> (= very carefully) but didn't no	
D	After a superlative we use of + a plural noun phrase to name the objects  Adam's the oldest of my three brothers.  Note that we can put the of-phrase at the beginning to emphasise it:  Of my three brothers, Adam's the oldest.	being compared:
	When we give the location or context within which the comparison is made singular noun phrase:  It was the tallest tree in the forest. (not the tallest tree of the forest)	

72.1 Complete the sentences with a comparative adjective from the box, using an -er or more + adjective form. Use both if possible. (A)

deep	hard	long	naughty	pretty	scared	strong	true
1 It was	almost as	if the wo	olf was		of us th	an we were	of it.
2 The riv	er was		tha	n I expecte	d so I decid	ed to turn b	ack.
3 Ithink	I'd descri	be the dre	ess as		than bea	utiful.	
4 I boug	ht this ter	nnis racke	t because it's	i			
5 Sam is	n't a bad	boy really	y. He's		than dis	honest.	
5 The ex	am was		th	an I though	t it would b	e.	
7 We ne		e responsi	bility for elde				er like this it
			path	n up the hill	as the other	er one was v	verv steep.



- 72.2 If necessary, correct or improve the comparative adjectives. B
  - 1 I may not be much of a cook, but Nina is even *uselesser* in the kitchen than I am. more useless
  - 2 When I took the washing out of the machine it looked dirtier than when it went in.
  - 3 A: The painting is from the 17th century. B: Really? It looks *recenter* than that.
  - 4 The film starts slowly, but gets excitinger after the first half hour.
  - 5 Louis is already rich, but his aim in life seems to be to become even more wealthy.
  - 6 All of us are unique, but some of us are more unique than others.
  - 7 Most research in this area uses simple interviews, but we used a *complexer* methodology.
  - 8 I didn't do well at school, and my fellow students all seemed cleverer than me.
  - 9 For an extra \$500 you could buy a much powerfuler motorbike.
  - 10 Curiously, many people say they feel mentally *alerter* if they go for a short walk every day.
- 72.3 Put brackets around the if it can be omitted in these sentences.
  - 1 It was the sweetest orange I'd eaten for ages.
  - 2 Anna, Beth and Clara were all excellent musicians, but Clara was the most creative.
  - 3 He's the fastest runner in his class.
  - 4 We get lots of birds in our garden, but blackbirds are the most common.
  - 5 A: Shall we go by train, bus or car?B: Well, going by bus is actually the easiest.
- 72.4 Complete the sentences with in or of. D
  - 1 The building is said to be the highest ...... Europe.
  - 2 The Democrats are the smallest ...... the four main political parties.
  - 3 Parmesan is perhaps the most famous ...... all Italian cheeses.
  - 4 For many people, it is the most important day ...... the whole year.
  - 5 She's without doubt the best swimmer ...... my school.

## Comparative phrases and clauses

A	We use <b>as</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>as</b> to say that things, people or situations are similar:  Was the film <b>as funny as</b> his last one?  They deliver as <b>quickly as their</b> competitors.
	Negative forms of sentences like this can use either <b>not as</b> or <b>not so</b> . In formal speech and writing it is more common to use <b>less + adjective + than</b> :  The gap between the sides is <b>not as</b> / <b>so wide as</b> it was. ( <i>or</i> is <b>less wide than</b> it was.)
В	If we put a singular countable noun between <b>as</b> + <b>adjective</b> and a second <b>as</b> , we use <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> in front of the noun:  Despite his disability, he tried to lead <b>as normal a life as</b> possible. (not as normal life as)
	The negative form of sentences like this can use either <b>not as</b> or sometimes <b>not such</b> :  It's <b>not as quiet a place</b> (or <b>not such a quiet place</b> ) <b>as</b> it used to be.  Note that we use <b>not as</b> + <b>adjective</b> + <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> + <b>noun</b> but <b>not such a</b> / <b>an</b> + <b>adjective</b> + <b>noun</b> .
	We can use <b>so</b> , <b>too</b> and <b>how</b> followed by an adjective in a similar way:  It's not quite <b>so straightforward a problem as</b> it might at first seem.  'Conspiracy' is perhaps <b>too strong a word</b> .  How big a piece do you want?
С	We also use <b>as much / many as</b> or <b>as little / few as</b> to say that a quantity or amount is larger or smaller than expected. <b>Many</b> and <b>few</b> are preferred before numbers; <b>much</b> and <b>little</b> are preferred with amounts (e.g. \$5, 20%) and distances (e.g. 3 metres):  There are a small number of people involved, possibly <b>as few as</b> twenty.  Prices have increased by <b>as much as</b> 300%.
D	We can use <b>not</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>enough</b> + <b>to-infinitive</b> to mean that more of something is needed to do something:  I'm not <b>tall enough</b> to reach.  He didn't speak <b>loudly enough</b> to be heard.
	We can use <b>sufficiently</b> before adjectives to express a similar meaning to <b>enough</b> . <b>Sufficiently</b> is often preferred in more formal contexts:  She didn't play <b>sufficiently well</b> to qualify. (or <b>well enough</b> to qualify.)
E	We can use <b>sufficiently</b> before adjectives to express a similar meaning to <b>enough</b> . <b>Sufficiently</b> is often preferred in more formal contexts:  She didn't play <b>sufficiently well</b> to qualify. (or <b>well enough</b> to qualify.)  We can use <b>too</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>to-infinitive</b> to mean 'more than necessary, possible, etc.' to do something. It suggests there is or was a problem:  They arrived <b>too late</b> to get seats.  It moved <b>too fast</b> to see it clearly.  The suitcase was <b>too small</b> ( <b>for him</b> ) to get all his clothes in.
E	We can use <b>sufficiently</b> before adjectives to express a similar meaning to <b>enough</b> . <b>Sufficiently</b> is often preferred in more formal contexts:  She didn't play <b>sufficiently well</b> to qualify. (or <b>well enough</b> to qualify.)  We can use <b>too</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>to-infinitive</b> to mean 'more than necessary, possible, etc.' to do something. It suggests there is or was a problem:  They arrived <b>too late</b> to get seats.  It moved <b>too fast</b> to see it clearly.
E	We can use <b>sufficiently</b> before adjectives to express a similar meaning to <b>enough</b> . <b>Sufficiently</b> is often preferred in more formal contexts:  She didn't play <b>sufficiently well</b> to qualify. (or <b>well enough</b> to qualify.)  We can use <b>too</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>to-infinitive</b> to mean 'more than necessary, possible, etc.' to do something. It suggests there is or was a problem:  They arrived <b>too late</b> to get seats.  It moved <b>too fast</b> to see it clearly.  The suitcase was <b>too small</b> ( <b>for him</b> ) to get all his clothes in.  In rather formal English we can use <b>too</b> + <b>adjective</b> + <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> + <b>noun</b> :  I hope you haven't had <b>too tiring a day</b> . (not a too tiring day.)
	We can use <b>sufficiently</b> before adjectives to express a similar meaning to <b>enough</b> . <b>Sufficiently</b> is often preferred in more formal contexts:  She didn't play <b>sufficiently well</b> to qualify. ( <i>or</i> <b>well enough</b> to qualify.)  We can use <b>too</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>to-infinitive</b> to mean 'more than necessary, possible, etc.' to do something. It suggests there is or was a problem:  They arrived <b>too late</b> <i>to get</i> seats.  It moved <b>too fast</b> <i>to see</i> it clearly.  The suitcase was <b>too small (for him)</b> <i>to get</i> all his clothes in.  In rather formal English we can use <b>too</b> + <b>adjective</b> + <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> + <b>noun</b> :  I hope you haven't had <b>too tiring a day</b> . ( <i>not</i> a too tiring day.)  (In a less formal style we might say 'I hope your day hasn't been too tiring.')  We can use <b>so</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>that-clause</b> to say that conditions exist to such a degree that there is a specified result (see also Unit 81):

73.1	Complete these sentences with as as or not as / such as (or both if possible). Use the					
		words in brackets and add any other necessary words. B				
	1 It's not s	1 It's not such a polluted city now as / not as polluted a city now as j				
	ten years a	go. (not / polluted / city now)				
	2 The Downt	own Hotel is		Strand Hotel.		
	(not / pleas	sant / place to stay)				
	3 The Preside	ent's address to the nation is				
	he is ever li	ikely to make in his career. (important / sp	eech	n)		
	I first thoug	ght. (not / big / problem)				
	202	log is				
	I've ever se	en. (ferocious / animal)				
	she claims	to be. (not / fluent / Greek speaker)				
73.2	Complete the	ese sentences with <b>as much as, as man</b> y	y as,	as little as, or as few as.		
	1 When it wa	as really hot I was having		four showers a day.		
		's elephant population may soon fall to		THE PART OF THE P		
	years ago.					
		of the 200-metre race there was		50 metres between the first		
	and second	d runners.				
	4	5,000 people phoned in to con	nplai	n about last night's TV programme.		
		ously, the life of a light bulb varies from				
	months.	-				
	6 Some days	there werethree or	four	students at his lectures.		
		se much electricity. Sometimes our bill is				
		y spends25% of its				
73.3	loin the sent	ences using so + adjective + as + to-infi	initiv	vo 🖪		
15.5				27 220 1270		
		rom the factory was loud.		It was nearly illegible.		
		riting was untidy.		It was insignificant.		
		ase was heavy.		It was unplayable.		
		was badly scratched.		It prevented me sleeping.		
		the novel was complicated.		It was almost impossible to move it.		
	6 The differen	nce between the results was small.	f	It was completely incomprehensible.		
	1+d. The n	oise from the factory was so loud a	is to	prevent me sleeping.		
73.4	Correct any r	nistakes in the italicised parts of this int	tervie	ew with a football manager. A-F		
	INTERVIEWER:	(1) How serious injury is it? Is it (2) so se	rious	as has been claimed in the newspapers?		
		Some people are saying Franz Kahn will		그러는 다시하다면 없어 그는 맛이 그렇게 하는 사람이다. 그렇다는 다시를 어디를 하다고 하는데		
	Manager:			m out of football for at least six months.		
	MANAGER.	그 그녀는 것 같아 없는 것이 아내가 하는 요	200			
		He's obviously (4) not so fit as he used t				
				es. But I wouldn't (6) go so far to say that		
		he'll never play for the national team ag		1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
		to say that he will consider his future ca				
	INTERVIEWER:	Well, we all wish him (8) as speedy reco	very	as possible		

## Position of adverbs: end position

Α	There are three main positions for adverbs which modify a verb: end, front and mid position –			
	In end position, the adverb comes after the verb – either immediately after it or later in the clause.	<ul> <li>They played quietly all day.</li> <li>He tried to leave quietly.</li> <li>He sat in the corner quietly.</li> </ul>		
	In front position the adverb comes before the subject.	<ul><li>Finally he could stand the noise no longer.</li><li>Sometimes / feel like leaving.</li></ul>		
	In <i>mid position</i> the adverb comes between the subject and verb, immediately after <b>be</b> as a main verb, or after the first auxiliary verb.	<ul> <li>He usually plays better than this.</li> <li>She is usually here by ten.</li> <li>They would usually come by car.</li> </ul>		
	Many adverbs can go in any of these positions, depring the turned round slowly. (end)  He slowly turned round. (mid)	ending on context or style. For example: lowly he turned round. (front)		
В	End position			
	In end position, we usually put an adverb <i>after</i> an o  We considered <i>the problem briefly</i> . ( <i>not</i> W  However, if an object is very long other positions an	e considered briefly the problem.)		
С	We avoid putting an adverb between a main verb a	nd a following <b>-ing</b> form or <b>to-infinitive</b> :		
		egan running. ( <i>not</i> He began quickly running.) ried to leave. ( <i>not</i> She tried quietly to leave.)		
	The position of the adverb can change the meaning  I recall telling him clearly that he had won him') and	of the sentence (see Unit 75A). Compare: . (= I told him clearly; 'clearly' modifies 'telling		
	'I recall <b>clearly</b> telling him that he had won' is also	. (= I clearly recall it; 'clearly' modifies 'recall'.)		
	the two meanings given above. In speech, the mean	·		
D	When there is more than one adverbial in end posit of manner (= saying how something is done), place	e, and then <b>time</b> :		
	<ul> <li>In the accident she was thrown violently formula with the construction of the construction.</li> <li>We arrived here on Saturday. (= place + times the construction)</li> </ul>			
	For special emphasis we can move an adverbial to t  In the accident she was thrown <b>forwards</b> ,	he end:		
	If one adverbial is much longer than another then it			
	<ul> <li>They left at three with a great deal of noi</li> <li>An adverb usually comes before a prepositional phr</li> </ul>			
	they both describe manner, or place, or time):  She went downstairs to the cellar. (= place)			
E	End position is usual for many adverbials of place,	definite frequency, and definite time:		
	<ul><li>They live upstairs. (not They upstairs live.)</li><li>She goes weekly. (not She weekly goes.)</li></ul>			
	Have you heard the good news? Eva had a However, adverbs of indefinite time usually go in m			
	Note that in journalism, other adverbs of time are on normally place them in end (or front) position:  The government <b>yesterday</b> announced an	·		
48	_ me government jester day announced an			

74.1	Put the adverb in brackets in an appropriate position in each sentence. In some cases both
	positions are possible. C

1	1	expect Catalina to win the race	(easily)
2	He	regretted missing the concert	(greatly)
3	1	nated playing the piano	, although my parents thought I loved it.
	(secretly)		
4	· He	started to walk	across the bridge over the gorge. (calmly)
5	She	offered to do the work	
6	Bruno	finished speaking	and sat down. (hurriedly)
7	1	don't remember putting it dowr	1 (simply)
8	We	look forward to hearing from	you (soon)
9	They	tried to ignore me	(deliberately)
10	I don't	pretend to understand the	instructions (completely)

Complete this email using the words and phrases from the box below in the correct order.

B & D

•••	Reply	Forward
We had a great time driving (1) around Switzerland in July . We drove (3)		
and stayed (4)		y morning
we got up (5)	and we	nt down
to the nearby lake for a swim – freezing, but wonderful! The next week	we drove east and stay	/ed
(6)		ular part
of the country, but we had to drive (7)		······································
Finally, we drove back to Zürich and caught (8)		
We enjoyed (9)	and we're looking	forward to
going back (10)		

1 in July / around Switzerland

2 a car / at the airport

- 3 towards the lakes / south
- 4 in a beautiful cottage belonging to some friends of Kim's mother / for a week
- 5 early / at about six o'clock
- 6 in the village where Kim had spent some time when she was a student / briefly
- 7 carefully / on the narrow winding roads
- 8 home / the train
- 9 in Switzerland / enormously / ourselves
- 10 before too long / there

## 74.3 If necessary, rewrite these sentences putting the italicised word or phrase in a more appropriate position. If the sentence is already correct, write ✓. B-E

- 1 Itry to visit every week my parents. I try to visit my parents every week. /
  Every week I try to visit my parents.
- 2 Next, beat the eggs vigorously in a small bowl.
- 3 I thought I'd locked securely the luggage.
- 4 I stopped regularly playing tennis after I broke my wrist.
- 5 Lee was easily beaten in the final.
- 6 Matías never eats in the canteen at work. He always brings from home sandwiches.
- 7 A: Do the Patel family still live next door? B: No, they moved last year away.
- 8 The local residents welcomed the decision to introduce a new bus service from their village into the nearby town *warmly*.
- 9 We have to hand the homework in on Tuesday.

### Position of adverbs front and mid position

#### Front position

Most types of adverb commonly go in front position in a clause (see Unit 74A). In particular -

☆	connecting adverbs, which clarify the logical relation to the previous sentence.	0		lue of the yen has fallen. <b>As a result</b> , faces a crisis.
☆	time and place adverbs, which give more information about a previous reference to a time or place.	0	st few days have been hot. rrow, the weather will be much	
☆	comment and viewpoint adverbs, which highlight the speaker's attitude to what they are about to say (see Unit 78).	0		as just heard that her sister is ill. mably, she will want to go home.
Not	e, however, that other positions are possible fo	r the	se adve	rbs.
usua	ne words can be used both as comment adverbally go in front position and relate to the whole			
in er	nd position and modify the verb. Compare:  Naturally, I'll do all I can to help. and The radioactive gas occurs naturally in ma	ny a	reas.	Also: clearly, curiously, frankly, honestly, hopefully, oddly, plainly, seriously
	e that for special emphasis or focus, adverbs th tion (see also Units 74 and 76) can sometimes  In May, Maxine had a baby.  Reg	be pu	ut in fro	

В

#### Mid position

	a position
	degree adverbs (e.g. almost, hardly, nearly, quite, rather, scarcely):  The street lighting was so bad that we almost missed the turning. although some (e.g. completely, enormously, entirely, greatly, slightly) can go in end position: I admire your work greatly. (or I greatly admire your work.)  Note that some degree adverbs are not usually used in mid position with some verbs. For example, enormously is not usually used in mid position with develop, differ, go up or vary; greatly is not normally used in mid position with care or suffer.
☆	adverbs which indicate the order of events, such as first, last and next. These can also go in end position, but if there is a phrase giving the time of an event they usually go before this:  I first met her in 1997. (or I met her first in 1997.)  We don't usually put these in front position, except to list actions (see also Unit 76B):  Next, add three teaspoons of sugar.
☆	adverbs of frequency which say in an indefinite way how often something happens, including hardly ever, often, rarely, regularly, seldom (see also Unit 76B); and also the frequency adverbs always and never:  We hardly ever see Kaspar nowadays, he's so busy at the office.  Note, however, that adverbial phrases of indefinite frequency (e.g. as a rule, on many occasions, from time to time, every so often) usually go in front or end position:  As a rule, I go every six months. (or every six months, as a rule; not I as a rule go)

C

We rarely put long adverbials (including clauses; see Units 58 and 59), and prepositional and noun phrases in mid position. Usually they go in end position or front position for emphasis:

- She phoned home, anxious for news. (or Anxious for news, she phoned home.)
- He picked up the vase with great care. (or With great care he picked up the vase.)
  - I'd seen Tarik the day before. (or The day before, I'd seen Tarik.)

75.1 Complete each pair of sentences using one adverb from the box. Put the adverb in front position (as a comment adverb) in one sentence, and in end position (as an adverb of manner) in the other.

(	cle	arly	<del>curiously</del>	frankly	honestly	plainly	seriously
1	a	Curi		ouse has tw	o chimneys		, although there's only one
	b		, Esthe	r looked at h	nim curious	y, trying	to work out whether he was being
2							f myself
3	а		, she ac	dmitted	tha	t she felt sh	e wasn't doing a good job. , it was so boring.
4		A: Thar	nks for looking 's okay.	and the same and the same the			
		a: to h		n't know wh	nat I'd have do	one if you ha	ndn't been around
	b		, I tried g me laugh.	to speak	to	him about	his bad behaviour, but he kept
5	a		ief executive o				s week to ask whether I've made my
	Ь						culty thinking
6		Lucas		seat and kep		_	e door , he was
	b					at work in	a white blouse and grey skirt.
_				J L.! - L - Al.			:

- 75.2 Cross out any adverbs or adverbials that are incorrect / unlikely in these sentences. B & Unit 74E
  - 1 Asthma rates in cities do not *enormously / significantly* differ from those in rural areas.
  - 2 Now that Lorna has moved to Kuala Lumpur, I from time to time / rarely see her.
  - 3 I could see them easily / scarcely in the bright sunshine.
  - 4 It was snowing and I was almost / by an hour late for the interview.
  - 5 Carmen had often / on many occasions spoken at meetings before, so it was no surprise when she stood up.
  - 6 I play chess with Lorenzo hardly ever / every week.
  - 7 Although he had to lift heavy boxes in the factory, he *greatly / rarely* suffered from backache.
  - 8 Iforgot about the meeting nearly / entirely and my boss was really angry with me.
- 75.3 Which of the positions [1], [2] or [3] can the adverb or adverbial in brackets go in? A-C
  - 1 [1] He [2] moved to New Zealand [3]. (the following year)
  - 2 [1] The children [2] walked along the road [3]. (in single file)
  - 3 [1] We [2] see Alex [3] any more. (seldom)
  - 4 [1] He [2] complained to his physics teacher [3]. (unhappy with the result)
  - 5 [1] I [2] agree with you [3]. (entirely)
  - 6 [1] I [2] meet [3] Emma at school. (often)
  - 7 [1] Buying a bicycle [2] is a better use of money [3] than always taking taxis. (when you think about it)

## Adverbs of place, direction, indefinite frequency,

	and time			
	Adverbs of <b>place</b> and <b>direction</b> (or adverbials, particularly prepositional phrases) usually go in end position, but we can put them in front position to emphasise the location. The effect may also be to highlight what comes at the end (e.g. to highlight 'a body'). This order is found mainly in formal descriptive writing. Compare:  The money was eventually found <b>under the floorboards</b> . (= end) and The police searched the house. <b>Under the floorboards</b> they found a body. (= front)			
	If we put an adverb of place in front position we put the subject <i>after</i> the verb <b>be</b> (see also Unit 99A):  Next to the bookshelf was a fireplace. (or less formally Next to the bookshelf there was a fireplace; not Next to the bookshelf a fireplace was.)			
	We can also put the subject after the verb with intransitive verbs (except with a pronoun subject) used			
	to indicate being in a position or movement to a position:  Beyond the houses lay open fields. but Beyond the houses they lay. (not lay they)  Also: hang, live, sit, stand; come, fly, go, march, roll, run, swim, walk			
	However, we don't usually put the subject after the verb when we talk about actions:  Through the waves the boy <b>swam</b> <i>powerfully</i> . ( <i>rather than</i> swam the boy powerfully.)  Outside the church the choir <b>sang</b> . ( <i>rather than</i> sang the choir.)  In the garden Nik <b>built</b> <i>a play house</i> for the children. ( <i>not</i> In the garden built Nik)			
	if one of these intransitive verbs is followed by adverb or manner:  Through the waves the boy <b>swam</b> <i>powerfully</i> . ( <i>rather than</i> swam the boy powerfully.)			
	with other intransitive verbs:  Outside the church the choir sang. (rather than swam the boy powerfully.)			
J	or with transitive verbs:  In the garden Nik <b>built</b> <i>a play house</i> for the children. ( <i>not</i> In the garden built Nik)			
В	When we put certain adverbs of time in front position the subject must come after an auxiliary verb or a main verb <b>be</b> (see also Unit 100):  At no time would he admit that his team played badly. (not At no time he would admit)  Not once was she at home when I phoned. (not Not once she was)			
	If the main verb is not <b>be</b> and there is no auxiliary, we use <b>do</b> , although inversion is not necessary in this case:  Only later did she realise how much damage had been caused. (or Only later she realised)			
J	Adverbs like this include negative time adverbials 'which are absolute, such as <b>at no time</b> , <b>not once</b> and <b>only later</b> , and those of indefinite frequency, such as <b>hardly ever</b> , <b>rarely</b> and <b>seldom</b> .' Note also that we can put <b>first</b> , <b>next</b> , <b>now</b> and <b>then</b> in front position with the verb <b>come</b> to introduce a new event, when the subject follows the verb.  At first there was silence. <b>Then</b> came a voice that I knew. (not Then a voice came)			
9	Adverbs of <b>time</b> which indicate a definite point or period in time or a definite frequency usually go in end position, or front position for emphasis, but not in mid position. Note that when these adverbs are in front position there is no inversion of subject and verb:  Usent to Paris <b>yesterday</b> . (or <b>Yesterday</b> I went to Paris.)			

The adverbs daily, hourly, monthly, weekly, annually, quarterly (= four times a year), etc. only go in end position:

☐ I pay my subscription **annually**. (not Annually I pay ...; not I annually pay ...)

- Rewrite the sentences putting the italicised adverbs of place or direction at the front of the clause. If possible, invert the order of subject and verb.
  - 1 A dark wood was at the bottom of the garden.

    At the bottom of the garden was a dark wood.
  - 2 The car stopped suddenly and Daniel jumped out.
  - 3 Two small children stood outside the door.
  - 4 The boys were playing cricket in the park, despite the muddy conditions.
  - 5 A jade necklace hung around her neck.
  - 6 The man released the monkey and it climbed up the tree.
  - 7 The door burst open and a delegation from the striking workers marched in.
  - 8 While Marko was looking around for his net the fish swam away.
  - 9 Most of the furniture was modern, but a very old grandfather clock was in the corner.
  - 10 Lea found it difficult to concentrate in the office, but she worked more efficiently at home.
- 76.2 If possible, rewrite the italicised parts of these sentences putting the time adverbial in front position. Where you can, invert subject and verb, and make any other necessary changes.

  B & C
  - 1 Itrusted Dan completely, and I realised only later that he had tricked me.

    I trusted Dan completely, and only later did I realise that he had tricked me.
  - 2 After working so hard all summer, I had a holiday last week.
  - 3 Professor Coulson was to give the initial paper at the conference, but a welcoming address came first by the head of the organising team.
  - 4 The area was cleared before the explosion, and members of the public were in danger at no time.
  - 5 I've got high blood pressure and I have to take tablets daily for it.
  - 6 When it became clear that he was in danger of losing the election, a politician can seldom have changed his views so quickly as Joyce.
  - 7 After a few days of relative calm, a blizzard came next, preventing us from leaving the hut.
  - 8 It's hard to imagine that we'll be in Japan by next Friday.
  - 9 You won't have long to wait as trains for Rome leave hourly.
  - 10 My grandfather was a gentle man, and I hardly ever heard him raise his voice in anger.
- 76.3 If necessary, correct the word order in these sentences. A-C
  - 1 I walk to work for the exercise, and I twice a week play squash.
  - 2 If you take the job, monthly your salary will be paid into your bank account.
  - 3 Down the hill the horse ran quickly.
  - 4 Through the window Megan watched sadly.
  - 5 Around the town drove she for hours looking for the gallery, until she spotted in a side street the place.
  - 6 I tripped over the cat, dropped the tray, and across the room flew it.



## Degree adverbs and focus adverbs

A	Degree adverbs can be used before adjectives, verbs, or other adverbs to give information about the extent or level of something:  They're extremely happy.  I really hate coffee.  He almost always arrived late.  Some degree adverbs, such as almost, largely, really and virtually, are usually used before the main verb, and others, such as altogether, enormously, somewhat, and tremendously, are usually used after the main verb. Degree adverbs are rarely used in front position (see Unit 75B).  Focus adverbs draw attention to the most important part of what we are talking about. Some (e.g. especially, even, mainly, mostly, particularly, specifically) make what we say more specific:  There is likely to be snow today, particularly in the north.  and others (e.g. alone, just, only, simply, solely) limit what we say to one thing or person:  Many people offered to help me invest the money, but I only trusted Rick.
В	Much and very much
	In affirmative sentences in formal contexts, <b>much</b> can be used as a degree adverb before the verbs <b>admire</b> , <b>appreciate</b> , <b>prefer</b> and <b>regret</b> to emphasise how we feel about things:  I much appreciate the advice you gave me.  Their music is much admired.  Much is used in this way particularly after I and we. Note that we don't usually use this pattern in questions (e.g. not Did you much appreciate?).
	We can use very much in a similar way before the verbs above and before agree, doubt, enjoy, fear, hope, like and want. Note, however, that we don't use much before this last group of verbs. Compare:  I much prefer seeing films at the cinema than on DVD. (or I very much prefer) and  We very much agree with the decision. (or We agree very much; but not much agree)
	We can also use <b>much</b> or <b>very much</b> before a past participle which is part of a passive:  The new by-pass was ( <b>very</b> ) <b>much</b> needed.  We don't use <b>much</b> but can use <b>very much</b> before past participle adjectives (see Unit 69A):  I was <b>very much</b> surprised by her news. (or I was surprised; but not I was much surprised) and we don't use either <b>much</b> or <b>very much</b> before present participle adjectives:  The hotel was (very) welcoming. (but not The hotel was (very) much welcoming.)
J	In negative sentences in informal contexts we can use (very) much before verbs such as appreciate, enjoy, like, and look forward to to emphasise a negative feeling about something:  I didn't (very) much enjoy the film.
C	Very and too
	Before an adjective or another adverb we use <b>very</b> when we mean 'to a high degree', and <b>too</b> when we mean 'more than enough' or 'more than is wanted or needed'. Compare:  The weather was <b>very</b> hot in Majorca – perfect for swimming. (not too hot) and It's <b>too</b> hot to stay in this room – let's find somewhere cooler. (not very hot)
J	In negative sentences in informal spoken English we can use <b>not too</b> to mean 'not very':  I'm <b>not too</b> bothered about who wins. (or I'm <b>not very</b> bothered)
D	Even and only
	Even and only usually go in mid position (see Unit 75), but if they refer to the subject they usually come before it. Compare:  My mother has only brought some food. (= She hasn't brought anything else) and  Only my mother has brought some food. (= My mother and nobody else)  Aya can even speak French. (= in addition to everything else she can do) and  Even Aya can speak French. (= you might not expect her to) (rather than Aya even)

#### 77.1 Cross out any incorrect answers. B

- 1 We very / much / very much hope that the striking workers will now resume negotiations.
- 2 Thanks for organising the quiz night. Your help was very / much / very much appreciated.
- 3 I felt very / much / very much intimidated by some of the questions in the interview.
- 4 I had always very / much / very much admired her work, and it was great to meet her.
- 5 As a child, I very / much / very much wanted to be an artist.
- 6 I would very / much / very much prefer to be remembered as kind rather than wealthy.
- 7 It was very / much / very much thrilling to get Marie's news.
- 8 When I was travelling in India I became very / much / very much interested in regional foods.
- 9 Kristof says that he wants to go into politics, but I very / much / very much doubt that he's serious.
- 10 I very / much / very much regret not being able to hear Dr Greco when she gave her lecture.

#### 77.2 Write very, too, or very / too if either is possible.

1	Leo was in a wheelchair as he was stillweak to walk far.		
2	Ellie has agreed to start work earlier, but she's notenthusiastic about it.		
3	The instructions areeasy. You'll have no trouble understanding them.		
4	It wasalarming to learn that one of the plane's engines had stopped.		
5	We'll be at the cinema well before the film starts. It won't takelong to get there.		
6	It was snowingheavily for us to climb further up the mountain.		
7	He revisedhard and did well in his exams.		
8	The old bridge in town wasnarrow for the coach to drive across, so we had to go a		
	extra 50 miles to the new one.		



P	ut <b>even</b> or <b>only</b> in the most appropriate place in each sentence. <b>D</b>	
1	Ben offered to let me stay with him while I was in Glasgow, andheheoffered to pick me up from the station.	
2	I will be in my office on Monday next week as I'm going to Poland for a business meeting on Tuesday.	
	č ,	
3	Every penny the charity raises helps the homeless, andthe smallest donation can make a vital difference.	
4	Jan seems to have invited everyone to the party he has asked Ann, and they haven't spoken to each other for years.	
5	Louisknew where the keys were kept, and nobody else.	
	I don't get home from work until late, soIcook at the weekend.	

## Comment adverbs and viewpoint adverbs

A

We use some adverbs to make a <i>comment</i> on what we are saying.				
some comment adverbs:	examples			
indicate how likely we think something is	apparently, certainly, clearly, definitely, obviously, presumably, probably, undoubtedly			
indicate our attitude to or opinion of what is said	astonishingly, frankly, generally, honestly, interestingly, luckily, naturally, sadly, seriously, surprisingly, unbelievably			
show our judgement of someone's actions	bravely, carelessly, foolishly, generously, kindly, rightly, stupidly, wisely, wrongly			
Comment adverbs which apply to the whole sentence are most frequently used in front position (see Unit 75A), although they can also be used at the end of the sentence and in other positions. At the beginning and end of sentences we usually separate them from the rest of the sentence by a comma in writing or by intonation in speech:  Presumably, he didn't hear me when I called.  The book was based on his experience in China, apparently.  If you practise continuously, you will undoubtedly get better.				
Comment adverbs are often used after <b>would</b> when making formal suggestions or proposals:  The introduction of trams <b>would undoubtedly</b> ease congestion.  A tax increase <b>would significantly</b> damage the government's popularity.'				
Comment adverbs which show judgement usually follow the subject, although they can be put in front position for emphasis:  He <b>kindly</b> offered to give me a lift. (or <b>Kindly</b> , he offered to emphasise 'Kindly')				
If comment adverbs apply to only part of the sentence they can be used in other positions. Compare:  Astonishingly, she did well in the exam. (= I was surprised that she did well) and  She did astonishingly well in the exam. (= she did extremely well)  You've had a major operation. Obviously, it will be very painful for a while. (= I expect you to know this already) and  When he stood up it was obviously very painful. (= the pain was clear to see)				
We can use <b>not</b> + a comment adverb to soften direct statements:  ont surprisingly, his failure to train meant that he was defeated by his better-prepared opponent.				
Some adverbs are used to make clear what <i>viewpoint</i> we are speaking from; that is, identifying what aspect of something is being talked about:  Financially, the accident has been a disaster for the owners of the tunnel.  The brothers may be alike physically, but they have very different personalities.  Also: biologically, environmentally, financially, ideologically, industrially, logically, medically, morally, outwardly, politically, technically, visually				
Some adverbs or phrases are used to say <i>whose</i> viewpoint we are expressing:  The head of National Bank is to receive, <b>according to reports</b> , a £1 million bonus.  In my view, the foreign minister should resign immediately.				

Also: to my / his / her (etc.) knowledge, from my / his / her (etc.) perspective, personally,

in my / his / her (etc.) opinion

В

78.1	Rewrite the italicised words using an adverb from the box. Choose the most likely position for
	the adverb. A

astonishingly	bravely	carelessly	generously	inevitably
interestingly	necessarily	obviously	presumably	rightly

- 1 It was very surprising indeed that no paintings were destroyed by the fire in the gallery.

  Astonishingly, no paintings were destroyed by the fire in the gallery.
- 2 As you drive off the ferry, there are lots of different flags flying by the side of the road. *It seems likely that* the idea is to welcome visitors from other countries.
- 3 Acting more kindly than they needed to, the builders agreed to plant new trees to replace the ones they had dug up.
- 4 Most people believe in a correct way that the prisoners should be released.
- 5 It was easy to see that she knew more about the robbery than she told the police.
- 6 He broke the window while painting because he wasn't paying attention to what he was doing.
- 7 She picked up the spider and put it outside, showing no fear.
- 8 I found it strange that the road didn't appear on the satnav.
- 9 It's certain that failure to increase the rate of pay would lead to employee departures from the company.
- 10 The most experienced candidate does not as you might expect get the job.
- 78.2 Complete the sentences with a viewpoint adverb from (i) and ending from (ii). B

(i) environmentally financially

industrially medically outwardly politically technically visually (ii)

- ... we'd be much better off if we moved there.
- ... the performance was stunning.
- ... it is relatively undeveloped.
- ... she looked remarkably calm.
- ... she could be sent to prison.
- ... the doctors can't find anything wrong.
- ... it is no longer the problem it once was.
- ... he claims to be a socialist.
- 1 Thomas says that he is still getting severe headaches, although ... medically the doctors can't find anything wrong.
- 2 As she stepped onto the stage she felt terrified, but ...
- 3 Now that lead is no longer added to most petrol, ...
- 4 The country earns most of its income from agriculture and ...
- 5 The band didn't play terribly well, and the singing was awful, but ...
- 6 The cost of living is much lower in the north, so ...
- 7 Hansen is one of the richest men in the country, although ...
- 8 Julie is likely to be fined for failing to pay her gas bill, although ...
- 78.3 Complete the sentences using the phrases from B either with the words from the box (or adjectives or adverbs formed from them) or your own words. B

(	architecture	democracy	geology	grammar	history		
1	Historically civilisation?	speaking , ir	n what ways	has disease aff	ected the de	velopment of W	/estern
2					limesto	ne is a relativel	y new rock.
3	The building is	similar to the op	oera house in	Milan			
4							
	the essay was	well written, but	its style was	inappropriate	•9		
5	The election w	as clearly rigged	and the resu	lt is a severe b	low to the co	ountry	

### Adverbial clauses of time

	As, when and while Reminder → M1 & M8
	We can often use <b>as</b> , <b>when</b> or <b>while</b> to mean 'during the time that', to talk about something that happens when something else takes place:  As / When / While Miguel was eating, the doorbell rang.
l	We use <b>when</b> (not <b>as</b> or <b>while</b> ) to introduce a clause which talks about −
ı	the circumstances in which the event in the main clause happens:  When they are fully grown these snakes can be over two metres long.
l	We also use <b>when</b> to mean 'every time', and we prefer <b>when</b> to talk about past periods of our lives:  I still feel tired <b>when</b> I wake up in the morning. (= 'every time')  His mother called him Robbie <b>when</b> he was a baby. (= a past period)
	We prefer <b>when</b> if one event happens immediately after another, particularly if one causes the other:  You'll see my house on the right <b>when</b> you cross the bridge.  When the lights went out, I lit some candles.  In the first sentence, 'as' or 'while' would suggest 'during the time that' and the continuous would be more likely (' as / while you are crossing'). In the second sentence 'as' or 'while' would be very unlikely because lights usually go out instantaneously.
l	We prefer <b>as</b> to say that when one thing changes, another thing changes at the same time:  As the cheese matures, its flavour improves. ( <i>rather than</i> When the cheese)  We can also use 'While', particularly with a continuous tense: 'While the cheese is maturing'.
l	We prefer <b>while</b> or <b>as</b> (rather than <b>when</b> ) to talk about two longer actions that go on at the same time, although <b>while</b> is more common than <b>as</b> in informal speech: <ul> <li>I went shopping <b>while</b> Liam cleaned the house. (or <b>as</b> Liam cleaned)</li> </ul>
	We use <b>while</b> or <b>when</b> (rather than <b>as</b> ) to avoid ambiguity where 'as' could mean 'because':  While you were playing golf, I went to the cinema. (As you were playing = Because)
	Before, after and until
	We use <b>before</b> or <b>after</b> to talk about an event happening earlier or later than another event:  I put on my coat <b>before</b> I went out.  The message arrived <b>after</b> I'd left.
	We can often use either <b>until</b> or <b>before</b> when a situation continues to happen up to a time indicated in the adverbial clause:  I had to wait six weeks <b>until</b> / <b>before</b> the parcel arrived.  However, we use <b>until</b> to talk about an action that continues to a particular time and then stops:  They sat on the beach <b>until</b> the sun sank below the horizon, and then they went home. and when the adverbial clause describes the <i>result</i> of an action in the main clause:  He cleaned his shoes <b>until</b> they shone. ('shining' is the result of 'cleaning'.)
	Hardly, no sooner, scarcely
	When we say that one event happened immediately after another, we can use sentences with hardly, scarcely, and no sooner (see also, Unit 100). After hardly and scarcely, the second clause begins with when or before; after no sooner, it begins with than or when:  The concert had hardly begun when before all the lights went out.
	I had <b>no sooner</b> lit the barbecue <i>than / when</i> it started to rain.  We often use a past perfect in the clause with <b>hardly, no sooner</b> or <b>scarcely</b> and a past simple in the

other.

omplete these sentences with <b>as, when</b> or <b>while</b> . If possible, give alternative answers and
otice any differences in meaning. (A)
He fell over
we were younger our parents had to pay for our music lessons.
I speak Spanish, I talk slowly to help people understand me.
I packed all the books away, Lana made a note of their titles on her laptop.
She stayed at home watching television her brother was at school.
Where did you live
the results started to come in, it became clear that President Como had lost the
election.
The humidity started to increase
The snow was getting deeper and deeper
the paint dries it changes colour from a light to a deep red.
necessary, correct or improve these sentences. 🔼
As I'm older, I'd love to be a dancer.
When the boy watched in fascination, the ants picked up the dead beetle and carried it off to their nest.
The disk drive makes a buzzing sound while I switch my console on.
As the car went by, someone waved to me from the back seat.
While Kasem had finished, he tidied up the room and left.
I was in the shower as the phone rang.
omplete this talk about the life and work of a professor with <b>before</b> or <b>until</b> or both if ossible. B
She continued to work at London Universityshe retired in 2017.
she left her native country, she learned English by listening to the radio.
It wasn't longshe was appointed Professor of Chemistry.
She married Joshe moved to England in 1985.
she riamed joshe came to England she worked in her father's grocery shop.
She applied for research positionsshe was appointed to a post at London University
She was almost unknown outside her fieldshe was awarded the Science Prize.
She would work in her lab for days at a timeshe had completed an experiment.
omplete the sentences in any appropriate way, using than, when or before.
The paint on the sitting room wall had scarcely dried  before my daughter put her dirty hands all over it.
Martin had no sooner recovered from a broken ankle
He had hardly put down the phone
We had no sooner eaten
Lisa had hardly finished speaking
I had scarcely driven to the end of the street

### Giving reasons: as, because, etc.; for and with

A	We can begin a clause with as, because, seeing that, seeing as, or since to give a reason or explanation:  As it was getting late, I decided I should go home.  We must be near the beach, because I can hear the waves.  Since he was going to be away on his birthday, we celebrated before he left.  We could go and visit Natalia, seeing that we have to drive past her house anyway.
ı	Note that −  it is common and acceptable for <b>because</b> to begin a sentence with two clauses, as in:  Because everything looked different, I had no idea where to go.
ı	<ul> <li>to give reasons in spoken English, we most often use because. So is also commonly used to express a similar meaning, but cannot begin a sentence (see also Unit 81). Compare:</li> <li>Because my mother's ill, I won't be able to come. ('because' introduces the reason) and</li> <li>My mother's ill, so I won't be able to come. ('so' introduces the result.)</li> </ul>
ı	<ul> <li>when it means 'because', since is rather formal. It is frequently used in this way in academic writing:</li> <li>The results of this analysis can be easily compared to future observations since satellite coverage will remain continuous. (more likely than 'because' in this formal context.)</li> <li>I had to go outside because I was feeling awful. ('since' is unlikely in an informal context)</li> </ul>
J	<ul> <li>seeing that is used in informal English. Some people also use seeing as in informal speech:</li> <li>Joel just had to apologise, seeing that / as he knew he'd made a mistake.</li> </ul>
В	In formal or literary written English we can also introduce a reason in a clause beginning for, in that, or, less commonly, inasmuch as. For is a formal alternative to 'because'; in that and inasmuch as introduce clauses which clarify what has been said by adding detail:  We must begin planning now, for the future may bring unexpected changes. (not For the future, we must)  The film is unusual in that it features only four actors. (or In that, the film is)  Clara and I have quite an easy life, inasmuch as neither of us has to work too hard but we earn quite a lot of money. (or Inasmuch as, Clara and I)
C	The prepositions because of, due to, on account of and owing to can all also be used before a noun or noun phrase to give a reason for something:  We were delayed because of / on account of an accident.  She was unable to run owing to / due to a leg injury. (= because of a leg injury.)  We have less money to spend owing to / due to budget cuts. (= because of budget cuts.)  Note that we don't use because alone before a noun or noun phrase:  We were delayed because there was an accident. (not because an accident.)
ı	In current English we usually avoid <b>owing to</b> directly after a form of <b>be</b> :  The company's success <i>is</i> <b>due to</b> the new director. ( <i>not</i> is owing to)  However, like <b>due to</b> , <b>owing to</b> is used after <b>be + a degree adverb</b> such as <b>entirely</b> , <b>largely</b> , <b>mainly</b> , <b>partly</b> :  The low election turnout <i>was partly</i> <b>due to / owing to</b> the bad weather.
	We can use any of it was because of / it was due to / it was on account of / it was owing to that:  It was because of / due to / on account of / owing to his encouragement that she applied for the job.
D	We can use <b>for</b> and <b>with</b> followed by a noun phrase to give a reason (compare <b>B</b> above):  She was looking all the better <b>for</b> her stay in hospital. (= 'as a result of')  With so many people ill, the meeting was cancelled. (= 'as a result of there being')

	Complete the sentence	s by putting an item i	rom (i) and	one from (II), in the co	rece order.
	(i)		(ii)		
	1 passengers were giv	ven a full refund	a it's yo	ur birthday	
	2 Andrea agreed to be			her idea to go to the th	neatre
	3 I'll buy you lunch			mez spoke about his re	
	4 I've given up dairy p	products	1000	copy would be very ex	
	5 we were recommen			ested we all go on holic	
	textbook second-ha			ain was delayed for mo	
	6 the guest lecturer w	36335		pposed to be unlucky	ic triair air riodi
	7 we get on so well	vas tate	_	ying to go vegan	
	8 you should never w	alk under a ladder	11 111101	ying to go vegan	
	1+f Since the train full refund.				
	2 Seeing as				
	4 Because				
	lack of interest -s	tress at work hea	vy cloud	its central location	human error
	1 She feels her illness is	entirely due to /	on account	of / owing to stress	at work.
	2 The cancellation of th				
		restaurant is largely			
	3 The popularity of the	restaurant is targety			
	<ul><li>3 The popularity of the</li><li>4 It's likely that the mis</li></ul>				
		take was			
	4 It's likely that the mis	take wasnight's eclipse of the m	100n		
	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r	take wasnight's eclipse of the m	se or becaus		
	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r  Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g	take was	se or becaus tched off	se of + a phrase from the local opposition	ne box. C
	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r  Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac	take was night's eclipse of the mentences using because his mobile was swi there was a fly in it glasses	se or becaus tched off	se of + a phrase from the local opposition	ne box. C
	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r  Now complete these se his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi	take was inight's eclipse of the mentences using because his mobile was swithere was a fly in it glasses incob it to clos	se or becaus tched off t	se of + a phrase from the local opposition	ne box. C
	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r  Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi 9 My grandfather couldn't	take was	se or because tched off t	se of + a phrase from the local opposition	he box.
	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r  Now complete these se his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi	take was	se or because tched off t	se of + a phrase from the local opposition	he box. C
0.3	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r  Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi 9 My grandfather couldn't	take was	se or because tched off the transfer to the swimmer rachute jump	se of + a phrase from the local opposition	he box. ©
0.3	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi 9 My grandfather could 10 He sent the soup back Rewrite these sentence possible. D 1 I got a job as a street	hight's eclipse of the mentences using because his mobile was swithere was a fly in it glasses cob thdraw its plan to clost hit do a sponsored park es using for or with instances my respectively.	se or because tched off the swimmer achute jumpostead of become oney was re-	local opposition  ning pool  ause (of). Give alterna	ne box. C
0.3	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi 9 My grandfather could 10 He sent the soup back Rewrite these sentence possible. D 1 I got a job as a street With my money re	hight's eclipse of the mentences using because his mobile was swithere was a fly in it glasses cob thdraw its plan to clost hit do a sponsored park es using for or with instances my respectively.	se or because tched off to the swimmer rachute jumpostead of becomen was rujob as a state of	local opposition  ning pool  ause (of). Give alterna	ne box. C
0.3	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi 9 My grandfather could 10 He sent the soup back Rewrite these sentence possible. D 1 I got a job as a street With my money re	his mobile was swithere was a fly in its glasses cob thdraw its plan to closs in the or a sponsored park cost in the or a spon	se or because tched off to the the swimmer archute jumps stead of become to as a sting out.	local opposition local opposition ning pool ause (of). Give alternation	ne box. C
1.0.3	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi 9 My grandfather could 10 He sent the soup back Rewrite these sentence possible. D 1 I got a job as a street With my money re street sweeper, w	his mobile was swithere was a fly in it glasses cob thdraw its plan to clos in to a sponsored park sweeper because my running out, I got a joith my money running seconds of the control o	se or because tched off to the swimmer archute jump stead of become to as a stang out.	local opposition  local opposition  ning pool  ause (of). Give alternation  unning out. reet sweeper. / I got	ne box. C
180.3	4 It's likely that the mis 5 We couldn't see last r Now complete these see his heart problems the bright sunlight 6 I had to drive in dark g 7 I couldn't speak to Jac 8 The council had to wi 9 My grandfather could 10 He sent the soup back Rewrite these sentence possible. D 1 I got a job as a street With my money re street sweeper, w 2 I couldn't hear what I	his mobile was swithere was a fly in it glasses cob thdraw its plan to close the was sponsored park the sweeper because my running out, I got a juith my money running sabella was saying because the her aunt because the saying the saying because the saying	se or because tched off to the swimmer archute jump stead of become was region as a stang out.	local opposition  local opposition  ning pool  ause (of). Give alternation  unning out. reet sweeper. / I got	ne box. C

### Purposes and results: in order to, so as to, etc.

	In order / so as + to-infinitive
	To talk about the purpose of an action we can use in order / so as + to-infinitive:  He took the course in order to get a better job. Trees are being planted by the roadside so as to reduce traffic noise. In spoken English in particular it is much more common simply to use a to-infinitive without 'in order' or 'so as' to express the same meaning: He took the course to get a better job.
	We rarely use just not + to-infinitive, but instead use so as not to or in order not to:  He kept the speech vague in order not to commit himself to one side or the other.  (not vague not to commit himself)  I wrote down her name so as not to forget it. (not name not to forget)  However, in contrastive sentences we can use not + to-infinitive, but + to-infinitive as in:  I came to see you not (in order / so as) to complain, but (in order / so as) to apologise.  Note that we can put in order / so as before the to-infinitives in sentences like this.
	In order that and so that
	We also use in order that and so that before a clause to talk about a purpose. Compare:  She stayed at work late in order / so as to complete the report. and She stayed at work late in order that / so that she could complete the report. (not in order that / so that to complete the report.)  So that is more common than in order that, and is used in less formal situations. Note that informally we can leave out that after so, but we always include it after in order.
	A present tense verb in the main clause is usually followed by a present tense verb (or a modal with present or future reference – can, will, etc.) in the clause beginning in order that / so that. A past tense verb in the main clause is usually followed by a past tense verb (or a modal with past reference – could, would, etc.) in the clause beginning in order that / so that. Modal verbs are very often used after in order that / so that:
	<ul> <li>Regular checks are made in order that safety standards are maintained.</li> <li>Advice is given in order that students can choose the best course.</li> </ul>
J	<ul> <li>Did you give up your job so that you could take care of your mother?</li> <li>I hid the presents so that Marianna wouldn't find them.</li> </ul>
	Such that and in such a way that / as to; such that
	In formal contexts, such as academic writing, we can use <b>such that</b> to introduce a result:  The model was designed <b>such that</b> the value of x could be calculated. (= 'in a way that has the result that'; or in order that; or so that)  Less formally we can also use in such a way that or in such a way as + to-infinitive with a similar meaning:
	<ul> <li>The advertisement is printed in such a way that two very different pictures can be seen depending on how you look at it.</li> <li>Our business is managed in such a way as to minimise its environmental impact.</li> </ul>
	We can also use <b>such</b> + <b>noun phrase</b> + <b>that</b> to introduce a result:  It is <b>such</b> a popular play <b>that</b> all the performances were sold out after the first day.  (For <b>so</b> + <b>adjective</b> / <b>adverb</b> + <b>that</b> , see Unit 73F.)

- 81.1 Combine the two sentences in the most appropriate way using in order (not) + to-infinitive or so as (not) + to-infinitive. A
  - 1 I had to borrow money from the bank.
  - 2 He packed his suitcase with the books at the bottom.
  - 3 Bus fares in the city were being cut.
  - 4 We crept quietly towards the deer.
  - 5 I walked around the outside of the field.
  - 6 We put up a fence.
  - 7 She looked down at the book in front of her.
  - 8 The roadworks were carried out at night.

- a This was done to encourage people to use public transport.
- b We wanted to prevent people walking across the grass.
- c I didn't want to damage the growing crops.
- d I did this to set up the business.
- e They didn't want to disrupt traffic too much.
- f We didn't want to frighten them away.
- g She wanted to avoid his gaze.
- h He didn't want to crush his clothes.

1+d | had to borrow money from the bank in order to set up the business. (or ... so as to set up ... )

- 81.2 Look again at the sentences you wrote in 81.1. Is it also possible to use only a to-infinitive, without in order or so as? Write ✓ or X. A
  - 1 I had to borrow money from the bank to set up the business. 🗸
- 81.3 Complete the sentences with the correct versions of the phrases from the box. B

it will / would receive the new channels
it won't / wouldn't take up a lot of computer memory
mosquitoes can't / couldn't get in
nobody will / would know it was there
people can / could walk around the gardenswe can / could see the view over the city

1 They have an open day at their house each year so that <u>people can walk around the</u> maze garden.



- 2 I put a rug over the stain on the carpet so that ....
- 3 There were screens on all the windows so that ......
- 4 The software is designed so that
- 5 We went up to the top floor so that ...
- 6 The TV needs to be retuned so that ...
- 81.4 Rewrite each sentence less formally in two ways; once using in such a way that and once using in such a way as to.
  - 1 The factory demolition was planned such that any risk to the public was avoided.

    The factory demolition was planned in such a way that any risk to the public was avoided. / The factory demolition was planned in such a way as to avoid any risk to the public.
  - 2 The meeting room is designed such that everyone's voice can be heard without the use of microphones.
  - 3 The website is organised such that it is easy to navigate.
  - 4 If the dial is rotated such that the number 1 is at the top, the valve opens.

Unit 82

### Contrasts: although and though; even though / if; while, whilst and whereas; not necessarily

Attnough and though
We use although or (less formally) though to say that there is a surprising contrast between what happened in the main clause and what happened in the adverbial clause:  Although / Though Reid failed to score himself, he helped Jones to score two goals.  With a similar meaning, we can use despite / in spite of the fact that (e.g. Despite / In spite of the fact that Reid failed to score), despite / in spite of + -ing (e.g. Despite / In spite of Reid failing to score), or despite / in spite of his / her + noun (e.g. Despite / In spite of his failure to score).
Note that we can use <b>though</b> , but not <b>although</b> , at the end of a clause:  I eat most dairy products. I'm not keen on yogurt, <b>though</b> .
We can give special emphasis to an adjective by putting it before <b>though</b> in the pattern <b>adjective</b> + <b>though</b> + <b>noun</b> / <b>pronoun</b> + <b>verb</b> (usually a linking verb such as <b>appear</b> , <b>be</b> , <b>become</b> , <b>feel</b> , <b>look</b> , <b>seem</b> , <b>sound</b> , <b>prove</b> , etc.). <b>As</b> (but not <b>although</b> ) can be used instead of <b>though</b> . Compare:  Hot though (or as) the night air was, they slept soundly. and Although / Though the night air was hot, they slept soundly.
Even though and even if
We can use <b>even though</b> to mean 'despite the fact that' and <b>even if</b> to mean 'whether or not'. Compare:  Even though Matt doesn't speak Spanish, I think he should still visit Madrid. (= The speaker knows that Matt doesn't speak Spanish)  Even if Matt doesn't speak Spanish, I think he should still visit Madrid. (= the speaker doesn't know definitely whether Matt speaks Spanish or not)
While, whilst and whereas
In formal contexts we can use <b>while</b> or <b>whilst</b> with a meaning similar to 'although' to introduce something that qualifies what is said in the main clause or seems to conflict with it. In this case, the <b>while / whilst</b> clause comes before or within the main clause, but not after it:  While / Whilst there is no evidence that Rob cheated, we were all astonished that he passed the exam. (not We were all astonished that he passed the exam, while)  The diesel model of the car, <b>while / whilst</b> more expensive, is better value for money. Note that <b>whilst</b> is a rather literary word and some people avoid using it.
We can use while or whereas (or less often whilst) to say that something contrasts with something in the main clause. The while / whereas clause may come before or after the main clause:  Juan gets lots of homework from school, while / whereas Mia gets very little.  While / Whereas I always felt I would pass the exam, I never thought I would get an A grade.
We don't use <b>whereas</b> if what is said in the subordinate clause makes what is said in the main clause unexpected:  Although / While Sophie's father is from Spain, she doesn't speak Spanish. (not Whereas)
We can use <b>-ing</b> and <b>past participle</b> ( <b>-ed</b> ) clauses after <b>although</b> , <b>though</b> , <b>while</b> and <b>whilst</b> , and also clauses with the subject and verb left out (see Unit 59D).

D

#### Not necessarily

Not necessarily can be used to express a possible exception to a general perception:

People reaching retirement age do not necessarily wish to leave their jobs.

- Join the sentence halves, emphasising the adjective by moving it to the front of the sentence.

  Use either **though** or **as**. A
  - 1 it may seem amazing
  - 2 she was frightened
  - 3 food became scarce
  - 4 the climbers were experienced
  - 5 the instructions first appeared confusing
  - 6 it looked disgusting
  - 7 she felt confident
  - 8 their new products have proved successful

- a they were very useful when I looked at them in detail
- b she forced herself to pick up the snake
- c they had never faced such severe conditions before
- d the company is still in financial difficulties
- e they always found enough to share with me
- f she knew the examination would not be easy
- g my brother Johan has just won the lottery
- h it was actually quite tasty
- 1+g Amazing though it may seem, my brother Johan has just won the lottery.

  (or Amazing as it may seem ... )
- 82.2 Expand the notes in brackets and rewrite the sentences using In spite of + -ing in 1-3 and In spite of his / her + noun in 4-6. (A)
  - 1 Although she has to cope with three small children, ... (taking part-time MBA course)
    In spite of having to cope with three small children, she is taking a part-time
    MBA course.
  - 2 Although he was much younger than the others, ... (was most outstanding rider team)
  - 3 Although he ate a big lunch, ... (had three-course meal evening)
  - 4 Although he was frightened, ... (allowed huge spider placed in his hands)
  - 5 Although she is obviously intelligent, ... (finds it difficult express ideas in writing)
  - 6 Although she was ill, ... (went walking holiday Nepal)

#### Now rewrite the sentences you have written beginning Despite the fact that ...

- 1 Despite the fact that she has to cope with three small children, she is taking a part-time MBA course.
- 82.3 Underline the correct phrase. B & D
  - 1 The driver stopped to let on more passengers even though / even if the bus was already full.
  - 2 I wouldn't tell you where Mariam lives even though / even if I knew.
  - 3 Even though / Even if I only play one match for my country, I'll be happy.
  - 4 Even though / Even if he had just had lunch, Thomas bought a hamburger.
  - 5 She plays for France even though / even if she was born in Algeria.
  - 6 You won't see all the animals in the zoo even though / even if you stay for the whole day.
  - 7 Even though / Even if I'm quite old, I still miss my parents.
  - 8 I still couldn't affo1rd to go to Taipei, even though / even if I took the cheapest route.
  - 9 More expensive clothes are *even though / not necessarily* of better quality than mass market items.
  - 10 Not necessarily / Even if there are plenty of taxis at the airport, let's book one in advance.
- Rewrite these sentences with a similar meaning. Begin the sentence with Whereas if possible and While if not. C
  - 1 Horse riding is an expensive pastime, but more and more people are taking it up.

    While horse riding is an expensive pastime, more and more people are taking it up.

    (Whereas is not possible)
  - 2 A decade ago only 5% of students dropped out of college, but the figure today is 25%.
  - 3 The temperature is below freezing, but it actually feels quite warm when the sun is out.
  - 4 The cost of rail travel has increased, but the number of train passengers has grown.
  - 5 I've always wanted to visit Australia, but I've never had any wish to go to Canada.

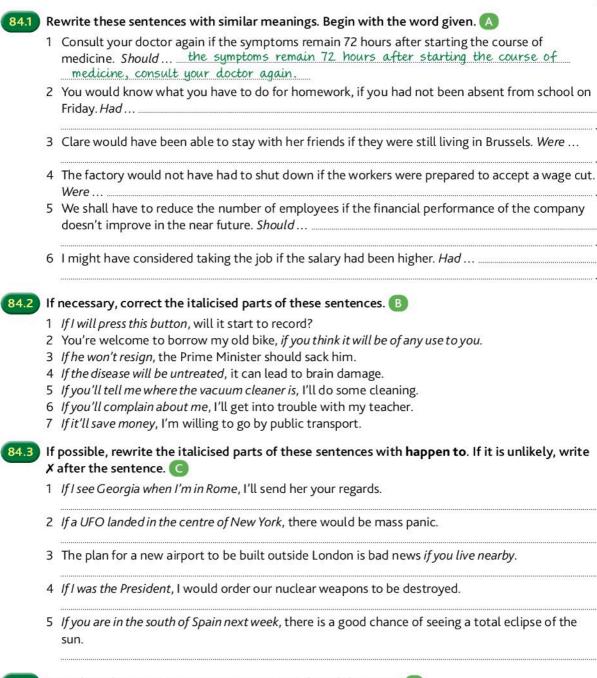
### If: real and unreal conditionals

Α	Real conditionals Reminder → M9-M17
	In real conditionals we usually use a present tense verb in the <b>if-clause</b> to talk about the future:  If you <b>leave</b> now, you'll be able to catch the 5 o'clock train. (or If you're <b>leaving</b> now)  However, in conversation we can use <b>be going to</b> instead of a present tense verb:  If <b>I'm going to</b> catch the train, I'll have to leave now.  We'll need more chairs if we're <b>going to</b> invite so many people to the performance.
	When we make offers, and give instructions or advice we can use an imperative in the main clause:  Take another sandwich if you're hungry.  If you have a mobile phone, check that it is turned off.
В	We can use <b>if-clauses</b> with a present tense verb to say something is true under certain conditions. In this case, 'if' has a meaning similar to 'when':  The video pauses <b>if</b> you <i>click</i> on this button.  If age-related changes <i>are taken</i> into account, the conclusion remains the same.
С	We can also talk about possible future events with a present perfect verb in the <b>if-clause</b> and a future form (will, present continuous, or be going to) in the main clause. Sometimes present perfect or present simple can be used with a similar meaning:    I'll lend you War and Peace if I've finished it before you go on holiday. (or if I finish)   If you haven't paid the bill by Friday, we're taking the carpets back. (or If you don't pay)  However, to focus on the future consequences of a past event, we use the present perfect. Compare:   If I've failed my exam again, I'm giving up the course. (suggests I have already taken the exam; I don't know the result) and   If I fail my exam again, I'm giving up the course. (I may or may not have taken the exam)
D	Unreal conditionals
	In unreal conditionals we can use ifwere + to-infinitive rather than if + past simple to talk about imaginary future situations, particularly when it is unlikely that the situation in the if-clause will happen (see also Unit 14):  If the technology were to become available, we would be able to expand the business.  However, note that we don't usually use this pattern with verbs such as belong, doubt, enjoy, know, like, remember, and understand when they describe a state:  If I knew they were honest, I'd gladly lend them the money. (not If I were to know)
	We sometimes use this pattern to make a suggestion sound more polite:  Would it be too early for you <b>if we were to</b> meet at 5:30?
E	We use if it was not for + noun phrase (or more formally if it were not for + noun phrase) to say that one situation is dependent on another situation or on a person (see also Unit 85A). When we talk about the past we can also use if it had not been for + noun phrase:  If it wasn't / weren't for Nina, the conference wouldn't be going ahead.  If it hadn't been for Dad, I wouldn't have gone to college. (or If it wasn't / weren't for)  In formal language we can also use Were it not for and Had it not been for (see Unit 84A):  Were it not for Nina  Had it not been for Dad
	We can use <b>but for</b> + <b>noun</b> with a similar meaning, particularly in formal contexts:  The village school would have been closed years ago <b>but for</b> the determination of teachers and parents to keep it open. (= if it hadn't been for the determination)

	There have been a lot of thefts from cars in the city centre. If you leave your car there, make sure it's locked. / don't leave any valuables in it.	
2	2 If you have any more problems with the computer,	
	If you see Ned today,	
4	4keep well away fro	m the
5	don't hesitate to get in touch with n	ne aga
6	get off at the stop near th	e libra
	Complete the sentences using the verb pairs from the box. Use the present simple or poerfect in the <b>if-clause</b> , and give alternatives. Notice any differences in meaning.	resen
	not fill in – need not help – go leave – meet not arrive – give <del>study – know</del> break – have to	
1	If you have studied / study Macbeth, you'll know the scene with the witch	ies.
	2 If you home before I get there, I'll you at the airport.	
	B If you pay for it.	
	If the taxi by 10 o'clock, I'll you a lift to the station.	
	If youto do so before y	ou ca
	be considered for the job.	
6	5 If the antibiotics by the end of the week, I'll back to	the
	doctor.	
V	f necessary, correct the italicised part of the sentence using a past simple form of the verb.	same
	I'd sell the house immediately if it were to belong to me.	
	If they were to hold an election now, the Democrats would undoubtedly win.	
	3 I'd go back to the restaurant if I were to like sushi more.	
	If I were to doubt his honesty, I wouldn't employ him. There would be no cinema in the town if the Odeon were to close.	
	If I were to understand Chinese, I'd do the translation myself.	
O	in I were to understand Chinese, I'd do the translation myseti.	
C	Complete these rewritten sentences with similar meanings. 🔳	
	The weather was terrible. Otherwise, we would have gone walking this weekend. <i>If it had</i> not been for the terrible weather, we would have gone walking this weekend	l
2	2 His happiness would have been complete except for his anxiety over Carla. <i>If it were</i>	
3	The strike would probably still be going on if the government hadn't intervened. Were it	
4	The fight could have got out of hand if the police hadn't arrived. <i>Had it</i>	
5	Everything was quiet except for the sound of birds singing. But for	
6	There would have been far more wars in the last 50 years without the United Nations. I	f it wa

### If: other conditional patterns with if

A	When the first verb in a conditional <b>if-clause</b> is <b>should</b> , <b>were</b> , or <b>had</b> , we can leave out <b>if</b> and put the verb at the start of the clause (see Units 99 and 100 for more on inversion). We often do this in formal English, and only in hypothetical conditionals (an unreal conditional which answers the question 'What would happen if?'):  Should any of this <b>cost</b> you anything, send me the bill. (= If any of this should <b>cost</b> )  It would be embarrassing, <b>were</b> she <b>to find out</b> the truth. (= if she were to <b>find</b> out)  Had they <b>not rushed</b> Jo to hospital, she would have died. (= If they <b>hadn't rushed</b> Jo)
В	We don't usually use if will in conditional clauses. However, we can use if will −  when the if-clause describes the result of something in the main clause. Compare:  Open a window if it will help you to sleep. (or if it helps you to sleep; 'Helping you to sleep' is the result of opening the window) and  I will be angry if it turns out that you are wrong. (not if it will turn out; 'Turning out that you are wrong' is not the result of being angry)  in requests or with the meaning 'if you are willing to' (if would is also used to be more polite):  If you will / would take your seats, ladies and gentlemen, we can begin the meeting.  in real conditionals when we want to show that we disapprove of something. In this case, will is stressed in speech (see also Unit 16B):  A: I'm tired.  B: Well, if you will go to bed so late, I'm not surprised.  Note that we can use if won't when we talk about a refusal to do something:  There's no point in trying to teach the class if they won't pay attention.
С	In a real conditional sentence, we use if happen to, if should, or if should happen to to talk about something which may occur, but is not very likely. If happen to is most common in spoken English:  If you happen to be in our area, drop in and see us. (or If you should [happen to] be)  Note that we don't usually use this pattern in unreal conditionals talking about states or events in the if-clause which the speaker considers highly unlikely or impossible:  If the North Sea froze in winter, you could walk from London to Oslo. (more likely than If the North Sea happened to freeze / should (happen to) freeze in winter)
D	In comparison clauses we can use as if followed by a noun phrase, -ing clause, past participle (-ed) clause, or to-infinitive to introduce a comparison with a situation described in the main clause. We do this to say that something appears to be the case but is not:  Magnus walked in as if nothing had happened.  His hands made a circular motion, as if steering a bus through a sharp bend.  When he caught the ball, Lee fell to the floor as if hit by a bullet.  As if to convince herself that Luis was really there, she gently touched his cheek.  Note that we can use as though instead of as if, and in informal speech some people use like with the same meaning:  The crowd reacted as though they were watching a boxing match. (or as if)  He walked into the room like nothing had happened. (or as if)



84.4 Complete the sentences using your own words and the notes. D

(agree – everything Julia said) (1 – say – shocking) (it – reverse – wall) (try – imagine – contained) (overcome – great weariness)

- 1 My father raised his eyebrows as if I had said something shocking.
- 2 He folded his arms on the table and laid his head on them, as if ...
- 3 She stared hard at the parcel as if ...
- 4 He nodded his head slowly as if ...
- 5 The back of the car looked as if ...

J	If I were you; imagine he were to win
A	In unreal conditional sentences we can use were after any subject in the if-clause, including I / she / he / it. This use of were is sometimes called the past subjunctive, and is preferred in formal contexts. Note that although the verb has a past form, reference is to the imagined present or future:  ☐ If your mother were here, I'm sure she wouldn't let you eat all those chocolates. ☐ My job would not exist if it were not for government funding.  Was can be used instead of were with the same meaning ('If your mother was here', etc.).
	However, we prefer were rather than was when we give advice with If I were you:  If I were you, I'd take it back to the shop. It's got a hole in it. (rather than If I was you)
В	Were is used in this way in other patterns when we talk about imaginary situations –
	<ul> <li>(i) when we use were + subject + to-infinitive or were + subject as a more formal alternative to if + subject + was / were (see also Unit 84A):</li> <li>Were the election to be held today, the Liberals would win easily. (or If the election was / were held today)</li> <li>Were I not rather unfit, I might consider taking up squash. (or If I wasn't / weren't rather unfit)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>(ii) after wish:</li> <li>I enjoy my job enormously, but I wish it were closer to home. (or I wish it was)</li> <li>Of course I'm pleased that Jan has been given the award. I only wish he weren't so boastful about it. (or I only wish he wasn't)</li> </ul>
	(iii) after <b>if only</b> when we express our regret that a situation isn't different:  'If your job is so bad, why don't you leave?' 'If only <b>it were</b> that simple.' (or If only <b>it was</b> )  I'd really like to do accounting. If only <b>I weren't</b> so poor at maths. (or If only <b>I wasn't</b> )
	<ul> <li>(iv) after would ('d) rather and would ('d) sooner when we talk about preferences:</li> <li>I feel embarrassed about what happened and would rather the event were forgotten.</li> <li>(or was forgotten.)</li> <li>'I've arranged a meeting for the end of July.' 'I'd sooner it were earlier, if possible. (or it was earlier.)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>(v) in sentences or clauses beginning with suppose, supposing and imagine:</li> <li>Suppose I were to lower the price by £100. Would you consider buying the car then?</li> <li>(or Suppose I was to lower)</li> <li>I know it looks rather dirty now, but imagine the house were (to be) repainted. It would look a lot more attractive (orimagine the house was (to be) repainted.)</li> </ul>

And in comparisons we can use were -(vi) after as if and as though (see Unit 84D) and even if:

- ☐ I remember stepping off the boat in New York *as if* **it were** yesterday.
- O Despite losing the election, she continues to act as though **she were** prime minister.
- O It's too late to start the work this year even if it were possible to find the money for it.

85.1	Match an item from (i) add any words necessa	with an ending from (ii) to ary. B(i)	o form a sentence. Begin <b>\</b>	Vere (not), and
	(i)		(i)	
	1 found guilty of lib	el	a the glass would certai	nly break
	0	crease university fees	b you would be horrified	
	3 anyone to lean ag		c I would gladly accept	
	4 not already busy i		d there would be an out	
	5 to see the condition are living	ons in which the refugees	e the newspaper would	tace huge legal costs
	0	found guilty of libel, the	e newspaper would face	huge legal costs.
85.2	Expand the notes to w	rite a sentence to go befor	e each question below. Us	se Suppose,
	Supposing, or Imagine	e, followed by a pronoun, r	oun or noun phrase and t	hen were. B(v)
	,	supposing we were to mis		would we get home?
	2. Hall 1980 (1984 - 1986 - 1984) (1984 - 1984 - 1984 - 1984 (1984 - 1984 - 1984 - 1984 - 1984 - 1984 - 1984 (	ars)		
	How would it change			
		emigrating to Canada)		
	How do you think yo	ou would react? World Cup)		
	How would you cele			
		n / all vegetarian)		
	How would its societ	10.7		
85.3		es with <b>as if</b> or <b>even if</b> + ar as if it were a great		vere. B(vi)
		would walk around the par		snowing
		n't be able to eat rabbit me		
		ored me		
		ıp	70. Danie 1980 de jeun 1980 (1986). Danie 1980 (1986) 🗢 Dalie 1980 (1986)	
	6 Idon't think I would	have got the job	better qu	alified.
	7 When Martina saw t	hat I was stuck she laughed	out loud	a joke.
	8 I wouldn't accept the	e job	to offer it to me.	
85.4	Complete the sentence	es using one of the phrases	s in (i) with expanded note	es from (ii). A & B
	(i)	(ii		
	if it were not for	if I were you	forgotten classmates	going friends
	wish he were	if only it were	not so critical employ	
	'd rather it were	'd sooner she were	long nights winter	as easy that
			breakfast before leave	)
	1 I would be happy to winter	live in the north of Sweden	if it were not for the	long nights in
	2 I'm not happy about	Jess going travelling alone.	1	
		with your new car, why don		
	100000000000000000000000000000000000000			
	4 I know you haven't g	ot much time, but		
	50 [19]	o school was embarrassing		
	6 I'm very fond of Paul	, but I		

### If ... not and unless; if and whether; etc.

A	If not and unless
	<ul> <li>Unless is used in conditional sentences with the meaning 'except if':</li> <li>You can't travel on this train unless you have a reservation.</li> <li>With unless we use present tenses when we talk about the future:</li> </ul>
	Ounless it rains, I'll pick you up at six. (not Unless it will rain)
В	In <i>real</i> conditional sentences, we can often use either <b>unless</b> or <b>if not</b> with a similar meaning:  Unless the theatre is able to raise £100,000, it will have to close. (or <b>If</b> the theatre is <b>n't</b> able to; implies 'it will have to close only if it can't raise the money')
ı	However, we use <b>if not</b> but not <b>unless</b> – when we say in the main clause that an event or action in the <b>if</b> -clause is unexpected:  I'll be amazed <b>if</b> Christie does <b>n't</b> win.
ı	when the main clause is a question: <ul><li>If you don't pass the test, what will you do?</li></ul>
ı	when the meaning is not 'only if':  • If it was n't the best performance of Hamlet I've seen, it was certainly the strangest.
ı	We usually use <b>if not</b> rather than <b>unless</b> in <i>unreal</i> conditional sentences:
J	However, <b>unless</b> can be used in <i>unreal</i> conditional sentences when the main clause is negative:  She wouldn't have gone to university <b>unless</b> her parents had insisted. (= if her parents hadn't insisted)
C	If and whether
	We can use <b>if</b> or <b>whether</b> to say that two possibilities have been considered, or to say that people are not sure about something:  They couldn't decide <b>if</b> / <b>whether</b> it was worth resitting the exam.
	<ul><li>Do you know if / whether Ben's at home?</li><li>Whether can usually be followed immediately by or not. Compare:</li></ul>
ı	☐ I didn't know <b>if</b> Aya was coming <b>or not</b> . ( <i>not</i> if or not Aya was coming.) <i>and</i> ☐ I didn't know <b>whether or not</b> Aya was coming. ( <i>or</i> <b>whether</b> Aya was coming <b>or not</b> )
D	We use whether rather than if −  if after a preposition (although if is sometimes used informally) and before a to-infinitive:  We argued about whether butter or margarine was better for you. (informally if)  I couldn't decide whether to buy apples or bananas.
ı	in the pattern <b>noun / adjective + as to whether</b> to mean 'about' or 'concerning':  There was some <i>disagreement</i> <b>as to whether</b> he was eligible to play for France.
ı	Also: (There + be +) conflict, confusion, debate, discussion, doubt, question, speculation, uncertainty; (Subject + linking verb +) concerned, indifferent, uncertain, undecided, unsure
	and we prefer <b>whether</b> rather than <b>if</b> –
	after the verbs advise, choose, consider, depend on, discuss, talk about, and think about:  You should consider whether the car you are interested in is good value.
	in a clause acting as a subject or complement:  Whether the minister will quit over the issue remains to be seen.  The first issue is whether he knew he was committing a crime.

- Match the sentence halves and write a new sentence with the same meaning, beginning each one with Unless ... . A
  - 1 We'll never get to the meeting ...
  - 2 Alternative sources of funding must be found ...
  - 3 If the roads haven't changed in that part of d ... or the research will not be able to continue. town ...
  - 4 The weather must start improving soon ... f ... you are not entitled to state benefit.
  - 5 If it isn't ridiculously expensive ...
  - 6 If you haven't been unemployed for six months ...

- a ... or the farmers will lose their crops.
- b ... if the train doesn't leave within five minutes.
- c ... I'm sure I'll be able to find my way there.
- e ... I think I'll buy that painting.

1+6 Unless the train leaves within five minutes, we'll never get to the meeting.

#### 86.2 If necessary, correct the italicised phrase using if ... not. B

- 1 Unless she had gone to university, she would have gone into the army. If she hadn't gone
- 2 Unless the infection is treated urgently, there is a real danger that she will die.
- 3 Unless he was so disorganised, he'd be the best person to do the work.
- 4 You won't be allowed into the country unless you have a visa.
- 5 It'll be surprising unless Anya passes her piano exam.
- 6 Unless you get a loan from the bank, how will you pay for the house?
- 7 They'll go on strike unless they get a pay rise.
- 8 Where will you stay unless Louise is at home?

short or a long time.

- 9 The police can't prosecute me unless they can prove I intended to steal the ring.
- 10 She'd be a really good teacher unless she was so impatient.

#### 86.3 Write whether or if / whether (if both are possible) in these sentences. C & D

	I was wonderingyou'd had your exam results yet.
2	She was undecided as to to fly or go by train.
3	Police have refused to confirm or not they have arrested anyone for the theft.
4	It is unclearthe new regulations will affect all buildings or just new ones.
5	A: How much will the laptop cost?
	в: That depends onI get one with a 15 or 17-inch screen.
6	Danny said that he was leaving home, but I didn't know to believe him.
7	Have you any ideaSteve will be at the meeting?
8	Can you remember the door was open or closed when you got to the house?
9	There was considerable debate as tochess was a game or a sport.
10	I don't know Andrea's going to wait for us or not.
11	The government is considering to hold an enquiry into the accident.
12	Everyone in the village was very friendly. It didn't matteryou'd lived there for



Unit **87** 

# Connecting ideas in a sentence and between sentences

Δ	
$\boldsymbol{n}$	

Some words and phrases (sentence connectors and discourse markers) are used to connect one sentence with a previous sentence or sentences. Often (but not always) these go at the beginning of the sentence:

There was no heating in the building. As a result, the workers had to be sent home.
Other words and phrases (conjunctions) are used to connect clauses within a single sentence:
While I was waiting, I read a magazine.

		0.	
0	I stood up	so that I could s	ee better.

type of connection	sentence connectors / discourse markers	conjunctions
comparing, contrasting, and indicating surprise	after all, all the same, alternatively, anyway, by contrast, even so, however (but see C), in any case, in contrast, instead, nevertheless, on the contrary, on the other hand	although, even though, though, whereas, while, yet
reasons and results	as a consequence, as a result, consequently, for one thing, so; hence, in consequence, therefore, thus (more formal)	as, because, for, in that, since, insofar as, so, so that
adding information	above all, after all, also, besides, furthermore, in addition, likewise, moreover, similarly, what's more; as well, too (not used at the beginning of a sentence)	
condition	if not, if so, otherwise	as long as, assuming (that), if, on condition that, provided (that), so long as, supposing (that), unless
time: one event at the same time as another	at that time, at the same time, meanwhile	as, when, whenever, while
time: one event before or after another	after, after that, afterwards, before, before that, earlier, later, previously, soon, subsequently, then	after, as soon as, before, since, until

Note that **after**, **before** and **so** can be both connectors and conjunctions.

We can't use a sentence connector after just a comma to connect clauses within one sentence (e.g. not I expect to be promoted, if not I'll leave).

However, a sentence connector can be used to connect two clauses in one sentence if it follows **and**, **but**, **or**, **so**, or a **semi-colon** (;), **colon** (:), or **dash** (–):

0	The building was extremely well constructed and, as a result, difficult to demolish
0	You could fly via Singapore; <b>however</b> , this isn't the only way.

В

**Even though** is a conjunction used to say that a fact doesn't make the rest of the sentence untrue (see also Unit 82B). It connects ideas *within* a sentence:

Even though it was midday, I put on the light.

**Even so** is a sentence connector used to introduce a fact that is surprising in the context of what was just said. It connects ideas *between* sentences:

It was midday. Even so, I put on the light.

C

However is often used as a sentence connector, but it can also be used –

- as an adverb when it is followed by an adjective, adverb, or much / many:
  - We just don't have the money to do the work, **however necessary** you think it is.
- as a conjunction when it means 'in whatever way':
  - O However she held the mirror, she couldn't see the back of her neck.

87.1	Complete the sentences by combining a word or phrase from (i) with a suitable phrase from (ii)
	Note the punctuation of the opening sentences and phrases. A & B

alternatively as long as for one thing meanwhile otherwise so that

while

yet

everybody had their fair share you could poison them his face seemed familiar it's too expensive the rent was paid on time the street was deserted the volcano continues to erupt we were on holiday

(ii)

	Mara cut the cake carefully into slices so that everybody had their fair share.
2	A small boy was kicking a ball against a wall;
3	I couldn't remember meeting him before,
	A mass evacuation of islanders is taking place.
5	A: Why don't you like that new French restaurant? B:
6	Ingrid came down with flu
	My landlady didn't mind me having parties in my room
8	One way of getting rid of weeds is to dig them out.

#### 87.2 Underline the correct option. A-C

- 1 Your essay is badly organised and full of spelling mistakes. *Though / Nevertheless*, it contains some very interesting ideas.
- 2 To the east the trees were left standing, while / in contrast to the west they were cut down.
- 3 I felt guilty about leaving the company even so / even though I knew it was the right decision.
- 4 The course taught me a lot about astronomy. Even though / Even so, there is still a lot to learn.
- 5 I expected my mother to be happy with the news. Instead, / Although she started to cry.
- 6 Herbs are usually grown in temperate climates, whereas / on the other hand spices are mainly from tropical areas.
- 7 We were very short of money so / as a consequence we had to spend the night on a park bench.
- 8 I turned the ignition, but the car wouldn't start. As / Meanwhile, the lions were getting ever closer.
- 9 She wrote the questions on the whiteboard *while / at the same time* the students copied them into their books.
- 10 Previously / Before I went to Australia, I'd never seen a koala.
- 11 I'll have to buy some ladders unless / if not I can borrow a pair from Sara.
- 12 I first met Connor in the 1970s. At that time, / When he had long hair and a beard.

1	She is determined to be a successful artist, however difficult it might be to achieve.
2	, it is difficult
	to stay fit without eating a healthy diet.
3	, it is important to spend some time apart.
4	Professor Malcolm is always happy to spend time with her students,

6 Some people never seem content,.

### Prepositions of position and movement

Across, over
We use <b>across</b> or <b>over</b> to talk about a <i>position</i> on, or <i>moving</i> to the other side of a road, bridge, river,
etc.:
Antonio lives in the house across / over the road from ours.
Once she was <b>across</b> / <b>over</b> the border, she knew she would be safe.
We use <b>over</b> rather than <b>across</b> when we talk about reaching the other side of something that is high, or higher than it is wide. Compare:
He jumped <b>over</b> the fence into the garden. and
He jumped <b>across</b> the stream.
When we are talking about something we think of as a flat surface, or an area such as a country or sea,
we prefer <b>across</b> rather than <b>over</b> :  — He suddenly saw Eva <b>across</b> <i>the room</i> .
The programme was broadcast across Canada.
We prefer <b>all over</b> rather than <b>all across</b> to mean 'to or in many different parts of an area'. However,
we commonly use <b>across</b> , or <b>right across</b> for emphasis:
<ul> <li>The disease has now spread all over the world. (or (right) across the world.)</li> </ul>
Along, through
When we talk about following a line of some kind (a road, a river, etc.), we use <b>along</b> :
<ul> <li>They walked along the footpath until they came to a small bridge.</li> </ul>
We use <b>through</b> to emphasise that we are talking about movement in a three dimensional space, with
things all around, rather than a two dimensional space, a flat surface or area:
<ul> <li>He pushed his way through the crowd of people to get to her.</li> <li>Through often suggests movement from one side or end of the space to the other. Compare:</li> </ul>
She walked through the forest to get to her grandmother's house. and
<ul> <li>She spent a lot of her free time walking in the forest.</li> </ul>
Above, over; below, under; beneath, underneath
We can use either <b>above</b> or <b>over</b> when we say that one thing is at a higher level than another:
Above / Over the door was a sign saying, 'Mind your head'.
However, we prefer <b>above</b> , when one thing is not directly over the other. Compare:
<ul> <li>They lived in a village in the mountains above the lake. (not directly over) and</li> <li>The bird hovered just a few metres above / over the lake. (directly over)</li> </ul>
We use <b>over</b> , not <b>above</b> , when something covers something else and touches it:
She put a quilt <b>over</b> the bed.
and usually when we are talking about horizontal movement at a higher level than something:
<ul> <li>I saw the helicopter fly out over the water, near the fishing boat.</li> </ul>
<b>Below</b> is the opposite of <b>above</b> ; <b>under</b> is the opposite of <b>over</b> . The differences in the uses of <b>below</b> and <b>under</b> are similar to those between <b>above</b> and <b>over</b> :
It's hard to believe that there is a railway line <b>below</b> / <b>under</b> the building. (at a lower level)
<ul> <li>Her head was below the level of the table so nobody noticed her. (not directly under)</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>She hid the presents under a blanket. (the blanket covers and touches the presents)</li> <li>Zara ran under the bridge. (horizontal movement at a lower level)</li> </ul>
We can use <b>underneath</b> as an alternative to <b>under</b> as a preposition of place. <b>Beneath</b> is sometimes

used as a more formal alternative to under or below.

88.1	Complete the sentences with <b>across</b> or <b>over</b> , whichever is correct or more likely. If both are possible, write <b>across / over</b> . A						
	1 After I'd finished work I walked the car park to where Mona was waiting. 2 They own a house the river in the old town. 3 The gate was locked so we had to climb the wall. 4 You're not allowed to walk the railway line. You have to use the bridge. 5 Julie Wafaei was the first woman to row alone the Atlantic. 6 Nuclear waste is transported the country, despite objections from campaigners. 7 The traffic was busy on the main road so we walked the pedestrian crossing. 8 She leaned out the balcony rail and looked for Omar in the square below.						
88.2	Underline the correct or most appropriate option(s) in each sentence. A & B						
	<ol> <li>It took several minutes to walk across / over / along / through the corridor to the exit.</li> <li>Across / Over / Along / Through the table I could see Oliver looking at his watch.</li> <li>He fell across / over / along / through the floor into the cellar below.</li> <li>I could see Lisa across / over / along / through the river.</li> <li>He cycles thousands of miles each year all across / over / along / through the country.</li> <li>Hotels have been built across / over / along / through the beach for about 25 kilometres.</li> </ol>						
88.3	Correct the prepositions (above, over, below, under) if necessary, or write ✓.						
	<ol> <li>He slept with his wallet below his pillow.</li> <li>He broke his leg just below his knee.</li> <li>The town stood at the top of the hill, and stretching into the distance under it were green fields.</li> <li>She threw a coat above her shoulders and stepped out into the cold.</li> <li>He lived in a first-floor flat above a greengrocer's in Leyton.</li> <li>When the police got to the car they found the driver slumped above the steering wheel.</li> <li>He always wore a vest below his shirt, even in summer.</li> <li>I could hear the plane flying high over the clouds.</li> </ol>						
88.4	A number of common idioms include the prepositions in this unit. Match the idioms in italics to their meanings below.						
	<ol> <li>A: What's wrong?</li> <li>B: I'm just feeling rather under the weather.</li> <li>A: You never arrive on time. You'd be late for your own funeral, you would!</li> <li>B: That's a bit below the belt, isn't it?'</li> <li>She already has 18 books on gardening under her belt and she is now working on number 19.</li> <li>He had never played well for the club and left under a cloud.</li> <li>He lost his temper and went completely over the top, accusing him of cheating.</li> <li>They received a bonus in December over and above their monthly salary.</li> </ol>						
	a in addition to b successfully completed c ill d cruel or unfair e with some people's disapproval f extreme behaviour; indicating disapproval						

### Between and among

A	As prepositions of <i>place</i> we use <b>between</b> with two or more people or things that we see as individual or separate, and we use <b>among</b> when we see the people or things as part of a group or mass. <b>Among</b> is only used with three or more people or things:  She held the diamond <b>between</b> her thumb and forefinger.  Zimbabwe is situated <b>between</b> Zambia to the north, Mozambique to the east, Botswana to the west, and South Africa to the south.  He stood <b>among</b> all his friends at the party and felt very happy.  She eventually found her passport <b>among</b> the clothes in the drawer.  Note that <b>amongst</b> is sometimes used instead of <b>among</b> , but in more literary contexts.
В	Between and among are not only used as prepositions of place. We can also use either of them to talk about something divided or shared between people:  ☐ The money is to be divided between / among the towns in the area. ☐ The prize will be shared between / among the first six finishers in the race.  We also use between —  ★ to talk about comparisons and relationships: ☐ There should be a better balance on the committee between the various ethnic groups. ☐ They are wrong to claim that there is a link between unemployment and crime.
	Also: association, comparison, connection, contrast, correlation, difference, distinction, relationship  to talk about choices:  I have to choose between the universities of Leeds, York and Manchester.  He felt torn between his family and his friends.  to talk about discussions or the results of discussions when we specify the two or more people or groups involved:  There was a disagreement between Emma, Jade and Zoe.  The treaty was signed between Great Britain and France.  to say that people or things share a specific amount of something:  Between them, Will and Alice must earn about €100,000 a year.  Last year the three companies built 30,000 houses between them.  We also use among —  when we mean 'existing or happening in a particular group':  The disease has now broken out among the local population.  Their music is still very popular among teenagers.  when we mean 'included in a particular group':  They are among the best hockey players in the world.  Among the capital cities of South America, Quito is the second highest.
С	<ul> <li>There are a number of common expressions using between and among:         <ul> <li>The concert features, among others, Karl Frisk and the Johnsons. (= other singers / groups are featured, too)</li> <li>I later found out that he had been a carpenter and a plumber, among other things. (= he had had other jobs, too)</li> <li>Between ourselves / Between you and me, I don't think Jack is as honest as he should be. (= keep this a secret)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

89.1 Underline the correct option. (A)

amateur

- 1 For a couple of days I've had a pain between / among my shoulder blades.
- 2 He couldn't find a microphone between / among all the recording equipment he had with him.
- 3 It would be easier to read if you put a line space between / among the paragraphs.
- 4 In the photograph Anna is standing between / among her parents.
- 5 The lost manuscript was discovered between / among the thousands of books in the cellar.
- 6 The buffet is towards the middle of the train between / among the first and second class sections.

cooking

- 7 She carried trays of drinks and food between / among the crowd of guests in the room.
- 8 I couldn't see Robbie between / among the audience, although he said he would be there.
- 9 Rebecca commutes between / among her flat in Paris and her office in Brussels.
- 89.2 Complete the sentences with between or among and the most likely words or phrases from the box. If you can use either, write between / among. B

my closest friends

intake of refined sugar the pupils his remaining relatives
the striking dockers teenagers

1 I wasn't feeling very hungry, so Daniel and I shared a bowl of noodles between us.

2 I bought four bars of chocolate and divided them in the class.

3 The distinction and professional athletes is becoming less clear.

4 It has become fashionable to dye their hair in various colours.

5 When Malik died, his daughter inherited the house and the rest of his money was split

6 The advertising company is very successful, numbering most of the big banks

- 7 Researchers have found a striking correlation and arthritis.
- 8 Given a choice and washing up, I know which I'd prefer to do.
- 9 Luka and Ivan are \_\_\_\_\_\_, so I'll invite them to the wedding, of course.
- 10 Late last night the talks and their employers broke down.
- 89.3 Complete this email with between or among. (A & B)

its clients

	$\square$	Reply	Forward
Hi Mum and Dad!			
Rome must be (1) the most fascinating cities in the world.  (2) other places, the Foro Romano – the centre of ancient Vatican. There is such an incredible contrast (3) the old page.	Rom	e – and 1	the
up to 2,000 years ago and the more recent parts. In the Vatican we clim to the top of St Peter's church. The view from the top must be (4) incredible over any city in the world. But (5) you and me, I	bed t	he long s the mo	stairs ost
heights and was glad to get back to ground level. Later we went to the FRoman temple, which is (6) the Vatican and the Foro Rom Umberto I and the artist Raphael are (7) the people buried	Panthenano.	eon, an a The Italia	ancient an king
there was a bit of an argument (8) us over where we show pizza, but I wanted to try some of the special local food. Eventually we fexcellent pasta, (9) other things. The only problem then we (10) the many different types!	ıld eat found	a place	nted
Will be in touch again when I can.  Love, Keira			

#### Prepositions of time

Α	During, in, over, throughout
	We use <b>during</b> or <b>in</b> to talk about a period of time within which an event or activity occurs. The activity may continue for the whole of the period of time:  I stayed at home <b>during</b> the summer. (or <b>in</b> the summer.)  The population of the city has actually fallen <b>during</b> the last decade. (or <b>in</b> the last)  or the event may happen at some time, or be repeated a number of times, within the period of time:  We went to Turkey <b>during</b> the summer. (or <b>in</b> the summer.)  He suffered a number of injuries <b>during</b> his career as a jockey. (or <b>in</b> his career)
	We use <b>during</b> , rather than <b>in</b> , to mean 'at some time in the period of' before nouns such as <b>illness</b> , <b>holiday</b> , <b>meal</b> , <b>stay</b> , <b>treatment</b> , and <b>visit</b> , when we refer to an event which lasts some time:  The President made the speech <b>during</b> a visit to Madrid.  and also with the phrase <b>the whole</b> ( <b>of</b> ), emphasising duration of an entire period:  No one was allowed to leave the ship <b>during</b> the whole of its time in port.
	We can also use <b>throughout</b> to emphasise that something happens over the whole of a period of time:  We had enough firewood to keep us warm <b>throughout</b> the winter. ( <i>or</i> warm <b>during</b> / <b>through</b> the winter.)
В	We can use <b>over</b> or <b>during</b> when we talk about something that goes on for a length of time within a period of time, either for some of that period or for the whole of it:  Weather conditions have been improving <b>over</b> / <b>during</b> the past few days.  I hit my head and can't remember anything that happened <b>over</b> / <b>during</b> the next hour or so.
	However, if we talk about a short event that happens within a period of time, we prefer <b>during</b> :  She sneezed <b>during</b> the performance. (= once or a few times; not over the performance.)  During a pause in the conversation, she left the room. (not Over a pause)
С	Until, by, up to
	There are a number of ways of saying when something that has continued for some time stops –  We use until (or informally till) to say that something continued or will continue to a particular time, and by to say that something happened or will happen either before a particular time or at that time a the latest. Compare:  We have to be at home until 2:30. (We must not leave home before 2:30) and  We have to be at home by 2:30. (We must arrive home either before or at 2:30)
	In informal contexts we can use <b>up to</b> or <b>up till</b> instead of <b>until</b> . We commonly use <b>up to / till</b> with <b>now / then</b> :
	<ul> <li>I've just bought a tablet computer. I've always used a laptop up to now. (or up till now)</li> <li>We can use until now to talk about a situation that will not continue beyond now:</li> <li>Supermarkets say that until now there has been little consumer interest in buying organic produce. (The situation has changed)</li> </ul>

Note, however, that we don't use **until now** for a situation that will or may continue into the future.

○ When the contract is signed it will be the building company's biggest order **to date**.

Instead we can use so far or, in formal contexts, to date:

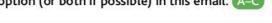
It was certainly the best match of the football season so far.

- 90.1 In which of the sentences can the word in brackets replace during? Write ✓ if it can replace it and X if it can't. A & B
  - 1 I'm going to get a cup of coffee during the break. (in)
  - 2 She lost more than 15 kilos during her illness and she was off work for two months. (in)
  - 3 He twisted his ankle *during* the match and had to retire injured. (*over*)
  - 4 The weather was terrible here during December. (in)
  - 5 The meeting will be some time during January. (over)
  - 6 People no longer expect to be employed in the same place *during* the whole of their working lives. (in)
  - 7 Do you think standards of numeracy have fallen during the last 20 years? (over)
  - 8 She sang in a choir during her childhood. (throughout)
  - 9 The town was rebuilt *during* the early 16th century. (*over*)
  - 10 It was impossible to buy bananas during the war. (in)
  - 11 Karl had a phone call during the meal and had to leave early. (in)
  - 12 My stomach ache got steadily worse during the evening. (over)

### 90.2 Complete the pairs of sentences with **by** and **until**. Use **by** in one sentence and **until** in the other.

1	a	I was feeling really hungrythe	time dinner was served.
	Ь	We sat around the fire talking	the time dinner was served.
2	a	Sorry I'm late. I've been in a meeting	now.
	b	I thought Lars would have been here	now.
3	a	a I've got to pay the money back	. the end of the month.
	Ь	I've gotthe end of the month	to pay the money back.
4	a	I put on an extra pair of socks.	then my feet were freezing cold.
	Ь	I stood outside the cinema for an hour.	then my feet were freezing cold.
5	a	She was already a leading economist	her early twenties.
	b	She studied economicsher ear	ly twenties and then moved into law.
6	a	I hope to finish the decorating	the weekend.
	b	It will take me the weekend to	finish the decorating

90.3 Underline the correct or more likely option (or both if possible) in this email. (A-C)



Reply

**Forward** 

## Hi Pete

- (1) Over / During the last three weeks we've covered thousands of kilometres by train.
- (2) So far / Until now we've been to Stockholm, Berlin and Rome, and now we're in Amsterdam.
- (3) So far / Until now I thought Rome was the best city we'd been to, but I think I love Amsterdam even more. We've been here for three days, and have been very impressed with what we've seen (4) so far / until now. We spent the first two days in galleries, looking particularly at Van Gogh's paintings. I didn't know much about his work (5) so far / until now. Incidentally, we bumped into your friend Eleni (6) in / during our visit to the Van Gogh museum. We're staying here (7) until / by Saturday and then we're going to Paris. Must go now. We're off to The Hague for the day and have to be at the station (8) until / by 9:30.

Hope all is well with you.

Love, Keira

### Talking about exceptions

A	We use except (for) to introduce the only thing(s) or person / people that a statement does not include:  The price of the holiday includes all meals except (for) lunch. Everyone seemed to have been invited except (for) Mrs Woodford and me. I had no money to give him except (for) the few coins in my pocket.
	We use <b>except</b> , not <b>except for</b> , with <b>to-infinitives</b> , and <b>that-clauses</b> :  I rarely need to go into the city centre <b>except</b> to do some shopping.  They look just like the real thing, <b>except</b> that they're made of plastic.
	We usually use except, not except for, before prepositions, bare infinitives, and that-clauses including those where the word that is left out (see Unit 53). However, except for is sometimes used in informal spoken English:  There is likely to be rain everywhere today except in Wales.  There is nothing more the doctor can do except keep an eye on him.  They look just like the real thing, except (that) they're made of plastic.
	We can use <b>except for</b> , but not <b>except</b> , with the meaning 'but for' (see <b>C</b> below).
В	We use except (for) to mean that something is not included in a particular statement, but we use besides to mean 'as well as' or 'in addition to'. Compare:  I don't enjoy watching any sports except (for) cricket. (= I enjoy only cricket) and Besides cricket, I enjoy watching football and basketball. (= I enjoy three sports) I haven't read anything by her, except (for) one of her short stories. and Besides her novels and poems, she published a number of short stories.
J	Apart from can be used with the same meanings as both except (for) and besides:  I don't enjoy watching any sports apart from cricket. (= except for)  Apart from cricket, I enjoy watching football and basketball. (= besides; as well as)
c	We can use <b>but</b> with a similar meaning to <b>except</b> ( <b>for</b> ), particularly after negative words such as <b>no</b> , <b>nobody</b> , and <b>nothing</b> :  There was <i>no</i> way out <b>but</b> / <b>except</b> / <b>apart from</b> upwards, towards the light.  After the operation he could see <i>nothing</i> <b>but</b> / <b>except</b> ( <b>for</b> ) / <b>apart from</b> vague shadows.
	But for has a different meaning from except for. We use it to say what would or might have happened if the thing introduced by but for had not happened:  The country would now be self-sufficient in food but for the drought last year. (= if there hadn't been the drought)
	<ul> <li>But for the leg injury he suffered last year, he would probably have been picked for the national team by now. (= if he hadn't injured his leg)</li> </ul>
	However, some people use <b>except for</b> in the same way as <b>but for</b> , particularly in informal spoken English:
	<ul> <li>I'd have got there on time except for the taxi being late. (or but for the taxi being late.)</li> <li>Except for the problems with my computer, I would have got the book finished weeks ago. (or But for the problems with my computer)</li> </ul>
	Note that we can use <b>excepted</b> , <b>apart</b> or <b>aside</b> after mentioning a person or thing to say that they are not included in the statement we make:  ☐ It has been, 1984 <b>excepted</b> / <b>apart</b> / <b>aside</b> , the hottest July for the last 100 years.

91.1 C	omplete the sentences with $except$ or $except$ for. Indicate where both are possible. $oxed{A\&C}$
1	He was dressed very smartly that his shoes were dirty.
2	I liked everything in the meal the cabbage.
3	I had nothing to dosit by the pool and relax.
4	We would have gone walking last weekthe terrible weather.
5	She had no choice to wait for the next train.
6	There are very few wolves left in the country in the northern forests.
7	All the puddings on the menu cost €6the ice cream, which was €4.
8	I'm in the office all the time at lunchtimes.
9	She might have won the racehitting the last fence.
10	The plant is found on every continentAfrica.
11	He gave no excuse for turning up latethat he was tired.
12	I drove all the way without stoppingto buy petrol.

- If necessary, correct the use of besides or except (for) in these sentences. If the sentence is correct, write ✓. B
  - 1 She had never been out of the country besides a week in Ireland as a child.
  - 2 Besides being small, Denmark is very flat, with villages linked by country roads.
  - 3 The new road will increase traffic in the area except for damaging an area of woodland.
  - 4 Except for his novels, Campbell wrote a number of biographies.
  - 5 There was nothing in the fridge besides a rather mouldy piece of cheese.
  - 6 He was unhurt in the crash except for a bruise on his forehead.



- 91.3 Match pairs of sentences and rewrite them as single sentences beginning **But for the** ... .

- 1 Katerina gave me excellent directions.
- 2 The bad weather caused interruptions.
- 3 The charity supplied food and medicines.
- 4 The trees provided shelter.
- 5 The EU threatened sanctions.
- 6 The bank gave me a loan.

- a If it hadn't, the building would have been completed by now.
- b Without this, human rights would not have improved in the country.
- c Otherwise, many more people would have died in the famine.
- d If it hadn't, I would not have been able to set up my business.
- e Without these, I would have got totally lost.
- f Otherwise, the wind would have caused even more damage to the house.

1+6	But for the excellent directions Katerina gave me, I would have got totally lost.

### Prepositions after verbs

A

В

Some verbs are frequently followed by particular prepositions:

	about	for	of	on	with
agree	/			1	1
argue	/	1			1
ask	/	1	1		
care	1	1			
know	/		1		
learn	/		1		
talk	1		1	1	1

	talk	✓		1	1	✓	
<ul> <li>about usually means 'concerning a particular thing':</li> <li>They began to learn about nutrition when they were at primary school.</li> <li>We use care about to talk about something we are (not) concerned about:</li> <li>He doesn't seem to care about the effect a poor diet has on him.</li> </ul>							
for is used with ask to talk about what people want:  He finished the drink quickly and asked for another.  With argue when we talk about giving reasons why something is true or right:  Many people are arguing for a big tax cut.  and with care to talk about doing what is necessary in order to keep someone or something in good health or condition:  Jo cared for her disabled mother until her death last year. (or Jo took care of)  or to mean 'like' in negative sentences, and to mean 'want' in offers. Both of these uses of care for are rather formal:  I don't care for the theatre much.  Would you care for a cup of coffee?							
of is used with talk, know, and learn to talk about discussing, having or getting information:  Mira went recently to Laos and can talk of nothing else. (or less formally talk about)  The whole country knew of Churchill's love of cigars. (or less formally knew about)  I have just learnt of the death of Dr Ramirez. (or less formally learnt about)  We use ask of when we make or talk about requests:  I have a favour to ask of you and your sister.							
○ I v ○ W Note that	with <b>talk</b> and was asked to <b>t</b> fe <b>agreed on</b> a we use <b>agree</b> nce the gover	alk on my res a time to mee to to say that	earch. ( <i>or</i> t t. (usually the t someone allo	o <b>talk about</b> re has been pr ows somethin	) evious discuss g to happen:		ement.)
Ue use ag Ac and we us action:	d with argue assed to argue gree with before the dam thinks we agree with leters	/ talk with Peore a noun or people should accepted before a noun	edro for hours. pronoun to say t the offer, an or noun phra	y that two peod I agree with se to say that	ople have the s him. we approve o	same opinion: f a particular i	idea or
or to say t	hat two descri efan's story a	iptions are the	e same:		( 8 2		

#### 92.1 Cross out any incorrect prepositions. (A)

- 1 I only advertised the car for sale on Wednesday, but by the end of the week ten people had phoned to ask of / for / about it.
- 2 We can learn a great deal after / about / for the oceans by studying even a small piece of coral.
- 3 I didn't agree about / for / with a word of what she said.
- 4 Professor Owen will be talking of / with / on the Romans in Lecture Hall 1.
- 5 I had to care for / after / about my elderly parents when they both became ill.
- 6 For many years we have been arguing for / on / with changes in the way the college is managed.
- 7 She didn't know of / about / on her stepbrother's existence until her mother died.
- 92.2 Complete the sentences using the correct or most appropriate preposition from section A. Sometimes two answers are possible. A & B

1	On the website they askyour email address.
2	I first learnthis decision to resign on the radio last night.
3	We're going to talk the council about planting some new trees in the park.
4	I don't carepop music at all. I much prefer classical music.
5	The teacher says we've got to do the test, so there's no point in arguingit.
6	Scientists do not agree the origin of the universe.
7	If you knowany reasons why you should not be given medical insurance, you must
	declare them here.
8	A: Josh can be really stupid sometimes.
	B: You shouldn't talkyour brother like that.
9	She's always arguingher parents about what to watch on television.
10	I know it's a lot to askyou, but would you look after the children while I'm in Japan on
	business?
	The course was brilliant. We learntusing the internet in teaching writing.
12	A: Dan said he'll try to fix my car.
	B: What does he knowcars?
13	I don't think the government cares enough nursery education to fund it properly.

92.3 These pairs of sentences include more verbs that are commonly followed by the prepositions in A. Can you explain the difference in meaning? Use a dictionary if necessary.

14 After days of discussion, the committee agreed ......the amount of money to donate.

- 1 a The police acted on the information very quickly.
  - b I couldn't be at the meeting, so my solicitor acted for me.
- 2 a I've been thinking a lot about your idea, and I've decided I'd like to support you.
  - b What do you think of the colour in the bedroom?
- 3 a Doctors have called on the Health Minister to resign.
  - b Campaigners have called for a referendum on the issue.
- 4 a They say he worked for the CIA in the 1980s.
  - b She works with computers.
- 5 a We're counting on Julia to supply the food for the party.
  - b Playing exciting basketball counts for little if the team isn't winning.

Unit **93** 

### Prepositions after nouns

Many nouns are followed by the same preposition  Are you <b>satisfied</b> with the way that the be The shareholders have expressed <b>satisface</b>	usiness is being	grun? and	
A few nouns are followed by different preposition  They became <b>fond</b> of each other at school Their <b>fondness</b> for each other grew and n later they married.	ol. <i>and</i>	Also: proud of / pride in, ashamed of / shame about / at	
Some nouns take a preposition where their related	d verb does no	t. Compare:	
<ul> <li>I respect Louis enormously. and</li> <li>I have enormous respect for Louis.</li> </ul>	Also: admiration for, ban on, discussion about on, improvement in, influence on, interview with, lack of, respect for		
Note that many other nouns are commonly follows a property, or classify the noun by describing what the described the conductor as moving him to the description of the conductor was very	t it relates to. ( is arms like a w	Compare:	
Some nouns can be followed by of + -ing but not	usually <b>to-inf</b> i	nitive:	
<ul> <li>He's got into the <b>habit</b> of biting his nails when he's nervous.</li> </ul>		effect, fear, likelihood, possibility, , problem, prospect, risk, sign	
Some nouns can be followed by a to-infinitive bu	ut not usually <b>c</b>	of +-ing:	
His unhappy childhood explains his reluctance to talk about his parents.  Note that many of these nouns can also be used with other prepositions + -ing	Also: ability, attempt, decision, desire, determination, failure, inability, permission, proposal, reason, refusal, (un)willingness		
(e.g. attempt at -ing, reason for -ing, etc.).			
Some nouns can sometimes be followed either by usually after <b>the</b> :	y <b>of</b> + <b>-ing</b> or a	to-infinitive with a similar meaning,	
Do staff have the opportunity of taking users? (or the opportunity to take)	ınpaid	Also: ambition, idea, option, plan	
<ul> <li>The aim of providing clean drinking water</li> </ul>	has been achie	eved. (orThe <b>aim</b> to provide)	
However, some nouns, such as <b>chance</b> , <b>sense</b> and followed either by <b>of</b> + <b>-ing</b> or a <b>to-infinitive</b> dep  What's the <b>chance</b> of getting five heads we will you get the <b>chance</b> to visit Miki in Japan He didn't have the <b>sense</b> to move away from (= good judgement) and Everyone was very friendly and she had a her new school. (= feeling)  I've got a new <b>way</b> to cook rice. (= methother she has a really funny <b>way</b> of speaking. (=	when you toss a pan? (= opport om the puddle sense of below od; or way of	ch meaning is used. Compare: a coin five times? (= likelihood) and unity) e of water as the bus went past. aging within a few days of moving to	
Note also that when the noun <b>intention</b> comes aft <b>(not)</b> any / with the, it is usually followed by <b>of</b> infinitive in most other cases. Compare:  I have <b>no intention</b> of lending Dan any m He announced his <b>intention</b> to stand in the	+ -ing, but we do	can use either <b>of</b> + <b>-ing</b> or a <b>to-</b> ot no intention to lend) and	

- 93.1 Rewrite the italicised words with a similar meaning, including a noun related to the underlined verb. Add an appropriate preposition after the noun.
  - 1 I greatly <u>admire</u> people who work full time and also study for a university degree.

    have great admiration for
  - 2 Yasemin is still in hospital but over the last couple of days her condition has improved.
  - 3 Rashid is very proud of his cooking, and is always eager to talk about his recipes.
  - 4 The website advises on how to keep fit.
  - 5 I hate it when people are <u>cruel</u> to animals, and would support a ban on hunting.
  - 6 We discussed the relative merits of vinyl and MP3 for a long time.
  - 7 I had to be vaccinated against typhoid before entering the country.
  - 8 Tubby Hayes significantly influenced the development of British jazz.
  - 9 The city <u>lacks</u> affordable housing and many people are homeless.
  - 10 There is widespread support for fireworks to be banned.

93.2	Complete the sentences with a noun from (i) and either of + -ing or the to-infinitive form of a
	verb from (ii). B

(i)		(	(ii)			
	ability cost decision failure fear possibility reason risk sign unwillingness		acknowledge fly remember worry	allow get stop	buy protect transmit	
1	,					
	The snow has been falling now for					
	The government has defended its.					
	Your blood pressure is a little high					
5	She was kept in isolation to reduce	the		1	the virus to othe	r peop
_	in the hospital.					Lorence
	The exercise tests children's					
/	The government has been criticise	a for its			the region fro	m
0	flooding.		car in Furancis av	<del></del>	مريد الم	
	The I knew that there was little					
	It's hard to work with Nik because					
10	mistakes.	01 1113			. that he ever me	ikes
	omplete the sentences with an ap	propriat	e verb using eithe	er of + -ing	or a <b>to-infiniti</b>	<b>ve</b> . Gi
	oth forms if both are possible. 🔘					
1	Although Mia said she would think	about i	t, she never had th	e slightest	intention	
_	of accepting my suggestion.		1 66 66 1			
2	It's going to be cloudy tonight so t	here is o	only a fifty-fifty cha	ance		
_	the eclipse of the moon.	1 171				
3	It's pouring with rain. I hope David	nad the	sense		an um	brella
	with him.					CE4L
4	The head of the company repeated birthday.	i nis inte	ention		on nis (	ostn
5	When the History Department clo	sed she	was given the opti	on		
_	another job.		8 с с оры	Z -		
6	Katrin had a very unusual way			. keeping	her feet firmly o	n the
:::T	floor and waving her arms around			,		reserve <del>e la colli</del> tar

93.3

### Multi-word verbs: word order

A	Some verbs are commonly used with particular preposition two- or three-word verbs multi-word verbs. When their me separate parts, we call them phrasal verbs.  I'll quickly go over the main points of the report a She had to let her dress out because she'd grown.  Three-word verbs are commonly used with an adverb + pre  Do you think he's really likely to go through with  The team has failed to live up to earlier expectation.	eaning is different from the meaning of their gain. (= summarise) (= make it larger)  sposition. his threat? (= do it)				
В	Many two-word verbs are usually <i>intransitive</i> :  He <b>grew up</b> on a farm.  When she <b>came</b>	to she found herself in hospital.				
	Also: crop up, fall through, get up, move off, shop arou	ınd, splash out				
	However, some two-word verbs can be used transitively or I'll call back later. I'll call you back	intransitively with the same meaning: when I get home.				
	Also: answer back, clear away, cover up, help out, take	over, tidy up, wash up				
	and other two-word verbs can be used transitively or intransitively with a different meaning:  The engine <b>cut out</b> and the car came to a stop.  I <b>cut</b> the picture <b>out</b> and kept it.					
	Also: break in, hold out, look up, pick up, split up, turn in, wind up					
С	With many <i>transitive</i> two-word verbs, the object can come  I want to <b>try out</b> the local food. or  I wa	e before or after the adverb: nt to <b>try</b> <i>the local food</i> <b>out</b> .				
	Also: bring about, clean up, count out, drink up, gather up, get down, leave out, make up, mess up, shoot down, sort out, throw away, use up					
	However, if the object is a pronoun it must come between the verb and the adverb:  I won't be able to go to the party. You'll have to <b>count</b> me <b>out</b> . (not count out me.)  and we prefer to put the object after the adverb when the object is long. Compare:  He had to <b>clean</b> the kitchen <b>up</b> . (or <b>clean up</b> the kitchen.) and  He had to <b>clean up</b> the mess in the kitchen. (rather than clean the mess in the kitchen up.)					
D	With some transitive two-word verbs, the object comes be  I just couldn't <b>tell</b> the twins <b>apart</b> . (not tell apart)					
	Also: catch out, hear out, order about, pull to, push to, shut up (= to silence), stand up					
E	With some transitive two-word verbs, the object follows the She takes after her mother.  I flicked the Also: account for, act on, approve of, call on, check internal run into, take against	rough a magazine while I was waiting.				
F	With most three-word verbs, the object goes after the preposition:	Also: come in for, come up against, cut back on, look down on, put up with				
	<ul> <li>He really looks up to his older brother.</li> <li>However, a few three-word verbs usually have the object i</li> </ul>	mmediately after the verb. A second noun				
	or noun phrase goes after the preposition:  She tried to <b>talk</b> me <b>out of</b> the plan.	Also: do out of, help on with, let in on, put down as, put up to, take up on				

94.1	If	possible or ne	ecessary, add	an appropriate	noun or pronoun in th	ne space. B	
	2 3 4	I'm not sure I I'm busy at tl If you tidy	how you spell he moment, b սր	it. I'll look ut I can help o, I'll do the clear	up, even though I up in the dicti up in the dicti understands even ing. we couldn't agree a p	onary. ning.	ed it.
94.2	1 2 3 4 5	The house is We've introd The strike by I decided to t I used up to b A: I must get	re than one pluntidy, but I huced a training airline pilots reproduction out for a copuy the car. (alimny shoes rep	ace, mark these aven't got time of got time of scheme to bring messed up. (the leave) authors (the leave) aired again.	should go in each sentwo possibilities. cosort / out now. (it) gabout. (some improvioliday I'd spent month (a gluten-free diet)	ement)	⟨ . If it is possible
94.3		omplete each ord orders are	sentence usi	ng a two-word ve both. C & D	verb from (i) and a not		
		get down push to	hear out	make up shut up	the general ideas her name	me the thing	my mind the window
	3	When she fill sent it back t The alarm sta	led the form ir o her. arted when I o	pened the car do	oor, and now I can't		
	5	Icouldn't follo	ow the details.	heating, but you	I couldn't, but the	lecturer spoke	so quickly I
94.4	1 2 3	necessary, co re correct, wri He was alway It is assumed She wouldn't	orrect the worlite . D, E & lys ordering about that parents to tet in me on the	d order or give a out everyone, ge will provide their the secret, howe	tting them to do his w children for until they ver hard I tried to perse d motorists on to avo	ler in these se rork for him. are 18. uade her.	ntences. If they
	5 6 7 8	I checked into I took up Emi The governm defence.	o the hotel at re on his offer nent has come lidn't approve	about four. and stayed in his in for a lot of cri of our engageme	s flat while I was in Anl ticism over its decision ent.	kara. n to increase s	pending on

# Unit **7** There is, there was, etc.

4	When we introduce a new person or thing – to say that this person or thing exists, happens, or is found in a particular place – we can use a sentence beginning <b>There + be</b> :  There was a loud bang from upstairs. (not A loud bang was from upstairs.)  There's nothing to eat. (not Nothing is to eat.)
	We invert this pattern in questions to ask about the existence etc. of people and things:  Is there anybody in here?
	We can also use there with-  auxiliary and modal verbs with be (e.g. has been, can be):  There must be some way of contacting her.  verb + to be (e.g. used to be, is supposed to be, tends to be, appears to be, seems to be):  There appears to be a major disagreement between the two presidents.  some other verbs that indicate existence (e.g. arise, emerge, exist, remain):  During the 1990s there arose a demand for organic food.
	Because we use <b>there</b> in this way to <i>introduce</i> topics, the noun after <b>there</b> + <b>be</b> often has an indefinite or non-specific meaning. So we often use <b>a</b> / <b>an</b> , <b>zero article</b> , <b>any(one)</b> (+ noun), or <b>some(thing)</b> , <b>no(body)</b> , etc. rather than <b>the</b> , <b>this</b> , <b>my</b> , <b>your</b> (+ noun), or a <b>name</b> , which give the noun a more definite or specific meaning. Compare:  There's nobody here.  There was something strange about her. and  The cat was in the kitchen. (not There was the cat in the kitchen.; but compare There was a cat in the kitchen.)  Jan is waiting for me outside. (not There is Jan waiting for me outside.)
J	When we use <b>there</b> + <b>be</b> + <b>the</b> , this is often done to show a change of topic. Choosing <b>the</b> , <b>that</b> , etc. + <b>noun</b> indicates that we think the topic is already known to the listener or reader:  And then <b>there</b> is <b>the</b> question of who is going to pay.
В	The verb <b>be</b> should agree with the noun that comes after it:  There is a very good reason for my decision.  There were too many people trying to get into the football stadium.  However, in informal speech we sometimes use <b>there's</b> before a plural noun:  'Anything to eat?' 'Well, <b>there's</b> some apples on the table.'  If the noun phrase consists of two or more nouns in a list, we use a singular verb if the first noun is singular or uncountable, and a plural verb if the first noun is plural:  When I opened the fridge <b>there was</b> only a bottle of milk, some eggs, and butter.  When I opened the fridge <b>there were</b> only some eggs, a bottle of milk, and butter.
c	There + be is also used with nouns followed by a that-, wh-, to-infinitive or -ing clause:  Is there a chance (that) Kim could arrive this afternoon?  There is no reason (why) I can't see you tomorrow.  There is a small stream which / that runs at the bottom of the garden.  There was an attempt to resolve the dispute at the factory.  There was a taxi waiting outside the hotel.  We don't usually leave out a relative pronoun when it is the subject of the following finite verb, but can leave it out when it is the object (see Unit 53).
	In formal English we can use a clause with <b>there being</b> to introduce a reason for something:  There being no evidence against him, he was released. (= Because there was no evidence).  There being no reports of adverse reactions, the drug is to be sold more widely.

ti	here possible, rewrite these sentences using <b>there</b> . In the control of the contr		* *
1	Coffee was spilt on the table. There was coffee s	pilt	on the table.
2	Your dinner is in the oven.		
3	Is something bothering you?		
4	A barrier was across the road.		
5	The doctor is free to see you now.		
	The problem of what to do with nuclear waste remain	IS.	
	My son is at university.		
	A video is supposed to be on the website, but it doesn	't w	rork.
	No petrol was available anywhere in the city.		
	Can anyone help me?		
	You can follow some general rules.		
	An art gallery used to be around here.		
С	onsider why <b>there</b> is unlikely in the other sentences.		
	he sentences below are all taken from written Englis	h. W	hich is correct or more likely in the
s	pace – is or are? A		
1	Theretwo pubs and a church on the village	gre	en.
2	There other possible locations for the car p	ark,	but the central one is preferred.
3	Thereno direct rail link between the cities.		
4	Therefurther rain and strong winds forecast	t fo	r the next three days.
5	Therechocolate bars, crisps, and a few app	les i	n the bag if you get hungry.
6	There substantial evidence to suggest that	the	Robinsons lied to the police.
7	Thereno easy answers to the problem of c	lima	ite change.
8	Therea shower, television, and two single b	oeds	in each room.
	oin the matching sentence halves using an appropriat		
	rite the relative pronoun in brackets if it can be left		
	There were a lot of people at the party	a	an election will be held next month.
	There's a cake in the kitchen	Ь	0
	There was never any doubt	C	1 3 3
	There have been suggestions	d	
	There aren't many people alive today	е	hadn't been invited.
	There are still some old houses in the village	f	haven't watched TV.
	There was absolutely nothing	g	don't have electricity.
	There are few people in the company	h	6
1	+e There were a lot of people at the party who	) /	that hadn't been invited.
	rite new sentences with similar meanings beginning		
1	As there was no food in the house, they went to a local There being no food in the house, they went		
2	There was no further business, so the meeting closed		
3	The patients were sent home because there was no do	octo	r available.
4	Because the facilities were inadequate at the hotel, the university.	e cc	onference was relocated to a nearby

### It as subject (introductory It)

A	We can use an introductory it at the beginning of a sentence −  to place long or grammatically complex sentence elements at the end (the usual place for them in English). Compare:  To drive without a licence is illegal. and  It is illegal to drive without a licence.  to focus attention on something by putting it at the end (the usual place for new or important information in English). Compare:  That she wasn't hurt is a miracle. and  It's a miracle that she wasn't hurt.  Introductory it is commonly used when the subject is a to-infinitive or that-clause (as in the examples above), and also when the subject is a wh- or -ing clause (see also Unit 25):  It is clear why Diego decided to leave Spain.  It is useless asking Sophie to help.
В	We often use introductory it with be + adjective / noun (as in the examples above), but other patterns with an introductory it are possible. Here are some common examples—  it + verb + to-infinitive  'I've got a terrible headache.' 'It helps to lie down.'  If you want someone to help you, it doesn't make sense to annoy them just before you ask.  (= not advisable, acceptable or enough)  it + verb + object + to-infinitive  It shocked him to see her looking so ill.  It means a lot to get a place at university.  After these verbs the object usually refers to a person.  We can also use it + take + object + to-infinitive when we say what is or was needed (e.g. time, resources or characteristics) in a particular activity; Compare:  It takes a lot of effort to play the flute. and  To play the flute takes a lot of effort.  it + verb + that-clause  It seems that she has lost her memory.  It emerged that he already had a criminal record.  it + verb + object + that-clause  It suddenly hit me that Sara wanted to borrow money. (less likely is That Sara wanted to borrow money suddenly hit me.)  The object in this pattern usually refers to a person.
C	We don't usually use an it pattern as an alternative to a noun as subject:  Their success was unexpected. (not It was unexpected their success.)  However, in informal contexts, particularly in speech, this is quite common in order to give special emphasis to the information immediately following it:  It tastes really good, this new ice cream.  and also to place a longer noun phrase at the end in order to focus attention on it:  It's ridiculous, all the bureaucracy involved in running a school these days.

- 96.1 Rewrite these sentences beginning It ... but only if they would be correct written English; otherwise write ✓ and consider why an It ... sentence would be inappropriate. A & C
  - 1 That we continue to monitor the situation is important.

    It is important that we continue to monitor the situation.
  - 2 How he stared straight at me was unsettling.
  - 3 Francesco's excellent exam result was surprising.
  - 4 To be a qualified driver is an advantage in the job.
  - 5 Her proposal is quite radical.
  - 6 To put carpet on walls is highly unusual.
  - 7 Robin's new car is a Ferrari.
  - 8 Finding a good plumber is hard these days.
- 96.2 Complete the sentences using it ... followed by a verb from (i) and an expanded form of the notes in (ii). Include an appropriate object where necessary.

(i) (ii)

not bother concern
hurt not make sense
pay strike
upset scare

pedal / bicycle see / carrying knives criticise / too much everyone / see in he / jealous -seriously injured /- backplan your journey ahead hadn't even told / when / going away discover / also / successful novelist hear / offended

- 1 When Laura fell heavily and lay completely still, it appeared that she had seriously injured her back
- 2 I knew that Lotta was a journalist for the local paper, but ...
- 3 Since I broke my ankle last year, ...
- 4 Itold Peter that I had invited Hugo, too. When he became angry ...
- 5 My comment about Ben's baldness was only meant as a joke and ...
- 6 There were no curtains in his house, but ...
- 7 I didn't mind Amy not asking me to go on holiday with her, but ...
- 8 Children need a lot of praise and ...
- 9 The boys walked towards me in a threatening way, and ...
- 10 You can save money by booking tickets in advance, so ...
- 96.3 What personal or physical characteristics are needed to ...? Use It takes ... in your answers. B
  - 1 play a musical instrument well

    It takes a lot of determination to play a musical instrument well.
  - 2 build your own house
  - 3 make a speech in front of a group of strangers
  - 4 explain the rules of cricket to someone who doesn't know the game

Now suggest completions for these sentences.

- 5 It takes bravery ...
- 6 It takes a lot of organisation to ...
- 7 It takes a great deal of time ...

Unit **97** 

# It as object (referring forward): It is/was no... versus There is/was no...

	We can use a pattern with it as the object of a verb where it refers forward to a clause. It can sometimes be followed directly by a that-, if- or when-clause after can't bear, hate, like, love, resent and can't stand, and by an if- or when-clause after dislike, enjoy, prefer and understand:    I hate it that you can swim so well and I can't. (not I hate that you can swim)   We always enjoy it when they stay with us. (not We always enjoy when they)    Some verbs can be followed by it and a that-clause, particularly in spoken English, or directly by a that-clause without it:   You've just got to accept (it) that Emil's gone and won't be coming back.    Also: admit, deny, guarantee, mention     Also: argue, discover, emphasise, notice, predict     Also: argue, discover, emphasise, notice, predict
3	After other verbs used to indicate how we see a particular event or situation, it is followed first by an adjective or noun phrase and then a that-clause, to-infinitive clause, or clause beginning when:  Officials said they believe it unlikely that any lasting damage to the environment has been done. (or they believe it is unlikely that;  not they believe unlikely that)  When we use leave and owe (= have a responsibility to) with it we can use to somebody + to-infinitive after it:  Don't bother to arrange anything. Just leave it to me to sort out.  She owed it to her parents to do well at college.
	With the verbs accept, regard, see, take (= interpret something in a particular way), or view we use it + as + noun (or adjective) + clause:  We see it as an insult to have received no reply to our letter.  I take it as encouraging when students attend all my lectures.
	Here are some common expressions including It is / was no and There is / was no:    It's no secret that he wants a new job.   It's no surprise that his latest film has been so successful.   I'm afraid there's no alternative (or choice) but to ask her to leave.   It's no use telling me now. I needed to know a week ago.   It's no good getting angry. That won't help solve the problem.   It's no coincidence (or accident) that they left the party at the same time.   It's no longer necessary to have a visa to visit the country.   There's no reason to be pessimistic.   There's no chance of finding a cure if we don't fund more research.
	The sentences with It is / was no have alternatives in which the that-, -ing or to-infinitive clause is placed at the front, but the sentences with There is / was no do not. Compare:  It's no secret that he wants a new job. (or That he wants a new job is no secret.) and There's no denying that he's intelligent. (but not That he's intelligent is no denying.)

Omplete each sentence with an appropriate form of a verb from the box. If necessary, add it.

	can't bear leave	consider owe pr	discover edict prefer	enjoy find remember	1)	
1	Ho can't	hear it wh	en paopla criticisa	his work, and he ge	ots very upset	
					lack and white and n	ot in colour
					6th I'll try to rearrang	
	-			to the best of our a	2	5
				table when I left the		
6	I really	whe	en the weather's ho	ot like this. I'd hate t	to live in a cold clima	te.
7	I can't stop	you dismantli	ng your motorbike	in the kitchen, but	I'd if y	ou didn't.
				ren to do the washii		
				om the course within	n a month.	
			e to have known M	55		
th		expanded th	76 B. J		ech to the board of one of the control of one of the control of th	
1				aging director – Re		(take
2	I take it	as a great	honour to be as	ked to become ma	unaging director of	
-	part of my	role – signi	ficantly reduce Re	xco's carbon footp	rint – next 5 years	(see
3	necessary	evil - some	people – may redu	undant – in next ye	ar	(ассері
4	important managers		with workforce -	make available info	ormation –	(view
5	unaccepta	ble – moderr	ı company – exclu	ide workforce – mą	ajor decision-making	(regard
6	fundamen	tal animeiala	of company and	pliers of raw mater	iala	(take
		ir price for p		plicis of taw mater	1415	
Co	omplete the	sentences w	ith an appropriate	e it or there p	hrase from section [	O opposite.
	iggest alteri	natives where	e possible. D			
	27 TO TO THE RESERVE OF THE RESERVE					
	It's no a	oincidence	that Karlsbad has	won the ice hockey	tournament for the	last three
1	It's no a years. It is a	very rich club	and its training fa	cilities are excellent	t.	
1	It's no a years. It is a My contact	very rich club lens must ha	o and its training fa ve fallen out in the	cilities are excellent	t. of	finding it.
1 2 3	It's no co years. It is a My contact	very rich club lens must ha	o and its training fa ve fallen out in the that Julia and Ja	cilities are excellent snow, so kub have split up. E	t. of veryone in the office	finding it. knows.
1 2 3 4	It's no co years. It is a My contact	very rich club lens must ha exam result v	o and its training fave fallen out in the musthat Julia and Jawasn't good, but	cilities are excellent snow, so kub have split up. E	t. of veryone in the office getting upset	finding it. knows. about it.
1 2 3 4	It's no co years. It is a My contact I know your Your broker	very rich club lens must ha exam result v arm will take	o and its training fa we fallen out in the that Julia and Ja wasn't good, but e some time to me	scilities are excellent snow, so kub have split up. E nd, but	t. of veryone in the office	finding it. knows. about it.
1 2 3 4 5	It's no co years. It is a My contact I know your Your broker shouldn't be As the car fe	very rich club lens must have exam result value arm will take e playing tenr	o and its training fave fallen out in the we fallen out in the that Julia and Jawasn't good, but e some time to me his again by the suring because of the	icilities are excellent snow, so kub have split up. E nd, but	t. of veryone in the office getting upset	finding it. knows. about it. you
1 2 3 4 5 5	It's no co years. It is a My contact I know your Your broker shouldn't be As the car fe 100 kilomet	very rich club lens must have exam result values arm will take e playing tenre erry isn't runn cres around th	o and its training fave fallen out in the we fallen out in the mann that Julia and Jawasn't good, but e some time to me his again by the suring because of the lake.	cilities are excellent snow, so kub have split up. E nd, but mmer. high winds,	tof veryone in the officegetting upsetwhy	finding it. knows. about it. you but to drive

# Focusing: it-clauses and what-clauses

	Tocasing. It-clauses and what-clauses
A	We can use an it-clause with be to focus attention on the information that immediately follows it. A sentence like this is sometimes called a cleft sentence. The clause after the it-clause (usually a that-clause) contains information that is already known or considered less important:  'Lea bought the car from Olav.' 'No, it was Olav that bought the car from Lea.'  I don't mind her criticising me, but it's how she does it that I object to.  It was to show how much I cared for her that I bought her the necklace.  We sometimes use which or who instead of that; when and where can also be used, but usually only in informal English; and note that how or why can't replace that:  Karl was always there to help her, and it was to him that / who she now turned for support.  'Ida's seriously ill in hospital.' 'But it was only last Sunday when / that I was playing tennis with her.'  It was in Warsaw where / that the film was made.  'Was it by cutting staff that he managed to save the firm?' 'No, it was by improving distribution that he made it profitable.' (not how he made it profitable.)
В	Focusing with what-clauses  We can also use a what-clause followed by be to focus attention on certain information in a sentence (= another form of cleft sentence). This pattern is particularly common in conversation. The information we want to focus attention on is outside the what-clause. Compare:  We gave them some home-made cake. and What we gave them was some home-made cake.  We often do this if we want to introduce a new topic; to give a reason, instruction or explanation; or to correct something. In the following examples, the key information in focus is in italics:  What I'd like you to work on is the revision exercise on the website.  Isa arrived two hours late: what had happened was that his bicycle chain had broken.  We've only got this small bookcase – will that do?' 'No, what I was looking for was something much bigger and stronger.'  We can often put the what-clause either at the beginning or the end of the sentence:  What upset me most was his rudeness. or  His rudeness was what upset me most.  To focus attention on an action performed by someone, we use a sentence with what + subject + do + be + to-infinitive (or bare infinitive) clause. We can't use an it-clause to do this (see A):  Luis lost his job and was short of money, so what he did was (to) sell his flat and move in with his brother. (not so it was (to) sell his flat that he did.)
С	The pattern in <b>B</b> is only usually used with <b>what-clauses</b> . Instead of placing other <b>wh-clauses</b> (beginning <b>how</b> , <b>when</b> , <b>where</b> , <b>who</b> , <b>why</b> ) at the beginning of the sentence we prefer to use a noun which has a meaning related to the <b>wh-word</b> (e.g. <b>reason</b> rather than <b>why</b> ; <b>place</b> rather than <b>where</b> )

☐ The only reason (why / that) I left the party early was that I was feeling unwell.

The place (where / that) you should play football is the playground, not the classroom.

followed by a **that-** or **wh-clause**. Here are some examples:

Somebody (who / that) I enjoy reading is Peter Carey.The time (when / that) I work best is early morning.

Complete the rewritten sentences to focus attention on the underlined information. Start with it + be and use an appropriate wh-word or that. 1 Mark's known for ages that his parents are coming to stay with us this weekend, but he only told me yesterday. Mark's known for ages that his parents are coming to stay with us this weekend, but... it was only yesterday that / when he told me. 2 Helena has been feeling a bit down for some time, so I booked a holiday in Amsterdam to cheer her up. Helena has been feeling a bit down for some time, so ... 3 It's not that I don't want to have dinner with you tonight; I can't come because I've got so much work to do. It's not that I don't want to have dinner with you tonight; ... 4 I had my wallet when I went into the sports hall, so I lost it somewhere in there. I had my wallet when I went into the sports hall, so ... 5 She doesn't find learning languages very easy, and she improved her Spanish only by studying very hard. She doesn't find learning languages very easy, and ... 6 I have had a great deal of help from my parents and two brothers in my research, and I dedicate this thesis to my family. I have had a great deal of help from my parents and two brothers in doing my research, and ... 98.2 Write B's responses beginning No, what ..., correcting what was said in A's question. Use the notes in brackets. B 1 A: Did you say that Rudi was going to live in Austria? (holiday / Austria) B: No, what I said was that he was going on holiday to Austria. 2 A: Do you hope to sell your Cassatt paintings? (be put into / public art gallery) 3 A: Did it annoy you that Carla came so late? (not apologise) 4 A: Did you mean to give Ella your bike? (could borrow it / until needed again) Now give similar responses which focus on the action. 5 A: Did you watch the football on TV last night? (get brother / record it / watch tonight) B: No, what I did was (to) get my brother to record it and I'll watch it tonight. 6 A: This steak tastes delicious. Did you fry it? (put oil and soy sauce on / grill) 7 A: Did you buy Megan the coat she wanted? (give / money towards it) 8 A: Did you fly from Sydney to Brisbane? (hire a car / drive all the way) Complete B's responses using one of the phrases from section C opposite and the information

in brackets. Put the information in the right order and add an appropriate form of be.

1	A: I suppose Paul got the job because of his qualifications. (uncle owns company)
	B: Well, actually, I think the reason why / that Paul got the job was that his
	uncle owns the company.
	A: Do you know anyone who could mend my computer? (might be able / help / Petra)
	B: I don't know if she's free, but
2	. Vou group in this village didn't you? (between this village and novt)
	A: You grew up in this village, didn't you? (between this village and next)
	B: In fact

4 A: In what period of your life do you think you were happiest? (lived Australia) B: I suppose

Unit **99** 

# Inversion for emphasis

A	In statements it is usual for the verb to follow the subject, but sometimes this word order is reversed. We can refer to this as <i>inversion</i> . There are two main types of inversion: when the verb comes before the subject (inversion is often optional), and when the auxiliary comes before the subject and the rest of the verb phrase follows the subject (inversion is usually necessary):  ○ Alex stood in the doorway. → In the doorway stood Alex. (or Alex stood.)  ○ I had rarely seen such a view. → Rarely had I seen such a view. (not Rarely I had seen)  Inversion brings about fronting, the re-ordering of information to give emphasis in a particular place.  Postponing information until later in the sentence focuses attention on it.					
В	In conversation we use Here comes + noun and The subject, to talk about things and people moving towards the bus. (= moving towards the bus. (= moving towards the bus.)  There goes Per Alvin, the conductor. (= moving towards the bus.)  Here comes is also used to say that something to talk about things (particularly money) being lost to talk about things (particularly money) being lost the bus.  Here comes lunch.  My bike's been stolen! There goes £100!  There goes the phone. Can you answer it?	wards he spe oving is goir t or to	or away from the speaker: eaker) away from the speaker) ng to happen soon, and <b>There goes</b> is used say that an alert or alarm has sounded:			
We also put the verb before the subject when we use adverbs expressing direction of movement as along, away, back, down, in, off, out, up with verbs such as come, fly, go. This pattern is for particularly in narrative, to mark a change in events:  The door opened and in came the doctor. (or and the doctor came in.)  As soon as I let go of the string, up went the balloon, high into the sky. (or the ballowent up)  For more on inversion after adverbs of place and direction, see Unit 76A.						
С	We can use clauses with inversion instead of certain kinds of <b>if-clause</b> (see Unit 83). Compare:					
	It would be a serious setback, if the talks     were to fail.		It would be a serious setback, were the talks to fail.			
	<ul> <li>If you should need more information, please telephone our main office.</li> </ul>		<b>Should</b> <i>you</i> <b>need</b> more information, please telephone our main office.			
	If Andy had asked, I would have been able to help.		<b>Had</b> <i>Andy</i> <b>asked</b> , I would have been able to help.			
	The sentences with inversion are rather more formal than those with 'if'. Note that in negative clauses with inversion, we don't use contracted forms:  — Had the plane not been diverted, they would have arrived early. (not Hadn't the plane)					
D	<ul> <li>Paper was invented in China, as was the process of printing.</li> <li>Most young people did not vote in the election, as was the case in 2010.</li> <li>I believed, as did my colleagues, that the plan would work.</li> <li>Research shows that parents watch more television than do their children.</li> </ul>					
Note that we don't invert subject and verb after <b>as</b> or <b>than</b> when the subject is a pronoun:  We now know a lot more about the universe <b>than</b> we <b>did</b> ten years ago. (not than did ten years ago.)						

99.1	C	omplete the sentences with an appropriate adverb and a form of either come or go. 📵
	1	We'd just got to the top of the hill when down came the rain and we got soaked.
	2	Just when you've bought a computer that you think will last a lifetime,some new software that needs an even bigger hard drive.
	3	Whenever I ask the class a question, their hands and they sit patiently until I choose one of them to answer.
	4	I asked Ryan to get three kilos of potatoes from the supermarket and he only bought one kilo, so he to get some more.
	5	After I'd been waiting for an hour, the door opened and the nurse, who said the dentist would be able to see me now.
	6	I'd lost hope of getting the cat out of the tree, when a man with a ladder.
	7	As soon as I'd given Daisy some pocket money,sheto buy sweets.

### 99.2 Match the sentence halves and write new sentences beginning Were ..., Should ..., or Had ... .

- 1 If Kahn had not resigned as party leader, ...
- 2 If you do not wish to receive further information about our products, ...
- 3 If the plane were ever to be built, ...
- 4 If the ice hockey team wins again today, ...
- 5 If I were offered the job, ...
- 6 If a car had been coming the other way, ...
- 7 If there had been a referendum on the issue, ... f it is unlikely that the electorate would have
- 8 If you are not able to afford the SXL3, ...
- 9 If Charles Dickens were alive today,...

- a it would cut the journey time from New York to Tokyo by four hours.
- b there are less expensive models in the range.
- c he would have been sacked.
- d I would have no hesitation in accepting.
- e he would be writing novels about the homeless in London.
- f it is unlikely that the electorate would have supported the government.
- g it will be their tenth consecutive victory.
- h click on the box below.
- i I might have been seriously injured.

#### 1+c Had ell not resigned as party leader, he would have been sacked.

# 99.3 Report the information in the table. Write three sentences using sentence frame (i) and three using sentence frame (ii). D

Household expenditure (% of total income)

	Housing	Food and drink	Clothing	Transport	Recreation
Europe 1970	22	12	3	8	10
America 1970	15	14	2	6	12
Europe Today	17	8	5	12	9
America Today	16	15	3	7	13

(i) Europeans / Americans spend / spent more / less of their income on ... today / in 1970 than do / did Europeans / Americans

Americans spend more of their income on food and drink today than do Europeans.

(ii) Europeans / Americans spend / spent more / less of their income on ... than on ... today / in 1970, as is / was the case today / in 1970.

Europeans spent less of their income on clothing than on transport in 1970, as is the case today.

# 99.4 Rewrite these sentences with a similar meaning using as or than + be or do. D

- 1 I was opposed to the new road. Everyone else in the village was opposed to it, too.

  I was opposed to the new road, as was everyone else in the village.
- 2 Kamal went to Oxford University. His sister went there, too. Kamal went ...
- 3 Compared with people in developed nations, people in poorer countries consume a far smaller proportion of the earth's resources. *People in poorer countries* ...
- 4 Compared to five years ago, he is a much better teacher. He is ...
- 5 Dan is a keen golfer. His wife, Sharon, is a keen golfer, too. Dan is ...

# Inversion: other patterns

A

В

### Inversion after negative adverbials

In formal and literary language in particular, we use negative adverbials at the beginning of a clause.  The subject and first auxiliary are inverted, (and do is used with a simple tense verb) after −  the time adverbials never (before), rarely, seldom; barely / hardly / scarcely when / before; no sooner than:  Seldom do we have goods returned to us because they are faulty.  Hardly had everybody taken their seats when Dr Lee began her lecture.
<ul> <li>only + a time expression, as in only after, only later, only if, only once, only then, only when:</li> <li>She bought a newspaper and some milk at the shop on the corner. Only later did she realise that she'd been given the wrong change.</li> <li>Only when she apologises will / speak to her again.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>only + other prepositional phrases beginning only by, only in, only with, etc.:</li> <li>Only by chance had Carl discovered where the birds were nesting.</li> <li>Maria had to work in the evenings. Only in this way was she able to complete the report.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>expressions such as at no time, in no way, on no account, under / in no circumstances:</li> <li>At no time did they actually break the rules of the game.</li> <li>Under no circumstances are passengers permitted to open the doors themselves.</li> </ul>
expressions with not, such as not only, not until, not since, not for one moment and also not a +
<ul> <li>Not only did Amy speak Japanese fluently, but she could also write basic sentences.</li> <li>Not until August did the government order an inquiry into the accident.</li> <li>Not a word had she written since the exam had started.</li> </ul>
little with a negative meaning: <ul> <li>Little do they know how lucky they are to live in such a wonderful house. (= 'they don't know' or 'they don't know sufficiently')</li> </ul>
Note that inversion can occur after a clause beginning only after / if / when or not until:  Only when the famine gets worse will world governments begin to act.  Not until the train pulled into the station did Miguel find that his coat had gone.
Inversion after so + adjective that; such + be that; neither / nor
We can use so + adjective at the beginning of a clause to emphasise the adjective. When we do this, the subject and first auxiliary are inverted, and do is used with a simple tense verb:  So successful was her business, that Lana was able to retire at the age of 50.  So dangerous did weather conditions become, that all mountain roads were closed.
We can use <b>such</b> + <b>be</b> + <b>noun</b> or <b>noun phrase</b> at the beginning of a clause to emphasise the extent or degree of something:  Such is the <b>popularity</b> of the play that the theatre is likely to be full every night.
We use inversion after <b>neither</b> and <b>nor</b> when these words begin a clause to introduce a negative addition to a previous negative clause or sentence:  — For some time after the explosion Jack couldn't hear, and <b>neither</b> could <b>he</b> see.  — The council never wanted the new supermarket to be built, <b>nor</b> did <b>local residents</b> .
Note that we also use inversion in <b>Neither / Nor do I</b> , <b>Neither / Nor does Diane</b> (etc.) and in <b>So do I</b> , <b>So does Maya</b> (etc.).

Rewrite the sentences with a similar meaning beginning with a word / phrase from the box. A

only if barely only with rarely at no time little

- 1 A new film has not often before produced such positive reviews. Rarely has a new film produced such positive reviews.
- 2 The public was never in any danger.
- 3 He only felt entirely relaxed with close friends and family.
- 4 The match won't be cancelled unless the pitch is frozen.
- 5 I didn't know then that Carmen and I would be married one day.
- 6 He had only just entered the water when it became clear he couldn't swim.

Now do the same using these words and phrases. A



only once only in on no account hardly not only not only not for one moment

- 7 You must not light the fire if you are alone in the house.
- 8 There was never any rivalry between the three brothers.
- 9 I wasn't only wet through, I was freezing cold.
- 10 I had only ever climbed this high once before.
- 11 The audience had only just taken their seats when the conductor stepped onto the stage.
- 12 He has only been acknowledged to be a great author in the last few years.
- 13 I don't only have a headache, my back is killing me too.

Complete these sentences in any appropriate way using the words from the box. B



(	alike	boring	complicated	dominance	interest	strength	)
1	Such	is the in	terest in Dr Low	e's talk that	it will be held	in a bigger led	ture theatre.
2	Such				that 1	few buildings	were left standing
3	Such			tha	at she hasn't l	ost a match fo	or over three years
4	So			th	at even their p	parents couldr	n't tell them apart.
5	So			that	it even took a	computer thr	ee days to solve it.
6	So				that mo	st of the stude	ents went to sleep

Correct any mistakes in this news article. Units 99 & 100



SEARCH

LOG IN

SIGN UP

# TOWN EVACUATED AS FOREST FIRES APPROACH

The people of Sawston were evacuated yesterday as forest fires headed towards the town. Such the heat was of the oncoming inferno that trees more than 100 metres ahead began to smoulder. Only once in recent years, during 2018, a town of this size has had to be evacuated because of forest fires. A fleet of coaches and lorries arrived in the town in the early morning. Into these vehicles the sick and elderly climbed, before they headed off to safety across the river. Residents with cars left by mid morning, as all non-essential police officers did.

Hardly the evacuation had been completed when the wind changed direction and it became clear that the fire would leave Sawston untouched. Soon after that were heard complaints from some residents. 'At no time the fires posed a real threat,' said one local man. 'I didn't want to leave my home, and nor most of my neighbours did.' So upset some elderly residents are that they are threatening to complain to their MP. But Chief Fire Officer Jones replied, 'Hadn't we taken this action, lives would have been put at risk. Only when the fires have moved well away from the town residents will be allowed to return to their homes.'

# Complex noun phrases and complex prepositions

A

#### Complex noun phrases

Long, complex noun phrases are typical of academic writing, allowing a lot of information to be included within one sentence element. They can make up substantial parts of academic texts as subjects, objects and complements. The complex noun phrases in this extract are in italics with the main noun in each phrase in bold.

The changes in map data collection and representation that have arisen with the introduction of computers and digital techniques are remarkable. Information that used to be collected manually from surveys and ground observations can now be collected almost instantaneously by orbiting satellites that send data to Earth at the speed of light. Maps that were once hand-drawn can now be produced on a computer and printed out in a relatively short amount of time.

Note the word order in complex noun phrases -

- The most common elements *before* the main noun in a complex noun phrase are: determiners (e.g. *a, the*) and adjectives (e.g. *orbiting*).
- The most common elements after the main noun are: relative clauses (e.g. that were once hand-drawn), and prepositional phrases (e.g. from surveys).
- After the main noun in particular, elements are often embedded within others. For example, the relative clause that have arisen with the introduction of computers includes the prepositional phrase with the introduction of computers which in turn includes the prepositional phrase of computers.

B

In academic writing we tend to use nouns to talk about *actions* and *processes* (more typically associated with verbs), and *qualities* (more typically associated with adjectives). This use of a noun to convey a meaning usually expressed with a word from another class is referred to as *nominalisation*, and this process often results in a complex noun phrase. Compare the noun phrases in these two texts:

 (i) Organisations have reported that the number of people volunteering has decreased rapidly in recent years. At the same time, more opportunities to volunteer have become available. (ii) An extremely rapid decrease in volunteering has been reported in recent years. At the same time, the availability of opportunities to volunteer has increased.

Where (i) uses a verb (has decreased) and adjective (available), (ii), more typical of academic writing, uses nouns (decrease, availability)

#### Complex prepositions

Complex prepositions comprise two, three or four words. Some of these occur more frequently in academic writing than in general use. For example:

- As for the future, demand for electricity is expected to grow at a rate of 5% per annum.
   (= regarding)
- The final chapter considers inequalities in health with reference to race and gender. (= what it is about)
- Monthly average temperatures were higher than average with the exception of June. (= not including)

Also: as a result of, as distinct from, as opposed to, depending on, in comparison with, in line with, in the case of, irrespective of, on the part of, prior to, regardless of

Note that four-word prepositions usually end in of and include an article.

Complex prepositions often occur as part of complex noun phrases:

- This essay has discussed class identity with reference to gender differences.
  - The study found a less positive attitude **in the case of** customers exposed to advertising and marketing communications.

101.1) Build more complex noun phrases by adding the information in brackets to the noun phrase(s) in appropriate positions in each sentence. The main nouns in each complex noun phrase are in bold. (A)

	considerable mineral	
1	1 The/decrease in price for the country's/exports began in mid	2015.
	(the decrease was considerable) (the decrease was in mineral exp	ports)
2	2 A <b>study</b> published in 2007 predicted a <b>peak</b> in the population	of 9.2 billion.
	(the study predicted a global peak) (the peak will be reached in 2	
3	3 One influence that affects the character of a society is the pro	
	(the influence is particularly important) (the influence is cultural	l) (the influence also affects the
	speed of change of a society)	
4	4 A factor in the rise of today's free market economy was the gr	<b>rowth</b> of trade in Asia in the
	16 <sup>th</sup> century.	
5	<ul> <li>(the factor was key) (today's free market economy is globalised)</li> <li>The government's policies after World War II were influenced by (this refers to the British government) (the policies related to ecwas an economist) (Keynes lived from 1883 to 1946)</li> </ul>	the <b>ideas</b> of John Maynard Keyno
	Reword the italicised part of the sentence using a noun phrase noun should be related to the verb or adjective in bold. B	with a noun + preposition. The
1	1 Harris (2012) points out how important public transport is in eather importance of public transport	conomic development.
2	2 Measuring how similar two documents are is an important processays. the	cess in automatically marking
3	3 Recent investment from overseas has resulted in 200,000 jobs the	being <b>created</b> .
4	4 Expansion of tourism in the region was used <i>to justify</i> building as a	the new airport.
5	5 The study found that the reading habits of 6 year old girls and bo	oys were greatly <b>different</b> .
C	Complete the sentences with a complex preposition from (i) a	nd a word or phrase from (ii).
	(i) (ii)	
		ıman error marketing eader
-		
1	1 In the case of plants, endangered species can be put ir	nto seed banks.
	<ul> <li>In the case of plants, endangered species can be put in</li> <li>It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li> </ul>	
2	<ul><li>2 It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li><li>3 Musical activities are encouraged among all children at school</li></ul>	dentified
2	2 It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id	dentified
2 3 4	<ul><li>2 It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li><li>3 Musical activities are encouraged among all children at school</li></ul>	dentified
2 3 4 5	<ul> <li>2 It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li> <li>3 Musical activities are encouraged among all children at school</li> <li>4 The book assumes considerable prior knowledge of biology</li> </ul>	dentified
2 3 4 5	<ul> <li>2 It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li> <li>3 Musical activities are encouraged among all children at school</li> <li>4 The book assumes considerable prior knowledge of biology</li> <li>5 The mistakes were the result of software faults</li> <li>Now suggest a complex preposition from those listed in C to c</li> </ul>	dentified
2 3 4 5 <b>N</b> 6	<ul> <li>2 It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li> <li>3 Musical activities are encouraged among all children at school</li> <li>4 The book assumes considerable prior knowledge of biology</li> <li>5 The mistakes were the result of software faults</li> <li>Now suggest a complex preposition from those listed in C to c</li> <li>6 Many people had already left the region</li> </ul>	omplete these sentences. ral years of drought.
2 3 4 5 <b>N</b> 6 7	<ul> <li>2 It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li> <li>3 Musical activities are encouraged among all children at school</li> <li>4 The book assumes considerable prior knowledge of biology</li> <li>5 The mistakes were the result of software faults</li> <li>Now suggest a complex preposition from those listed in C to c</li> <li>6 Many people had already left the region</li> <li>5 Seven</li> <li>7 Christie (2006), three main approaches to the te</li> </ul>	omplete these sentences. ral years of drought. aching of reading can be identific
2 3 4 5 <b>N</b> 6 7 8	<ul> <li>It is unreasonable to expect that all side-effects of a drug are id</li> <li>Musical activities are encouraged among all children at school</li> <li>The book assumes considerable prior knowledge of biology</li> <li>The mistakes were the result of software faults</li> <li>Now suggest a complex preposition from those listed in C to c</li> <li>Many people had already left the region</li> </ul>	omplete these sentences. ral years of drought. raching of reading can be identificew up in the 19 <sup>th</sup> century.

#### Reflection

To help you become familiar with complex prepositions, you may find it useful to group those in C and new ones you find according to general meaning. For example:

Difference: as opposed to, as distinct from Cause: on account of, as a result of

→ Additional exercise 00 (page 246)

# Expressing and reporting opinions: it-clauses

A

#### **Expressing opinions impersonally**

In academic communication we tend to be impersonal, focusing more on actions, the effects of actions, and the things affected by actions rather than the people performing the actions. We often use *it*-clauses (see also Unit 96) to express opinions impersonally in academic writing and speaking. Common patterns are:

it + be + (adverb) + adjective + to-infinitive

 It is extremely difficult to evaluate the role of tourism in urban renewal. Other adjectives commonly used in this pattern: (in)convenient, easy, hard, important, (im) possible, interesting, (un)necessary, (un) reasonable, (in)sufficient, useful

it + be + (adverb) + adjective + that

 It is quite possible that a larger sample size would have shown different results. Other adjectives commonly used in this pattern: apparent, (un)clear, (in)conceivable, doubtful, essential, evident, important, (un) likely, obvious, probable, true

Note that not all adverbs and adjectives in these patterns can combine. For example, we commonly use **quite + possible/ clear**, but rarely **quite + doubtful/ essential** 

We often use a passive verb form in an *it-clause* with *that* when we report another person's opinion.

Notice that we usually include a reference to the other person's work, often immediately after the reporting verb or at the end of the sentence:

It has been reported (Crane, 2015) that prolonged periods sitting in front of a computer may have significant health risks. Verbs commonly used in this pattern: argue\*, claim\*, contend\*, demonstrate, estimate, maintain\*, note, propose\*, report\*, show, suggest\*

В

### Distancing yourself from a point of view

We often use an *it-clause* when we want to distance ourselves from an earlier point of view, perhaps because it is now disputed, or because we feel there was some limitation or problem with the earlier work:

- It has been claimed that cheese intake is associated with high cholesterol levels (Zemel, 2001), but more recent studies have found that cheese may even have a cholesterol lowering effect (Hamedi, 2018; Allen, 2019).
- ☐ It is often suggested that air pollutants from traffic, such as nitrogen oxide (NO2) and suspended particulate matter have a negative impact on child health (e.g. Janssen, 2004, Knape, 2012). However, relatively few studies so far have looked at the health of children living near busy roads.

The reporting verbs marked \* in **A** above are often used in this way.

C

#### Disagreeing

In academic contexts we often begin a disagreement by acknowledging that some part of the opposing position is true. *It*-clauses are often used for this in academic writing and also in spoken academic contexts (presentations, seminars, etc.):

- ☐ It is sometimes argued that it is important for students to outline their essays before beginning writing (e.g. Cotton, 2004). While it is quite correct that much of an essay can be planned in advance, it must also be noted that the act of writing itself facilitates thought and shapes ideas.
- It's often assumed that environmental sustainability and poverty reduction can go hand-in-hand. Although it's certainly possible to find a small number of examples where this happens, in most cases in the literature it is reported that the costs of environmental improvement fall on the poor rather than the wealthy.

However, in less formal spoken contexts we sometimes prefer more personal forms. For example: **We often assume that..., ...you can certainly find...** .

102.1 Complete the sentences using an impersonal it-clause starting with a phrase from (i), that or a to-infinitive from (ii), and an ending from (iii). For questions 5 and 6 use your own ideas to complete the sentences.

(i)	(ii)	(iii)
it is likely	that	a number of other approaches are possible.
it is doubtful	that	human activity is the cause.
it is important	that	it is missing from the school curriculum in
it is easy	to tell	many countries.
it is impossible	to see	why homeowners are concerned with energy
it is surprising	to recognise that	efficiency.

- 1 Given the high cost of electricity and gas, it is easy to see why homeowners are concerned with energy efficiency.
- 2 The general view is that the Earth's climate is warming, and ...
- 3 Educationalists have been advocating the importance of critical thinking for many years, so ...
- 4 Although the approach outlined above will be used in this research, ...
- 5 Because little research has so far been done on the new drug, ...
- 6 The report recommends diverting more state funding from roads to railways, but...
- 102.2 Complete each example using a quotation from the box. Begin your answer with an It-clause and a reporting verb in the passive. Choose from the reporting verbs marked \* in the box in section A opposite. A & B
  - "Aromatherapy can cure recurring headaches." (Majid, 2016)
  - "Domestic technology has decreased the amount of time spent on housework." (Hill, 2010)
  - "Research output can be measured by number of papers published". (Hirsch, 2018)
  - "Voting in general elections should be made compulsory." (Chen, 2005)
  - "Plants have intelligence." (Glass, 2018)

1	It has been proposed that voting in general elections should be made compulsory
•	(Chen, 2005). There would, however, be considerable public opposition to this move.
2	,,,,,,,,,
	form thoughts.
3	, but as Burr (2014) points out, this is true only in the most
	developed countries.
4	. Nevertheless, there is little evidence that the treatment works in
	the long term.
5	. However, this does not take into account co-authorship of
	research articles.

Use it-clauses and the phrases in the box below to complete the extract from an academic presentation, following the pattern in section C opposite.

U	ındoubtedly true	sometimes maintained	important to recognise
	tha	at a top-down management style	is preferable because it allows
clear goals	and expectations to be	set	that in this type of organization,
employees			decision-making process. However, rassroot level in companies rather th
at manager		se many mino vacions scare at the g	assi oce tevet in companies radice en

#### Reflection

Suggest ways in which the it-clauses you have written might be made less impersonal.

# Linking ideas in academic writing and speech

Sentence connectors, conjunctions and pro-forms are used to link ideas in academic writing and speaking in a number of ways (see also Unit 87) -

- Sentence connectors link sentences. There is usually a full stop at the end of the first sentence, and the sentence connector often comes at the start of the next.
- Conjunctions link clauses within sentences. A comma often separates the clauses. Most conjunctions come at the start of their clause.
- Pro-forms are general words or phrases that refer back to more specific words or phrases, avoiding repetition.
  - In sum<sup>1</sup>, temperature is an important factor determining the shelf life of a food product in that<sup>2</sup> variations in temperature can result in the growth of microorganisms which can cause the product to spoil. Furthermore<sup>3</sup>, incorrect freezing can damage the proteins of meat or other products. Given that<sup>4</sup> the maintenance of the correct temperature over a long period is essential, it is necessary to use time temperature indicators. Studies have shown that these indicators reduce food waste considerably. **As well**<sup>5</sup>, they reduce the number of foodborne illnesses. 1 sentence connector (introducing a short summary of the main points); 2 conjunction (giving a reason); 3 sentence
    - connector (adding information); 4 conjunction (meaning 'when these things are considered'); 5 sentence connector (adding information).
  - Sociology researchers use two types of information: primary data and secondary data. The former<sup>1</sup> is collected by the researcher themselves, whereas<sup>2</sup> secondary data already exists in some form, such as documents or previous research. Collecting primary data can be time-consuming and expensive, and as such<sup>3</sup>, undergraduate researchers often prefer to use secondary data.
    - <sup>1</sup> pro-form (meaning 'the first thing mentioned'); <sup>2</sup> conjunction (contrasting two facts); <sup>3</sup> pro-form (meaning 'because something is as it was previously described')

В

Some sentence connectors, conjunctions and pro-forms used in writing have equivalent words or phrases which are more common in speaking. Compare these extracts from a spoken presentation with the text in A:

To put it briefly, temperature is an important factor ...

The reason for this is that variations in temperature can result in ...

On top of that, incorrect freezing can damage ...

**Taking into account that** the maintenance of the correct temperature ...

Also, they reduce the number ...

Here are more examples of formal linking words and phrases. Possible informal alternatives are given in brackets, although these will not substitute for the more formal linking word or phrase in every context.

Sentence connectors	in addition, as well (also); first, firstly (first of all) [etc]
Conjunctions	albeit (but); considering, given that, in the light of (bearing in mind that, taking into account that) [etc]
Pro-forms	as follows (in this way); as such (because of this) [etc]

thereby

namely

# **Exercises**

albeit

as such

103.1 Choose appropriate sentence connectors, conjunctions or pro-forms from those in the box to complete these extracts from academic writing. A & B

moreover

given that

1	
1	Their study found that women were excluded by men from decision-making groups such as senior management teams. Moreover, their views tended not to be as highly regarded as those of men.
2	The peace treaty ended the fighting in 1987,temporarily.
	Pollen is one of the most widespread and longest lasting organic materials.
20.000	pollen analysis is the most commonly used technique for investigating past environments.
4	The manufacturing process was simplified,reducing labour costs.
	More than half of patients reported a side-effect of the drug,severe
,	headaches.
6	The children's lack of awareness of what constitutes a good diet was surprising,
O	they had all taken classes in nutrition and cooking.
	they had all taken classes in nutrition and cooking.
C	omplete each sentence with the more appropriate item from the pairs of words and phrase
	ackets. The first sentence in each pair is from an academic text and the second from a spok
	resentation. A & B
•	The research shows that cost of food is a more significant factor than its origin <u>insofar as</u>
1	
2	the general public are concerned. ( <i>where – insofar as</i> )
2	"About 20% of the respondents said they skipped breakfast at least once a week. Also
_	15% of these didn't eat lunch on those days either." (also – further)
3	The photographs were in superb condition, that they were taken over a
133	century ago. (considering – bearing in mind)
4	"The surface temperature of the star Betelgeuse is around 3,500 degrees Kelvin.
	, it's about half the temperature of the Sun." (to put it another way – that is to say )
5	The study has several limitations. , the sample size was relatively small.
	(firstly – first of all )
6	"The financial markets have been hit badly by the effects of the virus, but usually they reboun
_	quickly from
7	The compulsory wearing of seat belts was introduced in 1983, the numb
,	of head injuries in car crashes reduced dramatically. (after that – subsequently)
0	
8	· ·
	The first one shows" (these - the following)
Lo	ook at the linking language in this extract from an academic text, and suggest alternatives t
	ake it sound more like a spoken presentation. B

'Biodiversity' is the abbreviated word for 'biological diversity'. **The latter** term appears to have come into use in the early 1980s, when Bruce Wilcox defined it **as follows**: "the variety of life forms... at all levels of biological systems – molecular, organismic, population species and ecosystem". **Hitherto**, the terms 'species diversity' or 'species richness' were used. So the term 'biological diversity' – **subsequently** 'biodiversity' - is relatively new. **That said**, philosophers and scientists have studied many aspects of biodiversity over hundreds of years. Even Aristotle, working nearly two and a half thousand years ago, studied biodiversity **in that** he looked for similar patterns in organisms so that he could group them together.

#### Reflection:

Look at a piece of academic writing you have done recently. How could you reword parts for a spoken presentation?

Unit **104** 

# Referring to other work and sections in academic writing and speaking

writing and speaking
Referring to other work: as + passive/ past participle In academic writing and speaking we can make references to other people's work using a clause with as + passive (see also Units 22-25):  The first approach should be discarded as it makes wrong predictions about word order, as is argued in Frascarelli and Hinter (2007).  Past usage experience had a major impact on consumer decision behaviour, as has been shown in a number of recent studies.  Note that we don't use it in this type of clause. (not as it is argued by or as it has been shown)  More commonly we use a reduced passive form - as + past participle:  As noted by Kerr (2004) these figures were a significant underestimate.  Both temperature and moisture were important in explaining the abundance of fungi, as demonstrated in previous studies (e.g. Lam, 2002; Rich et al., 2014).
Also: as + argued, described, discussed, illustrated, indicated, mentioned, pointed out, shown, suggested
Using a passive or reduced passive to refer to the work of others often indicates, in an impersonal way, that we agree with them:  The basic communicative goal of scientific research articles, as suggested by Bird (2009), is to convey the results of scientific inquiry.  Using an active verb is more neutral and may be followed either by agreement or disagreement: (see also Unit 102B)  Bird (2009) suggests that the basic communicative goal of scientific research articles is to convey the results of scientific inquiry.
Referring to other parts of a written text: as + past participle
As + past participle is also commonly used by writers to refer to tables and figures in their own texts, and is preferred to more personal forms:  As (is) seen in the following chart, interest rates are lower now than in the last 30 years. (rather than As you see in the following chart)  During her first 32 weeks of talking, Keren acquired 337 words, as shown in Figure 2-2.
Also: demonstrated, depicted, described, discussed, explained, given, illustrated, indicated, outlined
As + past participle is also used to refer to other sections of a text with adverbs such as above:  As discussed above, exploration of the Moon will provide insights into the formation of the Solar System.
Also: earlier, previously; below, later, next; elsewhere (= in another part of the text)
Referring to other parts of a spoken presentation When we refer to other parts of a presentation we are giving, we tend to use time adverbs, not location adverbs:
As I said before, (not As I said above)as I'll come back to later on. (notas I'll come back to below.) Other grammatical structures commonly used in referring backwards and
Other grammatical structures commonly used in referring backwards and forwards in spoken presentations include <b>what-clauses</b> (see also Unit 98) and <b>-ing-clauses</b> (see also Unit 58). Examples are highlighted in these extracts from a presentation:

Coming back to the earliest development of language, it's been estimated that it originated around 40,000 years ago... What I want to go on to next is the development of written language... Language gave people the ability to think and plan, as I pointed out previously... Returning to my point about the development of written language... What

we'll do next week is begin to look at non-verbal communication...



Match a sentence from (i) with a sentence from (ii) and combine them into one sentence beginning As + past participle or As + passive form. (A)

(i)

- 1 The use of neonicotinoid insecticides has led to a decline in bee populations.
- 2 Globalisation is associated with more efficient food production.
- 3 The Moon may be a source of materials for use on Earth.
- 4 Small group learning can reduce motivation.
- 5 The number of people adopting a vegan diet has increased rapidly since 2015.

(ii)

- a This opportunity has been suggested by writers such as Eli (2015) and Koors (2017).
- b This disadvantage was shown in research by Connors (2019).
- c This problem was first identified by Cortez in 1998.
- d This tendency has been noted in many recent studies, including Hale (2020) and Kim (2021).
- e This improvement has been reported in a number of studies (e.g. Manuel, 2015; Reith, 2018).

1 (+ c) As first identified by Cortez (1998), the use of neonicotinoid insecticides has led to a decline in bee populations.

#### Reflection:

Look at an example of your own academic writing. Where you have referred to other work or other parts of your text, have you used an as + past participle or as + passive form? If not, can you express yourself better by using one?

104.2 If necessary, suggest corrections or improvements to these extracts from academic writing and spoken presentations. B & C

- 1 Radioactive decay can be plotted in a linear form, as outlined / Figure 3.
- 2 Many friendships were formed between students on the same course, as you can see in the following table.
- 3 As was noted above, the majority of graduates do not go on to work in the area in which they were trained.
- 4 "It's essential nuclear power is expanded, and I'll be explaining why that is below."
- 5 As I have already explained, institutions like the World Bank are crucial in global governance.
- 6 "As I've indicated elsewhere, most of the teachers involved in online education responded."
- 7 Public health education may be organised at local, community or national level, as it was outlined previously.
- 8 "As I pointed out above, without a brand name a company can't distinguish its products."

Reword the bracketed parts of this presentation, including an as-, -ing- or what-clause in each answer.

- [1] I said earlier that] there are many factors affecting the health of a community, including physical, social and cultural factors. [2 In this talk I plan to] consider physical and social factors, and then in the next one look at cultural factors.
- [3 I have already pointed out that] a community's health is directly influenced by its climate...
- [4 I will now turn to social factors. These arise] from the interaction between individuals and groups in the community. To illustrate, [5 I am going to] show you a short video...
- [6 I will now come back to other social factors. It is clear that] the economy is an important influence on the provision of health care and social services....

1	As I said earlier,	2 What	3 As
4	Turning	5 What	6 Coming

# Academic discussion: lead-in phrases

A

Many lead-in phrases are used to structure academic discussion: to introduce ideas cautiously, challenge ideas, invite opinions, etc. Some of these make use of reporting structures.

Reporting structures to introduce ideas cautiously and challenge ideas

In academic discussion we tend to introduce an idea or opinion cautiously, as it is often just one point of view, not an objective fact. One way to do this is to preface the idea with a reporting clause. For example:

- ☐ I should/ would think that we'll still be using fossil fuels in 20 years time.
- ☐ I shouldn't/ wouldn't think that anyone would object to the decision.

Even more cautiously we can use I should(n't) / would(n't) have thought that:

- ☐ I should/ would have thought that there wouldn't be any danger to animals.Or
- I shouldn't/ wouldn't have thought that there would be any danger to animals.

Note that we avoid using two negatives: (not I wouldn't/ shouldn't have thought there wouldn't be any danger to animals.)

In some contexts we can use the same patterns to politely challenge what another speaker has said:

- A: I'll be targeting 40 to 60 year olds in the experiment.
  - B: Well, I shouldn't have thought the age of the subjects would make any difference. (= I don't think that)

В

#### Reporting structures to invite opinions

One way to invite another speaker to present an idea or opinion or to expand on one already presented is by using a **wh-clause** with certain reporting verbs:

- A: The results show a preference for self-service over personal service in stores.
  - B: Why do you think (that) self-service is so popular?
- A: I'll live stream the lecture to students off campus.
  - B: Where do you intend to position the camera?

Other verbs used in this way include: **anticipate**, **feel**, **imagine**, **reckon**, **recommend**, **suggest**, **suppose** (may be followed by *that*); **consider**, **expect**, **propose**, **want** (usually followed by a *to*-infinitive)

C

#### Other lead-in phrases

Many other lead-in phrases are used to structure academic discussion:

- A: In a way, the Internet has completely changed the way we communicate. (reducing the force of the statement)
  - B: So you mean that it has improved communication? (asking for clarification)
  - A: Not necessarily, no. What I'm saying is that... (clarifying an opinion)

Here are some more examples:

speculating	I'd have thought; I imagine
being direct	To be honest; Frankly,
clarifying	What I mean is (that); I suppose I'm trying to say (that)
inviting an opinion/ asking for confirmation or clarification	So you mean that; So what you're saying is; So you're saying (that)
challenging an idea/ introducing a contrasting point	There/ Then again; I take your point, but; That's not to say; Can I just say
introducing a problem or disadvantage	The (only) thing/ problem/ trouble is; For one thing
giving an opinion with limited evidence	As far as I can see/ tell/ judge

(i)						(ii)			
wo	uld	wouldn't	should	shouldn	't (	think	have tho	ught	
1 A:	I W	ould have	thought	that it	would be	e difficult	to enforce a	a ban on p	olitical d
B:	l agre	e. Very com	iplicated i	ndeed.					
	The c	35 33	s to show t	that the 30	0 to 40 a	ge group	has more b	ack pain th	nan the 5
B:	Í	t	that the op	oposite wa	is more li	ikely.			
		ulty in gett							
		6		2.5					
		1			iculty in	getting v	olunteers.		
		that wasn't	filmer armed and free an elife mental						
							on to proble	m-solving	in group
B:		t	that many	students	would re	act quite	negatively.		
Comi	olete	each sente	nce with	a wh- clai	ise made	e un of a	word or phi	rase from	the box
						and the second s	ossible. 🖪	the state of the s	the box
Но	w	How long	g Wha	at Wr	nen '	Where	Which	Who	Why
3 4 5 6 7		we k peop patio	keep the spole taking ents will ke responsible the semin	this medic this medic now the re le for the f nar? (prop	refrigerate ation she esults of fault in the ose)	ed? (sugg ould avoi their test ne equipn		:e)	
3 4 5 6 7 8 <b>A</b> gro	up o	we k peop pation was hold be the	keep the sp ple taking ents will ki responsibl I the semin he best op	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or	refrigeration shows a sults of fault in the cose of the consideration of	ied? (suggould avoi their test: ne equipn ider)	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (reckc	recommen re) on)	d)
3 4 5 6 7 8 A gro space	up o	we k peop pation was hold be the f students a	eep the sp ple taking ents will k responsible the seminate he best op are discussions the	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing whetl most like	refrigeration she esults of fault in the ose) B? (consi her crew ly lead-in	ized? (suggould avoi their test: ne equipn ider) red or rob n phrase.	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  ootic missio	recommen re) on)	d)
3	up of exp	we k peop pation was hold be the f students a loration. Ch	eep the sp ple taking ents will k responsible the semin he best op are discuss noose the	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (prop otion: A or sing wheth most like	refrigeratication shows a sults of fault in the ose) B? (consider crewly lead-in lake year)	ed? (suggould avoi their test: ne equipn ider) red or rob n phrase.	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko	recommen re) on)	d) take pri
3	up o e exp far a what	we keep pation peop pation was hold be the factor of the f	eep the spole taking ents will ke responsible the seminate the best operare discussions the For one ring is	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like e thing That's not	refrigeration she salts of fault in those) B? (consider crewly lead-into the say to say	ider)  red or rob n phrase.  our point To be I	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  ootic missio	recommend re) on) ns should What I me	d) take prid an is
3	up of e exp far a: what	we keep peop pation was hold be to the featudents a loration. Cheep to you're say to been doing	eep the spole taking ents will ke responsible the seminate best operate discussions for one wing is	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (prop otion: A or sing wheth most like e thing That's not	refrigerate ation shows a sults of fault in the ose) B? (consider crewly lead-in take years to say anis. (1)	ted? (suggould avoi their test: ne equipn ider) red or rob n phrase. Our point	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  potic missio  t honest V	recommend (re) (nn) (ns should (What I me	take pridan is
3	up of exp far as what I've	we keep pation was hold be the feature see typou're say her than rob	eep the spole taking ents will ke responsible the seminate best operate discussions the for one ring is	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (propotion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the	refrigerate ation shows a sults of fault in the ose) B? (consider crewly lead-in the say at to say a think the	ted? (suggould avoid their tests are equipmed or roben phrase.  To be I	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  potic missio  chonest V  Humans ca	recommend (re) (nn) (ns should (What I me	take pridan is
3	up oʻ e exp far a: 've ratl wa	we keep pation was hold hold hold hold hold hold hold hold	seep the spoke taking ents will ke responsible the seminate best operate discussions the for one ring is a some read souther southers never the seep the response the seep the read southers never the seep the se	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the ions, and I er can. Tak	refrigerate cation she cault in the ose) B? (considerate considerate considera	ider)  red or rob n phrase.  our point To be I	gest) d driving? (res? (anticipate nent? (recker  potic missio  chonest V , NASA p Humans can	recommend re) nn should What I me plan to prion	take pridan is
3	up oʻ e exp far a: 've ratl wa	we keep pation was hold her than roby that comp	seep the spoke taking ents will ke responsible the seminate best operate discussions the for one ring is a some read souther southers never the seep the response the seep the read southers never the seep the se	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the ions, and I er can. Tak	refrigerate cation she cault in the ose) B? (considerate considerate considera	ider)  red or rob n phrase.  our point To be I	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  potic missio  chonest V  Humans ca	recommend re) nn should What I me plan to prion	take pridan is
3	up or far as what I've rati wa (2)	we keep peop pation was hold be the select you're say that composite.	deep the spole taking ents will k responsible the seminate discussion of the best operated by	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (prop otion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the ions, and I er can. Tak obotic mis	refrigeration shesults of fault in those) B? (consider crewly lead-in those) I take year to say think that is Apollo is sions car	ed? (suggould avoi their test: ne equipn red or rob n phrase. Our point To be I	gest) d driving? (res? (anticipationent? (recko	ns should  What I me plan to price In respond  way that c	take pridantis  pritize conto proble  crewed m
3	up o' e exp far a: l've rati wa (2) car : Yes	we keep peop pation was hold be to the feature say the feature say the been doing her than roby that composition, I agree. The	eep the spole taking ents will ke responsible the semine the best opered discussion on the for one ring is for the semine	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (propotion: A or sing wheth most like e thing That's not ading on the ions, and I er can. Tak obotic mis	refrigerate cation shows a call in the case) B? (considerate considerate consi	ted? (suggould avoid their test: ne equipmed or robin phrase.  To be I  at's right.  13, for ining on forces of a crees.	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipationent? (recko	ns should  What I me plan to prion respond way that or	take pridan is protize control problem crewed management is son.
3	up of exp far a: l've ratl wa (2) car : Yes (3)	we keep peop pation was hold hold hold hold hold hold hold hold	deep the spele taking ents will ke responsible the seminate the best operated by the best operated by the seminate the sem	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (propotion: A or sing wheth most like e thing That's not ading on the ions, and I er can. Tak obotic mis	refrigerate cation shows a call in the case) B? (considerate considerate consi	ted? (suggould avoid their test: ne equipmed or robin phrase.  To be I  at's right.  13, for ining on forces of a crees.	gest) d driving? (res? (anticipationent? (recko	ns should  What I me plan to prion respond way that or	take pridan is pritize control problem crewed notices.
3	up of experiment and	we keep peop pation was hold be the students a loration. Chest I can see to you're say that composition with the astronauther than rote to the second with the	seep the spole taking ents will ke responsible the seminate best operate discussions the for one ring is fouters never the seminate souters never the semina	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the ions, and I er can. Tak obotic mise many disa	refrigeration shesults of fault in those) B? (consideration) B? (consideration) Brace and the say and	red? (suggiould avoid their testine equipment of the equi	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  potic missio  honest V  Humans cal stance. or years in a  ewed over a I then there'	way that o	take pridan is protize control problem crewed management is son.
4	up of expression and expression are september of the expression and expression are september of the expression are september o	we keep peop pation was hold here to be the total peop peop per total peop peop peop peop peop peop peop peo	deep the spole taking ents will ke responsible the seminate best operated by the best operate	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the ions, and I rer can. Tak obotic mis many disa	refrigeration she salts of fault in those) B? (consideration) B? (consideration) Branch (consideration) I take you to say alts (1)	red? (suggould avoid their testine equipment of the equip	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  potic missio  honest V  Humans cal stance. or years in a  ewed over a I then there'  into space?	way that of the risk t	take pridantise continued in the livership of the liversh
4	up of far as what I've rati wa (2) car : Yes (3) of t (4)	we keep peop pation was hold be the students at loration. Chest I can see to you're say that composite. It agree. The che astronau. (5)	responsible taking tents will ke responsible the seminate discussion of the best operated by	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not eding on the ions, and I er can. Tak obotic mis many disa or much mo	refrigerate cation shows a call in the case) B? (considerate considerate consi	red? (suggoould avoid their testine equipmed or robin phrase.  To be I  13, for ining on formsive, and people of money	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipate nent? (recker  potic missio  thonest V  Humans cal stance. or years in a  ewed over a then there' into space? r – and much	way that or robotic mess the risk to the safer - to	take pridan is pritize control problem is crewed in the liver of the l
As So Ana:	up of expression and a second and a second a sec	we keep peop pation was hold be the students a loration. Chest I can see to you're say that component than roby that component that roby that	ceep the spele taking ents will ke responsible the semine the best operated by the best opera	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the ions, and I er can. Tak obotic mise many disast or much mo	refrigerate cation shows a call in the case) B? (considerate considerate considerate considerate considerate cations can be categories and categories considerate	red? (suggoould avoid their testine equipmed or robin phrase.  To be I  13, for ining on formsive, and people of money	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipat nent? (recko  potic missio  honest V  Humans cal stance. or years in a  ewed over a I then there'  into space?	way that or robotic mess the risk to the safer - to	take pridan is pritize control problem is crewed in the liver of the l
As So Ana:	up o' e exp far a: l've rat! wa (2) car : Yes (3) of t (4) No mis but	we keep pation was hold be to the students at loration. Chest I can see to you're say that composition was her than roby that composition. The astronaution was sisions. (6)	responsible taking ents will ke responsible the semine the best operated discussions and the semine the best operated discussions should be the semine the	this medic now the re le for the f nar? (proportion: A or sing wheth most like thing That's not ading on the ions, and I are can. Tak obotic mis many disa or much mo	refrigerate cation shows a call in the case) B? (considerate considerate consi	red? (suggiould avoid their test: ne equipmed or robin phrase.  To be I  at's right.  13, for ining on formsive, and people of money mission cannot be a single of money missi	gest) d driving? (r s? (anticipate nent? (recker  potic missio  thonest V  Humans cal stance. or years in a  ewed over a then there' into space? r – and much	way that or robotic m sthe risk the safer - to thing a cree	take pridan is pritize of to problem is crewed in the liver of the liver wed mission.

# Glossary

#### action verb

A verb which is used to describe an action. Also called DYNAMIC VERB. Compare STATE VERB.

#### active

In an active clause or active sentence, the grammatical subject is the person or thing that performs the action given in the verb (e.g. Dan wrote the book). Compare PASSIVE.

#### adjective

A word that describes a noun (e.g. an *interesting* book) or a pronoun (e.g. a *red* one). **Gradable adjectives** can be used to say that a person or thing has more or less of this quality (e.g. She's very *happy*), while **non-gradable adjectives** can't (e.g. It's *impossible*. We can't say 'It's very impossible'). **Classifying adjectives** say that something is of a particular type (e.g. *atomic*, *initial*). **Emphasising adjectives** stress how strongly we feel about something (e.g. *complete* nonsense). **Qualitative adjectives** say what qualities a person or thing has (e.g. *big*, *rich*). See also **grading** ADVERBS and **non-grading** ADVERBS.

#### adjective phrase

A group of words where the main word is an adjective (e.g. it's extremely important; it wasn't strong enough).

# adverb

A word that describes or gives more information (when, how, where, etc.) about a verb (e.g. He ran quickly), adjective (e.g. an extremely expensive car), another adverb (e.g. She did it very easily), or phrase (e.g. They live just across the road.). Types of adverb include: adverbs of manner (e.g. slowly, violently) which we use to say how something is done; connecting adverbs (e.g. consequently, similarly); time adverbs (e.g. tomorrow, already); place adverbs (e.g. upstairs, outside); direction adverbs (e.g. backwards, through); comment adverbs (e.g. apparently, personally) which we use to make a comment on what we are saying; viewpoint adverbs (e.g. financially, politically) which we use to make clear from what point of view we are speaking; adverbs of indefinite frequency (e.g. always, never); degree adverbs (e.g. completely, quite) which give information about the extent or degree of something; focus adverbs (e.g. just, even) which we use to focus on a particular word or phrase. Grading adverbs (e.g. extremely, very) are used with gradable ADJECTIVES. Non-grading adverbs (e.g. completely, mainly) are used with non-gradable ADJECTIVES.

#### adverbia

A word or group of words that says when, how, where, etc. something happens. They may consist of an adverb (e.g. *quietly*), a prepositional phrase (e.g. *through the door*), a noun phrase (e.g. *next week*), or an adverbial clause (e.g. *after she left*).

#### adverbial clause

A type of **subordinate** CLAUSE that says when, how, where, etc. something happens (e.g. *Before I went to school this morning*, I did my homework).

#### affirmative sentence

A statement (i.e. not a question) that is positive, not negative.

#### agent

The person or thing that performs the action described in a verb. Usually it is the subject in an active clause and comes after 'by ...' in a passive clause.

#### article

The word *the* is the **definite article** and the word *a* (*an* before vowels) is the **indefinite article**. When there is no article before a noun we refer to this as the **zero article**.

#### auxiliary verbs

The verbs *be*, *have* and *do* when they are used with a main verb to form questions, negatives, tenses, passive forms, etc. MODAL VERBS are also auxiliary verbs.

#### clause

A group of words that contains a verb. A clause may be a complete sentence or a part of a sentence. A **main clause** can exist as a separate sentence, while a **subordinate clause** cannot (e.g. *If I see Matt at work* [= subordinate clause], *I'll invite him over this evening* [= main clause]). Types of clause include: **to-infinitive clause** (e.g. *To become a doctor* takes years of study); **present participle(-ing) clause** (e.g. *Feeling hungry*, I went into the kitchen); **past participle (-ed) clause** (e.g. *Built during the 1970s*, the building is now in

Glossary Appendix 1

need of repair); **being + past participle (-ed) clause (**e.g. *Being unemployed*, Tom had a lot of time on his hands); **having + past participle (-ed) clause (**e.g. *Having seen the doctor*, I went straight home). See also CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, RELATIVE CLAUSE.

#### cleft sentence

A sentence in which focus is given to either the subject or object using a pattern beginning 'It ...' (e.g. It was my brother who lent me the money) or 'What ...' (e.g. What you need is a holiday).

#### Comment adverbs

Adverbs which show our attitude to what is said. Also called STANCE ADVERBS. Compare VIEWPOINT ADVERBS.

#### complement

A word or phrase that follows a LINKING VERB and describes the SUBJECT (e.g. Linda is a *lawyer*) or OBJECT (e.g. I found the food *inedible*). A complement may also be an ADVERBIAL OF PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE which completes the meaning of a verb. Some verbs need a complement (e.g. The disease originated *in Britain*; 'The disease originated' would be incomplete).

#### Complex noun phrase

A group of words relating to a main NOUN, allowing a lot of information to be included within one sentence element. Complex noun phrases can make up substantial parts of academic texts as subjects, objects or complements.

#### compound

A **compound noun** consists of two or more words together used as a noun (e.g. a *language school*). A **compound adjective** consists of two or more words together used as an adjective (e.g. They were *well-behaved*).

#### conditional

A **conditional clause** usually starts with 'if', but other patterns are possible (e.g. *Had it not rained*, Spain would have won). A **conditional sentence** contains a conditional clause. A distinction can be made between **real conditionals**, which suggest that the situation is or was true, or may have been or may become true (e.g. If she makes a promise, she keeps it) and **unreal conditionals**, which suggest that the situation is imaginary or untrue (e.g. If you had asked me, I would have helped).

#### conjunction

A word such as *and*, *but*, *if*, *while*, *after*, *because* which connects words, phrases, or clauses in a sentence. A kind of LINKING WORD. Compare SENTENCE CONNECTOR.

#### continuous

A tense formed with -ING. Also called PROGRESSIVE

#### copular verb

Also called LINKING VERB

#### countable

A **countable noun** can be both singular and plural (e.g. *cup / cups*). An **uncountable noun** doesn't have a plural form (e.g. *electricity*, but not 'electricities').

#### determiner

A word that goes in front of a noun to identify what the noun refers to (e.g. *this, some, the, a / an, each, all, my*). **Possessive determiners** (also called **possessive adjectives**) are words such as *my, your* and *their*. See also QUANTIFIER.

#### direct speech

Speech that is written using the exact words of the speaker, without any changes. Compare REPORTED SPEECH.

#### dynamic verb

See ACTION VERB

#### extreme adjectives

See non-gradable adjectives. Also called limit adjectives, and ungradable adjectives

#### gradable adjectives

Adjectives which refer to qualities a person or thing can have more or less of. Also called SCALE ADJECTIVES

An -ing form used as the subject or object of a clause, like a noun. Compare PARTICIPLE.

#### imperative

An **imperative clause** uses the **bare** INFINITIVE form of a verb for such things as giving orders and making suggestions (e.g. *Go to bed!*).

#### Glossary

#### indirect speech

Also called REPORTED SPEECH.

#### infinitive

The form of a verb that usually goes after 'to'. The form can be either the **to-infinitive** (e.g. to sing, to eat) or the **bare infinitive** (e.g. sing, eat).

#### -ing form

An -ing form can be a PARTICIPLE or a GERUND.

#### intransitive verb

A verb that doesn't take an object (e.g. She smiled). Compare TRANSITIVE VERB.

#### inversion

Changing the usual word order so that the verb comes before the subject (e.g. Up went the balloon).

#### limit adjectives

See NON-GRADABLE ADJECTIVES. Also called EXTREME ADJECTIVES, and UNGRADABLE ADJECTIVES

#### linking verb

A verb (e.g. be, become, appear) that connects a subject with its complement. Also called copular verb.

#### linking word

See conjunction and sentence connector.

#### modal verbs

A group of verbs (can, could, may, might, must, ought to, shall, should, will, would) that give information about such things as possibility, necessity, and obligation. **Semi-modal verbs** (used to, need, dare, had better, have (got) to, be able to) have similar meanings to modal verbs.

#### multi-word verb

A verb with two or more parts. A multi-word verb can be a phrasalverb or a prepositional verb. See also two-word verbs & three-word verbs.

#### Nominalisation

The use of a noun to convey a meaning usually expressed with a word from another class. This process often results in a COMPLEX NOUN PHRASE.

#### non-affirmative

Referring to a lack of positive, affirmative meaning; for example, in most questions and negatives. However, questions which expect a positive reply are affirmative. The terms 'non-assertive' and 'assertive' are sometimes used for 'non-affirmative' and 'affirmative'.

#### non-gradable adjectives

Adjectives which refer to qualities a person or thing cannot have different degrees of. Also called EXTREME ADJECTIVES, LIMIT ADJECTIVES OF UNGRADABLE ADJECTIVES.

#### noun

A word that refers to a person, place, thing, quality, etc. A **collective noun** refers to a group of people or things (e.g. *audience*, *crowd*, *herd*). See also COUNTABLE NOUN.

#### noun phrase

A group of words where the main word is a noun (e.g. I've been talking to the woman across the road; We spoke to several small children).

#### object

The **direct object** is the person or thing affected by the action of the verb (e.g. I put *the book* [= direct object] back on the shelf). The **indirect object** is the person or thing who benefits from the action or who receives something (e.g. I gave *my mother* [= indirect object] some flowers [= direct object]). Compare Subject.

#### participle

The **present participle** is the **-ing form** of a verb (e.g. walking, singing, eating) used, for example, in continuous tenses. The **past participle** (also called the THIRD FORM) is the **-ed** form of a verb (e.g. walked, sang, eaten) used, for example, in perfect tenses. A **participle adjective** is one formed from the present or past participle of a verb (e.g. the candidates applying, a broken plate). A **participle clause** has a present participle or past participle verb form (e.g. Feeling unwell, he went to bed; The person appointed to the post will have a difficult job to do).

#### particle

An adverb or preposition that follows a verb in MULTI-WORD VERBS, PHRASAL VERBS, TWO-WORD VERBS and THREE-WORD VERBS (e.g. What time did you *get in*? [in = adverb]; I *flicked through* the magazine [through = preposition]; She *looks up to* her mother [up = adverb, to = preposition]).

#### passive

In a passive clause or passive sentence, the grammatical subject is the person or thing that experiences the effect of the action given in the verb (e.g. The book was written by Dan). Compare ACTIVE.

#### performative

A performative is a verb which states the action that is performed when a speaker uses the verb (e.g. I promise I'll do it tomorrow; I apologise).

#### phrasal verb

A verb together with a following adverb and / or a preposition that has a single meaning (e.g. set off, look up to). Compare 'I ran across Tanya at the concert' (= met unexpectedly; a phrasal verb) and 'She ran across the road' (= a prepositional verb). See also Multi-word verb.

#### possessive

The possessive form of a noun ends in either -'s (e.g. Marta's car) or -s' (e.g. the girls' changing room).

#### preposition

A word such as *in*, *on*, or *by* that comes before a noun, pronoun, noun phrase or **-ing** form (e.g. *in* March, *above* my uncle's head, *by* investing).

#### prepositional phrase

A group of words that consists of a PREPOSITION and its **prepositional object** (a noun, pronoun, noun phrase or **-ing** form) (e.g. *behind our house, across it*).

#### prepositional verb

A verb and a following preposition (e.g. believe in, consist of, look after). Compare MULTI\_WORD VERB and PHRASALVERB.

#### Pro-form

A general word or phrase that refers back to more specific words or phrases, avoiding repetition (e.g. the former, the latter, as such).

#### progressive

Also called continuous

#### pronoun

A word that is used instead of a noun or noun phrase. Pronouns include **personal pronouns** (e.g. *I, she, me*), **reflexive pronouns** (e.g. *myself*, *herself*), **possessive pronouns** (e.g. *mine*, *yours*), and RELATIVE PRONOUNS (e.g. *who*, *which*).

#### quantifier

A word or phrase that goes before a noun or noun phrase to talk about the quantity of something (e.g. a little water, many of the women in the room). A kind of DETERMINER.

#### question

A wh-question begins with a WH-WORD (e.g. Where are you going?). A yes / no question is one that can be answered with 'yes' or 'no' (e.g. Do you like coffee?). An echo question repeats part of a previous utterance and asks for a repetition of all or part of it (e.g. 'I'm moving to Alaska.' 'You're moving where?'). We can ask an indirect question by putting it into a subordinate CLAUSE beginning with a WH-WORD or With if or whether (e.g. Can you tell me where you live?).

#### relative clause

A kind of **subordinate** CLAUSE that describes a noun that comes before it in a **main** CLAUSE. A **defining relative clause** says which person or thing is being talked about (e.g. A friend *who lives in London* is getting married). A **non-defining relative clause** gives more information about the noun (e.g. My bicycle, *which l've left outside your house*, is over 20 years old). A **nominal relative clause** begins with a wh-word or *whatever*, *whenever*, etc. and functions as a NOUN PHRASE in a sentence (e.g. *What I need now* is a long, hot bath). A **reduced relative clause** usually begins with an **-ing** (present participle) or **-ed** (past participle) form and has a similar meaning to a relative clause (e.g. I met the people *living in our old house* [= ... who live in our old house], The new rules only affect people *born before* 1960 [= ... who were born before 1960]).

#### relative pronoun

A pronoun such as who, which, or that which is used at the beginning of a relative clause.

#### relative word

Words including RELATIVE PRONOUNS and others (e.g. whereby, why) that can begin a RELATIVE CLAUSE.

#### reported speech

Speech that is reported without using the exact words of the speaker. Sometimes called 'indirect speech'.

#### reporting clause & reported clause

A statement that reports what people think or say is often divided into a **reporting clause** and a **reported clause** (e.g. *She said* [= reporting clause] *that the building was unsafe* [= reported clause]).

#### reporting verb

A verb used in a REPORTING CLAUSE that describes what people say or think (e.g. ask, claim, say).

#### scale adjectives

Also called GRADABLE ADJECTIVES

#### sentence connector

A word or phrase that shows a connection between two separate sentences (e.g. My car isn't very comfortable. *However*, it's very cheap to run.; The house is large and has a beautiful garden. *What's more*, it's very close to the station.). A kind of LINKING WORD. Compare CONJUNCTION.

#### stance adverbs

Also called comment adverbs. Compare viewpoint adverbs.

#### state verb

A verb that is used to describe a state (e.g. believe, think) rather than an action. Also called STATIVE VERB. Compare ACTION VERB.

#### stative verb

Also called STATE VERB

#### subject

The person or thing that does the action of the verb (e.g. Luca went home). Compare OBJECT.

#### subjunctive

The subjunctive is a set of verb forms used mainly in rather formal English to talk about possibilities rather than facts. The **present subjunctive** uses the base form of the verb (e.g. We suggest that she *leave* immediately) and the **past subjunctive** uses were (e.g. If I were you, I'd go home now).

#### third form

See PARTICIPLE

#### transitive verb

A verb that takes an object (e.g. She was holding a bunch of flowers). Compare INTRANSITIVE VERB.

#### two-word verbs & three-word verbs

Verbs that are commonly used with a particular PARTICLE (adverb or preposition) are referred to here as **two-word verbs** (e.g. She *looked after* her elderly parents). Verbs that are commonly used with two particular particles (adverb + preposition) are referred to here as **three-word verbs** (e.g. He *looked up to* his older brothers). See also MULTI\_WORD VERB, PREPOSITIONAL VERB and PHRASALVERB.

#### Ungradable adjectives

See NON-GRADABLE ADJECTIVES. Also called EXTREME and LIMIT ADJECTIVES

#### verb

A **finite verb** has a tense (e.g. She *waited*; She *is waiting* for you). **Non-finite** verb forms are INFINITIVE (e.g. He came *to see* me) and PARTICIPLE forms (e.g. *Shouting* loudly, I was able to make myself heard; *Built* in 2011, the tower is still the tallest construction in Europe).

#### viewpoint adverbs

Adverbs which make it clear what features of something we are talking about. Compare comment adverbs and stance adverbs

#### verb phrase

A group of words consisting of one or more verbs (e.g. gives, is giving, has been giving).

#### wh-words

A group of words (who, whom, whose, where, when, why, how) that are used in wh-questions.

# Grammar reminder

The *Grammar reminder* summarises basic information about some important areas of grammar. References within the main units point you to the sections of the *Grammar reminder* that are relevant to those units. Read these sections to refresh your understanding before you start work on the advanced grammar points in the unit.

Ten	ses	→ Units 1–8
Presi A1	ent	'Who are you phoning?' 'I'm trying to get through to Misaki.'  We use the present continuous to talk about particular events or activities that have begun but have not ended at the time of speaking. The event or activity is in progress at the present time, but not necessarily at the moment of speaking.  She's doing voluntary work with young children until she starts her university course.  We use the present continuous to suggest that an event or activity is or may be temporary.  (For the present continuous for the future, see B7 & Unit 10.)
Pres	ent :	simple (→ Units 1, 2 & 8)
А3	0	Trees <i>grow</i> more quickly in summer than in winter.  We use the present simple with verbs describing states or situations that are always true or continue indefinitely.
A4	0	This cake <i>tastes</i> wonderful. Where did you buy it?  We use the present simple with states or situations (thoughts, feelings) that exist at the present moment.
		Verbs describing states include *agree, appreciate, attract, *desire, *doubt, expect, hate, hope, like, love, *prefer, *regret (to do with emotions, attitudes, and preferences); anticipate, assume, *believe, consider, expect, feel, find, imagine, *know, realise, think, understand (mental states); ache, hear, *notice, see, *smell, sound, *taste (senses and perception); *belong to, *consist of, *constitute, *contain, cost, *differ from, have, look, *mean, measure, *own, *possess, *resemble, *seem, weigh (to do with 'being', 'having', etc.).
A5	0	The verbs marked * are rarely used with continuous tenses (but can be if we mean actions rather than states).  Do you go to Turkey every year for your holidays?  We use the present simple to talk about habits or regular events or actions. (For the present simple for the future, see B6 & Unit 10.)
Past	sim	ple (→ Units 3, 4, 5 & 8)
A6 A7	00	Aisha <i>left</i> a few minutes ago.  Mikhail <i>continued</i> the course even though it was proving very difficult.  We use the past simple to refer to a completed action or event in the past or to talk about situations that existed over a period of time in the past, but not now. We can either say when something happened, using a time adverbial (e.g. <i>a few minutes ago</i> : A6), or assume that the listener or reader already knows when it happened or can understand this from the context (A7).
A8	0	I saw my grandparents every week as a child.  We use the past simple to talk about repeated past actions.  (For the past simple in conditionals, see M12 & M13 and Unit 83.)
Pres	ent	perfect (→ Units 3, 6 & 8)
A9 A10 A11	000	We can't have a meeting, because so few people <i>have shown</i> any interest.  My ceiling <i>has fallen</i> in and the kitchen is flooded. Come quickly!  We <i>have belonged</i> to the tennis club since we moved here.

### Grammar reminder

A12	next Olympics.  We use the present perfect to talk ab kind of connection between what hap are interested in the way something to situation that exists now (A9). However the action happened recently with a second control of the second control	out a past action, event or state, when there is some opened in the past, and the present time. Often we that happened in the past affects or is relevant to the ver, the connection with the present may also be that consequence for the present (A10), that it continues repeated event in the past may (or may not) happen
		n, he turned away. Dout a situation ( I was looking at him) that started he turned away) and was still in progress at that
Past p A14 A15	rfect (→ Units 5, 7 & 8)  When I went into the bathroom, I for By 10 o'clock most people had gone h	nome. Ta past event that took place before another past icular time in the past (A15).
Preser A16	already take one or two steps unaided Your eyes are red – have you been cry We use the present perfect continuous	Samuel <i>has been learning</i> to walk again. He can d.
Past p A18		I knew it was exactly what I had been looking for. talk about a situation or activity that was in progress point in time.
The f	ture	→ Units 9–14
B1 B2	say that we think something is likely I'll make one of my special desserts for I've asked her to join us this evening, We use will (or 'll) when we talk about	or dinner, if you like. but she won't. ut willingness to do something in the future (e.g. in orders) and will not (or won't) when we talk about
Po goi		ruture (e.g. retuctance, rerusat (64)).
B5		decision made some time before we report it. <b>Going</b> en English (where it is often pronounced /gənə/) and

В

### Present simple for the future (→ Unit 10) **B6** The next train to Dublin leaves at 3.45. (station announcement) We use the present simple to talk about future events that are part of some official arrangement such as a timetable or programme. A time expression is usually used with the present simple for the future (... at 3.45) unless the time referred to is already clear from the context. Present continuous for the future (→ Unit 10) We're having a party next Saturday. Can you come? We use the present continuous to talk about future activities and events that are intended or have already been arranged. Usually a personal pronoun is used (We ...) and a future time is mentioned (... next Saturday) or already understood. Future continuous (→ Unit 11) After the operation you won't be doing any sport for a while. We use the future continuous to talk about an activity or event happening at a particular time or over a particular period in the future. We usually mention the future time (After the operation ...). Modals and semi-modals → Units 15–20 The modal verbs are: will, would, can, could, may, might, shall, should, must Modal verbs have meanings relating to ideas such as possibility, likelihood, prediction, necessity, permission and obligation. They do not have to-infinitive, -s, -ing or past participle forms. They are often followed by the bare infinitive of another verb (e.g. She might qo) but can also be used on their own (e.g. Yes, I can). They cannot be followed directly by a to-infinitive, an -ing form, a past participle, or another modal verb. In questions they come before the subject (e.g. Could you help?) and before not in negatives (e.g. He won't [= will not] help). The semi-modals are: ought to, used to, need, dare, had better, have (got) to, be able to These have meanings like modal verbs but not the same formal features: for example, some can be marked for tense (e.g. have / had [qot] to); some have non-modal uses (e.g. She needs a rest). Can, could and be able to (→ Unit 15) C1 A polyglot is someone who can speak several different languages. C2 Anita could speak three languages before she was six. **C3** Olivia couldn't swim until she was ten. When we say that someone or something has or doesn't have the ability to do something, we use can('t) (for the present; C1) or could(n't) (for the past; C2, C3).

Will v	would and used to (→ Unit 16)
C8	<ul> <li>Will / Won't you have another biscuit? ('Won't you?' is a very polite and rather formal offer)</li> </ul>
C9	Luka wants to borrow the car.' 'He <i>will not</i> .' (a firm refusal)
CIU	You will now put your pens down and pay attention. (a firm instruction)
	We use <b>will</b> and <b>will not</b> ( <b>won't</b> ) to talk about (un)willingness (see B3–4) and also to make
1200	offers (C8), requests, refusals (C9), and to give instructions (C10).
C11	You should apply for the job. You <i>would</i> have a good chance of getting it.
	We can use would to make a prediction about an imaginary situation; that is, about
	something that may or may not happen (see also M13).
C12	○ Would you like me to get you some water?
	We can use Would you like when we make an offer, but not 'Will you like'. In requests,
	too, we can say I would like, but not 'I will like'. We can use should (with I or we)
	instead of <b>would</b> in requests like this, but this is formal.
C13	○ We would / used to lend him money when he was unemployed.
C14	I used to live in a flat in Paris.
C14	
	To talk about things that happened repeatedly in the past, but don't happen now, we can
	use <b>would</b> or <b>used to + infinitive</b> (C13). <b>Used to</b> is more common in informal English. We
	can use <b>used to</b> but not <b>would</b> to talk about permanent past states (C14). Note how we
	normally make questions and negatives with <b>use to</b> in spoken English: 'Did your children
	use to sleep well when they were babies?'; 'I didn't use to like visiting the dentist when I was
	young.' Many people avoid using <b>used to</b> in questions and negatives without <b>do</b> ('Used you
	to?', 'I usedn't to') and in question tags (, usedn't you?) because it sounds very formal
	and old-fashioned.
May	might, can and could (→ Units 15 & 17)
	<ul> <li>If the drought goes on much longer, there may / might / could be a hosepipe ban before the</li> </ul>
CIS	end of the month.
CAC	
C16	Her parents may / might / could have influenced her decision to resign.
	In affirmative sentences (that is, sentences which are not questions or negatives) we use
	may, might, or could with a similar meaning to say that there is a possibility of something
	happening or being true (C15). Can is not used in this way. We sometimes prefer could
	to show that we are giving an opinion about which we are unsure. We use may / might /
	could + have + past participle to say that it is possible that something happened in the
	past (C16).
C17	○ 'While we're in Moscow shall we go and see Dariya?' 'But it's been nearly 20 years since we
	last saw her. She may not / might not remember us.'
C18	☐ I definitely saw her go out, so she <i>can't / couldn't</i> be at home.
	In negative sentences, including sentences with words like only, hardly, or never, we use
	may not or might not to say it is possible that something is not true (C17), and can't or
	<b>couldn't</b> to say that it is not possible that something is true (C18).
C19	Coats may be left in the cloakroom.
CIS	May (not 'might') is used in formal contexts to say that something is allowed. May
	<b>not</b> is used to say that things are not allowed (e.g. Calculators <i>may not</i> be used in the
	examination.).
Must	and have (got) to (→ Unit 18)
C20	○ That's really good news. I <i>must</i> tell Marco straight away.
C21	Can we meet on Thursday morning?' 'Sorry, no. I have to go to the dentist at eleven.'
	When we say that it is necessary to do something, we use <b>must</b> or <b>have</b> ( <b>got</b> ) <b>to</b> .
	Sometimes it doesn't matter which we use, although <b>have got to</b> is less formal than either
	must or have to and is particularly common in spoken English. However, we use must
	when we want to indicate that the <i>speaker</i> decides that something is necessary (C20)
	and we use <b>have</b> (got) to to suggest that someone else or some outside circumstances or
	authority makes something necessary (C21).

C22	0	She was bruised quite badly in the accident. It <i>must</i> hurt a lot.  We normally use <b>must</b> , not <b>have</b> ( <b>got</b> ) <b>to</b> , when we conclude that something (has) happened or that something is true.				
C23	0	'I'm seeing Dr Evans next week.' 'That can't be right. He's on holiday then.' When we give a negative conclusion we rarely use <b>must not</b> or <b>have (got) to</b> . Instead, we use <b>can't (cannot)</b> or <b>couldn't</b> .				
C24	0	When my father went to school he had to say that something was necessary in				
Nee C25 C26	Ö	t), don't have to and mustn't (→ Un He didn't cook the meal himself so you r offended. You mustn't put anything on the shelves	needn't / don't have to eat it all. He won't be			
C27 C28	00	We use <b>needn't</b> (or <b>don't need to</b> ) or <b>do</b> (C25) and <b>mustn't</b> to say that somethin I <i>didn't need to / didn't have to</i> have an in	<b>on't have to</b> to say that something is not necessary g is not allowed (C26).			
		When we say that it was not necessary t	o do something in the past, and it wasn't done, (C27). To show that we think something that was eed not (needn't) have (C28).			
C29 C30 C31 C32	0	obligation (e.g. in giving advice, making to (C29) and the probability of something to the work was supposed to start / should to Walking under a ladder is supposed to be (Be) supposed to can be used instead of	think you should / ought to take a hat. should / ought to be good. It little difference in meaning when we talk about recommendations, or talking about a responsibility, nappening or being true (C30). The started / ought to have started last week. It unlucky. If should / ought to express a less strong sed to report what many people think is true, but			
are s	ve ve umm	rb forms have one of the tenses of the ver	to <b>be</b> and a <b>past participle</b> . Passive verb forms an active and passive sentence allows us to rs. Compare:			
acti	ive	The storm damaged the roof.	passive			
it d	id. Th	tence is about <i>the storm</i> , and says what e subject ( <i>The storm</i> ) is the 'agent' and ct ( <i>the roof</i> ) is the 'done to'.	These sentences are about <i>the roof</i> and say what happened to it (in the first sentence) and what did it (in the second). The subject ( <i>The roof</i> ) is the 'done to'. If it is mentioned, the agent ( <i>the storm</i> ) goes in a prepositional phrase with <i>by</i> after the verb.			
D1	0		rbs) can have a passive form ( was destroyed).  asitive verbs) do not have passive forms (The child			

D

### Grammar reminder

D2 D3	00	However, many verbs can be used at different times with and without objects – that is, they can be both transitive and intransitive. Compare: 'Are they meeting him at the airport?' (transitive) and 'Is he being met at the airport?' (passive); 'When shall we meet?' (intransitive; no passive possible)  I'm really disappointed. I didn't get picked / wasn't picked for the team again.  The house was owned by an elderly couple before I bought it.  In spoken language we often use get + past participle ( didn't get picked) instead of a passive form ( wasn't picked) to talk about actions or events that we see as negative (D2). Note, however, that we can also use it to talk about positive actions and events (e.g. Great news – I got picked for the team again!). We don't normally use get + past participle to describe states (D3).				
Que E1	stic	Dns Basic question forms	→ Units 26–27			
		If a verb phrase includes an auxiliary verb, the auxiliary verb comes before the subject.	<ul><li>Are they leaving soon?</li><li>Where will you stay?</li></ul>			
		If a verb phrase includes more than one auxiliary verb, only the first comes before the subject.	<ul><li>☐ Has she been doing her homework?</li><li>☐ What should we have told Nina?</li></ul>			
		In present and past simple tenses of verbs (apart from <b>be</b> ), we use <b>do</b> or <b>did</b> .	<ul><li>Does he enjoy school?</li><li>Where did you go on holiday?</li></ul>			
		If <b>be</b> is used in a verb phrase without another verb, the form of <b>be</b> comes before the subject.	<ul><li>Are you happy at work?</li><li>Where was Lars today?</li></ul>			
		If we use <b>what</b> , <b>which</b> , <b>who</b> or <b>whose</b> as the subject, we use the same word order as in a statement; i.e. the subject goes before the verb phrase.	<ul><li>What made that noise?</li><li>Who can tell me the answer to question 5?</li></ul>			
E2	0	What happened to your eye?  If we use what, which, who or whose as the su However, note that we can sometimes use do we subject if we want to add emphasis, or to control Do is stressed in spoken English: 'Come on, be how whose with who's (short for either who is or whose with who's control or or whose with who who who whose with who who whose with who who who who who who who who who wh	when what, which, who or whose is the ast with what has been said or implied. nonest – who did tell you?' Don't confuse who has), which are pronounced the same.			
E3 E4	00	I've got orange juice or apple juice. Which would He just turned away when I asked him. What do				
	0	In these questions the <b>wh-word</b> is the object. We prefer <b>which</b> when we are asking about an identified group or range of things or people (E3), and we use <b>what</b> when the possible range of reference is open (E4). Sometimes, however, we can use either <b>which</b> or <b>what</b> with little difference in meaning (e.g. <i>What / Which</i> towns do we go through on the way?).				
E5 E6	0	Haven't you finished your homework yet? Why didn't she pay for the meal?				
E7	0	Who wouldn't like to own an expensive sports of				
		We can use negative <b>yes / no</b> or <b>wh-questions</b> someone, to criticise, or to show that we are su <b>wh-question</b> with an auxiliary verb ( <i>have</i> , <i>did</i> , wask a negative question using a negative statem don't have to leave just yet, <i>do we?</i> ). Negative of giving an opinion (e.g. Shouldn't we offer her a	rprised, etc. We make a negative <b>yes / no</b> or would, etc.) + <b>-n't</b> (E5, E6, E7). We can also nent and a positive 'tag' at the end (e.g. We questions can be used to sound polite when			

Verb complementation: what follows verbs → Units 28-31 F1 He described the attacker to the police. They arrived at the restaurant an hour late. F2 F3 He gave me a biscuit. Some verbs (e.g. describe in F1) are followed Also: arrest, avoid, do, enjoy, find, by an object ... the attacker ...). These are called force, get, grab, hit, like, pull, report, transitive verbs. shock, take, touch, want, warn Some verbs (e.g. arrive in F2) are not usually Also: appear, come, fall, go, happen, followed by an object. These are called matter, sleep, swim, wait intransitive verbs. If a verb can't be followed by an object, it can't be made passive. Some verbs (e.g. *give* in F3) are commonly Also: lend, offer, pay, sell, tell, throw followed by two objects (me and a biscuit in F3).

A good dictionary will list the meanings of verbs and tell you whether each meaning is intransitive, transitive and, if transitive, whether it is followed by one or by two objects.

F4–13 Many verbs can be followed by another verb in the form of a to-infinitive (e.g. refuse to eat), -ing (e.g. avoid working), bare infinitive (e.g. help carry). Note that when to comes after a verb it can be part of a to-infinitive (= to + the base form of a verb; e.g. He wants to go, She hopes to win) or it can be a preposition followed by a noun phrase (e.g. He went to the theatre) or by an -ing form (e.g. He admitted to having a gun). An -ing form often behaves like an object (e.g. I regret leaving).

Here is a summary of common patterns together with examples of verbs that are used in this pattern. Note that many verbs can be used in several different patterns, and that some of the verbs given can be used just with an object, and may also be used intransitively (e.g. He failed to stop, He failed the test, He failed).

Verb + to-infinitive	F4 They won't agree to pay for the damage.  Also: aim, ask, decline, demand, fail, hesitate, hope, hurry, manage, offer, plan, prepare, refuse, want, wish
Verb + -ing	F5 Stevens admitted stealing the wallet.  Also: avoid, consider, delay, deny, detest, dread, envisage, feel like, finish, imagine, miss, recall, resent, risk, suggest
Verb + to-infinitive or -ing (little difference in meaning)	F6 Before we began eating / to eat my father thanked everyone for coming.  Also: cease, continue, start
Verb + to-infinitive or -ing (difference in meaning)	F7 She came hurrying up the path to bring us the news. F8 How did you come to buy the car? Also: go on, mean, regret, remember, stop, try
Verb + object + to- infinitive (= there must be an object)	F9

Verb + (object) + to- infinitive (= there may be an object)	F10 I would hate (her) to give the job up. Also: help, like, love, need, prefer, want, wish
Verb + object + -ing (= there must be an object)	F11 O The police caught him driving without a licence.  Also: discover, feel, find, hear, leave, notice, observe, overhear, see, spot
Verb + (object) + -ing (= there may be an object)	F12
Verb + object + bare infinitive or -ing (sometimes a difference in meaning)	F13 O She felt the mosquito bite / biting her. Also: hear, notice, observe, overhear, see, watch

G Reporting → Units 32–39

When	we	report speech in a different context from the one in which it was originally produced, we
somet	ime	s need to make changes to the original words. Of course, differences between the original
speecl	n co	ntext and the one in which it is reported will influence whether changes are needed and
what t	they	should be. Here are some possible changes:
G1	0	'Dan's arriving later today.' She said that Dan was arriving later that day.
G2	0	'I was sure I'd left it here.'   He said that he was sure he'd left it there / on the table.
G3	0	'I <i>grew these</i> carrots <i>myself</i> .'  He told me that he <i>had grown those</i> carrots <i>himself</i> .
		The tense we choose for a report is one that is appropriate at the time that we are reporting
		what was said or thought. This means that we sometimes use a different tense in the repor
		from the one that was used in the original statement (G1 & G3) and change pronouns,
		references to time and place, and words such as <b>this</b> , <b>that</b> , and <b>these</b> (G1–G3).
G4	0	Georgia told me (that) she would be late for the meeting.
G5		She said (that) she was feeling ill.
G6	0	I said to Ivan (that) he had to work harder.
G7	0	She told me about her holiday in Finland.
		Say and tell are the verbs most commonly used to report statements. We use an object
		after <b>tell</b> ( me, G4), but not after <b>say</b> (G5). Note, however, that we can use <b>to</b> + <b>object</b>
		after say ( to Ivan, G6), but not after tell, and that we can report what topic was talked
	0	about using tell + object + about (G7).
G8	0	'It's a pity you can't come this weekend.'
G9	0	"I'm really hungry. I fancy a cheese sandwich."
		When we quote what people think or what they have said, we put single ('') (G8) or
		double ("") (G9) quotation marks at the beginning and end of a report of their exact
G10	Ha	spoken or written words. This is often referred to as direct speech
G 10	He	re are more examples of direct speech. Note the punctuation used:
	0	'I think we should go to India while we have the opportunity,' argued Oliver.  'Can I make an appointment to see the doctor?' asked Maxim.
	0	'You must be mad!' yelled her brother.
	0	'It tastes horrible,' said Anna, 'but it's supposed to be very good for you.'
	0	'You should go home,' Maria advised. 'You're looking really ill.'
	0	Daniel said, 'Put them all on the top shelf.'
	0	She stood up and shouted to the children: 'It's time to go home!'
G11		'Why did she look at me like that?' wondered Julia.
0.1	0	Perhaps the door is open, thought Omar.
	0	Suddenly she thought: Could they be trying to trick me?
		2222000 2000000

To quote what a person *thinks*, we use the conventions shown in the examples above, or separate the quotation from the reporting clause with a comma (or colon) and leave out quotation marks.

H Nouns → Units 40–43

#### Countable and uncountable nouns

#### H1 The equipment was faulty.

Nouns can be either **countable** or **uncountable**. Countable nouns are those which can have the word **a** / **an** before them or be used in the plural. Uncountable nouns are not used with **a** / **an** or in the plural. Some nouns in English are normally uncountable (like *equipment* in H1), while in many other languages they are countable, e.g. accommodation, advice.

Also: applause, assistance, baggage, camping, cash, chaos, chess, clothing, conduct, courage, cutlery, dancing, dirt, employment, evidence, fun, furniture, harm, health, homework, housing, housework, information, jewellery, leisure, litter, luck, luggage, machinery, money, mud, music, news, nonsense, parking, pay, permission, photography, poetry, pollution, produce, progress, publicity, research, rubbish, safety, scenery, shopping, sightseeing, sunshine, transport, underwear, violence, weather, work

**H2** The company is / are doing a lot of *business* in South America.

Sometimes a noun is used uncountably when we are talking about the whole substance or idea (e.g. *business*), but countably when we are talking about units or different kinds (e.g. *businesses*).

Also: beer, coffee, water; fruit, toothpaste, washing powder; cake, chicken, land, paint, space, stone; abuse, (dis)agreement, difficulty, fear, improvement, language, life, pain, protest, responsibility, success, thought, war

#### Compare:

- Three coffees and a lemonade, please. Brazil is a major producer of coffee.
- Most toothpastes contain colourings. Don't forget to buy some toothpaste.
- The chickens have escaped. I don't eat chicken.
- I have a fear of spiders. He was trembling with fear.

The use of recycled *paper* is saving thousands of trees from being cut down each year. Some nouns (e.g. *paper*) usually have different meanings when they are used countably and uncountably.

Also: competition, glass, grammar, iron, jam, lace, property, room, sight, speech, time, tin, work

#### Compare:

- ☐ I just don't understand grammar. I looked the answer up in a grammar (= a reference book)
- I got held up in a jam (= traffic jam). This jam is really sweet. (Note that 'jams' can also be used to mean types of jam)
- She made a wonderful speech at the wedding.
   His speech has been affected by the illness.

#### Compound nouns (→ Unit 43)

- **H5** A new *golf course | golf-course* is being built outside the town.

A compound noun (e.g. pocket money) is an expression made up of more than one word, which functions as a noun in a sentence. For example, we can use a **noun + noun** combination to say what something is made of, where something is, when something happens, or what someone does.

Examples: rice pudding, a glasshouse, the kitchen cupboard, hill fog, a night flight, a morning call, a language teacher, a window-cleaner

We sometimes make compounds from nouns, which consist of more than two nouns.

Examples: a milk chocolate bar, an air-traffic controller, a dinner-party conversation

Some compound nouns are usually written as one word (e.g. a tablecloth), some as separate words (e.g. waste paper), and others with a hyphen (e.g. a house-sitter). Some compound nouns can be written in more than one of these ways (e.g. a golf course or a golf-course; H5). A good dictionary will tell you how a particular compound noun is usually written.

**H6** O She got some *chewing gum* stuck on her shoe.

-ing + noun compound nouns (the -ing form usually says what purpose the following noun has)	Examples: chewing gum, a living room, drinking water, (a pack of) playing cards, a dressing gown, a turning-point, a working party
noun + -ing compound nouns (usually refer to actions or processes)	Examples: fly-fishing, film-making, sunbathing, risk-taking, life-saving

#### The possessive form of nouns

H7 The *girls'* shoes were covered in mud, so I asked them to take them off before they got into *Leon's* car.

To make the possessive form of nouns in writing – referring to people or groups of people (e.g. *companies*), other living things, places, times, etc. – we add 's ('apostrophe s') to singular nouns and to irregular plurals that don't end in -s (e.g. **Leon's** car; the **college's** administrators; **women's** issues) and add ' (an apostrophe) to regular plurals (e.g. the **girls'** shoes; the **companies'** difficulties). To make the possessive form of names ending in -s pronounced /z/ we can add either ' or 's (e.g. It's Leon **Jones'** [or Leon **Jones's**] new sports car).

- **H8** That old car of Zara's is falling apart.

We can use the pattern **noun** + **of** + **'s** (H8) or a *possessive pronoun* (H9) to talk about something that someone owns, or about a relationship. Note that when we are talking about relationships between people we can also use a noun without **'s** (e.g. an uncle **of** Emil's (or an uncle of Emil)).

H10 We're going to Mona's (house) for the evening.

The noun following a possessive form can be left out when we talk about someone's house. We don't use 'shop' when we talk about, for example, **the newsagent's** / **the chemist's** or **the newsagent** / **the chemist** (but not 'the newsagent's shop' / 'the chemist's shop') where the name of the shop includes the profession of the person who works there (compare 'the sweet shop', but not 'the sweet's shop').

- **H11** David's guitar playing has improved enormously.
- **H12** *O The construction of the office block* was opposed by protestors.

Often we can use the possessive 's or ... of + noun ... with very little difference in meaning. However, in general, we are more likely to use the possessive form of a noun when the noun refers to a particular person or group of people (H11); and when we are talking about time (e.g. next year's holiday prices, rather than the holiday prices of next year). We are more likely to use the ... of + noun ... form with an inanimate noun (H12); when we are talking about a process, or a change over time (e.g. the establishment of the committee, rather than the committee's establishment); and when the noun is a long noun phrase (e.g. She is the sister of someone I used to go to school with. rather than She is someone I used to go to school with's sister.).

Articles, determiners and quantifiers

110

111

112

Peter gave me some advice.

○ Shall I send you some details?

way some is pronounced with its weak form /səm/.

it last week.

→ Units 44-52

Determiners are words such as this, her, and your which determine or specify what a noun or noun phrase refers to. They come before the noun and at the front of the noun phrase. Quantifiers are words such as some, much, and few which identify the quantity of something. Some words can be both determiners and quantifiers (e.g. 'I sent out invitations to a few friends' [few = determiner] and 'A few of my friends came to the party' [few = quantifier]) while some are determiners only (e.g. 'This is my friend Andrew' [my = determiner]). Many determiners and quantifiers can be pronouns, taking the place of a noun phrase (e.g. I've invited all my friends and most are coming [most = pronoun]). Articles (a / an and the) are determiners. They also specify what the noun refers to and come at the beginning of the noun phrase. However, they cannot be quantifiers or pronouns.

1	11 0	Lisa took a cake and some biscuits to the party, but only <i>the</i> biscuits were eaten.
	12	Can you shut the door after you, please? We had a good time on holiday. The beaches were all beautifully clean. Give it to the man wearing the red coat. Look at the moon. It's very bright tonight. We use the with singular, plural or uncountable nouns when we expect the listener or reader to be able to identify the thing or person we are referring to in the following noun. It may be that the thing has already been mentioned (I1); that it is clear from the situation which person or thing we mean (I2); that it is in some other way understandable from the context which thing or person we mean (I3; 'the beaches' = 'the beaches we went to'); that the thing or person is identified in what is said after the noun (I4; 'wearing the red coat'); or that there is only one of a particular thing (I5 and also, for example, the Great Wall of China, the North Pole, the USA, the world).
ı	A / an (- 16 O 17 O	Helen's just bought a house on Wilson Street.  Sydney is a beautiful city.  We use a / an with singular nouns when we don't expect the listener or reader to be able to identify the thing or person we are referring to in the following noun. We often use a / an to introduce a new specific person or thing (I6); or when the noun refers to a class of people or things generally – for example, when we describe someone or something or say what type of thing someone or something is (I7).
1		icle (→ Units 45–47)  [-] Water has got into my camera and damaged it.  There are [-] examples of the present continuous tense on page 32.  We use zero article [-] with uncountable and plural nouns when we talk generally about people or things rather than about specific people or things. We might talk about a whole class of things in a general way (18) or about an indefinite number or amount (19).
:	Some an	Unit 48) d any are used with plural and uncountable nouns, usually when we are talking about ut indefinite or unknown, numbers or quantities of things.

☐ Hasn't some information about the proposal been sent out already? I thought I read about

We generally use some: in affirmative sentences (sentences which are not negatives or questions) (I10); in questions where we expect agreement or the answer 'Yes' (I11); in offers and requests in order to sound positive, expecting the answer 'Yes' (112). If it is used in this

### Grammar reminder

	Some teachers never seem to get bored with being in the classroom.  We use <b>some</b> to talk about particular, but unspecified, people or things with the implication 'some, but not all'. If it is used in this way <b>some</b> is pronounced with its strong form /snm/.
0	I haven't been here for <i>some</i> years.  We use <b>some</b> (pronounced /sʌm/) when we mean quite a large amount of, or a large number of something. Note that we can say 'some years, months, weeks, etc.' or just 'years, months, weeks, etc.' with a similar meaning.
(→ (	Jnit 48)
0	We haven't got any butter left.
0	Do you have any better ideas?
0	Any student could have answered the question.  We generally use <b>any</b> : in sentences with a negative meaning (I15); in questions where we don't necessarily expect agreement or the answer 'Yes' (I16); when we mean 'all (of them), and it's not important which' (I17).
0	If you see any cherries in the shop, can you buy them?
0	Any questions should be sent to the manager.  We commonly use <b>any</b> : in 'if' clauses (I18; note that 'some' is possible, but would seem to expect that you will see cherries); when <b>any</b> means 'if there is / are' (I19; = If there are questions).
one,	someone, etc.
0	Isabella lives somewhere in Denmark.
0	I've never seen <i>anybody</i> that tall before.  The rules for the use of the following words are generally the same as those given in I10–I19
	for some and any: the pronouns someone / anyone, somebody / anybody, something / anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).
	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)
	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.
	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?  Both of us were exhausted after flying to Japan.
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?  Both of us were exhausted after flying to Japan.  I polished each trophy with a soft cloth.
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?  Both of us were exhausted after flying to Japan.
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?  Both of us were exhausted after flying to Japan.  I polished each trophy with a soft cloth.  Is there much orange juice left?  We usually need to put of after quantifiers when there is a possessive form (I22), pronoun (I23) or determiner (I24) before a noun. Note, however, that in informal contexts after both and all we can leave out of before the, these, those (and this or that with all; I25); my, your, her, his, etc.; and mine, yours, etc., but not before them, you, or us (I26) (or it
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I2O), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?  Both of us were exhausted after flying to Japan.  I polished each trophy with a soft cloth.  Is there much orange juice left?  We usually need to put of after quantifiers when there is a possessive form (I22), pronoun (I23) or determiner (I24) before a noun. Note, however, that in informal contexts after both and all we can leave out of before the, these, those (and this or that with all; I25); my, your, her, his, etc.; and mine, yours, etc., but not before them, you, or us (I26) (or it with all). We don't use of after a quantifier immediately before a noun (I27 & 28).  e (of), neither (of), either (→ Unit 49)  There's no train until tomorrow.
of) e	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I20), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?  Both of us were exhausted after flying to Japan.  I polished each trophy with a soft cloth.  Is there much orange juice left?  We usually need to put of after quantifiers when there is a possessive form (I22), pronoun (I23) or determiner (I24) before a noun. Note, however, that in informal contexts after both and all we can leave out of before the, these, those (and this or that with all; I25); my, your, her, his, etc.; and mine, yours, etc., but not before them, you, or us (I26) (or it with all). We don't use of after a quantifier immediately before a noun (I27 & 28).  e (of), neither (of), either (→ Unit 49)  There's no train until tomorrow.  No information was given about how the study was conducted.
none	/ anything, (note that somebody = someone, and anybody = anyone), and the adverbs somewhere / anywhere. For example, some- words are generally used in affirmative sentences (I2O), and any- words are generally used in sentences with a negative meaning (I21).  ers with and without 'of': any (of), some (of), much (of), many (of), both (of), each (of), none (of), few (of), little (of) (→ Units 48–52)  Many of Liam's closest friends are women.  Some of my jewellery is missing.  Have you seen any of these new light bulbs in the shops yet?  Are you going to eat all (of) that cake, or can I finish it?  Both of us were exhausted after flying to Japan.  I polished each trophy with a soft cloth.  Is there much orange juice left?  We usually need to put of after quantifiers when there is a possessive form (I22), pronoun (I23) or determiner (I24) before a noun. Note, however, that in informal contexts after both and all we can leave out of before the, these, those (and this or that with all; I25); my, your, her, his, etc.; and mine, yours, etc., but not before them, you, or us (I26) (or it with all). We don't use of after a quantifier immediately before a noun (I27 & 28).  e (of), neither (of), either (→ Unit 49)  There's no train until tomorrow.
	(→ l

133	0	'How many children have you got?' 'None.' We use the determiner <b>no</b> to mean 'not a' or 'not any' before a singular (I29), uncountable (I30), or plural noun (I31). Before <b>the</b> , <b>my</b> , <b>this</b> , etc. we use the quantifier <b>none</b> ( <b>of</b> ) to mean 'not any' (I32). If it is clear from the context what we mean, we can use the pronoun <b>none</b> (I33).
134	0	None of the furniture has arrived yet.  When we use <b>none of</b> with an uncountable noun the verb must be singular. However, when we use <b>none of</b> with a plural noun the verb can be either singular or plural (e.g. <b>None of</b> the parcels <b>have / has</b> arrived yet), although the singular form is more grammatical.
135	0	Neither of his parents could drive.  We use <b>neither of</b> instead of <b>none of</b> when we are talking about two people or things.
136 137	0	You could catch the 10:05 or the 10:32. <i>Either</i> train gets you there in good time. Has <i>either of</i> them passed their driving test yet?
		When we use <b>either</b> as a determiner (I36), it is followed by a singular countable noun. If this is the subject of the sentence, it is followed by a singular verb. We use <b>either of</b> with plural nouns and pronouns (I37). Note that <b>either</b> can also be used as an adverbial as in 'We can <b>either</b> take the train or go by bus' and 'I had no wish to go, and Lev didn't want to go <b>either</b> '.
Mucl	h (of	f), many (of), a lot of, lots (of) (→ Unit 50)
138	0	There isn't <i>much</i> traffic along the street where I live.
139	0	Will you be taking <i>many</i> suitcases on the trip?
140 141 142	000	Much and many are used to talk about quantities and amounts. Much is used with uncountable nouns (138) and many with plural nouns (139). Before the, my, this, etc. we use much of / many of. Much of can also be used with a singular countable noun to mean 'a large part of' (e.g. Much of the national park was destroyed in the fire.). We can use much and many without a noun if the meaning is clear (e.g. Can you get some sugar when you go shopping? There isn't much left.). Much and many are often used after as, how, so, and too (e.g. I'd say there were twice as many women at the meeting as men.). She didn't show much interest in what I said.  Mariam offered me a lot of money for the car.  Many of my relatives live around Auckland.  Much (of) and many (of) are used in negative sentences to emphasise that we are talking about small (or smaller than expected) quantities or amounts (140) and in questions to ask about quantities or amounts (e.g. Have you got much homework to do?). In affirmative
		sentences we often use a lot of, lots of or plenty of rather than much (of) and many to talk about large amounts and quantities, particularly in conversation and informal writing (I41). However, many of is common in affirmative sentences in both formal and informal contexts (I42).
All (d	of) (	→ Unit 51)
143	Ó	There is heating in all (of) the holiday cottages.  We use all or all of when we are talking about the total number of things or people in a
		group, or the total amount of something. In informal contexts we can leave out <b>of</b> .
144	0	Everyone was waiting to hear the results.  In modern English we don't use <b>all</b> without a noun to mean 'everyone' or 'everything'.  However, <b>all</b> can mean 'everything' when it is followed by a relative clause (e.g. I don't agree with all that he said. (= everything that he said)). We can also use <b>all</b> without a noun to mean 'the only thing' (e.g. All she wants to do is help.).
	/ev	very (→ Unit 51)
145	0	Every newspaper had the same front page story.
146	U	Following the flood, every building in the area needs major repair work.  We can use <b>each</b> and <b>every</b> with singular countable nouns (145), and <b>each of</b> with plural nouns to mean all things or people in a group of two or more ( <b>each (of)</b> ) or three or more

#### Grammar reminder

(every). We use a singular verb (... needs ...) after each (of) and every (146). However, when each follows the noun or pronoun it refers to, the noun / pronoun and verb are plural (e.g. Every student is tested twice a year. They are each given a hundred questions to do.).

- 148 O There is *little* evidence to support his claim.

We use (a) few (of) with plural countable nouns (I47) and (a) little (of) with uncountable nouns (I48).

- 149 There's a lot *less* water in the lake than last year.
- 150 The holiday cost *less* than I thought it would.

We use less (of) with uncountable nouns (149) or in a general sense (150).

- 151 O I've got a few close friends that I meet regularly.
- 152 He has few close friends and often feels lonely.

We often use **a few** and **a little** in a 'positive' way (I51); for example, to suggest that a small amount or quantity is enough, or to suggest that it is more than we would expect. We often use **few** and **little** in a 'negative' way (I52); for example, to suggest that the amount or quantity is not enough, or is surprisingly low. Compare 'A few of her songs were popular and she was very well known' (= 'positive') and 'Few of her songs were very popular and eventually she gave up her musical career' (= 'negative'). This use of **few** and **little** is often rather formal.

# Relative clauses and other types of clause

→ Units 53-59

Relative clauses have a similar function to adjectives in that they give more information about someone or something referred to in a main clause. Participle clauses (-ing and -ed clauses) can be used like relative clauses, but can also have an adverbial function, giving information about time, cause, etc.

## Relative clauses (→ Units 53-55)

- J2 My mother, who is in her seventies, enjoys hill walking.

**Defining relative clauses** (e.g. ... that was driving past; J1) are used to specify which person or thing we mean, or which type of person or thing we mean. Note that we don't put a comma between the noun and a defining relative clause.

**Non-defining relative clauses** (e.g. ..., who is in her seventies, ...; J2) are used to add extra information about a noun, but this information is not necessary to explain which person or thing we mean. We don't use them often in everyday speech, but we do use them frequently in written English. Note that we often put a comma before and after a non-defining relative clause.

- J3 The house, which is to the north of the road, is owned by a rock star.
  - After a relative clause, we don't repeat the subject with a pronoun; so, for example, we wouldn't say 'The house which is to the north of the road it is owned by a rock star'. However, this is sometimes found in informal speech; for example, 'A friend of mine who is a solicitor she helped me.'

When we use a defining relative clause, the relative pronoun can be either the subject or the object of the relative clause. When it is the *subject* the word order is subject + verb + object (J4). When the relative pronoun is the *object* the word order is object + subject + verb (J5).

## -ing clauses (= present participle clauses) (→ Units 58 & 59)

- J6 OGlancing over his shoulder, he could see the dog chasing him.
- J7 Pushing her way through the crowds, she just managed to get on the bus as it pulled away.

J8	0	'Wait a minute,' said Amy, running through the door.  We can use an -ing clause to talk about something that takes place at the same time as (J6) or just before (J7) an action in the main clause. We often use an -ing clause in written narrative after quoted speech, when we want to say what someone was doing while they were talking (J8).  Note that the understood subject of -ing and -ed (see J10) clauses should be the same as the subject of the main clause. For example, in J6, 'he' is the unstated subject of 'Glancing over his shoulder'.  Knowing exactly what I wanted, I didn't spend much time shopping.  -ing clauses can be used to talk about reasons and results. This sentence has a similar meaning to 'Because I knew exactly what I wanted, I didn't spend much time shopping'.		
-ed c	laus	ses (= past participle clauses) (→ Units 58 & 59)		
J10	0	Annoyed by the boys' behaviour, she complained to the headteacher.  We can use an <b>-ed</b> clause to talk about something that happened before an action in the main clause. Often the event in the <b>-ed</b> clause causes the event in the main clause.		
Pro	nou	ns, substitution and leaving out words → Units 60–65		
Reflexive pronouns (→ Unit 60)  K1				
K2	0	<b>reflexive pronoun</b> as the object of a sentence rather than a personal pronoun. The singular forms of reflexive pronouns are <b>myself</b> , <b>yourself</b> , <b>herself</b> , <b>himself</b> , <b>itself</b> ; the plural forms are <b>ourselves</b> , <b>yourselves</b> , <b>themselves</b> .  We phoned the plumber and he came <i>himself</i> .		
K3	0	My sister drew the picture herself.		
K4				
Each	oth	er / one another		
<ul> <li>K5</li></ul>				
		Also: attract, complement, face, help, repel		
		After other verbs such as <b>meet</b> (K6), we can use <b>each other</b> or <b>one another</b> , but this may be omitted when the subject is plural or has the form ' and'.		
		Also: embrace, fight, kiss, marry		
K7	0	The scheme allows students from many countries to communicate with each other / with one another.		
<b>K8</b>		We looked at each other / one another and started to laugh. With some verbs (e.g. communicate) we have to use a preposition, often with, before each		
		Also: agree, coincide, collaborate, compete (against), contrast, co-operate, disagree, joke, look at, quarrel, talk to / with		
К9	0	The two children <i>each</i> blamed the <i>other</i> for breaking the window. For emphasis we can separate <b>each</b> and <b>other</b> . This sentence is more emphatic than 'The two children blamed each other'.		

## Substitution (→ Units 61–63) **K10** • I had a racing bike when I was young, and so did my brother. (So do I.) K11 K12 \( \text{ 'I didn't think much of the restaurant.' 'Neither did I.'} \) We can use so + auxiliary verb + subject to say that a second person does the same things as the person already mentioned (K10 & K11). The corresponding negative form uses neither (K12), nor ('Nor did I'), or not ... either ('I didn't either'). We often use this to avoid repetition (e.g. in K12 we use 'Neither did I' rather than 'I didn't think much of the restaurant either'). Adjectives and adverbs → Units 66-78 Gradable and non-gradable adjectives (→ Units 67–68) They live in a very large house. L<sub>2</sub> Our teacher gave us an absolutely *impossible* problem to solve. Most adjectives describe qualities that can be measured or graded, and so can be used in comparative and superlative forms and with words such as 'very' or 'extremely'. These are referred to as gradable adjectives (for example, 'large' in L1). Some adjectives are not

# be used with words such as 'absolutely' or 'completely'. Order of adjectives

I drank some very good Brazilian coffee.

When we use more than one adjective before a noun, there is often a preferred (although not fixed) order for these adjectives depending on what type of adjective they are:

gradable because they refer to qualities that are completely present or completely absent. These non-gradable adjectives (e.g. 'impossible' in L2) are not usually used in comparative and superlative forms or with words such as 'very' or 'extremely'. They can often, however,

opinion + size / physical quality / shape / age + colour + participle adjectives + origin + material + type + purpose + NOUN Examples: an old plastic container = age + material + noun a hard red ball = quality + colour + noun a frightening Korean mask = opinion + origin + noun = shape + purpose (for holding biscuits) + noun a round biscuit tin a small broken plate = size + participle adjective + noun = opinion + type + purpose + noun a useful digital alarm clock

To help you to learn this order, it can be useful to remember that *gradable* adjectives (describing opinion, size, quality, shape, and age) usually precede ungradable adjectives (participle adjective and adjectives describing origin, material, type and purpose).

## Easily confused adjectives

I was surprised to find that the film was quite frightening.

Some adjectives that are used to describe feelings about something or someone else have both an -ed and -ing form. Generally, the -ed form describes how the person feels (e.g. I was surprised ...), and the -ing form gives an evaluation of the thing or other person (e.g. ... the film was quite frightening.)

Also: alarmed - alarming, amazed - amazing, bored - boring, excited - exciting, interested - interesting, pleased - pleasing, tired - tiring, worried - worrying

## Adjectives and adverbs: use (→ Unit 71)

- L5 The staff in the shop always speak *politely* to customers.
- L6 It was strangely quiet as we went into the room. We use an adverb, not an adjective, to say how something happened or was done (L5), or to modify adjectives (L6).

Adje	ctive	es and adverbs: comparative and superlative forms (→ Unit 72)
L7	0	The building was bigger than I'd expected.
L8	0	It was the <i>most ridiculous</i> thing to say.
		We usually add the ending <b>-er</b> to one-syllable adjectives and adverbs to make their
		comparative forms (L7) and <b>-est</b> to make their superlative forms. With three or more
		syllables we usually add more / less and most / least (L8). With two syllables we can
		usually use either.
Quit		
L9		I was <i>quite</i> satisfied with the result.
L10	0	No, you're <i>quite</i> wrong!
L11	0	The food here is <i>quite</i> superb.
LII		Quite has two meanings: to a particular degree, but not 'very' (= 'fairly') (L9); and to a
		large degree, or 'very much' (= 'completely') (L10). When <b>quite</b> is used with non-gradable
		adjectives it means 'completely' (L11).
		adjectives it means completely (LTT).
Δdv	orh	ial clauses and conjunctions → Units 79–87
		ial clause is a type of subordinate clause, linked to a main clause. An adverbial clause adds
		rmation to the main clause about such things as time and conditions. Most adverbial clause
		a conjunction that indicates their link with the main clause. Example conjunctions are
		ore, when and until (time conjunctions); and if and unless (conditional conjunctions).
arter,	ber	ore, when and until (time conjunctions), and it and unless (conditional conjunctions).
Tens	es in	adverbial and main clauses: general
M1	0	Because I'm rather unfit, my doctor has put me on a new exercise regime.
M2	0	I felt unwell when I got up this morning.
		The verb in the adverbial clause is usually the same tense as the verb in the main clause. In
		M1 they are both present (present simple + present perfect), and in M2 they are both past
		(past simple + past simple).
Time	cla	uses: tenses (→ Unit 79)
M3		Have something to eat before you <i>leave</i> .
		To refer to the future after a time conjunction ( before) we use present tenses.
M4	0	As soon as you see / have seen her, come and tell me.
M5	O	She wrote to me after she spoke / had spoken to Carlos.
		To talk about an action in the adverbial clause that is completed before another action
		described in the main clause, we can use either simple or perfect tenses (present as in M4
		or past as in M5), but not <b>will</b> or <b>will have</b> + <b>-ed</b> (the future perfect).
M6		When I saw Kim, I asked her over for dinner.
1410	0	If the actions in the main clause and the adverbial clause take place at the same time, we
N47	0	use simple, not perfect tenses.
M7	0	While the children were swimming, their mother kept a watchful eye on them.
M8	U	I read a book while I waited.
		While is mainly used with continuous tenses (M7) and also with simple tenses (M8).
Cond	litio	nal clauses (→ Units 83–86)

## Real and unreal conditionals (→ Units 83 & 84)

Some conditional clauses beginning with **if** suggest that a situation is *real* – that is, the situation is or was true, or may have been or may become true (e.g. *If anyone phones*, tell them I'll be back at eleven; *If you really want to learn Italian*, you need to spend some time in Italy). Others suggest that a situation is *unreal* – that is, the situation is imaginary or untrue. (e.g. What would you do *if you won the lottery?*; *If you had started out earlier*, you wouldn't have been so late).

Compare: If I go to Berlin, I'll travel by train. (= real conditional) and If I went to Berlin, I'd travel by train. (= unreal conditional). In the first, the speaker is thinking of going to Berlin (it is a real future possibility), but in the second, the speaker is not thinking of doing so. The second might be giving someone advice.

## Grammar reminder

Real	cond	litionals: tenses (→ Units 83 & 84)	
M9	○ I'll give you a lift if it rains.		
M10	☐ If you <i>leave</i> now, you'll be home in two hours.		
M11	0	If water freezes, it expands.	
M12	0	If I made the wrong decision then I apologise.	
		In real conditionals we use a present tense to talk about the future (M9), the present (M10) or unchanging relationships (M11), and past tenses to talk about the past (M12).	
Unre	al co	nditionals: tenses (→ Units 83 & 84)	
M13	0	If my grandfather was / were still alive, he would be a hundred today.	
		To talk about <i>present</i> or <i>future</i> situations in unreal conditionals, we use a past tense (either simple or continuous) in the <b>if-clause</b> and <b>would + bare infinitive</b> in the main clause. In <i>unreal</i> conditionals we don't use the past simple or past perfect in the main clause. In <i>unreal</i> conditionals, we can also use <b>could / might (have)</b> instead of <b>would (have)</b> (e.g. If my grandfather <i>was / were</i> still alive, he <i>might have</i> enjoyed looking after our garden; If I <i>lived</i> out of town, I <i>could</i> take up horse riding.). Note that we sometimes use <b>if were</b> instead of <b>if was</b> (see Unit 85).	
M14	0	If I had known how difficult the job was, I wouldn't have taken it.	
		When we talk about something that might have happened in the past, but didn't, then we	
		use if + past perfect and would have + past participle in the main clause. We can also use	
		might / could have instead of would have in the main clause (e.g. They might have found	
		a better hotel <i>if</i> they <i>had driven</i> a few more kilometres.).	
M15	0	If Bruno wasn't so lazy, he would have passed the exam easily.	
M16	0	If the doctor had been called earlier, Paula would still be alive today.	
M17	0	In some <i>unreal</i> conditionals we use mixed tenses. That is, a past tense in the <b>if-clause</b> and <b>would have + past participle</b> in the main clause (M15), or a past perfect in the <b>if-clause</b> and <b>would + infinitive</b> in the main clause (M16). We can use these patterns to talk about possible consequences if situations were or had been different. We can also use <b>might / could (have)</b> in the main clause instead of <b>would (have)</b> (e.g he <i>could have</i> passed the exam easily.; Paula <i>might</i> still <i>be</i> alive today.). To express disapproval of something not done in the past, we can use <b>could have + past participle</b> : (e.g. You <b>could have let</b> me know you were going to be late.)  If I had a more reliable car, I'd drive to Spain rather than fly.	
	)	In <i>unreal</i> conditional sentences we don't normally use <b>would</b> in an <b>if-clause</b> (but see Unit 84).	
Otho	r 20	lverbial clauses	
		es of <i>adverbial clause</i> give information about <i>place</i> (M18), <i>contrast</i> (M19 and Unit 82), <i>cause</i>	
		(M20 and Unit 80), purpose (M21 and Unit 81), and result (M22 and Unit 81):	
M18	0	Can you put it back where you found it, please?	
M19	0	My sister is blonde, whereas my brother has dark hair.	
M20	0	He wasn't allowed in because he was too young.	
M21	0	We got up early so that we could watch the sunrise.	
M22	0	He played so badly that he was easily beaten.	

# Additional exercises

These additional exercises provide further practice of important areas from the book; each exercise covers grammar from two or more units. References to the relevant exercises are given at the bottom of the main unit exercise pages. The key can be found on p.278.

## List of exercises:

Exercise 1	Present and past; simple and continuous tenses	Units 1, 2 & 4
Exercise 2	Present perfect, past simple, and present perfect continuous	Units 3 & 6
Exercise 3	Past perfect, past perfect continuous, and past simple	Units 5 & 7
Exercise 4	The future	Units 9 & 10
Exercise 5	Modals and semi-modals	Units 15-20
Exercise 6	Passives	Units 22-25
Exercise 7	Verb complementation: what follows verbs	Units 30 & 31
Exercise 8	Reporting	Units 33, 35, 36 & 38
Exercise 9	Nouns	Units 40-43
Exercise 10	Articles, etc.	Units 44-48
Exercise 11	Relative clauses	Units 53-55
Exercise 12	Substitution and leaving out words	Units 62–65
Exercise 13	Position of adjectives, adverbs and adverbial phrases	Units 66, 69, 74 & 75
Exercise 14	Adverbial clauses and conjunctions	Units 79-82 & 87
Exercise 15	Prepositions	Units 92-94
Exercise 16	Inversion	Units 99 & 100

## Present and past; simple and continuous tenses

Units 1, 2 & 4

Complete each pair of sentences with a positive or negative form of the same verb from the box. Use the present simple, present continuous, past simple or past continuous. Give all possible answers. Use  $\checkmark$  to add any words outside the gap.

consider expect own phone prefer promise put read tell weigh

1	а	If I'm not too busy, I <u>promise</u> to help you in the garden later today.
	b	I'll try to get over on Saturday, but I to be there.
2	a	I made a cup of coffee while shethe letter.
	Ь	As soon as the teacher told us to start, Ithrough all the questions quickly.
3	а	They to reach the mountain summit by evening, but the weather was too bad
	b	WeLuisa to visit us in June if she can get a cheap flight.
4	а	Over 90% of the population nowa mobile phone.
	Ь	I grew up in Beijing, where my fathera bookshop.
5	а	Iselling my house and buying a flat.
	Ь	Many peopleher to be the finest violinist in the country at the moment.
6	а	Leo me that you're getting married. Congratulations!
		Apparently Angela is very ill. They me that she never leaves her house now.
7		I the theatre four times this morning, but there was no answer.
		Imy mother twice a day when my father was in hospital.
8	а	He alwayshis feet up on the chairs. It's really unhygienic.
		I find it annoying that she constantlyempty milk cartons back in the fridge.
9	а	A survey has found that, surprisingly, most children to walk to school than be
		taken by car.
		I swam across the river, but my friends to walk to the nearest bridge.
0		The desknearly 100 kilos, and needs to be carried by two people.
	Ь	He held the fish in his hands as if he it and then said, 'It's about 3.5 kilos.'

## Present perfect, past simple, and present perfect continuous

**Units 3 & 6** 

Match the beginnings and endings. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

- I haven't had time to phone (i) but I'll certainly contact him before I leave Hugo today, work. b I didn't have time to phone (ii) but I'll certainly contact him some time Hugo today, tomorrow. a When she was prime minister, (i) has often been accused of ignoring the advice 2 of her colleagues. Mrs Perez (ii) was often accused of ignoring the advice of b Since she became prime minister, Mrs Perez her colleagues. a I've watched Mamma Mia (i) and now I keep humming the songs to myself. b I've been watching Mamma Mia (ii) at least ten times already. a I'd always wanted to own a (i) until I've found out how much they cost. Porsche (ii) until I found out how much they cost. b I won't know if I can afford a Porsche 5 a Unemployment has risen (i) by 58% since the present government came b Unemployment has been rising to power. (ii) ever since the present government came to power. a As soon as I've finished the book (i) I'm going to have a holiday.
  - - b As soon as I finished the book
  - 7 a I've been playing squash
    - b I've played squash
  - I haven't been back to London 8
    - I haven't eaten really good pasta
- (i) since my doctor advised me to lose weight.

(ii) I started writing another one.

- (ii) a couple of times before, but I can't get the hang of it.
- (i) since I lived in Italy.
- (ii) since I've lived in Italy.

# Past perfect, past perfect continuous, and past simple

Units 5 & 7

- Complete each sentence (b) so that it has a similar meaning to sentence (a). Use a verb related to the italicised word in an appropriate tense (active or passive): past perfect, past perfect continuous or past simple. Give alternatives where possible.
  - 1 a The proposed new library had been under discussion for almost three years at the time an appropriate site became available.
    - b At the time an appropriate site became available, they had been discussing the proposed new library for almost three years.
  - 2 a There had been a considerable improvement in his condition when I saw him in hospital last night.
    - b His condition.
  - 3 a It was announced that there was a ten-minute delay to the Toulouse train.
    - b It was announced that the Toulouse train
  - 4 a Thomas had been on a diet for a month when he came to stay with us, and we noticed immediately that he had already lost a lot of weight.
    - b Thomas...

The future Units 9 & 10

- If necessary, correct or improve the italicised verbs in these dialogues, using will, shall, going to, present continuous for the future, or present simple for the future.
  - A a: Careful, (1) you're going to spill your coffee.
    - B: Oh, no! Too late. Now (2) I'm going to have to change my trousers.
  - B A: What have you got all that wood for?

tablet computers for the school.

b Emilia

- в: (1) I'll build a bird table in the garden.
- A: If you need any help, let me know and (2) I'm going to give you a hand.
- C A: (1) Shall you be able to come over on the 3rd? We (2) have a barbecue.
  - B: Just a minute, (3) I'm going to have a look in my diary. No, I'm sorry. (4) I'm meeting some friends in town that day.
- D A: Did you know that David (1) is going to go to New Zealand this summer?
  - B: Yes, I heard. I'm really sorry he (2) doesn't come to see us.
  - A: I wonder when we (3) see him again?
  - B: Well, he certainly (4) won't be back before Christmas.
- E A: I (1) take Aunt Lucy to the station later. Do you want a lift into town, too?
  - B: What time (2) does her train go?
  - A: It (3) will be at 4:15. It (4) takes us about half an hour to get there if there isn't too much traffic.
  - B: Well you should start out early. Apparently, (5) we'll have heavy snow this afternoon. In fact, thanks for your offer, but I think (6) I'm going to stay at home in the warm.

## Modals and semi-modals

Units 15-20

- 5 Underline the best answer from each group in italics.
  - 1 A: I've spent most of the morning trying to fix my washing machine, but I seem to have made it worse.
    - B: You ought to ask / may ask / ought to have asked me to come over and take a look at it. I would have been / should be / would be happy to help. But I suppose it's too late now!
  - 2 The taxi needs to / should / would be here in a couple of minutes. We'd better / 've better / 'd better to get ready to go.
  - 3 My daughter wouldn't / won't / may not eat carrots. She hates the taste of them. I don't have to / 'm not able to / can't think of any way of getting her to eat them. But to tell the truth, I could / would / used to hate them when I was young, too.

## Additional exercises

- 4 A: We're completely lost! I'm not able to / can't / mustn't find any of the street names around here on the map.
  - B: We *must have / have got to have / can have* taken the wrong turning at the traffic lights about a kilometre back.
- 5 You haven't got to / needn't / mustn't go on the beach when the tide's coming in. It's very dangerous. You can / might / would play in the playground instead.
- 6 I was beginning to be concerned that I won't / mustn't / wouldn't get to the station for my train. But I didn't need worry / needn't have worried / needn't worry; Aisha turned up in good time to give me a lift.
- 7 Most headteachers today feel that parents *need / should / had better* play a more active part in the running of schools. There was a time when parents *would / will / should* put a lot of effort into fundraising for schools, but those days seem to have gone.
- 8 A: These trousers shrank the first time I washed them.
  - B: If I were you, I ought to / should / can take them back.
  - A: Yes, I suppose they can / need / may give me my money back.
- 9 Preliminary research suggests that the bones *must / have got to / used to* be at least 100,000 years old, but they *would / could / can* be considerably older than that.
- 10 Apparently, in the future, we will be able to / can / could to get holograms of the people we're talking to on our mobile phones. Of course, by the time this is common, we can / must / might have started using other ways of communicating.
- 11 Both candidates for the job were very strong and it was hard to choose between them. I certainly couldn't / mustn't / had got to have decided which one to appoint. But fortunately, we hadn't got to / didn't have to / mustn't make a final decision; the management found enough money to allow us to appoint both of them.
- 12 You needn't / don't need to / mustn't be very fit to play badminton well. It can / is able to / could be played by anyone who is reasonably fit and who has a good sense of timing.

Passives

Units 22-25



Some extracts from radio news reports are given below. Rewrite them using passive forms in which the italicised word is the subject of each clause. If **that** is italicised, use a passive construction with **it** or **there**.

#### Examples:

Picasso encouraged *her* to paint.  $\rightarrow$  **She was encouraged** to paint by Picasso. People believe *that* the Prime Minister will resign tomorrow.  $\rightarrow$  **It is believed** that the Prime Minister will resign tomorrow.

- A People are encouraging the Prime Minister to sack the Environment Minister, Maria Long, after someone revealed that she had received payments from a major oil company. However, in a statement today, the Prime Minister said: 'My advisors tell me that the company paid Mrs Long the money before she joined the government. I have no intention of dismissing her.'
- B A tropical storm has caused severe flooding in the city of Chittagong in southern Bangladesh. Although we understand *that* there are no casualties, the floods have made *many thousands of people* homeless, and people estimate the *damage to property* as running into millions of dollars.
- C Protesters have continued to block the construction of the new ring road by tying themselves to trees along the proposed route. Police say that they have given *the protesters* two days to leave the area or they will arrest *them*.
- D Conservation groups have demanded that the government should close down the nuclear power station after a report which said that investigators have found unacceptable levels of radiation in the local area.

- E The Commissioner of the Dublin police force has revealed that they have received a death threat against the life of President Nabon, who is visiting the capital this weekend. He says that they are taking the threat very seriously. People expect that security levels will be increased during the President's visit.
- F Someone found a man injured on a Scottish hillside this morning. People think that he fell while coming down a hillside in bad weather. Medical staff are treating him in hospital for leg and head injuries. Someone reported him missing last night when he failed to return home after a day's walking.
- G And now football. People expect *that* there will be a record crowd at tonight's match between Barcelona and Real Madrid. People report *that* the club will give *the Barcelona players* a huge financial bonus if they win and people have even suggested *that* the club might pay *them* as much as €50,000 each.

## Verb complementation: what follows verbs

Units 30 & 31

7

## Underline the correct option. Sometimes both are possible.

- 1 He insisted to pay / on paying for the meal.
- 2 The interviewer started off to ask / by asking me why I wanted the job.
- 3 I can clearly recall his saying / him saying that he was meeting Sarah at eight o'clock.
- 4 The university has arranged / appointed Dr Lopez to be head of the new Medical Institute.
- 5 I knew I could ask / count on Hannah if I needed any help.
- 6 My parents are always going on at me to tidy / for to tidy up my bedroom.
- 7 The ticket enables you visiting / to visit both the museum and the art gallery.
- 8 Fatima is so small that she often has to resort to wearing children's clothes / children's clothes to get the right size.
- 9 We objected to their cat / their cat's digging up our garden.
- 10 The government plans to bring in new laws *forcing / making* parents to take more responsibility for the education of their children.
- 11 I don't approve of her wearing / wearing outdoor shoes in the house.
- 12 Ramos was arrested when he failed him to appear / to appear in court.
- 13 If you have any problems with the computer, contact Simon. It's best if you allow / let him deal with them.
- 14 I've heard a lot about Dr Lau, and I'm looking forward to hearing / to hear his talk tomorrow.
- 15 Although Carmen is a doctor herself, it doesn't *entitle her to / entitle for her to* special treatment, and she will have to join the waiting list like everyone else.
- 16 We waited / waited for the storm to pass before we continued.
- 17 When I was in the supermarket I noticed a man to take / noticed a man take a packet off the shelf and hide it inside his coat.
- 18 We invited / refused Lisa to come to the party.
- 19 I overheard her tell / telling Aleksi that she was seriously ill.
- 20 She gave up work so that she could focus on *looking / look* after her children.
- 21 We were unhappy in England, and even discussed / talked of emigrating to New Zealand.
- 22 The lizard is amazingly well adapted to live / to living in very dry and windy conditions.
- 23 Another increase in the price of petrol would discourage *me from using / from using* my car.
- 24 How dare you to raise / raise your voice in my house!

Reporting

Units 33, 35, 36 & 38

8	Complete each report using a noun from the box followed by a that-clause or to-infinitive
	clause. Give both alternatives if possible.

advice complaint conclusion confession decision prediction promise refusal reply statement threat warning

1 'The government has decreased taxation every year since we came to power,' stated the

President.

Opposition leaders have challenged the President's statement that the government have / had decreased taxation every year since they came to power.

2 Karen said, 'I've decided not to go to university next year.' We were disappointed with Karen's decision

3 'The Earth will pass through the tail of a comet within the next five years,' predicted Professor Adams.

4 'We said that we would dismiss the strikers if they didn't return to work, and we have now done that.'

Nicky decided to follow \_\_\_\_\_\_6 'I'll pick you up at ten,' Jason promised.

I wasn't surprised by

8 'My dinner is cold!'

We decided to ignore Dan's .....

10 'Small children should be kept indoors until pollution levels have decreased,' the Health Minister has warned.
The Health Minister has issued

11 'I've never used a computer before,' she confessed.

When I asked Zeb where Bethany was, ...

Nouns

Units 40-43

9 Complete each sentence with an appropriate present simple form (singular or plural) of the verb in brackets. If both singular and plural forms are possible, give both.

1 I've been trying to sell my car for ages, but nobody ...... to buy it. (want)

2 A lettuce and a carrot ...... all I need to make the salad. (be)

3 A lot of students ...... in the old houses near the university. (live)

4 All of the scientific evidence \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the conclusion that increasing use of pesticides in farming is damaging our health. (point)

5 The university ...... to appoint lecturers who already have a PhD. (prefer)

6 She's one of those people who ......just sitting in the sun on holiday. (love)

7 The office staff ......that they have been treated badly by management. (claim)

8 All of my children ..... to the same school. (go)

9	A lot of cheaper furniture nowadaysin pieces inside a flat box for you to buil yourself. (come)	d		
	In France, the media more respectful of the privacy of celebrities than in Britain. (be)			
	Currently, 16% of the workforce jobless. (be)			
	It's a really quiet town at night. Everything			
	The police that the fire was caused deliberately. (suspect)			
	The majority of the children in the classunder five years old. (be)			
	Although the bracelet might be worth something, none of the other jewellerybe of great value. (appear)	to		
16	The stairsquite steep, so be careful how you go down. (be)			
17	What worries me about the carthe problems we've been having with the brake	s. (be)		
18	The United Nations to send a team of doctors to investigate the outbreak of (plan)	TB.		
19	One of the arguments in favour of the new airportthat it will bring jobs to the area. (be)	ie		
20	Many people have speculated on the reasons for the southern population movements in the Indian subcontinent during the 15th century, but none of the historical records identified so an answer. (provide)			
21	It's a charity performance, so none of the actorsa fee for taking part. (get)			
	Every letter and parcel carefully checked before posting to make sure it has t correct address. (be)	he		
23	My parents want to move to Spain, but neither of them			
	A: Where are the scissors? B: I think either Leyla or Miguelborrowed them.	(have)		
	Most people would agree that the criteria not of equal importance. (be)	,		
	The economics of nuclear powerbecome more and more difficult in the last			
27	decade. (have)  Whoever had contact with the patient to be found and vaccinated against polio.			
28	(have)  A: I've got to walk all the way to my uncle's house, and he lives about two miles away.			
20	B: But two milesfar. (be / not)			
20	A recent survey shows that around 10% of all carsdangerous to drive. (be)			
		60)		
30	Phoneticsone of the options you can take in the second year of the course. (	эе) ——		
icle	Units 4	4-48		
	omplete the sentences using the words from the box. Which <i>one</i> option can complete <i>a</i>	!!		
-	ree sentences a, b and c?			
	a / an one some the 'zero article' (-)			
1	a Could you look after my cat while I'm away on holiday? It's only forweek.			
	b Jules lives less than mile from school, so he can get up at eight o'clock and	d still		
	be at school by nine.			
	c When I arrived, Alice was sitting incorner of the room and Jake was sitting	į in		
	the other. I could tell that they had been arguing.	58		
2	avulture feeds primarily on dead animals.			
-	b Eleni has arthritis, and her doctor has suggested that she should spend as much time as			
	possible in warm climate.			
	c Fiona has decided she wants to be			
2				
3	3 a A: How should I get to the town centre from here?			
	- M/-II I II			
	B: Well, you could walk, but catching a bus is probably quickest.			
	<ul> <li>B: Well, you could walk, but catching a bus is probablyquickest.</li> <li>The World Wide Fund for Nature organised a major campaign to save tige</li> <li> washing machine has had a huge impact on people's lives since it was investigation.</li> </ul>			

## Additional exercises

4	<ul> <li>a A: Rafael Nadal is visiting our school next week to talk about tennis.</li> <li>B: You mean</li></ul>		
	Ь	It was hot in the house, so she opened all the windows to let infresh air.	
		y.	
-		Large areas of Canada are still covered byforest.	
5		She was made Chief Executive Officer in 2002.	
		Do you wantsugar in your coffee?	
		You can buy mobile phones for as little as £10.	
6		500 people were at the meeting.	
		Despite years of research, we still don't understand the significance ofdreams.	
	C	It is a sad fact that money buys political power in many societies.	
7	a	earthquake in the south of the country has left thousands homeless.	
	Ь	I love having holidays atseaside.	
	С	Do you remember Wilmotts? They used to live opposite us.	
8	a	bicycle is an important means of transport for many people with no access to	
		public transport.	
	Ь	We only stayed in Oslo fornight, but we really liked the place.	
		Juan owns a painting that he claims isPicasso.	
9		I felt fine when I woke up, but byevening I had a fever.	
	Ь	The temperature at midday reached over 40 °C.	
		It's probably easiest to contact me byemail.	
10		My history teacher at school – Mrs Bullenski – was always giving us advice on	
		how to improve our examination skills.	
	Ь	I'll just spendday or two in Singapore and then go on to Australia for three	
		weeks.	
	_	It wasday that would remain in my memory forever.	
	-	te was	

Relative clauses Units 53–55

- Rewrite each sentence including the information in brackets in a relative clause. Give all possible relative pronouns, but if you can leave them out, put them in brackets. Use commas where necessary.
  - 1 Later in the programme we have an interview with Laura Dekker. (in 2012 she became the youngest solo round-the-world sailor) Later in the programme we have an interview with Laura Dekker, who in 2012 became the youngest solo round-the-world sailor.
  - 2 Carla's restaurant is very good value. (it serves a range of Mediterranean dishes)
  - 3 The New Zealand rugby team are clear favourites to win the match. (all of its members weigh over 100 kilos)
  - 4 Chloe brought home a kitten. (she'd found it in the park)
  - 5 The story is about a teenage boy. (his ambition is to become an astronaut)
  - 6 Paul has got a job with Empirico. (its main product is electric light bulbs)
  - 7 Politicians should give more consideration to the working people. (they represent them)
  - 8 Among the group of people was Professor Fischer. (I had last seen him in Munich 20 years earlier)
  - 9 I live on a small road. (it leads down to the river)
  - 10 Monet's earlier paintings are in a new exhibition in New York. (many have never been seen in the USA before)
  - 11 Ian McIver has become managing director of Europe's largest food retailer. (his first job was selling vegetables in a market)
  - 12 Kaspar has a new girlfriend. (she works in the library)
  - 13 My Volkswagen Golf is a very reliable car. (I bought it in 2006)
  - 14 Bronwen Brookes will be present at its official opening. (the Brookes art gallery is named after her)

## Substitution and leaving out words

Units 62-65

- 12 Underline the appropriate alternatives. Sometimes both are possible.
  - 1 He has a shave every morning, but you wouldn't think he did / had.
  - 2 The developers pulled down the clock tower to make way for the new road. In *doing so / so doing*, they destroyed one of the finest examples of 17th century architecture in the country.
  - 3 A: Ben won't be coming this weekend. B: But he promised so / promised he would.
  - 4 A: It looks like Vettel is going to win again. B: It appears / appears so.
  - 5 A: I didn't know you cycled to work. B: Yes, I always do / do so.
  - 6 I don't like eating shellfish, and never have / have done.
  - 7 They asked me to go fishing with them, but I didn't want / didn't want to.
  - 8 A: Will it take you long to fix it? B: Well, it might do / do so. I'm not sure yet.
  - 9 A: Do you think Fred will be up by now? B: I doubt that he will / doubt so.
  - 10 A: Dad won't mind us borrowing the car, will he? B: No, I don't suppose so / suppose not.
  - 11 Just park the car wherever you want to / want.
  - 12 A: Has Rachel arrived yet? B: No, I don't think she has done / has.
  - 13 Karl had to choose between working much longer hours and moving to another part of the country. He had never faced *such a dilemma / a such dilemma* before.
  - 14 He owns much more land than I do so / do.
  - 15 We'd like to go to Canada to see Ellie, but we can't afford to / afford.
  - 16 A: I imagine the information is kept on computer somewhere. B: I would expect so / expect.
  - 17 I don't know whether my parents want me to go to Norway, but I suspect not / don't suspect.
  - 18 A: Will she expect us to get the job finished by the weekend? B: I certainly don't hope so / hope not.
  - 19 A: There's no answer. I suppose she might have left home by now. B: Yes, I suppose she *might have / might*.
  - 20 The car's in good condition. They told so / told me so at the garage.
  - 21 I didn't want Luca to climb the mountain, but he was determined to / determined.
  - 22 A: My mother was really angry. B: But didn't you expect her to / to be?
  - 23 A: It doesn't look like the rain's going to stop soon. B: I don't guess / guess not.
  - 24 A: Are you going to the library today? B: I might do / might be.

## Position of adjectives, adverbs and adverbial phrases

Units 66, 69, 74 & 75

- Are the italicised words and phrases in the correct position? If not, suggest a change of position or rewrite the text if necessary.
  - a I every so often leave work early and go to a performance in the local concert hall. It's very close to my office, in the opposite building. Usually they rather are good, but yesterday's, given by a singer and pianist, was a total disaster. The singer with wonderful control began to sing. But when the pianist started to play, it sounded awful. At first I thought he was badly playing, but then it became obvious that the piano completely was out of tune. They stopped and discussed briefly the problem. They couldn't continue clearly, and they left the stage unhappily. Naturally, all the present people felt sorry for them. I'm sure the responsible person for tuning the piano will be severely reprimanded.
  - b I just was going out to work this morning when the postman pushed through my letterbox a letter. It was from Mara, who writes from time to time. The letter said that she has to come to Bristol to visit her unwell uncle. She is one of his few remaining relatives. She wants us to meet and asked if I could suggest a time possible. Well, I for a couple of years haven't seen her, so I was really pleased. We first met at university. We have alike interests, so always we find a lot to talk about. The included photos in the letter showed that she hadn't changed since I last saw her. I spent so long reading the letter that I nearly was late for work.

## Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

Units 79-82 & 87

14

Match the ideas in (i) and (ii) and use the word in brackets to write either a single sentence (as in 1) or two sentences (as in 2), as appropriate. Note that you can put the idea in (ii) first in the sentence.

(i)

- 1 I knew there was something wrong
- 2 prepare the remaining vegetables
- 3 his wife is really small
- 4 only about 100 people attended
- 5 I can't afford a coat like that
- 6 I'm determined to finish the report tonight
- 7 you'll have to walk all the way from the station
- 8 I stayed until the end
- 9 her husband would never find it
- 10 I've been running about 200 kilometres a week

(ii)

- a I found the film boring
- b Johan must be nearly two metres tall
- c to prepare for the marathon
- d she said she was feeling fine
- e I don't like the style
- f leave the carrots to cool for a few minutes
- g make sure you catch the last bus at 11:00
- h I have to stay at work until midnight
- i she hid the letter between the pages of a book
- j there had been a lot of publicity about the meeting
- 1 (even though) (+d) I knew there was something wrong, even though she said she was feeling fine. or Even though she said she was feeling fine I knew there was something wrong.
- 2 (meanwhile) (+f) Leave the carrots to cool for a few minutes. Meanwhile, prepare the remaining vegetables.
- 3 (whereas)
- 4 (even so)
- 5 (besides)
- 6 (even if)
- 7 (otherwise)
- 8 (although)
- 9 (so that)
- 10 (in order to)

Prepositions Units 92–94

Add the missing prepositions in the correct places somewhere after the italicised words. with

1 Personally, I don't agree of fox hunting, although I know that you approve it.

- 2 There seems to be little *likelihood* Williamson winning Wimbledon because of her *inability* play well on grass tennis courts.
- 3 Our plan is to *split* the organisation into a number of small units. This will improve our *prospects* competing with more specialised companies.
- 4 I ran Danny in town the other day. He asked your email address, so he'll probably be in touch with you.
- 5 Jack takes great *pride* never *throwing* anything. He always says that one day he'll find a use for things.
- 6 Although Professor Martinez *knows* a great deal meteorology, even he can't *account* the unusual weather we have been having over the last few weeks.
- 7 There has been a great *improvement* the behaviour of children in the school. This has *resulted* the headteacher's *idea* involving them in decision-making.
- 8 Even though Charlotte didn't act my advice and follow a career in medicine, I'm full of admiration her determination train to be a vet.

Inversion Units 99 & 100

Rewrite each sentence with a similar meaning starting with a word / phrase from the box followed by inversion of the verb and the subject.

	Had Hardly <del>Little</del> Not for one moment Only if Only in Seldom Should So Under no circumstances Such Were
1	I didn't imagine that the boss had called me into her office to fire me. Little did I imagine that the boss had called me into her office to fire me.
2	The police will only investigate the matter further if an official complaint is made.
3	The instructions were so complicated, that it was impossible to assemble the machine.
4	If we had known how ill Rob was, we would have taken him straight to the hospital.
5	The wind was so strong that all the trees in the park were blown down.
6	She didn't often regret her lack of formal education, although she was sometimes aware of gap in her knowledge.
7	You should only phone for an ambulance in an emergency.
8	There was never any disagreement between us.
9	If it were not for financial assistance from the government, the museum would have closed lonago.
0	They had only just finished eating before a waiter started to clear away the plates.
11	Children should never be allowed into the room without adult supervision.
2	If the bridge is ever built, it will be welcomed by the local community.

# Key to Additional exercises

- 1
- 1 b 'm not promising / don't promise / didn't promise
- 2 a was reading / read
  - b reac
- 3 a were expecting / expected
  - b are expecting / expect
- 4 a owns (or 'own')
  - b owned/owns
- 5 a 'm considering / was considering / considered
  - b consider
- 6 a tells/told
  - b tell/told
- 7 a phoned
  - b was phoning / phoned
- 8 a 's always putting / puts
  - b 's constantly putting / puts
- 9 a prefer
  - b preferred
- 10 a weighs
  - b was weighing
- 2
- 1 a + (i) or (ii) b + (ii) 2 a + (ii) b + (i)
- 3 a + (i) or (ii) b + (i)
- 4 a + (ii) b + (i)
- 5 a + (i) or (ii) b + (ii)
- 6 a + (i) b + (ii)
- 7 a + (i) b + (ii)
- 8 a + (ii)
  - b + (i) (b + (ii) is also correct grammatically, but it is unlikely to be used; it suggests that it is difficult to get good pasta in Italy, which is, of course, not the case!)
- 3
- 1 'had discussed' is also possible, but less likely as the duration of the discussions is emphasised
- 2 His condition had improved considerably when I saw him in hospital last night. ('improved' would be unlikely as it would suggest that his condition improved because I saw him last night)
- 3 It was announced that the Toulouse train had been delayed by ten minutes. ('was delayed' is also possible with a similar meaning)
- 4 Thomas had been dieting for a month when he came to stay with us, and we noticed immediately that he had already lost a lot of weight.
- 5 Victoria had been expected to win comfortably, but she finished third. ('was expected' is also possible with a similar meaning)

- 6 When I reversed the car out of the garage, I damaged the rear number plate.
- 7 Andrei was promoted last week.
- 8 The tax authorities had been investigating Rentpool for a number of months when they arrested the chairman. ('had investigated' is also possible, but less likely as the duration of the investigation is emphasised)
- 9 The Minister angered her colleagues when she criticised them during her speech yesterday.
- 10 Emilia had already suggested that the money should be spent on new tablet computers for the school.
- 4
- Α
- ✓ ('you'll' is also possible)
- 2 I'll (= 'I will' or 'I shall')
- В
- 1 I'm going to build / I'm building
- 2 I'll give
- C
- 1 Will / Are you going to be able to /Are you able to
- 2 we're going to have / we're having
- , '
- 4 /
- D
- 1 is going (more likely than 'is going to go')
- 2 isn't (is not) coming / isn't (is not) going to come / won't come
- 3 we'll see / we're going to see
- 4 /
- E

  1 I'm taking / I'm going to take / I'll take
- 2 /
- 3 more likely is 'It's at 4:15' as this is part of a timetable
- 4 It'll take
- 5 'we're going to have' is more likely
- 6 'I'll stay' is more likely if the decision is made at the moment of speaking
- 5
- 1 ought to have asked; would have been
- 2 should; 'd better
- 3 won't: can't: used to
- 4 can't: must have
- 5 mustn't; can
- 6 wouldn't; needn't have worried
- 7 should: would
- 8 should: may
- 9 must; could
- 10 will be able to; might
- 11 couldn't; didn't have to
- 12 don't need to; can

6

The agent (after 'by ...') is given only where it is likely to be included. Where it might either be included or left out, it is written in brackets.

- A The Prime Minister is being encouraged to sack the Environment Minister, Maria Long, after it was revealed that she had received payments from a major oil company. However, in a statement today, the Prime Minister said: 'I am told (by my advisors) / I am advised that Mrs Long was paid the money (by the company) [Note the word order: not '... by the company the money ...'] before she joined the government. I have no intention of dismissing her.'
- B A tropical storm has caused severe flooding in the city of Chittagong in southern Bangladesh. Although there are understood to be (or it is understood that there are / have been) no casualties, many thousands of people have been made homeless (by the floods), and the damage to property is estimated as running into millions of dollars.
- C Protesters have continued to block the construction of the new ring road by tying themselves to trees along the proposed route. (Police say that)

  The protesters have been given two days to leave the area or they will be arrested (by the police).
- D Conservation groups have demanded that the nuclear power station should be closed down (by the government) after a report which said that unacceptable levels of radiation have been found (by investigators) in the local area.
- E The Commissioner of the Dublin police force has revealed that a death threat has been received (by the police) against the life of President Nabon, who is visiting the capital this weekend. He says that the threat is being taken very seriously. It is expected that security levels will be increased during the President's visit.
- F A man was found injured on a Scottish hillside this morning. It is thought that he fell while coming down a hillside in bad weather. He is being treated in hospital for leg and head injuries. [We can assume that medical staff would treat him in hospital, so there is no need to mention the agent here.] He was reported

## Key to Additional exercises

- missing last night when he failed to return home after a day's walking.
- G And now football. There is expected to be (or It is expected that there will be) a record crowd at tonight's match between Barcelona and Real Madrid. It is reported that the Barcelona players will be given a huge financial bonus (by the club) if they win and it has even been suggested that they might be paid as much as €50,000 each (by the club).

#### 7

- 1 on paying
- 2 by asking
- 3 his saying / him saying
- 4 appointed
- 5 count
- 6 at me to tidy
- 7 to visit
- 8 wearing children's clothes / children's clothes
- 9 their cat
- 10 forcing
- 11 her wearing / wearing
- 12 to appear
- 13 let
- 14 to hearing
- 15 entitle her to
- 16 waited for
- 17 noticed a man take
- 18 invited
- 19 tell / telling
- 20 looking
- 21 talked
- 22 to living
- 23 me from using
- 24 raise

## 8

- 2 We were disappointed with Karen's decision not to go to university next year. / ... Karen's decision that she wouldn't go / wasn't going / isn't going to university next year.
- 3 Considerable media attention has been focused on Professor Adams's prediction that the Earth will / would pass through the tail of a comet within the next five years.
- 4 The company has carried out its threat to dismiss the strikers / ... that it would dismiss the strikers (if they didn't return to work).
- 5 Nicky decided to follow her boss's advice that she should delegate more of her work to her secretary. / ... her boss's advice to delegate more of her work to her secretary.
- 6 Jason didn't turn up until eleven, despite his promise to pick me up at ten. / ... his promise that he would pick me up at ten.

- 7 I wasn't surprised by Rob's conclusion that Professor Jones doesn't know what he is talking about. / ... Rob's conclusion that Professor Jones didn't know what he was talking about.
- 8 We decided to ignore Dan's complaint that his dinner was cold.
- 9 I was astonished by their refusal to negotiate over the ownership of the land.
- 10 The Health Minister has issued a warning to keep small children indoors until pollution levels have decreased. / ... a warning that small children should be kept indoors until pollution levels have decreased.
- 11 I was surprised by her confession that she has / had never used a computer before.
- 12 When I asked Zeb where Bethany was, his reply was that he didn't know.

#### 9

- 1 wants
- 2 are
- 3 live
- 4 points
- 5 prefer / prefers
- 6 love / loves (although a plural verb is more grammatical)
- 7 claim
- 8 go
- 9 comes
- 10 is/are
- 11 is / are
- 12 shuts
- 13 suspect
- 14 are
- 15 appears
- 16 are
- 17 is / are (although a plural is preferred in formal contexts)
- 18 plan / plans
- 19 is
- 20 provides (more likely than 'provide' in this formal context)
- 21 get/gets
- 22 is
- 23 speak / speaks
- 24 has / have
- 25 are
- 26 have
- 27 has
- 28 isn't
- 29 are
- 30 is

## 10

- 1 a a /one (informally, we could also say '... for the week')
  - b a/one
  - c one ('one' can complete all three sentences)

- 2 a A/The; b a; c an (a/an can complete all three sentences)
- 3 a the / -; b the; c The (the can complete all three sentences)
- 4 a the / -; b some / -; c (- can complete all three sentences)
- 5 a the/-; b some/-;
  - c some / (– can complete all three sentences)
- 6 a -/Some; b -; c (-can complete all three sentences)
- 7 a The / An; b the; c the (the can complete all three sentences)
- 8 a The / A;
  - b a / one (informally, we could also say '... for the night ...');
  - a (a can complete all three sentences)
- 9 a the / →; b →; c − (− can complete all three sentences)
- 10 a a / →; b a; c a (a can complete all three sentences)

#### 11

- 2 Carla's restaurant, which serves a range of Mediterranean dishes, is very good value. (some people would use 'that' as an alternative to 'which')
- 3 The New Zealand rugby team, all of whose members weigh over 100 kilos, are clear favourites to win the match.
- 4 Chloe brought home a kitten (which / that) she'd found in the park.
- 5 The story is about a teenage boy whose ambition is to become an astronaut.
- 6 Paul has got a job with Empirico, whose main product is electric light hulbs
- 7 Politicians should give more consideration to the working people (who / that / whom) they represent.
- 8 Among the group of people was Professor Fischer, who / whom I had last seen in Munich 20 years earlier.
- 9 I live on a small road which / that leads down to the river.
- 10 Monet's earlier paintings, many of which have never been seen in the USA before, are in a new exhibition in New York.
- 11 Ian McIver, whose first job was selling vegetables in a market, has become managing director of Europe's largest food retailer.
- 12 Kaspar has a new girlfriend who / that works in the library.
- 13 My Volkswagen Golf, which I bought in 2006, is a very reliable car. (some people would use 'that' as an alternative to 'which')
- 14 Bronwen Brookes, after whom the Brookes art gallery is named, will be present at its official opening. /

## Key to Additional exercises

Bronwen Brookes, who (m) the Brookes gallery is named after, will ...

#### 12

- 1 did
- 2 doing so / so doing
- 3 promised he would
- 4 appears so
- 5 do
- 6 have / have done
- 7 didn't want to
- 8 do ('do so' is unlikely in this informal context)
- 9 doubt that he will
- 10 don't suppose so / suppose not
- 11 want to / want
- 12 has
- 13 such a dilemma
- 14 do
- 15 afford to
- 16 expect so
- 17 suspect not
- 18 hope not
- 19 might have / might
- 20 told me so
- 21 determined to / determined
- 22 to be
- 23 guess not
- 24 might do / might be

#### 13

Suggested improvements are given

- a Every so often I leave work early (✓) (or I leave work early every so often) and go to a performance in the local concert hall. It's very close to my office in the building opposite. Usually ( ) they are rather good, but yesterday's, given by a singer and pianist, was a total ( ) disaster. The singer began to sing with wonderful control. But when the pianist started to play, it sounded awful. At first I thought he was playing badly, but then it became obvious that the piano was completely out of tune. They stopped and discussed the problem briefly (or ... and briefly discussed the problem). Clearly, they couldn't continue (or They clearly couldn't continue), and they left the stage unhappily (✓). Naturally (✓), all the people present felt sorry for them. I'm sure the person responsible for tuning the piano will be severely reprimanded.
- b I was just going out to work this morning when the postman pushed a letter through my letterbox. It was from Mara, who writes from time to time (✓). The letter said that she has to come to Bristol to visit her uncle, who is unwell. She is one of his few remaining (✓) relatives. She wants us

to meet and asked if I could suggest a possible time. Well, I haven't seen her for a couple of years, so I was really pleased. We first ( ) met at university. We have similar interests (or Our interests are alike), so we always find a lot to talk about. The photos included in the letter showed that she hadn't changed since I last ( ) saw her. I spent so long reading the letter that I was nearly late for work.

#### 14

- 3 + b Johan must nearly two meters tall, whereas his wife is really small. / Whereas Johan must be nearly two metres tall, his wife is really small. / His wife is really small, whereas Johan must be nearly two metres tall. / Whereas his wife is really small, Johan must be nearly two metres tall.
- 4 + j There had been a lot of publicity about the meeting. Even so, only about 100 people attended.
- 5 + e I can't afford a coat like that. Besides, I don't like the style.
- 6 + h I'm determined to finish the report tonight, even if I have to stay at work until midnight. / Even if I have to stay at work until midnight I'm determined to finish the report.
- 7 + g Make sure you catch the last bus at 11:00. Otherwise, you'll have to walk all the way from the station.
- 8 + a Although I found the film boring, I stayed until the end. / I found the film boring, although I stayed until the end.
- 9 + i She hid the letter between the pages of a book so that her husband would never find it. / So that her husband would never find it, she hid the letter between the pages of a book
- 10 + c In order to prepare for the marathon, I've been running about 200 kilometres a week. / I've been running about 200 kilometres a week in order to prepare for the marathon.

#### 15

- ... although I know that you approve of it.
- 2 There seems to be little likelihood of Williamson winning Wimbledon because of her inability to play well on grass tennis courts.
- 3 Our plan is to split the organisation up into a number of small units. (or 'split up the organisation into'. Note that 'split the organisation into' [without 'up'] is also possible.) This will improve our prospects of competing with more specialised companies.

- 4 Iran into / across Danny in town the other day. He asked for your email address, so he'll probably by in touch with you.
- 5 Jack takes great pride in never throwing anything away ('throwing away anything' is also possible, but less likely).
- 6 Although Professor Martinez knows a great deal about meteorology, even he can't account for the unusual weather we have been having over the last few weeks
- 7 There has been a great improvement in the behaviour of children in the school. This has resulted from the headteacher's idea of involving them in decision-making.
- 8 Even though Charlotte didn't act
  on my advice and follow a career in
  medicine, I'm full of admiration for her
  determination to train to be a vet.

#### 16

- 2 Only if an official complaint is made will the police investigate the matter further.
- 3 So complicated were the instructions, ...
- 4 Had we known how ill Rob was, ...
- 5 Such was the strength of the wind that ... (or So strong was the wind that ...)
- 6 Seldom did she regret her lack of formal education, ...
- 7 Only in an emergency should you phone for an ambulance. (or Only if there is an emergency should you phone for an ambulance.)
- 8 Not for one moment was there any / a disagreement between us.
- 9 Were it not for financial assistance from the government, ...
- 10 Hardly had they finished eating before a waiter started to clear away the plates.
- 11 Under no circumstances should children be allowed into the room without adult supervision.
- 12 Should the bridge ever be built, ...

# Key to Study planner

Tens	es
1.1	В
1.2	D
1.3	C
1.4	A, B
1.5	C
1.6	Α
1.7	D
1.8	В
1.9	A, C
1.10	С
1.11	Α
1.12	В
1.13	B, D
1.14	С
1.15	B, C

## The future

The future		
2.1	C	
2.2	D	
2.3	B, D	
2.4	A, D	
2.5	C	
2.6	В	
2.7	Α	
2.8	D	
2.9	B, C	
2.10	C, D	
211	_	

## Modals and semi-modals

3.1	C
3.2	В
3.3	Α
3.4	D
3.5	C, D
3.6	B, D
3.7	В
3.8	C
3.9	A, C
3.10	B, C
3.11	D
3.12	Α

## Linking verbs, passives, questions

4.1	C, D
4.2	В
4.3	A, C
4.4	B, C
4.5	В
4.6	C
4.7	A, D
4.8	D
4.9	В
110	_

## Verb complementation: what follows verbs

5.1	D
5.2	A, B
5.3	C
5.4	В
5.5	C, D

5.6	Α
5.7	Α

Reporting		
6.1	C	
6.2	Α	
6.3	D	
6.4	В	
6.5	B, D	
6.6	Α	
6.7	C	
6.8	B, D	
6.9	B, C	
6.10	A, C	

## Nouns

7.1	В
7.2	B, D
7.3	C
7.4	A, D
7.5	A, C
7.6	B, D
7.7	A, D
7.8	D
70	۸

## Articles, determiners and quantifiers

8.1	В
8.2	C
8.3	Α
8.4	В
8.5	A, D
8.6	C
8.7	D
8.8	Α, Ο
8.9	В
8.10	B, D
8.11	Α
8.12	C
8.13	D
8.14	В
8.15	A, C
8.16	Α
8.17	В
8.18	В
8.19	D
0.20	D

## Relative clauses and other types of clause

Ly pe.	types of clause		
9.1	D		
9.2	A, B		
9.3	B, C, D		
9.4	В		
9.5	C, D		
9.6	A, C		
9.7	Α		
9.8	В		
9.9	C		
010	D.		

## Pronouns, substitution and leaving out words

```
10.1 D
```

10.2	B, D
10.3	C, D
10.4	A, B
10.5	C, D
10.6	В
10.7	C, D
10.8	D
10.9	A, B, D
1010	Δ

## Adjectives and adverbs

11.1	В
11.2	B, C
11.3	A, C
11.4	D
11.5	C
11.6	A
11.7	A, C, D
11.8	В
11.9	С
11.10	B (in informal speech only), C, I
11.11	A
11.12	A (in informal speech only), B,
11.13	D
11.14	A, B
11.15	C
11.16	A, C

## Adverbial clauses and conjunctions

A, D

B, C

12.1	В
12.2	Α
12.3	Α
12.4	C, D
12.5	A, D
12.6	B, C
12.7	A, D
12.8	B, D
12.9	C
12.10	C, D
12.11	В
12.12	A, D
12.13	Α, Β,
12.14	Α

11.17

11.18

## **Prepositions**

13.1	Α
13.2	D
13.3	A, B
13.4	A, D
13.5	B, C
13.6	Α
13.7	C

## Organising information

Orga	nisin
14.1	В
14.2	C
14.3	В
14.4	B, D
14.5	Α
14.6	B, C

#### **UNIT 1**

#### 1.1

- 2 a 'm (am) measuring
  - b measures
- 3 a doubt
  - b doubt
- 4 a is currently attracting ('attracts' is also possible)
  - b attract
- 5 a doesn't like
  - b 'm (am) not liking ('don't like' is also possible)
- 6 a 're (are) fitting
  - b doesn't fit
- 7 a feels
  - b 'm (am) not feeling ('don't feel' is also possible)
- 8 a consists of ('consists only of' would also be possible)
  - b consists of
- 9 a 's (is) sounding ('sounds' is also possible)
  - b sounds
- 10 a 's (is) having
  - b has

#### 1.2

- 1 apologise / 'm apologising
- 2 admit / 'm admitting
- 3 don't suggest / 'm not suggesting (both possible)
- 4 now realise / 'm now realising (both possible)
- 5 confess / '-m confessing
- 6 -consider / 'm considering
- 7 do you find / are you finding (both possible)
- 8 know / 'm knowing
- 9 don't guarantee / 'm not guaranteeing (both possible)
- 10 promise / 'm promising

#### UNIT 2

#### 2.1

- 1 shoots, are attacking
- 2 arrives, is waiting, says
- 3 is playing, stands, starts

#### 2.2

#### Possible answers

- 2 I gather Vegecorp are going to sack a thousand workers.
- 3 I understand we're going to have a new public holiday for the President's birthday.
- 4 Ed tells me Bruno's crashed his car again.
- 5 Julia says she's got a new job.
- 6 They say they've identified a gene which causes some people to overeat.

#### 2.3

- 2 You're forever asking me for money.
- 3 You're constantly criticising my driving.
- 4 You're continually changing your mind.
- 5 You're forever moaning about (your) work.

#### 24

The most likely verbs are given:

- 1 a we're (are) usually eating ('we usually eat' is also possible)
  - b don't eat
- 2 a plays ('is playing' is also possible)
  - b 're (are) constantly playing ('constantly play' is also possible)
- 3 a I'm normally taking ('I normally take' is also possible. It would suggest, however, that this is the time they leave home. Present continuous suggests that they are on the way to school at 8:30.)
  - b takes

#### UNIT 3

#### 3.1

- 1 went
- 2 've (have) had
- 3 wore
- 4 've (have) spent
- 5 overslept
- 6 haven't read

#### 3.2

- 1 hasn't wanted fell
- 2 has worked hasn't had
- 3 rescued has been
- 4 has happened spoke
- 5 have been able have felt
- 6 has improved has been

#### 3.3

- 1 a -signed 've (have) signed
  - b signed 🗸
- 2 a finished 've (have) finished
  - b finished 🗸
- 3 a got ✓
  - b got have got
- 4 a heard ✓
  - b -heard- 've (have) heard

#### 3.4

The most appropriate tenses are given

- 1 has visited
- 2 has closed (or has been closed; present perfect passive) died
- 3 has dropped has fallen
- 4 have been stolen (present perfect passive) insisted held

#### **UNIT 4**

#### 41

- 2 was hoping gave
- 3 lived was spending / was living spent
- 4 started was checking in
- 5 was looking saw
- 6 came was showing
- 7 was playing broke
- 8 went off lit
- 9 wasn't listening ('didn't listen' is also possible) – was explaining ('explained' is also possible)
- 10 added tasted
- 11 wasn't watching ('didn't watch' is also possible) – was dreaming ('dreamt' is also possible)
- 12 pushed ran

#### 12

- 1 'was getting' and 'got' are both possible. The past simple suggests that one event followed the other: I got in and then the lights went off. The past continuous suggests that the lights went off as I was in the process of getting ready to get into the bath.
- 4 'was checking in' or 'checked in' are both possible with a similar meaning. Using the past continuous presents 'checking in' as the background event which was going on as the couple started to chat to him.
- 7 'was playing' and 'played' are both possible. The past continuous suggests that this was a temporary rather than a regular arrangement.
- 11 'didn't watch' and 'dreamt' are also possible. However, the past continuous emphasises that 'not watching' and 'dreaming' went on at the same time and seems more likely here.

- 1 was buying
- 2 saw
- 3 turned
- 4 was slowly putting (Past simple in 3 and past continuous in 4 seem most likely here as 'turned round' describes a completed action and 'was slowly putting' describes the action that was going on at that time. However, past continuous is also possible in 3 and past simple is also possible in 4.)
- 5 was carrying
- 6 walked
- 7 picked up
- 8 thought
- 9 was looking

- 10 dropped
- 11 had
- 12 noticed
- 13 was watching
- 14 hurried
- 15 were walking / walked (similar meaning)
- 16 ran

#### **UNIT 5**

#### 5.1

events	order	order
	events are	of
	mentioned	events
	in text	
I moved	2	2
I learnt	5	6
The property developer	9	8
decided		
I heard	8	9
I first saw the	1	3
old house		
A property developer bought it	6	4
I nearly gave	7	7
up		
I put together enough	4	5
money		
It was empty	3	1

The first past 'point of reference' is 'When I first saw the old house'. Events before this are in the past perfect: 'I had just moved'... 'It had been empty'.

The second past 'point of reference' is when 'I learnt...'. Events before this are in the past perfect: 'I had put together' ... 'had bought'. Notice that we could use 'I put together' here as the order of events is made clear by 'By the time...'.

The third past 'point of reference' is '... when I heard that the house was for sale again'. Events before this are in the past perfect: 'I had nearly given up'... 'The property developer had decided...'.

#### 5.2

- 1 had met
- 2 had visited / visited
- 3 had taken / took
- 4 had seen
- 5 had lost
- 6 had found
- 7 had cheated / cheated
- 8 had made up
- 9 had gone / went
- 10 hadn't heard

- 11 had finished / finished
- 12 had eaten (Note: In North American English 'ate' would also be possible.)

#### 53

- 2 Lara hadn't intended to become a dentist
- 3 I had expected the operation to be painful ...
- 4 I hadn't thought of cooking rabbit ...
- 5 He hadn't meant to insult her ... (or He hadn't meant it to be an insult to her ...)

#### **UNIT 6**

#### 6.1

- 1 a 's (has) been staying ('has stayed' is also possible)
  - b 've (have) stayed
- 2 a have been stopping ('have stopped' is also possible)
  - b has stopped
- 3 a haven't read
  - b 've (have) been reading ('have read' is also possible)
- 4 a has been giving ('has given' is also possible)
  - b has given
- 5 a haven't swum
  - b 've (have) been swimming
- 6 a have been putting ('have put' is also possible)
  - b has (or 'have') put
- 8 a has disappeared
  - b have been disappearing ('have disappeared' is also possible)

## 6.2

- a
- 1 has been claiming has claimed
- 2 have been dying died
- 3 have been making ✓ ('have made' is also possible)
- 4 have been producing 've (have) produced
- 5 have been awarding awarded
- 6 have been looking ✓ ('have looked' and 'looked' are also possible)
- 7 have also been exploring \( \sqrt{} \) ('have also explored' and 'also explored' are also possible)
- 8 has been making has / have made / made
- Ь
- 1 has been investing invested
- 2 has been announcing has announced
- 3 has been increasing ✓ ('has increased' is also possible)
- 4 has been running ✓ ('has run' is also possible)
- 5 has been neglecting ✓ ('has neglected' is also possible)
- 6 has been cutting ✓ ('has cut' is also possible)
- 7 have been finding have found

- 8 have been planning ✓ ('have planned' is also possible)
- 9 have been speaking spoke
- 10 have also been writing have also written / also wrote

#### **UNIT 7**

#### 71

- 1 a had only been working ('had only worked' is also possible)
  - b had finally worked
- 2 a had carried
  - b had been carrying ('had carried' is also possible)
- 3 a had applied
  - b had been applying ('had applied' is also possible)
- 4 a had flown
  - b had been flying

#### 7.2

- 1 had been trying ('had tried' is also possible)
- 2 had visited
- 3 had cost
- 4 had been writing ('had written'is also possible)
- 5 had been worrying ('had worried' is also possible)
- 6 had arrived
- 7 had always believed
- 8 had been talking

The past continuous is more likely in 8 (We were talking  $\dots$ ).

#### 7.3

- 1 /
- 2 had fallen
- 3 ✓ (Note that 'What happened?' is also possible)
- 4 had just heard
- 5 🗸
- 6 had been fishing
- 7 /
- 8 hadn't wanted
- 9 /
- 10 had collapsed

#### **UNIT 8**

#### 81

The most likely verbs and tenses are given.

- 2 got / arrived
- 3 feel / am feeling (Present simple and present continuous have a similar meaning here.)
- 4 go
- 5 know
- 6 spent
- 7 texted
- 8 was waiting
- 10 felt / was feeling (Past simple and past continuous have a similar meaning here.)

- 11 got
- 12 enjoys / is enjoying (Present simple and present continuous have a similar meaning here, although the present continuous may suggest that she is not living in Adelaide permanently.)
- 13 is looking
- 14 seems
- 15 doesn't get on / isn't getting on (Present simple and present continuous have a similar meaning here, although the present continuous suggests that this is a temporary problem.)
- 16 complain / are constantly complaining (Note the word order.)
- 17 is starting
- 18 asked
- 19 am looking
- 20 hear / heard (Present simple and past simple have a similar meaning here.)

#### 8.2

The most likely tenses are given.

- 2 said ('has said' is also possible, but less likely here)
- 3 had heard (heard)
- 4 returned (had returned)
- 5 had come (came)
- 6 was (had been)
- 7 left
- 8 appointed
- 9 finished
- 10 have won
- 11 accused
- 12 has disappointed
- 13 has spent

#### 8.3

- 1 'Has he had' or 'Has he been having' are more likely
- 2 /
- 3 thought (has thought)
- 4 had been working (has been working)
- 5 had been trying
- 6 did you go
- 7 heard
- 8 ✓ ('went' is also possible)
- 9 ✓ ('checked' is also possible)
- 10 have said / said
- 11 ✓ ('have given' is also possible)
- 12 have told ('told' is also possible)

## UNIT 9

#### 9.1

- 2 ✓ (prediction based on opinion / past experience)
- 3 (decision made at moment of speaking)
- 4 -Will you take up- Are you going to take up (prediction based on present evidence)
- 5 ✓ (prediction based on opinion / past experience)

- 6 <del>'ll be-</del>'s going to be (decision already made)
- 7 <u>'ll have</u> 're going to have (prediction based on present evidence)
- 8 <del>'ll sell</del>'re going to sell (prediction based on present evidence)
- 9 'll cut 'm going to cut (decision already made)
- 10 <u>'ll be sick</u> 's going to be sick (prediction based on present evidence); 'll feel ✓ (prediction based on opinion / past experience)
- 11 <u>'Il-leave-</u>'m going to leave (decision already made); will you tell ✓ (or 'are you going to tell'; asking about something planned); 'Il try ✓ (decision made at moment of speaking)
- 12 will be ✓ (prediction based on opinion); will rain- 's going to rain (prediction based on evidence) 'll sort out ✓ (decision made at moment of speaking)
- 13 (decision made at moment of speaking)
- 14 ✓ (decision made at moment of speaking)
- 15 ✓ (prediction based on opinion / past experience)
- 16 <u>'ll build</u> 'm going to build (decision already made)

#### 9.2

Example verbs are given

- 2 're going to plant (main clause action does not depend on action in the ifclause)
- 3 'll hurt / 're going to hurt (conditional negative)
- 4 will ... buy (request)
- 5 will start / stop (logical consequence)
- 6 'm going to see (main clause action does not depend on action in the ifclause)
- 7 'll be sacked / 's going to be sacked (conditional – negative)
- 8 'll hear (ability)

#### **UNIT 10**

#### 10.1

- 1 get (fixed event; 'will get' is also possible)
- 2 will look after (less routine arrangement)
- 3 rains (with 'in case')
- 4 will give out (less routine arrangement)
- 5 goes (fixed event; 'will go' is also possible)
- 6 starts (fixed event; 'will start' is also possible)
- 7 stops (with 'provided')
- 8 change (with 'what if')
- 9 will miss (prediction)
- 10 lend (with 'unless')

- 11 play (or 'plays') (fixed event; 'will play' is also possible)
- 12 will accept (prediction)
- 13 want (with 'supposing')
- 14 read (with 'by the time')

#### 10.2

- 1 (c) is leaving (prediction perhaps based on opinion, experience or present evidence). 'Will leave' and 'is going to leave' have a similar meaning here.
- 2 (a) will buy- (planned future event). 'I'm going to buy' suggests an intention without a definite arrangement; 'I'm buying' suggests a definite arrangement – perhaps the speaker has bought the car and is simply picking it up next week.
- 3 (b) -are going to pick-; (c) -are picking-(offer; decision made at moment of speaking)
- 4 (a) -will drive- (planned future event). "I'm going to drive' suggests a personal intention; "I'm driving' suggests a more definite arrangement – perhaps the speaker has been told to go there by their employer.
- 5 (c) -is-cutting- (permanent future situation). 'Will cut' and 'is going to cut' have a similar meaning here.
- 6 (b) am going to call; (c) am calling (promise; decision made at time of speaking)
- 7 (a) -will serve- (planned future event). As the present continuous for the future suggests a definite arrangement, using 'I am serving lunch' in this context suggests '... and I am not changing what I plan to do', perhaps showing some irritation or annoyance.
- 8 (c) -are starving (no control over predicted event). 'Will starve' and 'are going to starve' have a similar meaning here. However, as 'will' is often used to talk about future facts, it may express more certainty in this context.

#### 10.3

1

- 1 is joining ✓ joins ✗ (will join ✓ is going to join ✓)
- 2 are liking X like X (will like ✓ are going to like ✓)
- 3 is coming ✓ comes ✓ (will come ✓ [but present continuous, present simple or' be going to' are more natural here] is going to come ✓)
- 4 is giving X gives X (will give ✓ is going to give X)

2

1 is / are sacking ✓ sack ✗ (will sack ✓ [but present continuous or 'be going to' are more natural here] is / are going to sack ✓)

- 2 are closing X close ✓ (will close X are going to close X)
- 3 are building ✓ build ✗ (will build ✓ but present continuous or 'be going to' are more natural here] are going to build 1)
- 4 are seeing X see X (will see ✓ are going to see X)

#### **UNIT 11**

#### 11.1

- 1 a will be leaving ('will leave' is also possible)
  - b will leave
- 2 a Will you be working ('Will you work' is also possible)
- 3 a won't be using ('won't use' is also possible)
  - b won't use
- 4 a 'll (will) give
  - b will be giving ('will give' is also possible)
- 5 a won't move
  - b will be moving ('will move' is also possible)

#### 11.2

- 2 If the company is making a profit by the end of the year then we will have achieved the objective we set ourselves when we took over.
- 3 In two years' time Morneau will have been acting for 50 years, and shows no sign of retiring from the theatre. ('will have acted' is also possible)
- 4 I am confident that I will have finished the report before the end of the week.
- 5 This book on Proust is really difficult. On Saturday I will have been reading it for a month, and I'm still only half way.
- 6 As delegates who arrived early will have been discovering, there have been some late changes to the conference programme. ('will have discovered' is also possible)
- 7 I trust that you will have found the conference of some interest.

- 1 will have closed
- 2 will be enjoying
- 3 will be leaving
- 4 will be arriving
- 5 will have been
- 6 will have been planning
- 7 won't be spending
- 8 will be keeping
- 9 will all be going

#### **UNIT 12**

1 is to be staged ('will be staged' is also possible)

- 2 will stop
- 3 is to merge / is to be merged ('will merge' or 'will be merged' are also possible)
- 4 will rise
- 5 is to be replaced ('will be replaced' is also possible)
- 6 is to retire; is to be succeeded ('will retire' and 'will be succeeded' are also possible)
- 7 will become
- 8 are to receive ('will receive' is also
- 9 are to be created ('will be created' is also possible)
- 10 will increase

#### 12 2

- 1 are to have (see section B)
- 2 is to start / is about to start (A/C)
- 3 wins (B)
- 4 enjoy (B)
- 5 'm just about to go (C)
- recovers (B)
- is to keep (B)
- 8 is to resign / is about to resign (C) ('is about to resign' emphasises that he will resign very soon)
- 9 are about to get (C)
- 10 is to be improved (B)

#### **UNIT 13**

#### 13.1

- 3 due to return
- 4 sure to provide
- 5 set to launch
- on the verge of becoming
- on the point of signing
- 8 sure to face
- 9 due to undergo
- 10 on the verge of quitting
- 11 set to make
- 12 on the brink of going

#### 13.2

- 2 propose / 'm proposing to deal
- expect / 're expecting to finish
- 4 aim / 'm aiming to study
- 5 resolves to give up
- 6 guarantee to find
- 7 intend / 'm intending to move

#### 13 3

- 2 shan't / won't ('won't' is more natural)
- 3 will
- 4 shall / will
- 5 won't

## **UNIT 14**

#### 141

- 1 was going to do
- 2 will be

- 4 would have shown ('had shown you' is also possible)
- 5 ✓ ('was to be announced' is also possible)
- 6 is about to start
- 8 was supposed; was about to ask
- 9 ✓ ('am going to see' is also possible)
- 10 is to be used
- 11 ✓ ('were meeting' is also possible)
- 12 would cause

Past or present tense forms are possible in 5, 9 and 11.

## 14.2

1	a	6	b
2	Ь	7	a
3	a	8	a
4	b	9	b
5	а	10	а

#### **UNIT 15**

- 1 can (A: before passive)
- 2 were able to (B: single past achievement)
- 3 could / were able to (A)
- 4 Could you (B: with 'understand' 'could' is more natural)
- 5 can't (A: 'know how to')
- 6 can (A: happening as speaking)
- 7 were able to (B: single past achievement)
- 8 could hardly (B: with 'hardly 'could' is more natural)
- 9 could (B: with 'smell' 'could' is more natural)
- 10 Can you / Are you able to (A)
- 11 can (A: before passive)
- 12 was able to (B: single past achievement)
- 13 couldn't (B: negative sentence; 'couldn't' is more natural)
- 14 was able to (B: single past achievement)

- can couldn't
- 3 can
- 4 can't
- 5 couldn't / weren't allowed to
- 6 can't
- were allowed to
- Ь
- wasn't allowed to / couldn't
- 3 was allowed to
- 4 could
- 5 could
- 6 can't 7 was allowed to

#### **UNIT 16**

#### 16.1

- 1 will spend
- 2 had
- 3 would exercise
- 4 found
- 5 will cause
- 6 would rarely sit
- 7 will know
- 8 will probably be / would probably be

#### 16.2

- 1 X used to ✓ (changed past state)
- 2 \( \( \text{'used to' is also possible} \)
- 3 X used to ✓ (changed past state)
- 4 ✓ ('would' is not possible) (changed past state)
- 5 ✓ ('would' is also possible)
- 6 ✗ met ✓ (number of times specified)

#### 16.3

- 1 will have watched
- 2 would have approved
- 3 would have hurt
- 4 will have heard
- 5 would have preferred
- 6 will / would have noticed
- 7 would have bought

#### 16.4

#### Example answers

- B: Well, if you will drive everywhere instead of walking, I'm not surprised.
- 2 B: Well, if you *will* spend so much time online, I'm not surprised.
- 3 B: Well, if you will wear a thick jumper when it's 30 degrees, it's not surprising.

#### **UNIT 17**

#### 17.1

- 1 might (more likely than 'may')
- 2 may
- 3 Are you likely to ... (possible answer; 'Might you ...' would be rather formal)
- 4 might (more likely than 'may')
- 5 Could (possible answer; 'Might' would be rather formal)
- 6 may
- 7 may (more likely than 'might')

#### 17.2

- 1 might have enjoyed (E: possible event in the past)
- 2 might have been trying (E: possible activity that went on over a period of time)
- 3 might be coming (E: possible event in the future)
- 4 might require (C: typically the case in the past)
- 5 may be moving (E: possible event in the future)
- 6 may have improved (E: possible event in the future)

- 7 might be imprisoned (C: typically the case in the past)
- 8 may have been exaggerating (E: possible activity that went on over a period of time)
- 9 might be punished (C: typically the case in the past; passive)
- 10 may have told (E: possible event in the past)

#### 17.3

#### Possible answers

- 1 ... at least he's in tune.
- 2 ... it's never broken down.
- 3 ... she has a very wide vocabulary.
- 5 You may / might not agree with him, ...
- 6 She may / might not express her feelings openly, ...
- 7 It may / might not sound very exciting,

#### **UNIT 18**

#### 18.1

- 1 must have found
- 2 must be
- 3 must be starting ('must be going to start' and 'must start' are also possible)
- 4 must have had to work ('must have worked' is also possible)
- 5 must have changed
- 6 must have to show
- 7 must be taking ('must have taken' is also possible)
- 8 must be

#### 18.2

- 2 Hannah rarely has to be asked to tidy her room.
- 3 Have we got to hand in the homework tomorrow? ('Do we have to ...' is also possible)
- 4 I didn't have to go to the hospital after all.
- 5 Did Ben have to go alone?
- 6 Adam sometimes has to start work at 6:30. ('Adam has sometimes got to start work ...' is also possible)
- 7 The college has to be extended to accommodate the growing number of students. ('has got to be extended' is also possible, but less likely in a formal context)
- 8 We may / might have to cancel our holiday because my mother is ill.

## 18.3

- 1 /
- 2 -always have got to pull always have to pull
- 3 Have you to bang. Do you have to bang ('Must you bang ...' is also possible but less likely)
- 4 /

- 5 must have to squeeze must have had to squeeze / must have squeezed
- 6 must leave must have left
- 1
- 8 mustn't wait didn't have to wait
- 9 must be disturbed must have been disturbed
- 10 I've to get I've got to get / I have to get (Note that some people use 'I've to get' in informal language, but others think this is incorrect.)
- 11 🗸
- 12 must have to get may have to get
- 13 <del>I've to go</del> I must go / I have to go / I've got to go
- 14 must get must be getting
- 15 /
- 16 have to get must get (more likely)
  The three common expressions with 'must'
  are 'I must say ...', 'I must admit ...' (both
  used to emphasise the following point),
  and 'needs must' (meaning if something
  is necessary I will do it, even though I may
  not want to).

#### **UNIT 19**

#### 19.1

- 1 I'll give you a lift to the station so you needn't worry / bother about booking a taxi.
- 2 The questions are in the book so you needn't bother to copy them down.
- 3 All the windows have screens so you needn't panic / worry about being bitten by mosquitoes.
- 4 Our software provides full computer security so you needn't concern yourself with viruses.
- 5 The new tax laws don't come into force until next year so you needn't change the details on the form.

#### 19.2

- 2 We need only (or We only need ...) look at the rainfall figures to see the seriousness of the problem. (less formally We only need to look at ...)
- 3 With such a lead in the opinion polls the Democrats need hardly bother (or ... the Democrats hardly need bother) campaigning before the election. (less formally ... the Democrats hardly need to bother campaigning ...)
- 4 No one need know who paid the ransom to the kidnappers. (*less formally* No one needs to know who paid ...)
- 5 After such a huge lottery win, he need never work again. (less formally ... he never needs to work again.)

- 1 don't need to
- 2 needn't / don't need to

- 3 needn't / don't need to
- 4 don't need to
- 5 needn't / don't need to
- 6 don't need to

#### 19.4

- 1 You needn't worry ...
- 2 Do we need to make ... is more likely
- 3 ... needn't be a problem ...
- 4 ./
- 5 I need hardly tell you ..., or less formally I hardly need (to) tell you ...
- 6 some people would prefer 'needn't' in this context (see C)
- 7 /
- 8 ... needn't mean ...

## **UNIT 20**

#### 20:

- 1 should / ought to win (should / ought to have won is also possible)
- 2 should I put (more likely than ... ought I to put ...; should I have put is also possible)
- 3 should / ought to have arrived (should / ought to arrive is also possible)
- 4 should be sent (*more likely than* ought to be sent)
- 5 should be removed (more likely than ought to be removed)
- 6 should / ought to wear
- 7 should / ought to have resigned
- 8 Should we answer (*more likely than* Ought we to answer ...; Should we have answered *is also possible*)
- 9 should go (ought to is not possible)
- 10 should / ought to be (should / ought to have been is also possible)

#### 20.2

- 1 should or must; 'must' gives a stronger recommendation
- 2 must
- 3 must
- 4 should or must; 'must' gives stronger advice and is perhaps more likely than 'should' in this context
- 5 should or must; 'must' gives a stronger recommendation
- 6 must
- (2, 3 and 6 include logical conclusions, so we use 'must' not 'should')

#### 20.3

- 1 should must
- 2 /
- 3 -shall should / ought to
- 4 shouldn't 'd better not
- 5 -'d better should / ought to
- 6 -had better not- shouldn't / ought not to be
- 7 /
- 8 🗸
- 9 /
- 10 had better should / ought to

#### UNIT 21

#### 21.1

1 (to be) 6 to be 2 to be 7 to be 3 to be 8 to be 4 (to be) 9 (to be) 5 (to be) 10 (to be)

#### 21.2

- 1 get
- 2 became
- 3 become (more likely than 'get' in a formal context)
- 4 become
- 5 get
- 6 get (more likely than 'become' in an informal context)
- 7 became
- 8 got

#### 21.3

- 2 went dead 6 came to like 3 went red 7 go blind 4 get to know 8 went bust
- 5 get tired

#### 21.4

- 1 go wrong
- 2 seemed to be awake
- 3 /
- 4 seemed to be taking
- 5 hadn't got dressed
- 6 ✓ ('be ill' would also be possible)
- 7 went missing
- 8 to get worried
- 9 becoming obvious
- 10 🗸

### **UNIT 22**

#### 22.1

- 2 The main stadium has been designed to accommodate many different sports.
- 3 The temporary stands will be taken down after the Games.
- 4 The basketball arena will have been completed by the end of May.
- 5 The rowing competition is being held on the River Nene.
- 6 The athletics track had been completed (or was completed) only a year after the city got the Olympics.
- 7 The handball venue was being used as a warehouse until a year ago.
- 8 The badminton arena should have been finished by now.

#### 22.2

- 2 The appointment of a new managing director will be made next week.
- 3 Accusations of corruption in the local council have been made. / Accusations of corruption have been made against the local council.
- 4 The demolition of the building was completed in only two days.

- 5 The presentation of the trophy will be made after the speeches.
- 6 Resistance from local residents to the proposed new industrial area will certainly be expected.

#### 22.3

- 2 is (being) ruled (or more naturally 'is now (being) ruled')
- 3 are disappearing / have disappeared
- 4 fear
- 5 is estimated / has been estimated
- 6 will be turned into
- 7 is using / has used / has been using
- 8 to be abandoned
- 9 be affected
- 10 expect / are expecting
- 11 are (being) destroyed

#### UNIT 23

#### 231

- 2 She was offered a second-hand bicycle. / A second-hand bicycle was offered (to) her.
- 3 Improvements have been proposed to the developers.
- 4 Some interesting changes were suggested to me.
- 5 He was awarded a prize. / A prize was awarded to him.
- 6 The President's arrival will be announced to the waiting journalists.
- 7 The password had been mentioned to the thieves.
- 8 I have been lent some skis. / Some skis have been lent to me.
- 9 I am being sent a lot of spam emails. / A lot of spam emails are being sent to
- 10 The changes are going to be explained to the students.

#### 23.2

- 2 introduced; I was introduced to Mrs Rossi by Tony at his birthday party. (or ... Mrs Rossi at Tony's birthday party.)
- 3 seen; Has Chris been seen (by anyone) this morning?
- 4 (have) appointed; Sven Larsen has been appointed (or was appointed) Regional Sales Director for Scandinavia.
- 5 will demonstrate; I am certain that Sarah's suitability as company director will be demonstrated to those who still have any doubt.
- 6 declared (or have declared); Alan Watson was declared (or has been declared) winner of the election after a recount.

- 2 The product was phased out (by the company) over a period of three years.
- 3 No passive
- 4 Many people have been deprived of the right to vote (by the decision).

- 5 No passive
- 6 No passive
- 7 The last two items were held over (by the chairperson) until the next committee meeting.
- 8 Walkers were prevented from crossing the field after it was fenced off (by the farmer).

#### **UNIT 24**

#### 24.1

- 2 denied being involved
- 3 was left holding
- 4 remembered being bitten
- 5 avoided being taken
- 6 was observed hiding
- 7 was sent tumbling
- 8 faced being expelled
- 9 was found wandering
- 10 resented being given

#### 24.2

- 2 Emil and Laura could be heard arguing next door.
- 3 Ollie hated being teased by the other children.
- 4 The burglar was observed entering the museum through a window.
- 5 The pop concert is expected to attract over 20,000 people.
- 6 She didn't mind being criticised.
- 7 I was required to complete two copies of the customs declaration.
- 8 Mrs Dee was caught shoplifting.

#### 24.3

- 2 Omar hopes to be selected by the team captain. (different meaning)
- 3 Kathy arranged to be taken to the station by Alastair. (different meaning)
- 4 Galdós has come to be recognised as one of Spain's greatest novelists by critics. (corresponding meaning)
- 5 Holidaymakers continue to be attracted to the south coast. (corresponding meaning)
- 6 The Finance Minister has agreed to be interviewed by Harris. (different meaning)

#### **UNIT 25**

#### 25.1

- 1 agreed
- 2 proposed / shown
- 3 hoped / explained
- 4 decided
- 5 explained
- 6 established / revealed
- 7 intended
- 8 planned
- 9 assumed / thought
- 10 discovered

#### 25.2

2 X

- 3 It has been discovered that there is water on Mars.
- 4 It is believed that terrorists are operating in Berlin.
- 5 It is expected that the moon astronauts will return (to Earth) today.
- 6 It has been revealed that ex-President Julius is / was a spy.

#### 7 X

- 8 It is said that the King is making a good recovery.
- 9 It has been established that a restaurant is / was the source of a food poisoning outbreak.
- 10 X

#### 25.3

- 2 It is not thought that the fault is serious. (or It is thought that the fault is not serious.) / The fault is not thought to be serious.
- 3 It is expected that it will take several weeks to correct the fault. (or It is expected that the fault will take several weeks to correct.) / The fault is expected to take several weeks to correct.
- 4 It has been decided to postpone the next rocket launch.
- 5 It is suggested that the next launch should take place in May.

#### **UNIT 26**

#### 26.1

- 1 whom
- 2 Which
- 3 Which
- 4 Which
- 5 Whom / Who ('Whom' is very formal)
- 6 Who
- 7 Which / Who
- 8 Who

#### 26.2

- 1 are
- 2 teaches (whether or not the expected answer is one person or two)
- 3 is
- 4 makes
- 5 are / is
- 6 has

#### 26.3

- 2 What + d
- 3 What / How + b
- 4 How + h
- 5 What + i
- 6 How + a or g
- 7 How + e or i
- 8 What + f
- 9 What / How + c
- 10 What + e or i

### 26.4

- 1 Whose
- 2 /

- 3 whose
- 4 Who lives is more likely
- 5 Who's
- 7 Which is more likely
- 8 Which is more likely
- 9 To whose address?
- 10 ✓ (What have is also possible)

## **UNIT 27**

#### 27.1

Possible answers are given

- 2 Didn't you get my email saying I'd be on holiday?
- 3 Couldn't you get a babysitter?
- 4 But weren't you supposed to do that last night?
- 5 Can't you leave it outside?
- 6 Wouldn't you rather go by plane?

#### 272

- 2 Haven't you any interest in maths at all? (or Don't you have any interest in maths at all?) Have you no interest in maths at all? (or Do you have no interest in maths at all?)
- 3 Couldn't you find anywhere else to sleep? Could you find nowhere else to sleep? (or Could you not find anywhere else to sleep?)
- 4 Can't you remember anything about the accident? Can you remember nothing about the accident? (or Can you not remember anything about the accident?)
- 5 Why don't I ever do well in exams? Why do I never do well in exams?
- 6 Isn't there anybody you can ask for help? Is there nobody you can ask for help?

#### 272

- 2 He's leaving when? / He's doing what? / He's what?
- 3 He'll be away for how long? / He'll what?
- 4 It'll cost how much? / It'll what?
- 5 He's sold (his) what? / He's done what? / He's what?
- 6 He's going climbing where? / He's doing what? / He's what?

- 1 -do-you not- Why don't you (C)
- Who do you expect that will read your blog? (F)
- 3 / (F)
- 4 Was not Wasn't (D)
- 5 / (C)
- 6 What did you say that is in these biscuits? (F)
- 7 🗸 (F)
- 3 -did not- didn't (C)

#### **UNIT 28**

#### 28.1

- 2 answered (the phone)
- 3 eat (dinner)
- 4 thanked Val
- 5 washed (herself)
- 6 brushed her hair
- 7 changed (her clothes)
- 8 put on some makeup
- 9 drove (her car)
- 10 reached their house
- 11 waved (her hand)
- 12 parked (her car)
- 13 cooking (dinner)
- 14 to pick some flowers
- 15 studying (French)
- 16 mention her
- 17 introduce you
- 18 enjoyed the evening
- 19 afford it
- 20 wash up (the dishes)
- 21 invite Val and Tom

#### 28.2

- culminated in the discovery of penicillin.
- ... differentiate between fantasy and reality.
- 4 ... specialises in seafood.
- 5 ... inflicted a surprise defeat on ...
- 6 ... attributed his success to ...
- 7 ... mistook the black car for ...
- 8 ... based her new novel on ...

### 28.3

Example adjectives are given

- 2 satisfied; She declared herself to be satisfied with the result. / She declared that she was / is satisfied with the result.
- 3 inedible; They considered the food to be inedible. / They considered that the food was / is inedible.
- 4 reliable; I have always found him to be reliable. / I have always found that he was / is reliable.
- 5 happy; We believed her to be happy at school. / We believed that she was / is happy at school.

## **UNIT 29**

#### 29.1

In some cases other tenses are possible

- 2 I have to choose his clothes for him.
- 3 Can you take this present for / to her?
- 4 ... pass it to me ...
- 5 ... we sold all the carpets to him as well. ('... we offered all the carpets to him ...' is also possible)
- 6 He teaches sports to disabled children.
- 7 Can you read these instructions to / for me, please?

- 8 Jane posted the letter for me ... ('Jane took the letter for me ...'is also possible)
- 9 I offered my old bike to him ...
- 10 Can you save some dinner for me, please?

#### 29.2

- He kindly collected some library books for me.
- 2 He admitted his error to his colleagues.
- 3 /
- 4 Can I ask you a favour?
- 5 A special ticket allows (people) entry to all the museums in the city.
- 6 1

#### 29.3

- 2 his sister to me; me her photograph / her photograph to me
- 3 the problem to our teacher; us another half an hour
- 4 him a paper aeroplane / a paper aeroplane for him; his broken car for him; him three bedtime stories / three bedtime stories to (or for) him
- 5 you a fortune; me the money / the money to me
- 6 Ben a drink / a drink for Ben; the glass to him / him the glass

#### UNIT 30

#### 30.1

- 2 We don't approve of the developer's locating the factory so close to houses.
- 3 X
- 4 X (not a verb of [dis]liking or thinking)
- 5 It is difficult to imagine his accepting the decision without any objection.
- 6 No one in the crowd that day will forget Ashe's fighting so hard to win the match.
- 7 I remember their arguing a great deal when they were children.
- 8 X (not a verb of [dis]liking or thinking)

#### 30.2

- 2 approve of children wearing
- 3 end by summarising
- 4 discouraged me from going
- 5 rely on Sophie turning up
- 6 adapt to living / adapt to dealing with

#### 30.3

- 1 burst (a single, short event)
- 2 watching (the context suggests that Carl was being watched before he saw the watcher; in other words, he didn't see the whole of the event)
- 3 sting ('stinging' is also possible, but this would suggest that the wasp stung several times)
- 4 feeding (this refers to a repeated event)

#### 30 4

- 2 + e The new course is intended to help people (to) understand modern art.
- 3 + a Scientists hope the new drug will help (them) (to) prevent hay fever.
- 4 +f We didn't agree with the decision, but we didn't dare (to) protest against it.
- 5 + d When Ethan arrives, have him wait outside my office.
   6 + c The dial on the left lets you.
- 6 + c The dial on the left lets you control the speed of the fan.
- 7 + g Nacho is so rude! How dare he invite Ana to my party without asking!

#### **UNIT 31**

#### 311

- 1 a told b threatened
- 2 a offered b allowed
- 3 a managed b persuaded
- 4 a encouraged b agreed
- 5 a reminded b pretended
- 6 a hoped b advised

## 31.2

a

When I advertised **for** a website designer for the business, Greta got the job. But I've now learnt that you can't rely **on** Greta to do anything. I waited ages **for** her to come up with some initial ideas for the site, and then I had to keep on **at** her to do any more work on it. Finally, she said she couldn't do it after all.

Ь

Managers of the National Electricity
Company have appealed **to** workers to
end their strike, and have called **on** the
government to intervene in the dispute.
The Energy Minister said that he has
arranged **for** employers and employees
to meet next week, and he prevailed **on** strikers to return to work in the
meantime.

#### 31.3

- 1 agreed not to tell
- 2 are / were thought to have escaped
- 3 don't recall seeing / don't recall having seen (similar meanings)
- 4 denies / denied having received *or* denies / denied receiving (similar meanings)
- 5 asked not to be named
- 6 didn't feel like walking
- 7 seems to have disappeared
- 8 is believed to have emerged

#### UNIT 32

#### 32.1

The most likely reporting verbs are given in the answers, but others are possible.

- 2 'Why don't we stop for a coffee?' she suggested.
- 3 'All right, Georgia, it was me,' he confessed.

- 4 'My novel is even more exciting than an Agatha Christie thriller,' she boasted.
- 5 'I always carry two umbrellas with me because I'm always losing them,' explained Lena. / ... Lena explained.
- 6 'Oh, no, it's raining again,' grumbled Matt. / ... Matt grumbled.
- 7 'Good morning, Miss Novak,' chorused the children. / ... the children chorused.
- 8 'Have I done the right thing?' I wondered.

#### 32.2

- 2 threatened not to repay
- 3 didn't feel could (more likely than He felt that he couldn't ask his parents to help him again.)
- 4 insisted wasn't (or hadn't been)
- 5 announced wasn't going
- 6 didn't expect to be (more likely than He expected his mother not to be angry.)
- 7 didn't think would (more likely than She thought Adam wouldn't mind waiting.)
- 8 promised wouldn't

#### 32.3

- 1 'how I heard about the job' is also possible
- 2 what my long-term career plans were / what were my long-term career plans
- 3 how many languages I spoke / speak
- 4 where I (had) learnt / learned Chinese
- 5 if / whether I could use a spreadsheet
- 6 if / whether I had organised international conferences before
- 7 if / whether I would be willing to live overseas for periods of time
- 8 when I can / could start work

#### **UNIT 33**

#### 33:

- 1 advised
- 2 assured / promised
- 3 warned
- 4 inform / teach
- 5 have shown
- 6 has reassured / has advised
- 7 promised

#### 33.2

- 2 X
- 3 The judge thought his explanation to be unconvincing.
- 4 I expected her plans to fail.
- 5 X
- 6 Lucas acknowledged his chances of winning the race to be slim.
- 7 We found the rugby supporters to be very well behaved.
- 8 X

#### 33.3

Likely answers are given

- 1 complained to
- 2 complained to; mentioned to; announced to
- 3 joked with; announced to; mentioned to
- 4 announced to
- 5 requires of
- 6 disagreed with
- 7 mention to

#### 33.4

Possible necessary objects are given in bold

- 1 has warned that they
- 2 explained to employees that
- 3 confessed to her audience that
- 4 denied that management
- 5 replied that an announcement
- 6 reassured employees / them that
- 7 went on to complain that government help
- 8 demanded of ministers that ('demanded that ministers provide' would also be possible and less formal)
- 9 asked of staff that ('asked staff to continue' would also be possible and less formal)
- 10 reassured staff / them that Note that alternatives without' that' (1 has warned they, 2 explained to employees, etc.) are grammatical, but less likely in a formal written context.

#### **UNIT 34**

## 34.1

Added objects are in bold

- 2 + j He took my hands and showed me how / where to hold the golf club properly.
- 3 + g I explained carefully so that the students understood *what* they had to do in the test.
- 4 + i Anna was new in the office and I had to keep reminding **her** who everyone was.
- 5 + b I saw Sarah leave the building, but I didn't notice *where* she went after
- 6 + e When I saw Hugo alone at the party I wondered why Helen wasn't with him.
- 7 + h As we walked over the hills the guide warned us where / when the path was dangerous.
- 8 + a After I'd dismantled the motor I couldn't remember *how* to fit the parts back together.
- 9 + f To win a prize you had to guess how many sweets were in the jar.
- 10 + c As the guests came in Diego told **them** where to put their coats.

#### 34.2

1 debating 4 choose

2 discuss / ask 5 decide

3 considering

## 34.3

The villagers warned **me** what the conditions were like at higher altitudes, and advised **me** to take enough food for a week. There was some discussion through the day as **to** whether the snow would arrive before my descent from the mountain, but I never imagined how hard the conditions would be. In the morning they showed me (**the way / how:** one of these must be deleted) to get to the track up the mountain.

When the snow started falling it was very light, and I couldn't decide -if- whether to carry on or go back down. Soon, however, I couldn't see where to go.

I couldn't see where to go.
I wondered if whether to retrace my steps and try to find the track again, but by the time I decided whether that I should go back, the track had disappeared. As the snow got heavier I began to realise whether that my life was in danger. Fortunately, my years in the Andes had taught me what to do in extreme conditions. I knew that there was a shepherd's hut somewhere on this side of the mountain that I could shelter in, but I didn't know that whether it was nearby or miles away.

#### **UNIT 35**

#### 35.1

- 2 She alleged that Markus had stolen / stole jewellery from her house.
- 3 She estimated that the vase was ('is' is also possible) around 250 years old.
- 4 She repeated that she had already seen the film.
- 5 She conceded that perhaps she treated / had treated Lara unkindly.
- 6 She recalled that Wilma's greatgrandmother was / had been from Spain.

#### 35.2

1 have solved 4 understand 2 states 5 looks

3 has 6 is/was

### 35.3

1 When I mentioned to Nokes that he had been seen (or was seen) in a local shop last Monday, he protested that he -is- was (or had been) at home all day. He swears that he -didn't own-doesn't own a blue Ford Focus. He claimed that he had been (or went) to the paint factory two weeks ago to look for work. Nokes alleges that he is a good friend of Jamie Barnes.

He insisted that he didn't telephone (or hadn't telephoned) Barnes last Monday morning. When I pointed out to Nokes that a large quantity of paint had been found (or was found) in his house, he replied that he is storing had been storing (or was storing) it for a friend.

2 At the beginning of the interview I reminded Barnes that he is (or was) entitled to have a lawyer present. He denied that he knew (or knows) anyone by the name of Daniel Nokes. Barnes confirmed that he is-had been (or was) in the area of the paint factory last Monday, but said that he is-visiting was visiting (or had been visiting) his mother. He admitted that he is-walking was walking (or had been walking) along New Street at around ten. He maintains that he wasis a very honest person and would never be involved in anything illegal.

#### **UNIT 36**

#### 36.1

The most likely answers are given. Possible objects are given in bold.

- He agreed to collect Declan from school.
- 3 He ordered us to be quiet.
- 4 He urged **me** to stay for a few more days.
- 5 He vowed to fight the ban on smoking in public places.
- 6 He expected / hoped to see Olivia at the party.
- 7 He asked me to lend him ten pounds. (or He asked to borrow ten pounds.)
- 8 He called on **the government** to do more to help the homeless.
- 9 He hoped / expected to avoid the heavy traffic (by leaving early).

#### 36.2

- 1 -suggested promised
- 2 ./
- 3 intended said / promised
- 4 insisted expected
- 5 -demanded- ordered
- 6 -wanted hoped
- 7 1
- 8 -offered-proposed / ordered

#### 36.3

Example answers

- 2 ... reducing bus and train fares.
- 3 ... seeing it.
- 4 ... using a good maps app.
- 5 ... going to the doctor.
- $6 \dots$  building it to the east of the city.
- 7 ... doing more exercise.
- 8 ... going for a long walk.

The verb 'propose' can be followed by a **to-infinitive** without an object (see A). For example:

- 2 To encourage people to use public transport the council proposed to reduce bus and train fares.
- 6 The city urgently needs a new airport, and the government proposes to build it to the east of the city.

#### **UNIT 37**

#### 37.1

- 1 will
- 5 couldn't
- 2 may / might
- 6 can / could
- 3 can
- 7 will / would
- 4 would

#### 37.2

- 2 She promised that she wouldn't be
- 3 He suggested that we could go to Paris for the weekend ...
- 4 She guaranteed that she could get me there in good time ...
- 5 He insisted that he would pay for the meal ...

Sentences 2 and 4 have alternatives with a *to-*infinitive clause:

- 2 She promised not to be late...
- 4 She guaranteed to get us there in good time...

#### 373

- 2 (that) she would be there this time.
- 3 had to be in the city centre by one ('must be' is also possible, but less natural)
- 4 asked where we should meet
- 5 mustn't forget to bring my student discount card

#### 374

- 2 She said that I could / can travel with them.
- 3 She said that she wouldn't answer his questions.
- 4 She said that Karl would / should / ought to be back soon.
- 5 She said that she may / might / could have to move to Milan.
- 6 She said that she couldn't / wouldn't accept that Jason is / was dishonest.
- 7 She said that Maria would / will be disappointed if we leave / left without seeing her.

#### **UNIT 38**

#### 38.1

- 2 He failed to address the question / issue of who would / should pay for the repairs to the building.
- 3 I was delighted to get an invitation to spend the holidays with them in Scotland.

- 4 I think it was P. T. Barnum who made the observation that there's (or was) no such thing as bad publicity.
- 5 Amazingly the police accepted Rudi's explanation that he had taken the wallet by mistake.
- 6 On the webinar they debated the issue / question of whether assisted suicide should be a criminal offence.
- 7 The letter from the company gave a final warning that I should pay the bill by the end of the week. / ... to pay the bill by the end of the week.
- 8 The government has broken its promise to reduce the rate of income tax. / ... that it would reduce the rate of income tax.
- 9 The positive reaction to my work gave me considerable encouragement to take up photography as a career.
- 10 Waiting passengers were angry when they heard the announcement that the flight was cancelled. (or ... had been cancelled).

#### 38.2

- 2 There has been a great deal of argument as to how to define poverty.
- 3 There have been months of speculation as to whether President Malik would stand again.
- 4 Scientists might come to a / some conclusion as to what their results imply.
- 5 There is still no definite explanation as to why the dinosaurs disappeared.

#### 38.3

- 1 unsure whether or not certain whether are also possible
- 2 dismissive of
- 3 adamant that
- 4 unsure how / not certain how
- 5 angry that / apologetic that
- 6 apologetic about
- 7 not certain when / unsure when
- 8 abusive to / towards
- 9 complimentary about
- 10 agreed that / adamant that

## **UNIT 39**

#### 39.1

The most likely answers are given

- 2 Lee urged that Mara Bianchi should be promoted to export manager.
- 3 Alice recommended that a sales representative should be sent to South Africa
- 4 Alice reported that the Centenary Bridge project should be completed by August next year.
- 5 Simon insisted that work schedules should be kept to.
- 6 Simon instructed that all monthly reports should be sent to him directly.

- 7 Alina suggested that web conferencing should be used for meetings to save money on air fares.
- 8 Alina declared that the company's head office should remain in London.
- 9 Nathan agreed that the company should sponsor the European chess league for the next three years.
- 10 Nathan announced that in future all claims for travel expenses should be made in US dollars.

#### 39.2

2	Yes	7	Yes
3	Yes	8	No
4	No	9	No
5	Yes	10	No
6	Yes		

#### 39.3

Possible adjectives are given in these answers

- 2 I am shocked that Kristina should behave so badly.
- 3 I am astounded that anyone should vote for him.
- 4 It is urgent that he should return home immediately.
- 5 I am amused that he should take his appearance so seriously.
- 6 I am upset that they should think I had cheated them.
- 7 It is appalling that they should be allowed to go free.
- 8 It is imperative that we should act now to avoid war.

#### **UNIT 40**

#### 40.1

- 2 -is- are
- 3 -remain-remains
- 4 /
- 5 -is- are
- 6 let lets
- 7 /
- 8 <del>are</del> is
- 9 are is
- 10 -have has
- 11 🗸
- 12 -is- are
- 13 add adds

#### 40.2

- 2 university refuse / refuses
- 3 audience ... is (A singular verb form is more likely here as the focus is on the audience as a whole rather than individual members.)
- 4 orchestra perform / performs
- 5 jury includes (A singular verb form is used here as 'include' focuses on the group as a whole rather than individual members.)

- 6 class have (A plural verb form is used as this is something the individuals did, emphasised by the use of 'all'.)
- 7 press presents / present
- 8 The United Nations has / have

#### 40.3

- 1 -come-comes
- 2 /
- 3 report reports
- 4 are is
- 5 /
- 6 1
- 7 <del>have</del> has
- 8 <del>are</del> is
- 9 
  √ ('... need to be kept ...' is also possible)
- 10 -are- is

## **UNIT 41**

#### 41.1

- 1
- b his early paintings remains / remain
- c the food tastes
- d Dr Jones's acquaintances knows / know
- 2
- a vegetarians is expected
- b medicines relieve
- c victims ... exceeds
- d museums in the capital charge
- 3
- a the pieces lasts / last
- b player tries
- c the cars are / is tested
- d these factors influence/influences

## 41.2

- 1 are; wants
- 2 think; has (more likely than 'have' in this formal context)
- 3 has / have: has
- 4 claim; constitutes (more likely than 'constitute' as 'the wreck of the ship and its cargo' constitute together, as a single item, a danger)
- 5 is / are (we use 'is' if we think of 'sausages and chips' as a single item); have; are / 's

#### UNIT 42

#### 42.1

- 1 ✓ ('are' is also possible)
- 2 /
- 3 have
- 4 ✓ ('were' is also possible)
- 5 go ('go' is much more likely than 'goes')
- 6 are
- 7 ✓ ('has' is also possible)
- 8 are
- 9 say

#### 42.2

- 1 (singular) is
- 2 (plural) are
- 3 (singular) is
- 4 (singular) is
- 5 (singular) is
- 6 (plural) provide / offer

#### 42.3

- 1 have; have; shop / shops
- 2 is ('are' is also possible, but less likely); expect / expects
- 3 is; blames / blame
- 4 was ('were' is also possible, but less likely); has / have
- 5 admit / admits; were; was
- 6 were; have
- 7 shows; is; believe
- 8 have; says / say; are

#### **UNIT 43**

#### 43.1

- 1 a /
  - b a computer programmer
  - c a film star
- 2 a 🗸
  - b girls' school
  - c the car door
  - d a cut on the / her head
- 3 a 🗸
  - b /
  - c a bottle of milk
  - d a packet of biscuits
  - e some toothpaste
  - f 🗸
- a 🗸
  - songs about pollution ('pollution songs' is not a well-known class of songs)
- 5 a tool shed
  - b spiders' webs / spider webs
- 6 a armchair
  - 5
  - c the 500-piece jigsaw puzzle
  - d glasses case

## 43.2

- 1 cover up
- 2 broken out
- 3 stopping over
- 4 get together
- 5 stopover (related to 3)
- 6 get-together (4)
- 7 cover-up (1)
- 8 outbreak (2)

- 2 middle-of-the-road
- 3 round-the-clock
- 4 step-by-step
- 5 once-in-a-lifetime
- 6 down-to-earth
- 7 man / woman-in-the-street (an alternative is 'man or woman in the street', usually without hyphens)
- 8 larger-than-life

#### **UNIT 44**

#### 44.1

- 1 an
- 2 a
- 3 an
- 4 a
- 5 a STEM
- 6 an
- 7 an
- 8 a
- 9 an
- 10 a
- a
- 11
- 12 an
- 13 an
- 14 a

#### 44.2

- 1 -one-a
- 2
- 3 a- one
- 4 -one-an
- 6 -one-a
- 7 -one- a ('one' would imply 'one and no more'; 'a' is more likely if this is a more general invitation to 'have some cake')
- 8 ('one' implies 'one and only one')
- 9 / (both 'one' and 'a' are possible)
- 10 -one- a
- 11 -one- a ('one' would emphasise the number and seems less likely than 'a' in this context)
- 12 ✓ (both 'one' and 'a' are possible)
- 13 -a- one
- 14 -one- a
- 15 -a one
- 16 ✓ (both 'one' and 'a' are possible)

1 one/a 7 one /a 2 one 8 an 9 one one one / an 10 one 5 a 11 one / a 12 A 6 one

#### **UNIT 45**

#### 45.1

- 1 a the world b a world
- 2 a a bright future b the future
- 3 a the past b a past
- 4 a a deserted beach
  - b the beach ('a beach' is also possible here, meaning a particular but unspecified beach)

## 45.2

- 1 a customer
- 2 the individual / an individual (similar meaning)
- 3 the car
- 4 The television
- 5 the smoker

#### 453

- 2 pleasure 7 a real pleasure 3 a sound 8 a shampoo / 4 shampoo shampoo
- 9 an iron 5 iron
- 6 Sound 10 conversation

#### **UNIT 46**

#### 461

- 1 an author
- 2 the a / minister
- 3 a Mac
- Not the Mariah Carey 4
- a Van Gogh
- 6
- the Nielsens 7
- 8 -the- a / Usain Bolt

- 1 a / the / ('a' suggests that there are a number of marketing advisers; 'the' or '-' indicate that there is only one)
- 2 the /-
- 3 the / -
- 4 the / (in journalism)
- 6 -:-
- 8 A/-

#### 46.3

- 1 the 5 (the) 6 (the) 2 (the) 3 (the) 7 the
- 8 the 4 the

#### 464

- 1 this/a
- 2 -
- 3 ('this' would be unlikely here as the paint is not the topic of what comes
- 4 the/-
- 5 a/-
- 6 a
- 7 the
- 8 a / this ('this' introduces the woman as the focus of the next part of the story)
- 9 the/-
- 10 the / -

## **UNIT 47**

#### 47.1

- 1 a Children (a general reference; specific children are not referred to)
  - b the children (a specific reference, probably to my/our children)
- 2 a the agriculture (a reference to the agriculture in a specific area)
  - b agriculture (a general reference)
- 3 a islands (reference to islands generally)
  - b The islands (reference to a specific group of islands)

- 4 a the holidays (specific reference; the holidays that are coming soon)
  - b Holidays (a general reference to holidays in this part of the world)
- 5 a rain (a general reference)
  - b the rain (reference to a specific, understood period of rain)
- 6 a the money (reference to a specific, understood sum of money)
  - b money (an observation on the effect of money generally)
- 7 a Parents (= a general reference)
  - b The parents (a specific reference to particular parents)
- 8 a the fire (reference to a specific fire)
  - b fire (a general reference)

#### 472

- 1 ('all afternoon' is more likely than 'all the afternoon')
- 2 a
- 3 the
- 4 the
- the
- the 8
- 9 the /- ('the winter' might imply 'the coming winter'. However, both 'winter' and 'the winter' might be a generalisation meaning 'any winter')
- 10 a

#### 473

- 1 an email
- 2 by car / by air
- 3 the air
- 4 the post / an email
- by post / by email
- the car
- by email
- 8 by air

## **UNIT 48**

#### 48.1

- some books
- some
- some
- 4 1
- Some sports
- 6 1
- 8 Some children

#### 48.2

Suggested answers are given

- 2 Some 30% of all city buses have been found to be unsafe.
- 3 An unexploded bomb has been found some five miles from the centre of Newham.
- 4 Some 19% of electricity will come from wind energy by 2030.
- 5 Some 200 jobs are to be lost at the Encon steelworks.

#### 48 3

Suggested answers are given

- 2 He's probably out with some friend or other.
- 3 Maybe I lent it to some student in my geography class.
- 4 I think it's in some travel agent's in the High Street.
- 5 Perhaps she's got to finish some report or other.

#### 48.4

- 1 any
- 2 any / some ('any' suggests that I could eat none of the food; 'some' implies that I was able to eat some but not all of it)
- 3 anything
- 4 someone ('positive' meaning)
- 5 anything / something ('anything' suggests that he said that he did nothing at all wrong; 'something' suggests that he has been accused of a particular wrongdoing but denied this)
- 6 anyone
- 7 any
- 8 Anything
- 9 Some (= not all)
- 10 anyone / someone ('anyone' suggests that I don't want to lend it to any person; 'someone' suggests that I may have a particular person in mind (perhaps they have asked me to lend it to them))

#### **UNIT 49**

#### 49.1

- 2 ... no one heard ...
- 3 Not a drop ...
- 4 ... no point ...
- 5 ... nowhere else ...
- 6 ... none of the hotels ...
- 7 ... never going to get ...
- 8 ... nothing wrong ...

#### 49.2

- 1 There aren't any in the cupboard.
- 4 ... there wasn't any point in protesting.
- 5 ... he didn't have anywhere else to go.
- 7 Isn't he ever going to get a job? (or Is he ever going to get a job?)
- they couldn't find anything wrong with her.

### 49.3

- 1 are no jobs
- 2 are no trains or buses
- 3 no seatbelts
- 4 was no spare tyre
- 5 🗸
- 6 1
- 7 are no trees
- 8 was no swimming pool
- 9 was no television
- 10 🗸

- 11 was no reply
- 12 /
- 13 was no choice
- 14 /

#### 49.4

Possible answers

- 2 Mr Carlson didn't want to sell the painting, and no amount of money / persuading could make him change his mind.
- 3 I sent job applications to over a hundred companies, but not one of them invited me for an interview.
- 4 Smallpox used to be common all over the world but since 1978 not one case of the disease has been recorded.
- 5 The floor had dirty black marks all over it, and no amount of polishing could get it clean.

#### 49 5

- 1 No problem. / No bother.
- 2 No wonder.
- 3 No chance. / No way.
- 4 No idea.
- 5 No comment.

## **UNIT 50**

#### 50.1

Suggested corrections/improvements are given

- 1 Lola's had -many- a lot of (more usual than 'many' in conversation) problems with her back for -a-lot-
  - -of- many years. She's having an operation next week and she won't be back at work for -a good-deal-of- a good many weeks afterwards.
- 2 A: There's bound to be -much- a lot of / lots of traffic on the way to the station. Perhaps we should leave now.
  B: No, there's plenty of time left, and at this time of day -many- a lot of / lots of people will already be at work.
- 3 A: -Many- A lot of / Lots of (more usual than 'many' in conversation)
  people think that hedgehogs are very rare nowadays, but when I was in
  Wales I saw -many- a lot / lots (more usual than 'many' in conversation).
  B: Oh, there's -millions-of- loads of / tons of wildlife in Wales.
- 4 A lot- Many have claimed that
  Professor Dowman's study on current
  attitudes to politics is flawed. One
  criticism is that -much- far too many
  people questioned in the survey were
  under 18.
- 5 A lot of Much research has been conducted on the effects of diet on health, with a lot of many studies focusing on the link between fat intake and heart disease. However, a lot much remains to be done.

- ('much' and 'many' are preferred in a written academic context).
- 6 While it is true that -a lot of- many thousands of jobs were lost with the decline of the northern coal and steel industries, -a lot of- many advantages have also followed. -Much- Far too many cases of lung disease were recorded in the region, but with lower levels of pollution the number has declined. In addition, a -great-deal-of- a great many hi-tech companies have moved in to take advantage of the newly available workforce.

#### 50.2

- 2 many a sunny afternoon
- 3 Many a ship
- 4 its / the many golf courses
- 5 my many emails
- 6 his many expeditions ('many an expedition' is also possible)
- 7 Many a teacher
- 8 the many coffee shops

#### 50.3

- 1 plenty of ('a lot of' is also possible)
- 2 A lot of (not 'plenty of')
- 3 a lot of (not 'plenty of')
- 4 a lot of (not 'plenty of')
- 5 plenty of ('a lot of' is also possible)

#### **UNIT 51**

## 51.1

- 1 were all
- 2 can all
- 3 had all
- 4 are all
- 5 All the children or The children all (both are possible)
- 6 all been

## 51.2

- 1 The whole process
- 2 Whole areas of the country
- 3 The whole trip
- 4 all of the towns
- 5 all of the pages
- 6 all the building / the whole building ('all the building' suggests that we see the building as being made up of parts (a number of rooms, for example); 'the whole building' would be more likely in a formal context)
- 7 The whole room

something like 'all of'.)

100	10.000		
1	every	6	every
2	each	7	each / every
3	every	8	each
4	each / every	9	Every / Each
5	each	10	every
(Ir	1 4, 7, and 9 'eac	h' emp	hasises that
w	e are thinking of	the pla	aces / children /
he	useholds senara	tely 'e	very' suggests

#### 51.4

- 1 Every so often
- 2 1
- 3 every few weeks
- 4 ✓ ('all Friday' is possible in an informal context; 'the whole of Friday' would also be possible here)
- 5 each of them
- 6 not all the food usually gets eaten
- 7 Not all of my brothers always come
- 8 Neil and his family were all on holiday
- 9 the rest of us all had a great time
- 10 ✓ ('all evening' would also be possible)

#### **UNIT 52**

#### 52.1

- 1 few ('a few' would mean that a small number of people would disagree. It would be more likely after 'but ...' than 'and ...')
- 2 Little
- 3 few
- 4 the few / a few
- 5 A little
- 6 The few / What few
- 7 a little
- 8 a few
- 9 a few
- 10 the little / what little

#### 52.2

Most likely changes are given

- 1 '... a bit of TV ...' (more likely in this informal context)
- 2 ... there are only a few left or... there aren't many left.
- 3 ... there isn't much more ... or... there's not much more ...
- 4 ... not many like that ... or ... only a few like that ...
- 5 ... has had few female politicians ...
- 6 ... exchanged few words ...
- 7 ... a little more confident ...
- 8 There seems to be little prospect ...

#### 52.3

#### Possible answers

- 1 Fewer students had a part-time job in 2015 than now. ('Less students ...' would also be acceptable for some people) Less (or Fewer) than 10% of female students had a part-time job in 2015.
- 2 Male students spend less money than female students on books. Students spend less on books now than they did in 2015.
- 3 Less (or Fewer) than 10% of female students walk to lectures now. Fewer students walk to lectures now than in 2015. ('Less students ...' would also be acceptable for some people)
- 4 Male students spend less time online now than female students.

Surprising results might be:

Female students now spend no less than 20% of their income on books.

Female students spend no less than 24 hours a week online.

#### **UNIT 53**

#### 53.1

The relative pronoun can be omitted in 1, 3, 4, 7 and 10.

#### 53 2

- 1 ('that' or '-' are more likely in an informal context)
- 2 Eva's father, who is over 80, has just come back from a skiing holiday.
- 3 The problems faced by the company, which I'll look at in detail in a moment, are being resolved.
- 4 She was greatly influenced by her father, who / whom she adored. ('whom' is formal)
- 5 He pointed to the stairs which / that led down to the cellar.
- 6 These drugs, which are used to treat stomach ulcers, have been withdrawn from sale.
- 7 The singer, who was recovering from flu, had to cancel her concert.
- 8 The minister talked about the plans for tax reform that / which / – he will reveal next month. ('which' is more likely in a formal context)
- 9 I have two older sisters whom / who / that / – I love very much. ('whom' is very formal)

#### 53.3

- 1 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that' or '-'
- 2 'whom' seems rather formal here and less likely than 'who', 'that', or '-'
- 3 ✓ 'that I can' is also possible
- 4 ... much that can ...
- 5 -whom-'who' or 'that'
- 6 which 'that' or '-'
- 7 The boy who took ...
- 8 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that' or '-'
- 9 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that'
- 10 'which' is possible, but less likely than 'that' or '-'

#### **UNIT 54**

#### 54.1

- 2 + a The newspaper is owned by the Mears group, whose chairperson is Miss Jiu Kim.
- 3 + f Parents whose children are between four and six are being asked to take part in the survey.

- 4 + b Children whose diets contain high levels of protein do better in examinations.
- 5 + e My aunt, whose first job was filling shelves in a supermarket, is now CEO of a department store.
- 6 + c I enjoy growing plants whose flowers are attractive to bees.

#### 54.2

#### Example answers

- 2 A widow is a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried.
- 3 An actuary is a person whose job is to decide how much insurance companies should charge their customers.
- 4 A furnace is a container in which things are melted or burnt.
- 5 A gazebo is a small garden building in which people can sit to enjoy the view.
- 6 Polo is a sport in which horse riders hit a ball using hammers with long handles.

#### 54.3

- 1 the moment when
- 2 an agreement whereby
- 3 the area where
- 4 the reason why
- 5 a method whereby
- 6 a condition where

#### 54.4

- 1 whatever whoever
- 2 that what
- 3 /
- 4 -which-whatever (or 'what')
- 5 whichever whatever
- 6 ✓ (or 'no relative pronoun' or 'which')
- 7 -what that
- 8 -which-whichever / whatever

## **UNIT 55**

- 2 Thomas Cromwell had a daughter, Jane, about whose early life we know very little.
- 3 It is her unmarried name by which she is better known.
- 4 Mr Wang, across whose land the road will be built, is very unhappy about the
- 5 The election result, about which there can be no doubt, is a great disappointment.
- 6 The building from which Marcus emerged was little more than a ruin.
- 7 It is a medieval palace, in whose tower the king hid during the civil war.
- 8 I am grateful to Aarav Basu, from whose book on the history of the bicycle this information comes.

#### 55.2

- 2 Until 1914 the pound sterling was the currency in / with which most world trade was conducted.
- 3 The suppliers have changed the date on / by which the furniture is to be delivered.
- 4 Pasteurisation was discovered by the French chemist Louis Pasteur, after whom it was named.
- 5 The author was persuaded to stay in England by Charles Dickens, to whom he had shown his novel.
- 6 There are a number of safety procedures of which you should be aware.
- 7 Details are in the instruction manual with which the printer was supplied.
- 8 Ms Park was left the money by her former husband, from whom she was divorced in 2015.

#### 55.3

- 2 Until 1914 the pound sterling was the currency which / that most world trade was conducted in.
- 3 The suppliers have changed the date which / that / – the furniture is to be delivered on / by.
- 4 Pasteurisation was discovered by the French chemist Louis Pasteur, who it was named after.
- 5 The author was persuaded to stay in England by Virginia Woolf, who he had shown his novel to.
- 6 There are number of safety procedures which / that / – you should be aware of.
- 7 Details are in the instruction manual which / that / – the printer was supplied with.
- 8 Ms Park was left the money by her former husband, who she was divorced from in 2015.

#### 55.4

- 1 The house which the thieves broke into
- 2 /
- 3 ... first of which ...
- 4 The party, which I've been looking forward to all week ...
- 5 🗸
- 6 ... both of which ...
- 7 ... part of which ...
- 8 ... all of whom ...

#### **UNIT 56**

#### 56.1

The most likely answers are given

- 2 I went on an IT training course with my colleague(,) Mateo.
- 3 Rubella, or German measles, is still a common childhood disease in many countries.

- 4 Four kilos of Beluga caviar, among the most expensive foods in the world, has been ordered for the reception.
- 5 One of the most popular modern writers for children is the Australian(,) John Marsden.
- 6 Tanya's father, and (her) trainer for the last ten years, was in the crowd to watch her victory.
- 7 Dr Sofia Lopez, head of Downlands Hospital, has criticised government plans to cut health funding.
- 8 Klaus Schmidt, the German 10,000 metres record holder and current European champion, is running in the Stockholm Marathon. (or Klaus Schmidt, the current European champion and (the) German 10,000 metres record holder, ...)

#### 56.2

- 2 + d The two countries having land borders with the USA, namely / that is, Mexico and Canada, have complained to the President about the new customs regulations.
- 3 + a The three most popular pets in Britain, namely / that is, cats, dogs and rabbits, are found in 25% of households.
- 4 + f The capital of Estonia, namely / that is, Tallinn, is situated on the Gulf of Finland.
- 5 + b The largest island in the world, namely / that is, Greenland, covers over 2 million square kilometres.
- 6 + c The 'consumers' of education, namely / that is, students, should have ways of complaining about poor teaching.

## 56.3

- 2 educated; I went to a reunion for students who were educated in the physics department during the 1990s.
- 3 being told off; As my aunt told me what she thought, I felt like a schoolboy who was being told off by his headteacher.
- 4 saying; There is a sign on the gate which says 'Entry forbidden'.
- 5 introduced; Across the river were some of the deer which were introduced into the park in the 19th century.
- 6 flowing; Rivers which flow into the Baltic Sea are much cleaner now than ten years ago.
- 7 being printed; The booklets which are being printed as we speak will be on sale later this afternoon.
- 8 needing; Anyone who needs further information can see me in my office.

#### **UNIT 57**

#### 57.1

The most likely answers are given

- 2 + e She's in the photograph on the piano.
- 3 + b I plan to cut down the tree in the back garden
- 4 + a There's a team of people in green shirts.
- 5 + d We took the footpath by / along the canal.
- 6 + i The children can't get over the fence around the pool.
- 7 + g Go along the lane between the houses.
- 8 + j Nico's a boy with a quick temper.
- 9 + f Follow the main road from Paris to Lyons.
- 10 + h She's a teacher from New Zealand

#### 57.2

- 2 She's in the photograph which is on the piano.
- 3 I plan to cut down the tree which is in the back garden.
- 4 There's a team of people who have / are wearing green shirts.
- 5 We took the footpath which runs / goes by / along the canal.
- 6 The children can't get over the fence which is around the pool.
- 7 Go along the lane which runs between the houses.
- 8 Nico's a boy who has a quick temper.
- 9 Follow the main road which runs / goes from Paris to Lyons.
- 10 She's a teacher who is / comes from New Zealand.

#### 57.3

Possible answers are given with some alternatives

- 2 Teachers (who work / working) at Queen's College in the city centre, who went on strike last week, have appointed Kristina Borg, the head of English, as their spokesperson.
- 3 Joyce Clements, who has died aged 95, was the first woman (to be) educated at Marston College in south Wales. / Marge Scott, the first woman (to be) educated at Marston College in south Wales, has died aged 95.
- 4 The conference (held) in Singapore, which approved the world trade agreement drawn up by European and Asian states, has now ended.
- 5 A book on gardening, All about Plants, that / which Anna wanted to borrow, wasn't available in the library. / A book on gardening called All about Plants that / which Anna wanted to borrow wasn't available in the library.

6 A painting found in a second-hand shop by Lara Gruber, an antique dealer from Austria, is thought to be by J.M.W. Turner, the British landscape artist. (or... by the British landscape artist J.M.W. Turner.)

#### 57.4

- 1 The sentence could mean: (i) that a man was wearing a grey suit – he was talking; (ii) (which is ridiculous) that a man was talking with a grey suit. To remove the ambiguity the sentence should be:
  - A man (who was) wearing a grey suit was talking. / A man in a grey suit was talking.
- 2 The sentence could mean: (i) that the lorry was carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes – it was stopped by a police officer; (ii) (which is ridiculous) that the police officer was carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes at the time
  - s/he stopped the lorry. To remove the ambiguity the sentence should be: A lorry (which was) carrying thousands of stolen cigarettes was stopped by a police officer.
- 3 The sentence could mean: (i) that I am going to discuss the matter with my parents; (ii) that I am going to decorate the room and my parents will help decorate it with me; (iii) (which is ridiculous) that I am going to use my parents as decoration in the room! To remove the ambiguity the sentence should be:

I discussed with my parents my plan to decorate the room. (to mean [i]) or I discussed my plan to decorate the room with the help of my parents (to mean [ii]).

#### **UNIT 58**

#### 58.1

- 2 Dressed (or Being dressed) all in black, she was almost invisible in the starless night.
- 3 Not having a credit card, I found it difficult to book an airline ticket online.
- 4 Being unemployed, Antonio spent a lot of time filling in job application forms.
- 5 Walking quickly, I soon caught up with her.
- 6 Built of wood (or Being built of wood ...), the house was clearly a fire risk.
- 7 Having been told off the day before for arriving late, I was eager to catch the bus in good time.
- 8 Not knowing where the theatre was, she asked for directions at the hotel reception.
- 9 Being a nurse, she knew what to do after the accident.

10 Having spent his childhood in Oslo, he knew the city well.

#### 58.2

- 1 D (first implied subject = 'I'; second subject = 'a car') Waiting for the bus, I was splashed all over by a car that went through a puddle. / While I was waiting for the bus, a car went through a puddle and splashed water all over me.
- 2 S (subject in both clauses = 'Rashid')
- 3 S (subject in both clauses = 'Suzanne')
- 4 D (first implied subject 'we'; second subject = 'the town') Looking down from the hill, we could see the town spread out before us towards the coast. / As we looked down from the hill, we could see the town spread out before us towards the coast.
- 5 D (first implied subject = 'I'; second subject = 'the boat') I was feeling rather sick as the boat ploughed through the huge waves.
- 6 S (subject in both clauses = 'the plant')

#### 58 3

- 1 Not wishing to boast ...
- 2 Pretending not to notice ...
- 3 Determined not to be beaten ...
- 4 Not feeling well ...
- 5 Not bothering to put on his coat ...
- 6 Trying not to cry ...

#### 58.4

- 2 + c Looking over my shoulder, I could see Ida running after me.
- 3 + f Walking through the tunnel, I banged my head on the low roof.
- 4 + a Having waited six weeks for the washing machine to be delivered, I decided to cancel the order.
- 5 + g Having suffered from depression myself as a teenager, I could understand how Nathan was feeling.
- 6 + h Having parked / Parking the car about a kilometre from the stadium, I walked the rest of the way.
- 7 + b Having reached / Reaching my mid-thirties, I felt I needed to change my life.
- 8 + e Having learnt some Swahili as a child, I was able to understand most of what she said.

#### **UNIT 59**

#### 59.1

- 2 While being interviewed ...
- 3 Before taking ...
- 4 While welcoming ...
- 5 Since being overthrown ... (*or* After being overthrown ...)
- 6 Through working ... (*or* After working ...)
- 7 Before being sold ...
- 8 After leaving ...

#### 59.2

- 2 + a By giving up coffee, she soon began to sleep better.
- 3 + e In turning down the job, she gave up the possibility of a huge salary.
  ('By turning down' is also possible.
  However, 'In turning down' focuses on the consequence of the action and so is perhaps more likely here.)
- 4+b By moving to a smaller flat, she saved over a hundred pounds a month. ('In moving ...' is also possible. However, 'By moving ...'focuses on the method used to save money.)
- 5 + f On entering the classroom, she was surprised when all the children stood up.
- 6 + c In criticising her father, she knew that she might offend him. ('By criticising' is also possible. However, 'In criticising' focuses on the consequence of the action and so is perhaps more likely here.)

#### 59.3

- With Maryam having flu, we couldn't go on holiday.
- Without having more information, I won't be able to advise you.
- 3 Without realising it, he had solved the problem.
- 4 With time running out before the train left, I couldn't wait for Andrei any longer.

#### 59.4

(1) Although from a poor background, Paula Regis gained a place at Southam University. (2) Always fascinated by the stars, she took a first degree in astrophysics. (3) Once at university, she also became interested in student politics and, (4) popular with her fellow students, was elected University President in her second year. This didn't distract her from her studies, however, and (5) while in the final year of her degree, she won the International Young Scientist of the Year award for her work on star classification. (6) When asked what was (or When asked about ...) the secret of her success (or When asked what the secret of her success was ...), she said, 'Just hard work and a little luck.' (7) Determined to continue her research, she has recently begun work on her PhD.

#### **UNIT 60**

- 2 prepared (herself)
- 3 prides itself on
- 4 occupied themselves with / by ('with' and 'by' could be omitted: 'occupied themselves playing computer games')
- 5 adapt (yourself)

## **Key to Exercises**

- 6 trouble himself about / with
- 7 dress (herself)
- 8 absent himself from

#### 60.2

- 1 me
- 2 myself
- 3 us
- 4 them
- 5 yourself
- 6 himself ('him' is also possible if 'he' and 'him' refer to different people)
- 7 herself ('her' is also possible if 'she' and 'her' refer to different people)

#### 60.3

- 1 got ourselves vaccinated / got vaccinated
- 3 had themselves checked
- 4 he'd caught hepatitis himself
- 5 / (however, some people think this is incorrect and would use 'Jan and I')
- 6 to tear himself away
- we're going to occupy ourselves
- 8 they can't reach it themselves

#### **UNIT 61**

#### 61.1

- 1 -ones some
- 2 1
- 3 -ones-some
- 4 ... mint -one- ... / ... some mint ...
- 5 1
- 6 /
- -ones- one
- 8 -ones some

#### 61.2

- 1 ones
- 2 No (It's better to avoid using 'ones' to refer to people.)
- 3 No
- 4 one
- 5 No ('ones' would be unlikely here, referring to a group of people)
- 6 ones
- one
- 8 No
- 9 No
- 10 No ('your ones' is possible, but some people avoid it. 'Are these yours?' is much more likely)

#### 61.3

- 3 (ones) Note that 'those ones' is less common in formal, written academic English
- 4 (one)
- 6 (one)
- 7 1
- 8 (ones)
- 9 (ones)
- 10 (one)

#### 614

#### Possible answers

- 1 ... one who knew the way.
- 2 ... ones you have to drive to.
- 3 ... one is the burning of fossil fuels.
- 4 ... ones are small and lightweight

#### **UNIT 62**

#### 62.1

- 2 'I doubt it' is also possible.
- 3 I hope so.
- 4 I suppose so.
- 5 I think so.
- 6 Yes, I hear (that) she is. ('So I hear' is also possible; see E)
- 7 I guess so.
- 8 He says so.
- 9 I promise (that) I will.
- 10 I'm sure (that) you will.

- 1 suppose not / don't suppose so
- 2 don't think so / think not ('think not' would be rather formal)
- 3 suspect not
- 4 doesn't appear so / appears not
- 5 didn't say so

#### 62 3

- 2 Yes, they are.
- 3 Yes, it has. / So it has.
- 4 Yes, you did.

#### 62.4

#### Possible answers

- 2 So I understand.
- 3 So I gather.
- 4 So it appears.
- 5 So he tells me.

#### **UNIT 63**

- 2 She was asked to teach more classes, and was happy to do so.
- 3 My French hosts gave me snails to eat, but I did so very reluctantly.
- 4 The company wanted to build a dam on the site, but they were prevented from doing so by local opposition.
- 5 All EU countries agreed to implement the new regulations on recycling plastic, but so far only Finland and Austria have done so.
- 6 The water freezes in the cracks in rocks, and as it does so it expands.

#### 63.2

- 1 do so
- 2 do (not 'do so'; habitual action)
- 3 doing so
- 4 do (not 'do so'; 'enjoy' refers to a state)
- 5 does so
- 6 do (not 'do so'; 'smell' refers to a state)
- do (not 'do so'; habitual action)
- 8 did so

#### 63.3

- 2 such research
- 3 such claims / such a claim
- 4 such a project
- 5 such destruction
- 6 such tactics

#### 63 4

#### Example answers

- 2 ... into research of this kind
- ... claims like this (or these) / a claim like this.
- 4 ... this kind of project ...
- 5 ... this sort of destruction ...
- 6 ... these tactics ...

#### **UNIT 64**

#### 64.1

- 2 Yes, we should have booked ticketsin advance. / Yes, we should have booked tickets in advance.
- 3 Yes, we will be staving in Brazil permanently. / Yes, we will be staying in Brazil permanently.
- 4 Yes, I'm sure they will have been taken by now. / Yes, I'm sure they will have been taken by now. / Yes, I'm sure they will have been taken by now.
- 5 No, I haven't had dinner yet.
- 6 Yes, I am going to Katalin's party.
- 7 Yes, I would have missed the train. / Yes. I would have missed the train.
- 8 No, I can't see him anywhere.
- 9 No, he couldn't have been looking. or No, he couldn't have been looking. / No, he couldn't have beenlooking.

#### 64.2

- 2 do
- 3 has
- 4 do
- 5 (do) hasn't / doesn't 6
- have (done) / did have / do

## 10 (be) 64.3

- 2 might / would (be) might / should (be)
- 4 should (be) 5 might / would be
- should (be) / would
- would / might be 8 would / might be

## **UNIT 65**

- 2 used to
- 3 pretended to be
- 4 used to be
- 5 claimed to

- 6 pretended to / claimed to
- 7 expected it to be
- 8 expected to

#### 65.2

- 1 opportunity (to)
- 2 hated to
- 3 refused (to)
- 4 choose to
- 5 determined (to)
- 6 deserved to
- 7 idea (to)
- 8 delighted (to)
- 9 prefer to
- 10 afford to

#### 65.3

- 1 ... if you'd like to (or ... if you like)
- 2 ✓ (or ... you'd like to.)
- 3 ... she doesn't want to.
- 4 ✓ (or ... if she'd like.)
- 5 / (or ... where I want to.)
- 6 ... if you don't want to. (However, 'if you don't want' is sometimes used in colloquial speech)
- 7 / (or ... if they want to.)
- 8 ... I'd like to very much.
- 9 ... you like. (or you'd like to)
- 10 ... so I didn't like to.

#### **UNIT 66**

#### 66.1

Suggested corrections are given

- 2 a lone figure / a figure walking alone
- 3 /
- 4 a happy / cheerful person / a person who was always glad and smiling
- 5 his sleeping daughter / his daughter, who was asleep
- 6 **frightened** passengers / passengers on board who are **afraid**
- 7 /
- 8 a similar age
- 9 🗸
- 10 The girls, who were sorry for their behaviour, apologised to their teacher. /The girls apologised to their teacher because they were sorry for their behaviour.

#### 66.2

- 1 a an utter / inevitable
  - b inevitable.
- 2 a unsafe ('domestic' would only be possible here if we wanted to emphasise that the equipment was for use in the home (i.e. domestic) rather than another kind of equipment)
  - b domestic / unsafe
- 3 a educational / entertaining
  - b educational / entertaining
- 4 a serious
  - b serious / underlying

- 5 a legal / stupid
  - b legal / stupid

#### 66.3

- 1 all the people concerned
- 2 As the minister responsible
- 3 the opposite effect.
- 4 a responsible adult.
- 5 the only available room / the only room available
- 6 the apparent approval
- 7 and concerned parents
- 8 financial advice available

#### **UNIT 67**

#### 67.1

The most likely answers are given

- 1 almost / practically complete
- 2 mainly cotton
- 3 absolutely excellent
- 4 very clear
- 5 completely illegal
- 6 very popular
- 7 an almost permanent
- 8 very attractive
- 9 exclusively / mainly male
- 10 very visible

#### 67.2

Suggested answers:

- 2 I'd be incredibly upset.
- 3 I'd be rather angry.
- 4 I'd be a bit embarrassed.
- 5 I'd be extremely annoyed.

#### 67.3

Suggested corrections are given, but others are possible

- 1 extremely old
- 2 /
- 3 absolutely useless
- 4 very happy
- 5 'reasonably unique' is unlikely; more likely is, for example, 'almost unique'
- 6 1
- 7 /
- 8 quite small
- 9 perfectly comfortable
- 10 1
- 11 reasonably quiet
- 12 virtually impossible
- 13 🗸
- 14 a really terrible
- 15 simply awful
- 16 🗸

#### 67.4

- 1 -fairly / really
- 2 really / fairly (both correct)
- 3 -fairly / really
- 4 pretty / very (both correct)
- 5 -<del>very</del>-/ pretty
- 6 pretty/<del>very</del>
- 7 really / fairly
- 8 really / very (both correct)

- 9 pretty / very
- 10 fairly / pretty (both correct)

#### **UNIT 68**

#### 68.1

The most likely answers are given

- 2 very late
- 3 very critical
- 4 straight
- 5 false
- 6 (a) critical
- 7 late
- 8 original
- 9 very straight
- 10 very false

#### 68.2

- 2 a highly technical
  - b technical
- 3 a very human
  - b human
- 4 a largely academic
  - b academic
- 5 a private
  - b an intensely private
- 6 a diplomatic
  - b an extremely diplomatic

#### 68.3

Possible answers are given

- 2 ... nice and quiet
- 3 ... lovely and soft
- 4 ... nice and juicy5 ... good and ready

## **UNIT 69**

- the problems identified. / the identified problems.
- 3 Interested visitors ...
- the sheet provided.
- 5 ... with flights included.
- 6 ... the resulting publicity / the publicity resulting ...
- 7 ... any remaining cheese. / any cheese remaining.

## 69.2

## Example answers

- The amount of added sugar in dark chocolate is less than that found in white chocolate.
- 3 Organic oranges contain 30% more vitamin C than those grown conventionally.
- Cars today are much more fuelefficient than those manufactured in
- 5 The President's salary is 25 times higher than that earned by the average citizen.

- 2 well-resourced
- 3 nerve-wracking
- 4 far-reaching

## **Key to Exercises**

#### 69.4

- 2 were wide-ranging
- 3 is clean-shaven
- 4 eye-catching

#### UNIT 70

#### 70.1

- 1 to reduce
- 2 to cheat / cheating
- 3 knowing
- 4 to leave
- 5 to underestimate / underestimating
- 6 to open / opening
- 7 talking
- 8 to resign / resigning
- 9 to panic
- 10 turning

#### 70.2

- 1 stupid going / stupid to go
- 2 confident that he wouldn't get lost
- 3 /
- 4 guilty shopping
- 5 was concerned to learn
- 6 /
- 7 /
- 8 busy drinking
- 9 was sorry to (have) upset me / was sorry that he'd upset me ('was sorry for upsetting me' is also possible)
- 10 wasn't prepared to admit
- 11 🗸

#### 70.3

- 2 It was wonderful to hear such a magnificent performance.
- 3 It was mean of you to eat all the cake and not leave any for me.
- 4 It was unreasonable of them to complain about the exam results.
- 5 It was awkward to get the top off the jar. (or ... to get the top of the jar off.; informally ... getting the top off the jar.)
- 6 It was simple to put up the shelves.
- 7 It was unprofessional of him to criticise the headteacher in front of the staff.
- 8 It was kind of you to give birthday presents to the children.

#### 70.4

Possible answers are given

- 2 It made me furious listening to his lies.
- 3 It made me sad that we wouldn't be working together again.
- 4 It made me ashamed to learn how badly we treated immigrants in the 1950s
- 5 It made me nervous hearing the dentist's drill as I sat in the waiting room.

#### **UNIT 71**

#### 71.1

- 1 repeatedly
- 2 in / with despair ('despairingly' is also possible)

- 3 in / with anticipation
- 4 reputedly
- 5 disappointedly
- 6 in a relaxed way / manner / fashion
- 7 determinedly
- 8 in / with satisfaction ('in a satisfied way / manner / fashion' are also possible)
- 9 in an organised way / manner / fashion
- 10 agitatedly

#### 71.2

- 1 a most
  - b mostly
- 2 a short
  - b shortly
- 3 a directly b direct
- 4 a wide
  - b widely
- 5 a highly
  - b high

#### 71.3

- 1 /
- ... to me in a friendly way / manner / fashion.
- 3 ✓ (or ... fine ...)
- 4 ... flatly refused.
- 5 
  √ ('... very clear' is also possible in informal contexts)
- 6 ... in a cowardly way / manner / fashion ...
- 7 ... justly renowned.
- 8 ... slowly turned ...
- 9 'thinly' is grammatically correct, but some people would use 'thin' in informal contexts
- 10 ... loudly applauded ...

## UNIT 72

#### 72.1

- 1 more scared
- 2 deeper or more deep (for emphasis)
- 3 more pretty
- 4 stronger
- 5 more naughty
- 6 harder
- 7 truer or more true (for emphasis)
- 8 longer

#### 72.2

- 2 ✓ ('more dirty' would also be possible)
- 3 -recenter-more recent
- 4 -excitinger- more exciting
- 5 ✓ ('wealthier' would also be possible)
- 6 ✓ ('more unique' is used to suggest that some people have particularly individual characteristics)
- 7 -complexer- more complex
- 8 ✓ ('more clever' would also be possible)
- 9 -powerfuler- more powerful
- 10 -alerter- more alert

#### 72 3

'the' can be left out in 2, 4 and 5.

#### 72.4

- 1 in
- 2 of
- 3 of
- 4 in or of (both are possible)
- 5 in

#### **UNIT 73**

#### 73.1

- 2 The Downtown Hotel is not such a pleasant place to stay as the Strand Hotel. / The Downtown Hotel is not as pleasant a place to stay as the Strand Hotel
- 3 The President's address to the nation is as important a speech as he is ever likely to make in his career.
- 4 It wasn't such a big problem as I first thought. / It wasn't as big a problem as I first thought.
- 5 Theresa's dog is as ferocious an animal as I've ever seen.
- 6 She's not such a fluent Greek speaker as she claims to be. / She's not as fluent a Greek speaker as she claims to be.

#### 73.2

	the same of the sa		
1	as many as	5	as little as
2	as few as	6	as few as
3	as much as	7	as little as
4	As many as	8	as much as

### 73.3

- 2 + a Her handwriting was so untidy as to be nearly illegible.
- 3 + e The bookcase was so heavy as to be almost impossible to move.
- 4 + c The record was so badly scratched as to be unplayable.
- 5 + f The plot of the novel was so complicated as to be completely incomprehensible.
- 6 + b The difference between the results was so small as to be insignificant.

#### 73.4

- 1 How serious an injury
- 2 or as serious as
- 3 bad enough to
- 4 not as fit as5 not such a good player as / not as good a player as
- 6 go so far as to say
- 7 sufficiently well / well enough
- 8 as speedy a recovery as possible

#### **UNIT 74**

- I expect Catalina to win the race easily.
- 2 He regretted missing the concert greatly. / He greatly regretted missing the concert.

- 3 I secretly hated playing the piano ... (more likely than 'I hated playing the piano secretly, although my parents thought I loved it.' This would mean that my parents thought I loved playing the piano secretly.)
- 4 He **calmly** started to walk across ... / He started to walk **calmly** across ...
- 5 She kindly offered to do the work.
- 6 Bruno hurriedly finished speaking and sat down. / Bruno finished speaking hurriedly and sat down.
- 7 I simply don't remember putting it down.
- 8 We look forward to hearing from you soon.
- 9 They deliberately tried to ignore me. / They tried to ignore me deliberately.
- 10 I don't pretend to understand the instructions completely.

#### 74.2

- 1 around Switzerland in July (place + time)
- 2 a car at the airport (object + adverbial)
- 3 south towards the lakes (place [adverb] + place [prepositional phrase])
- 4 for a week in a beautiful cottage belonging to some friends of Kim's mother (time + place [long adverbial])
- 5 early at about six o'clock (time [adverb] + time [prepositional phrase])
- 6 briefly in the village where Kim had spent some time when she was a student (time + place [long adverbial])
- 7 carefully on the narrow winding roads (manner + place)
- 8 the train home (object + adverb)
- 9 ourselves enormously in Switzerland (object + manner + place)
- 10 there before too long (place + time)

#### 74.3

- 2 ✓ or Next, vigorously beat the eggs in a small bowl. (Both of these are more likely than 'Next, beat the eggs in a small bowl vigorously').
- 3 I thought I'd securely locked the luggage. / I thought I'd locked the luggage securely.
- 4 I stopped playing tennis regularly ... (more likely)
- 5 or Lee was beaten easily in the final.
  / Lee was beaten in the final easily.
- 6 He always brings sandwiches from home.
- 7 No, they moved away last year.
- 8 The local residents welcomed warmly the decision ... *or* The local residents warmly welcomed the decision ...
- 9 🗸

#### **UNIT 75**

#### 75.1

2 a I was brought up to earn money honestly ...

- b Honestly, I'm perfectly capable of putting up the shelf myself.
- 3 a She admitted frankly ...
  - b **Frankly**, I went to sleep during his lecture ...
- 4 a **Seriously**, I don't know what I'd have done ...
  - b I tried to speak seriously to him ...
- 5 a Clearly, he wants me to take the job.
  - b I'd had very little sleep and was having difficulty thinking clearly.
- 6 a Plainly, he was feeling ill at ease.
  - b She always dressed plainly ...

#### 75.2

- 1 enormously / significantly
- 2 from time to time / rarely
- 3 easily / scarcely
- 4 almost / by an hour
- 5 often / on many occasions
- 6 hardly ever / every week
- 7 greatly / rarely
- 8 -nearly / entirely

#### 75.3

- 1 [1] & [3]
- 2 [1] & [3]
- 3 [2]
- 4 [1] & [3]
- 5 [2] & [3]
- 6 [1] & [2]
- 7 [1]

#### **UNIT 76**

#### 76.1

- 2 ... and out jumped Daniel.
- 3 Outside the door stood two small children.
- 4 In the park the boys were playing cricket, despite the muddy conditions. (no inversion)
- 5 Around her neck hung a jade necklace.
- and up the tree it climbed. (no inversion)
- ... and in marched a delegation from the striking workers.
- 8 ... away swam the fish.
- in the corner was a very old grandfather clock.
- 10 In the office Lea found (no inversion) it difficult to concentrate, but at home she worked (no inversion) more efficiently.

#### 76.2

- ... last week I had a holiday. (subjectverb inversion is not possible: 'last week' is an adverb of time indicating a period; does not take inversion [see C])
- 3 ... first came a welcoming address by the head of the organising team.
- 4 ... at no time were members of the public in danger.
- 5 No change; the adverb 'daily' can't go in front position.

- ... seldom can a politician have changed his views so quickly as Joyce.
- 7 ... next came a blizzard, preventing us from leaving the hut.
- ... by next Friday we'll be in Japan. (subject-verb inversion is not possible: 'by next Friday' is an adverb of time indicating a definite point; does not take inversion [see C])
- 9 No change; the adverb 'hourly' can't go in front position.
- ... hardly ever did I hear him raise his voice in anger.

#### 76.3

- 1 I play squash twice a week / twice a week I play squash
- 2 your salary will be paid monthly
- 3 /
- 4 /
- 5 Around the town she drove / She drove around the town; in a side street she spotted the place / she spotted the place in a side street
- 6 across the room it flew / it flew across the room

#### **UNIT 77**

#### 77.1

- 1 <del>very / much / very much</del>
- 2 very / much / very much
- 3 very / much / very much
- 4 -very-/much/very much
- 5 <del>very</del> / much / very much 6 <del>very</del> / much / very much
- 7 very / much / very much
- 8 very / <del>much</del> / very much
- 9 <del>very</del> / <del>much</del> / very much 10 <del>very</del> / much / very much

#### 77.2

1	too	5	very / to
2	very / too	6	too
3	very	7	very
4	very	8	too

#### 77 3

- 1 ... and he even offered ...
- 2 I will only be ...
- 3 ... and **even** the smallest donation can make ...
- 4 ... he has **even** asked Ann ...
- 5 Only Louis knew ...
- 6 ... I only cook ...

## **UNIT 78**

#### 78.1

A number of positions for these adverbs are possible, depending on the wider context and the particular emphasis that the speaker / writer wants to give. The first answer below gives perhaps the most likely position in many contexts, and then alternatives.

2 ... Presumably, the idea is to welcome visitors from other countries. / The

## **Key to Exercises**

- idea, **presumably**, is to welcome ... / The idea is, **presumably**, to welcome ... / ... other countries, **presumably**.
- 3 The builders generously agreed to plant new trees to replace the ones they had dug up. / Generously, the builders agreed ... / The builders agreed generously to plant...
- 4 Most people rightly believe that the prisoners should be released. / Rightly, most people ... / Most people believe, rightly, that ...
- 5 Obviously, she knew more about the robbery than she told the police. / She obviously knew ... / ... told the police, obviously.
- 6 He carelessly broke the window when he was painting. / Carelessly, he broke ...
- 7 She bravely picked up the spider and put it outside. / Bravely, she picked up... / She picked up the spider bravely ...
- 8 Interestingly, the road didn't appear on the map.
- 9 Failure to increase the rate of pay would inevitably lead to employee departures from the company.
- 10 The most experienced candidate does not necessarily get the job.

#### 78.2

- ... outwardly she looked remarkably calm.
- 3 ... environmentally it is no longer the problem it once was.
- industrially it is relatively undeveloped.
- ... visually the performance was stunning.
- 6 ... financially we'd be much better off if we moved there.
- 7 ... politically he claims to be a socialist.
- 8 ... technically she could be sent to prison.

#### 78.3

Suggested answers are given

- 2 **In geological terms**, limestone is a relatively new rock.
- 3 The building is similar to the opera house in Milan in terms of architecture.
- 4 From a grammatical point of view the essay was well written, but its style was inappropriate.
- 5 The election was clearly rigged and the result is a severe blow to the country as far as democracy is concerned.

#### **UNIT 79**

#### 79.1

1 as / when ('when' emphasises a direct connection between kicking the ball and falling over – it suggests that

- kicking the ball caused him to then fall over; 'as' suggests 'at the same time as' – kicking and falling happened simultaneously)
- When (more likely than 'While ...'; talking about a period of our lives)
- 3 When
- 4 While / As
- 5 while / when ('as' could mean 'because' here)
- 6 when
- 7 As / When
- 8 as
- 9 while/as
- 10 As / When ('When' suggests 'By the time the paint is dry'; 'As' emphasises a continuous change during the period it is drying)

#### 79.2

- 1 As When
- 2 When While / As
- 3 -while- when
- 4 /
- 5 While When / As (= 'because')
- 6 as when

#### 79.3

- 1 until
- 2 Before / Until
- 3 before / until
- 4 before
- 5 Before / Until
- 6 until
- 7 before / until
- 8 until

#### 79.4

Possible answers are given

- 2 ... than he broke his arm.
- 3 ... when it rang again.
- 4 ... than / when it was time to start work again.
- 5 ... before members of the audience started to criticise her.
- 6 ... when the engine cut out.

#### **UNIT 80**

#### 80.1

- 2 + b Andrea agreed to book tickets for us all **as** it was her idea to go to the theatre
- 3 + a Seeing as it's your birthday, I'll buy you lunch.
- 4 + h **Because** I'm trying to go vegan I've given up dairy products.
- 5 +d We were recommended to buy the textbook second-hand since a new copy would be very expensive.
- 6 + c As the guest lecturer was late, Dr Gomez spoke about his research instead.
- 7 + e I suggested we all go on holiday together seeing that we get on so well.

8 +g You should never walk under a ladder **because** it's supposed to be unlucky.

#### 80.2

- due to / on account of lack of interest.
- 3 ... due to / on account of / owing to its central location.
- 4 ... due to / on account of human error.
- ... due to / on account of / owing to heavy cloud.
- 6 ... because of the bright sunlight.
- 7 ... because his mobile was switched off.
- 8 ... because of local opposition.
- 9 ... because of his heart problems.
- 10 ... because there was a fly in it.

#### 80.3

- 2 I couldn't hear what Isabella was saying with the noise. / With the noise, I couldn't hear what Isabella was saying. / I couldn't hear what Isabella was saying for the noise.
- 3 With her father (being) in hospital, Olivia went to stay with her aunt. / Olivia went to stay with her aunt, with her father (being) in hospital.
- 4 With all the exercise I was doing I felt a lot fitter. / I felt a lot fitter with all the exercise I was doing. / I felt a lot fitter for all the exercise I was doing.
- 5 With the train drivers on strike tomorrow, I don't think I'll go to town after all. / I don't think I'll go to town after all, with the train drivers on strike tomorrow.

#### **UNIT 81**

#### 81.1

- 2 + h He packed his suitcase with the books at the bottom so as not to / in order not to crush his clothes.
- 3 + a Bus fares in the city were being cut so as to / in order to encourage people to use public transport.
- 4 +f We crept quietly towards the deer so as not to / in order not to frighten them away.
- 5 + c I walked around the outside of the field so as not to / in order not to damage the growing crops.
- 6 + b We put up a fence so as to / in order to prevent people walking across the grass.
- 7 +g She looked down at the book in front of her so as to / in order to avoid his gaze.
- 8 +e The roadworks were carried out at night so as not to / in order not to disrupt traffic too much.

#### 81.2

5 X

2	X	6	1
3	1	7	1
4	X	8	X

#### 81.3

- 2 ... nobody would know it was there.
- 3 ... mosquitoes couldn't get in.
- 4 ... it won't take up a lot of computer memory.
- 5 ... we could see the view over the city.
- 6 ... it will receive the new channels.

#### 81.4

Suggested answers are given

- 2 The meeting room is designed in such a way that everyone's voice can be heard without the use of microphones. / ... in such a way as to allow everyone's voice to be heard without the use of microphones.
- 3 The website is organised in such a way that it is easy to navigate. / ... in such a way as to be easy to navigate.
- 4 If the dial is rotated in such a way that the number 1 is at the top, the valve opens. / ... in such a way as to locate the number 1 at the top, the valve opens.

#### **UNIT 82**

#### 82.1

- 2 + b Frightened though / as she was, she forced herself to pick up the snake.
- 3 + e Scarce though / as food became, they always found enough to share with me.
- 4 + c Experienced though / as the climbers were, they had never faced such severe conditions before.
- 5 + a Confusing though / as the instructions first appeared, they were very useful when I looked at them in detail.
- 6 + h Disgusting though / as it looked, it was actually quite tasty.
- 7 +f Confident though / as she felt, she knew the examination would not be easy.
- 8 + d Successful though / as their new products have proved, the company is still in financial difficulties.

#### 82.2

- 2 In spite of being much younger than the others, he was the most outstanding rider in the team.
- 3 In spite of eating a big lunch, he had a three-course meal in the evening.
- 4 In spite of his fear, he allowed the huge spider to be placed in his hands.
- 5 In spite of her obvious intelligence, she finds it difficult to express her ideas in writing.
- 6 In spite of her illness, she went on a walking holiday in Nepal.
- 2 Despite the fact that he was much younger than the others, he was the most outstanding rider in the team.
- 3 Despite the fact that he ate / had eaten a big lunch, he had a threecourse meal in the evening.

- 4 Despite the fact that he was frightened, he allowed the huge spider to be placed in his hands.
- 5 Despite the fact that she is obviously intelligent, she finds it difficult to express her ideas in writing.
- 6 Despite the fact that she was ill, she went on a walking holiday in Nepal.

#### 82.3

1 even though 6 even if
2 even if 7 Even though
3 Even if 8 even if
4 Even though 9 not necessarily
5 even though 10 even if

#### 82.4

- 2 Whereas a decade ago only 5% of students dropped out of college, the figure today is 25%.
- 3 While the temperature is below freezing, it actually feels quite warm when the sun is out.
- 4 While the cost of rail travel has increased, the number of train passengers has grown.
- 5 Whereas I've always wanted to visit Australia, I've never had any wish to go to Canada.

#### **UNIT 83**

#### 83.1

Suggested answers are given

- 2 ... give me a call. / ... take it back to the shop.
- 3 ... tell him I want to see him. / ... ask him to come and see me.
- 4 If you see any large, hairy spiders in the grass ... / If you come across any snakes on your walk ...
- 5 If you're ever in Birmingham ... / If you ever need any more advice ...
- 6 If you're coming by bus ... / If you don't want to walk far to the shops ...

#### 83.2

- 1 The present perfect suggests 'if you previously studied Macbeth ...'; the present simple suggests 'if you study Macbeth in the future, then you will (get to) know ...'.
- 2 leave / have left; meet. The present perfect and the present simple have a similar meaning.
- 3 break / have broken; have to. The present perfect suggests that you may have broken it (perhaps I think you have); the present simple may be a warning or threat about a possible future event.
- 4 doesn't arrive / hasn't arrived; give. The present perfect and the present simple have a similar meaning.
- 5 haven't filled in / don't fill in; need. The present perfect suggests 'if you previously filled in an application

- form'; the present simple may imply 'If you don't fill in an application form now, you will need to do so ...'.
- 6 don't help / haven't helped; go. The present perfect and the present simple have a similar meaning.

#### 83.3

1 belonged 4 doubted 2 ✓ 5 ✓ 3 liked 6 understood

#### 83.4

- 2 If it were not for his anxiety over Carla, his happiness would have been complete.
- 3 Were it not for the intervention of the government (or ... for (the) government intervention / intervening ...), the strike would probably still be going on.
- 4 Had it not been for the arrival of the police (or ... for the police arriving ...), the fight could have got out of hand.
- 5 But for the sound of birds singing, everything was quiet.
- 6 If it was not / were not for the United Nations, there would have been far more wars in the last 50 years.
- 7 If it had not been for the roadworks we would have been here two hours ago.

#### **UNIT 84**

#### 84.1

- 2 Had you not been absent from school on Friday, you would know what you have to do for homework.
- 3 Were Clare's friends still living in Brussels, she would have been able to stay with them. (or Were her friends still living in Brussels, Clare would ...)
- 4 Were the workers prepared to accept a wage cut, the factory would not have had to shut down.
- 5 Should the financial performance of the company not improve in the near future, we shall have to reduce the number of employees.
- 6 Had the salary been higher, I might have considered taking the job.

#### 84.2

- 1 X If I press this button ...
- 2 🗸
- 3 /
- 4 X If the disease is untreated ... (or ... goes untreated ...)
- 5 1
- 6  $\,$  X If you complain about me ...
- 7 🗸

- 1 If I happen to see Georgia when I'm in Rome ...
- 2 X
- 3 ... if you happen to live nearby.
- 4 X

## **Key to Exercises**

5 If you happen to be in the south of Spain next week, ...

#### 84.4

Possible answers are given using the notes

- 2 ... overcome with a great weariness.
- 3 ... trying to imagine what it contained.
- 4 ... to agree with everything Julia said. (or ... agreeing with ...)
- 5 ... it had been reversed into a wall.

#### **UNIT 85**

#### 85.1

- 2 + d Were the government to increase university fees, there would be an outcry from students.
- 3 + a Were anyone to lean against the window, the glass would certainly break.
- 4 + c Were I not already busy in August, I would gladly accept your invitation.
- 5 + b Were you to see the conditions in which the refugees are living, you would be horrified.

#### 85.2

Possible sentences are given

- 2 Imagine you were to inherit a million dollars.
- 3 Suppose your parents were to tell you they were emigrating to Canada.
- 4 Supposing your country were to win the World Cup.
- 5 Imagine the population of Britain were all Buddhist.

#### 85.3

- 2 even if it were
- 3 even if she were
- 4 as if I were
- 5 as if she were
- 6 even if I were
- 7 as if it were
- 8 even if they were

#### 85.4

Possible answers

- 2 I'd sooner she were going with friends.
- 3 B: Well, if only it were as easy as that.
- 4 I know you haven't got much time, but if I were you I'd have breakfast before you leave.
- 5 Wearing odd shoes to school was embarrassing and I'd rather it were forgotten by my classmates.
- 6 I'm very fond of Paul, but I wish he were not so critical of his employees.

#### **UNIT 86**

#### 86.1

- 2 + d Unless alternative sources of funding are found, the research will not be able to continue.
- 3 + c Unless the roads have changed in that part of town, I'm sure I'll be able to find my way there.

- 4 + a Unless the weather starts improving soon, the farmers will lose their crops.
- 5 + e Unless it's ridiculously expensive, I think I'll buy that painting.
- 6 +f Unless you have been unemployed for six months, you are not entitled to state benefit.

#### 86.2

- 2 \( \square\) 'If the infection isn't treated' is also possible.
- 3 If he wasn't
- 4 ✓ 'if you don't have' is also possible.
- 5 if Anya doesn't pass
- 6 If you don't get
- 7 ✓ 'if they don't get' is also possible.
- 8 if Louise isn't at home
- 9 ✓ 'if they can't prove' is also possible.
- 10 if she wasn't

#### 86 3

- 1 if / whether
- 2 whether
- 3 whether4 if / whether
- 5 whether (or informally 'if')
- 6 whether
- 7 if / whether
- 8 if / whether
- 9 whether
- 10 if / whether
- 11 whether
- 12 if / whether

#### **UNIT 87**

#### 87.1

- 2 A small boy was kicking a ball against a wall; otherwise, the street was deserted.
- 3 I couldn't remember meeting him before, yet his face seemed familiar.
- 4 A mass evacuation of islanders is taking place. Meanwhile, the volcano continues to erupt.
- 5 A: Why don't you like that new French restaurant? B: For one thing, it's too expensive.
- 6 Ingrid came down with flu while we were on holiday.
- 7 My landlady didn't mind me having parties in my room as long as the rent was paid on time.
- 8 One way of getting rid of weeds is to dig them out. Alternatively, you could poison them.

#### 87.2

- 1 Nevertheless
- 2 while
- 3 even though
- 4 Even so
- 5 Instead
- 6 whereas
- 7 so

- 8 Meanwhile
- 9 while
- 10 Before
- 11 unless
- 12 At that time

#### 87.3

Example answers are given

- 2 However hard you might exercise, it is difficult to stay fit without eating a healthy diet.
- 3 However much we enjoy being together, it is important to spend some time apart.
- 4 Professor Malcolm is always happy to spend time with his students, however busy he might be.
- 5 However many times I see the Eiffel Tower, it never fails to impress me.
- 6 Some people never seem content, however much money they have / however rich they are.

#### **UNIT 88**

#### 88.1

- 1 across
- 2 across / over
- 3 over
- 4 across / over
- 5 across
- 6 across
- 7 across
- 8 over

#### 88.2

- 1 along / through
- 2 Across
- 3 through 4 across / over
- 5 over ('all over' is more likely than 'all across' or 'all through')
- 6 along

#### 88.3

- 1 under
- √ ('under' is also possible)
- 3 below
- 4 over
- 5 ✓ ('over' is also possible)
- 6 over
- 7 under
- 8 ✓ ('above' is also possible)

- 1 c under the weather = ill
- 2 d below the belt = cruel or unfair
- 3 b under her belt = successfully completed
- 4 e under a cloud = with some people's disapproval
- 5 f over the top = extreme behaviour; indicating disapproval
- 6 a over and above = in addition to

#### **UNIT 89**

#### 89.1

- 1 between 6 between 2 among 7 among 3 between 8 among 4 between 9 between
- 5 among

#### 89.2

- 2 between / among the pupils
- 3 between amateur
- 4 among teenagers
- 5 between / among his remaining relatives
- 6 among its clients
- 7 between intake of refined sugar
- 8 between cooking
- 9 among my closest friends
- 10 between the striking dockers

#### 89.3

1	among	6	between
2	among	7	among
3	between	8	between
4	among	9	among
5	between	10	between

#### **UNIT 90**

#### 90.1

1	1	7	1
2	X	8	1
3	X	9	X
4	/	10	1
5	X	11	X
6	Y	12	1

#### 90 2

- 1 a by
  - b until ('until' would also be possible in
    (a). It would mean, however, that up
    to the time dinner was served I was
    hungry, and then when it was served
    (but before I ate it) I was not. Perhaps
    the food was so unappetising that
    I couldn't face eating it; 'by' in (a)
    simply means that I was hungry
    when dinner was served)
- 2 a until
  - b by
- 3 a by
- b until
- 4 a Until
  - b By ('By' would also be possible in [a])
- 5 a by
  - b until
- 6 a by
  - b until

#### 90.3 1 Over / During

- 2 So far
- 3 Until now
- 4 so far
- 5 until now
- 6 during

- 7 until
- 8 by

#### **UNIT 91**

#### 91.1

- 1 except
- 2 except / except for
- 3 except
- 4 except for (in informal contexts); more formally, 'but for' is possible
- 5 except
- 6 except / except for (in informal contexts)
- 7 except / except for
- 8 except / except for (in informal contexts)
- 9 except for (in informal contexts); more formally, 'but for' is also possible
- 10 except / except for
- 11 except
- 12 except

#### 91.2

- 1 besides except for
- 2 Besides ✓
- 3 except for besides
- 4 Except for Besides
- 5 -besides except (for)
- 6 except for ✓

#### 91.3

- 2 + a But for the interruptions caused by the bad weather, the building would have been completed by now.
- 3 + c But for the supply of food and medicines by the charity (or But for the food and medicines supplied by the charity ...), many more people would have died in the famine.
- 4 + f But for the shelter provided by the trees, the wind would have caused even more damage to the house.
- 5 + b But for the threat of sanctions by the EU (or But for the sanctions threatened by the EU ...), human rights would not have improved in the country.
- 6 + d But for the loan from the bank (or But for the loan the bank gave me ... / ... given to me by the bank ...), I would not have been able to set up my business.

#### **UNIT 92**

#### 92.1

- 1 of / for / about
- 2 after / about / for
- 3 about / for / with
- 4 <del>of / with /</del> on
- 5 for / after / about 6 for / on / with
- 7 of / about / -on-

#### 92.2

- 1 for
- 2 of/about

- 3 with (note that 'to' would also be possible)
- 4 for
- 5 about
- 6 on / about
- 7 of ('about' is unlikely in this formal context)
- 8 about
- 9 with
- 10 of
- 11 about 12 about
- 13 about
- 14 on ('about' is also possible but less natural here)

#### 92 3

- 1 acted on = did what someone else advised or suggested; acted for = represented (usually a professional person such as a lawyer or accountant)
- 2 thinking ... about = concentrating on; think of = asking about an opinion
- 3 have called on = have formally asked him to do it; called for = demanded
- 4 worked for = was employed by; works with computers = uses computers a lot in her work
- 5 counting on = depending on; counts for little = is of little value

#### **UNIT 93**

#### 93.1

- 2 there has been an improvement in her condition
- 3 takes (great / a lot of) pride in
- 4 give / offers / provides advice on
- 5 cruelty to
- 6 had a long / lengthy discussion about /
- 7 have a vaccination against typhoid / have a typhoid vaccination
- 8 had a significant influence on
- 9 There is a lack of affordable housing in the city. / The city has a lack of affordable housing.
- 10 a ban on fireworks

#### 93 2

- 2 sign of stopping
- 3 decision to allow
- 4 reason to worry
- 5 risk of transmitting
- 6 ability to remember
- 7 failure to protect
- 8 cost of buying
- 10 unwillingness to acknowledge

possibility of getting

#### 93

Likely verbs are given

- 2 of seeing
- 3 to take
- 4 to retire / of retiring
- 5 of taking / to take
- 6 of dancing

#### **UNIT 94**

#### 94.1

- 1 intransitive; no noun / pronoun needed
- 2 ... look it up ... (a noun or pronoun is necessary)
- 3 ... help (you) out ... (a noun or pronoun is possible)
- 4 ... tidy (things) up ... (a noun or pronoun is possible)
- 5 intransitive; no noun / pronoun needed

#### 94.2

- 2 / about /
- 3 up K
- 4 Kout K
- 5 Kup K
- 6 Kaway

#### 94.3

- 2 left her name out / left out her name
- 3 shut the thing up
- 4 make my mind up / make up my mind
- 5 got down the general ideas / got the general ideas down
- 6 hear me out

#### 94.4

- ordering about everyone- ordering everyone about
- 2 -provide their children for provide for their children
- 3 let in me on the secret let me in on the secret
- 4 -called motorists on-called on motorists
- 5 /
- 6 took up Emre on took Emre up on
- 7 🗸
- 8 /
- 9 looked Mr Gao up to looked up to Mr Gao

#### **UNIT 95**

#### 95.

- 3 Is there something bothering you?
- 4 There was a barrier across the road.
- 5 X
- 6 There remains the problem of what to do with nuclear waste.
- 7 X
- 8 There is supposed to be a video on the website, but it doesn't work.
- 9 There was no petrol available anywhere in the city.
- 10 Is there anyone who / that can help me?
- 11 There are some general rules (which / that) you can follow.
- 12 There used to be an art gallery around here.

(Sentences with 'There ...' are unlikely in 2, 5, and 7 because the subjects have a definite or specific meaning, indicated by 'Your', 'The', and 'My'.)

#### 95.2

1 are 5 are 2 are 6 is 3 is 7 are 4 is 8 is

#### 95.3

The most likely sentences are given.

- 2 + c There's a cake in the kitchen (that / which) I've made especially for your birthday.
- 3 + h There was never any doubt (that) Bruno would get the job.
- 4 + a There have been suggestions (that) an election will be held next month.
- 5 + f There aren't many people alive today who / that haven't watched TV.
- 6 + g There are still some old houses in the village that / which don't have electricity.
- 7 + d There was absolutely nothing (that) I could do to prevent him falling.
- 8 + b There are few people in the company who / that are harderworking than Kristin.

#### 95.4

- 2 There being no further business, the meeting closed at 12:30.
- 3 There being no doctor available, the patients were sent home.
- 4 There being inadequate facilities at the hotel, the conference was relocated to a nearby university.

#### **UNIT 96**

#### 96.1

- 2 It was unsettling how he stared straight at me.
- 3 ✓ (However, in spoken English we might say 'It was surprising, Francesco's excellent exam result'.)
- 4 It is an advantage in the job to be a qualified driver.
- 5 ✓ (However, in spoken English we might say 'It's quite radical, her proposal'.)
- 6 It is highly unusual to put carpet on walls.
- 7 ✓ (However, in spoken English we might say 'It's a Ferrari, Robin's new car'.)
- 8 It is hard finding a good plumber these days. (or It is hard to find ...)

#### 96.2

The most likely answers are given

- it astonished me to discover (that) she was also a successful novelist.
- 3 ... it hurts (me) to pedal my bicycle. /... it has hurt (me) to pedal my bicycle.
- 4 ... it struck me (that) he was jealous.
- 5 ... it concerned me to hear (that) he was offended. (or ... it upset me ...)
- 6 ... it didn't bother him (that) everyone

could see in.

- 7 ... it upset me (that) she hadn't even told me when she was going away. (or ... it concerned me ...)
- 8 ... it doesn't do to criticise them too much.
- 9 ... it scared me to see (that) they were carrying knives.
- 10 ... it pays to plan your journey ahead.

#### 963

Example answers are given

- 2 It takes a lot of hard work to build your own house.
- 3 It takes a considerable amount of courage to make a speech in front of a group of strangers.
- 4 It takes patience and a lot of time to explain the rules of cricket to someone who doesn't know the game.
- 5 It takes bravery to stand up to a bully.
- 6 It takes a lot of organisation to be a good administrator.
- 7 It takes a great deal of time to learn to speak a foreign language well.

#### **UNIT 97**

#### 97.1

- 2 find it
- 3 discover ('find' would also be possible)
- 4 owe it
- 5 remember
- 6 enjoy it
- 7 prefer it
- 8 leave it 9 predict
- 10 consider it

#### 97.2

- 2 I see it as part of my role to significantly reduce Rexco's carbon footprint in / over the next five years.
- 3 Taccept it as a necessary evil that some people may be made redundant in the next year.
- 4 I view it as important for relations with the workforce to make available information about / on managers' salaries.
- 5 I regard it as unacceptable for a modern company to exclude the workforce from major decision making.
- 6 I take it as a fundamental principle of the company that suppliers of raw materials should be given a fair price for their products.

- 2 there's no hope / chance
- 3 It's no secret
- 4 It's no good / use or There's no point
- 5 there's no reason
- 6 there's no alternative / choice
- 7 It's no longer
- 8 there's no denying / question

#### **UNIT 98**

#### 98.1

- 2 ... it was to cheer her up that I booked a holiday in Amsterdam.
- 3 ... it's because I've got so much work to do that I can't come.
- 4 ... it was somewhere in there that /
- 5 ... it was only by studying very hard that she improved her Spanish.
- it is to my family that I dedicate this thesis.

#### 98.2

- 2 No, what I hope is that they will be put into a public art gallery.
- 3 No, what annoyed me was that she didn't apologise.
- 4 No, what I meant was that she could borrow it until I needed it again.
- 6 No, what I did was (to) put some oil and soy sauce on it and grill it.
- 7 No, what I did was (to) give her some money towards it.
- 8 No, what I did was (to) hire a car and drive all the way.

#### 98.3

#### Suggested answers

- 2 I don't know if she's free, but somebody who / that might be able to help is Petra. (or ... but Petra is somebody who / that might be able to help.)
- 3 In fact the place where / that I grew up is between this village and the next. (or ... the place that I grew up in ...)
- 4 I suppose the time when I lived in Australia was when I was happiest. (or ...the time when I was happiest was when I lived in Australia.)

#### **UNIT 99**

#### 99.1

- 1 (in a narrative 'down comes' is also possible; see Unit 2)
- 2 along comes
- 3 up go
- 4 back / away / off he went
- 5 out / in came (or comes)
- 6 along / up came (or comes)
- 7 off / away she went (or goes)

#### 99.2

- 2 + h Should you not wish to receive further information about our products, click on the box below.
- 3 + a Were the plane ever (to be) built, it would cut the journey time from New York to Tokyo by four hours.
- 4 + g Should the ice hockey team win again today, it will be their tenth consecutive victory.
- 5 + d Were I (to be) offered the job, I would have no hesitation in accepting.

- 6 + i Had a car been coming the other way, I might have been seriously injured.
- 7 +f Had there been a referendum on the issue, it is unlikely that the electorate would have supported the government.
- 8 + b Should you not be able to afford the SXL3, there are less expensive models in the range.
- 9 + e Were Charles Dickens (to be) alive today, he would be writing novels about the homeless in London.

#### 993

Example sentences

(i)

Europeans spend less of their income on recreation today than do Americans. Americans spent less of their income on housing in 1970 than did Europeans. (ii)

Europeans spent less of their income on recreation than on housing in 1970, as is the case today.

Americans spend more of their income on food and drink than on recreation today, as was the case in 1970.

#### 99.4

- 2 Kamal went to Oxford University, as did his sister.
- 3 People in poorer countries consume a far smaller proportion of the earth's resources than do those in developed nations
- 4 He is a much better teacher now than he was five years ago. (no inversion with a pronoun as subject)
- 5 Dan is a keen golfer, as is his wife, Sharon.

#### **UNIT 100**

#### 100.1

- 2 At no time was the public (ever) in any danger.
- 3 Only with close friends and family did he feel entirely relaxed.
- 4 Only if the pitch is frozen will the match be cancelled.
- 5 Little did I know then that Carmen and I would be married one day.
- 6 Barely had he entered the water when it became clear he couldn't swim.
- 7 On no account are you to light the fire if you are alone in the house. / On no account should / must you ...
- 8 Not for one moment was there any rivalry between the three brothers.
- 9 Not only was I wet through, I was freezing cold.
- 10 Only once had I ever climbed this high before. / Only once before had I ever climbed this high.
- 11 Hardly had the audience taken their seats when the conductor stepped onto the stage.

- 12 Only in the last few years has he been acknowledged to be a great author.
- 13 Not only do I have a headache, but my back is killing me, too.

#### 100

#### Possible answers

- 2 ... was the strength of the earthquake
- 3 ... is her dominance in the sport ...
- 4 ... alike were the twins ...
- 5 ... complicated was the equation ...
- 6 ... boring was the lesson ...

#### 100.3

Corrections are given in the underlined sections

The people of Sawston were evacuated yesterday as forest fires headed towards the town. Such was the heat of the oncoming inferno that trees more than 100 metres ahead began to smoulder. Only once in recent years, during 2018, has a town of this size (inversion is likely in this written context) had to be evacuated because of forest fires. A fleet of coaches and lorries arrived in the town in the early morning. Into these vehicles climbed the sick and elderly (inversion is likely in this written context), before they headed off to safety across the river. Residents with cars left by mid morning, as did all nonessential police officers.

Hardly had the evacuation been completed when the wind changed direction and it became clear that the fire would leave Sawston untouched. Soon after that complaints were heard from some residents. 'At no time did the fires pose a real threat,' said one local man. 'I didn't want to leave my home, and nor did most of my neighbours.' So upset are some elderly residents that they are threatening to complain to their MP. But Chief Fire Officer Jones replied, 'Had we not taken this action, lives would have been put at risk. Only when the fires have moved well away from the town will residents be allowed to return to their homes.'

#### **UNIT 101**

- 2 A study published in 2007 predicted a peak in the *global* population / a *global* peak in the population in 2050 of 9.2 billion/ of 9.2 million in 2050.
- 3 One particularly important cultural influence that affects the character and speed of change of a society is the process of communication.
- A key factor in the rise of today's globalised free market economy was the growth of trade in commodities in Asia in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.
- 5 The British government's economic policies immediately after World War II

#### **Key to Exercises**

were influenced by the ideas of the economist John Maynard Keynes (1883-1946) / who lived from 1883 to 1946.

#### 101.2

- 2 similarity between/of two documents
- 3 creation of 200,000 jobs
- 4 justification for
- 5 great difference in/between the reading habits of 6 year old girls and boys

#### 101.3

- 2 prior to marketing
- 3 regardless of ability
- 4 on the part of the reader
- 5 as opposed to human error
- 6 as a result of
- 7 According to
- 8 as distinct from/as opposed to
- 9 in line with
- 10 As for/In the case of

#### **UNIT 102**

#### 102.1

- 2 The general view is that the Earth's climate is warming, and it is likely that human activity is the cause.
- 3 Educationalists have been advocating the importance of critical thinking for many years, so it is surprising that it is missing from the school curriculum in many countries.
- 4 Although the approach outlined above will be used in this research, it is important to recognise that a number of other approaches are possible.

#### Example answers

- 5 Because little research has so far been done on the new drug, it is impossible to tell how effective it will be in treating heart disease.
- 6 The report recommends diverting more state funding from roads to railways, but it is doubtful that the present government would be willing to do this.

#### 102.2

- 2 It has been contended (Glass, 2018) that plants have intelligence, although as they do not have a nervous system, they cannot form thoughts.
- 3 It has been claimed by Hill (2010) that domestic technology has decreased the amount of time spent on housework, but as Burr (2014) points out, this is true only in the most developed countries.
- 4 It has been reported that aromatherapy can cure headaches (Majid, 2016). Nevertheless, there is little evidence that the treatment works in the long term.
- 5 It has been argued by Hirsch (2018) that research output can be measured by number of papers published. However, this does not take into account coauthorship of research articles.

Note that other positions for the references are possible.

#### 102 3

#### Example answer

It is sometimes maintained that a top-down management style is preferable because it allows clear goals and expectations to be set. It is undoubtedly true that in this type of organization, employees are not distracted from their work by participating in the decision-making process. However, it is important to recognise that many innovations start at the grassroot level in companies rather than at management level.

Some possible ways of making the itclauses less impersonal:

It is sometimes maintained that... – Some people say/ think that...

It is undoubtedly true that... - I agree/ accept that...

It is important to recognise... - We also need to accept that...

#### **UNIT 103**

#### 103.1

1 Moreover 2 albeit 3 As such 4 thereby 5 namely 6 given that

#### 103.2

- 3 considering 4 To put it another way
- 5 Firstly 6 situations like this
- 7 Subsequently 8 these

#### 103.3

Possible answers

the latter = the last/ second as follows = in this way, like this Hitherto = Before this/ that subsequently = after that That said = Having said that in that = because

#### **UNIT 104**

#### 104.1

Most likely answers

- 2 As (has been) reported in a number of studies (e.g. Manuel, 2015; Reith, 2018), globalisation is associated with more efficient food production.
- 3 As (has been) suggested by writers such as Eli (2015) and Koors (2017), the Moon may be a source of minerals for use on Earth.
- 4 As (has been) shown in research by Connors (2019), small group learning can reduce motivation.
- 5 As has been noted in many recent studies, including Hale (2020) and Kim (2021), the number of people adopting a vegan diet has increased rapidly since 2015.

#### 104.2

Most likely corrections

2 as you can see as (can be) seen (Note that in academic writing by students,

it is unusual to address the reader as 'you', and an impersonal form is preferred. You might, however, see this in a textbook where the reader is likely to be a student and the writer/ teacher adopts a more personal tone.)

- 3 s noted above is also possible.
- 4 below later (In speech, location adverbs are avoided for referring forward.)
- 5 as Have already explained; more likely is as previously explained (Academic writers tend to avoid referring to themselves with 'I' and instead use an impersonal form.)
- 6 'elsewhere', meaning in another part of the presentation, is unlikely here. If it means 'earlier in the presentation', we could use already, earlier or previously.
- 7 as it was outlined previously as (was) outlined previously
- 8 above previously/ earlier/ before (In speech, location adverbs are avoided for referring back.)

#### 104.3

- 2 What I plan to do in this talk is (to)
- 3 As I've already pointed out,
- 4 Turning now to social factors, these arise
- 5 what I'm going to do is
- 6 Coming back now to other social factors, it is clear that

#### **UNIT 105**

#### 105.1

Possible answers

- Also: would think/ should think/ should have thought
- 2 would think/ should think/ would have thought/ should have thought
- 3 wouldn't think/ shouldn't think/ wouldn't have thought/ shouldn't have thought
- 4 wouldn't think/ shouldn't think/ wouldn't have thought/ shouldn't have thought
- 5 would think/ should think/ would have thought/ should have thought

#### 105.2

- 2 How/ When do you expect to
- 3 How long/ Why/ When do you suggest (that)
- 4 Why/ How long do you recommend (that)
- 5 When do you anticipate (that)
- 6 Who do you reckon
- 7 Where/ When do you propose to/ we should
- 8 Which/ What do you consider to

- 1 As far as I can see 2 I take your point
- 3 For one thing
- 4 So what you're saying is
- 5 What I mean is 6 That's not to say
- 7 To be honest

definition of xii

A	easily confused 232	adverbs
a / an, the, and zero article	gradable and non-gradable 134	and adjectives, use of 232
generalisations about classes of things	both senses 136	definition of xii
90	classifying adjectives 136	formation of 142
geographical areas 90	different senses 136	participle adjectives in -ed,
holidays, seasons, days of the week, and festivals 94	good and / lovely and / nice and + gradable adjective 136	adverbial form of 142
jobs / job titles 92	grammar review 237	particles 214
means of transport and	more and more + adjective 136	phrasal verbs 214
communication 94	qualitative adjectives 136	position of
names of people 92	patterns after linking verbs	additional exercise 243
nouns both countable and	adjective + -ing / that-clause / to-	after object 148
uncountable 90	infinitive / wh-clause 140	comment adverbs 150, 156
specific versus general 94	it + linking verb + adjective (+ to-	connecting adverbs 150
with superlative adjectives 92	infinitive) 140	degree adverbs 150, 154
with there + be 190	it + make + adjective (+ to-infinitive	focus adverbs 154
things that are unique 90	/-ing/ that-clause) 140	frequency adverbs 148, 150, 152
this, in stories and jokes 92	position of	long adverbials 148, 150
times of day and night 94	additional exercise 243	and meaning 148
a / an and one	before / after noun 132	more than one adverbial 148
abbreviations 88	classifying adjectives 132	order of events 150
in number / quantity expressions 88	emphasising adjectives 132	place and direction adverbs 150, 152
oneother / another pattern 88	grammar review 232	time adverbs 150, 152
particular, but unspecified person /	with linking verbs 132	viewpoint adverbs 150, 156
thing / event 88	qualitative adjectives 132	prepositional phrases, adverbial use of
with possessives 88	reduced relative clauses 132	142
before singular countable nouns 88	study planner xviii–xix	study planner xviii–xix
before vowels / consonants 88	types of 212	types of xii
abbreviations 88	see also comparative forms; compound	with and without -ly 142
ability	adjectives; participle adjectives; superlative forms	see also comparative forms; superlative forms
be able to 30	adverbial clauses	advice 40, 78
can / could 30, 34, 219, 220	additional exercise 244	affirmative sentences xii, 214
academic writing	contrasts 164	
few and little 104	definition of xii	agent xii see also passive forms
may 34	study planner xix–xx	agreement, subject and verb
much (of), many (of) 100	tenses in 233	
prepositional phrases 114	of time 158	clause, as subject 80
such that, to introduce a result 162	14 (14 (14 (14 (14 (14 (14 (14 (14 (14 (	co-ordinated nouns / phrases, as subject 82
active (versus passive) forms 46, 48, 42, 296, xii	adverbial phrases, as complement 213 adverbials	collective nouns 80
adding information conjunctions 174	adverb as xii	complex subject 80
noun phrases 112, 114	adverbial clause as xii	determiners 82
prepositional phrases 114	definition of xii	how / here / there + be / have 82
sentence connectors 174	inversion after negative 200	items joined by (either) or
adjectives	noun phrase as xii	or (neither) nor 82
and adverbs, use of 142, 232	participle clauses 116, 118	measurement / amount / quantity, with singular verb 84
definition of xii	prepositional phrase as xii	names / titles ending in -s 80

names / titles ending in -s 80

nouns ending in -s 84	cleft sentences 196, 213	hyphenated phrases, before nouns 86
subject, position of 80	collective nouns 80, 214	noun + noun 86
there + be / have 82	colon 174, 225	noun + preposition + noun 86
what-clause, as subject 80	colour adjectives 122	one word, separate words,
all (of), whole, every, each	comma 225	hyphenated 225
time expressions 102	comment adverbs 150, 156, xii	plural forms 86
whole / entire, before nouns 102	comparative forms 233	possessive forms 86
among and between 178	adjectives with comparative /	two- and three-word verbs, nouns
amounts 104	superlative meaning 144	related to 86
any see some and any	comparative adjectives, linking with	conclusions, drawing
apostrophe, for possessives 226	and 136	grammar reminder 220–21
articles	more + one-syllable adjective 144	must 36, 74
additional exercise 241–42	more / less + two-syllable adjectives 144	present perfect continuous / present
definition of xii	one-syllable adjectives and adverbs +	perfect 12 will / would 32
grammar reminder 227	-er 144	
study planner x	phrases and clauses	conditional clauses
see also a / an, the, and zero article	as + adjective + a / an + noun 146	definition of 213
auxiliary verbs xii	as + adjective / adverb as 146	real and unreal conditions 213, 233–34
in inversion 198	go so / as far as + to-infinitive 146	real conditionals, tenses in 20, 166, 168, 172, 234
leaving words out after 128	less + adjective + than 146	unreal conditionals, tenses in 166, 170,
<b>be</b> as main verb in previous clause /	as little / few as 146	172, 234
sentence 128	as much / many as 146	conditional sentences 213
have as auxiliary + done 128	not + adjective / adverb + enough	conjunctions 174
modal auxiliary + do / be 128	+ to-infinitive 146	sentence connectors 174
more than one auxiliary 128	so + adjective / adverb + as + to- infinitive 146	conjunctions
no auxiliary 128	so + adjective / adverb + that-	additional exercise 244
substitute <b>do</b> 128	clause 146	conditions 174
negative questions 54, 222	sufficiently + adjective 146	definition of 213
substitute <b>so</b> and <b>not</b> 124	too + adjective + a / an + noun 146	linking clauses 206
see also modal verbs	too + adjective / adverb + to-	noun phrases, adding information
asking for confirmation or clarification 210	infinitive 146	to 112
Claffication 210	see also few, little, less, and fewer	reasons and results 174
В	complaining 12	study planner xix
bare infinitive 213	complement	time 174, 233
being + past participle clause 213	adverbial phrases as 213	connecting adverbs 150, xii
being direct 210	definition of 213	contrasting
between and among 178	and linking verbs 42, 213, 214	although, though, while and whilst, with participle clauses 164
С	and object 213	although and though 164
can see ability; permission; possibility	prepositional phrase as 213 and subject 213	conjunctions 174
challenging an idea 210	transitive / intransitive verbs 56	even though and even if 164
change, process of 42	see also verb complementation	sentence connectors 174
'choosing' verbs 68	complex noun phrases 202, 213	in spite of the fact that 164
clarifying 210	complex prepositions 202	while / whereas 164
classifying adjectives 132, 134, 136, xii		while / whilst 164
clauses	compound adjectives 138, 213	
definition of 213	compound nouns	could see ability; permission;
study planner xvii	countable compound nouns 86 definition of 213	possibility; reporting; unreal past
types of 213	grammar reminder 225	countable / uncountable nouns
Cypes of Els	grannar renninger 223	definition of 213

generalisations about classes of	E	be going to + infinitive 20, 166, 218
things 90	each see all (of), whole, every, each	be to + infinitive 24
grammar reminder 225	echo questions 54, 213	common phrases for talking about 26
with there + be 190	ellipsis 128, 130, 213	grammar reminder 218–19
see also a / an, the, and zero article; a	emphasising adjectives 132, xii	past and present continuous for
<pre>/ an and one; agreement, subject and verb; all (of), whole, every, each;</pre>	every see all (of), whole, every, each	intention 8
few, little, less, and fewer; much	exceptions 182	possibility, can / could 30
(of), many (of), a lot of, lots (of);	expectations 40	present continuous for 20
one and ones; someand any	expressing opinions impersonally 204	grammar reminder 219
criticising 12	F	informal arrangements 22
might / could + have + past	festivals 94	present simple for
participle 34	few, little, less, and fewer	conditional clauses 20
negative questions 54, 222	(a) few, (a) little, as pronouns 104	fixed events 20
will / would, use of 32	the few, the little + noun, as 'not	grammar reminder 218
D	enough' 104	if-clauses 24
dash (–) 174	few + personal pronouns 104	suppose / supposing / what if 20
days of the week 94	few and little, as informal alternatives	time clauses 20
defining relative clauses 215	104	real conditionals 166
see also relative clauses	less (than) and fewer (than) 104	seen from the past
definite article xii	a little, as informal alternative 104	be supposed to 28
see also a / an, the, and zero article	what few / what little, as 'the small	intentions 26
degree adverbs xii	(number / amount)' 104	reporting 28
much, very much 154	fewer see few, little, less, and fewer	was / were to + infinitive 28
with <b>owing to</b> 160	finite verbs 216	was / were to have + past
position of 150, 154	focus adverbs 154, xii	participle 28
very, too 154	focusing	<pre>shall / shan't versus will / won't 26 study planner xi</pre>
determiners 213	fronting, for emphasis 198	verbs + <b>to-infinitive</b> , for intentions 26
grammar reminder 227–28	it-clauses 196	will + infinitive 218
study planner xv–xvi	wh-clauses 196	will and be going to 18, 20
direct object 58, 214	what-clauses 196	future perfect and future perfect
see also complement; object;	frequency adverbs	continuous 22
transitive / intransitive verbs; verb	with <b>have to</b> 36	passive form 296
complementation	indefinite frequency xii	future simple 296
direct speech 213	past continuous with 4	G
direction adverbs 150, 152, 198, xii	position of 148, 150, 152	generalisations 90
disagreeing 204	present continuous with 4	geographical areas 90
disapproval 168	future continuous	giving an opinion with limited
discourse markers 174, 213	arranged events / activities 22	evidence 210
'disliking' verbs 60	grammar reminder 219	glossary xii–16
distance 104	imagining what is happening	going to see will and be going to
distancing yourself from a point of view 204	around now 22	gradable adjectives 134, 136, xii, 237
do, after negative adverbials 200	particular point in future, relating	grading adverbs 134, xii
see also auxiliary verbs;	start of event to 22	н
substitution	repeated / regular events 22	have (got) to 36, 220–21
-ed clauses see past participle	willingness, avoiding 22	having + past participle (-ed) clause
The same participate	future events	62, 116, 213
	additional exercise 237	holidays 94
	be about to + infinitive 24, 26	houses 174

however 174

1	adverbs of direction of movement 198	go and turn 42
-ing (present participle) form	after negative adverbials 200	'seeming' verbs 42
grammar reminder 230–31	after <b>neither</b> and <b>nor</b> 200	study planner xii–13
prepositional object 215	after time adverbs 152	superlatives 144
reduced relative clauses 215	fronting, for emphasis 198	little see few, little, less, and fewer
see also participle adjectives; verb complementation	with here comes, there goes 198 instead of if-clauses 198	М
if, in comparison clauses 168	with so + adjective 200	main clauses
if and whether	with <b>such + be</b> , for emphasis of extent	definition of 213
after certain verbs 172	/degree 200	and relative clause 215
after preposition 172	with as and than, in comparisons 198	manner, adverbs of 148, xii
in clause acting as subject or	of verb and subject 214	may see possibility
complement 172	inviting an opinion 210	might see possibility; unreal past
noun + adjective + as to whether	irregular verbs 294–5	modal and semi-modal verbs
172	it	additional exercise 237–38
possibilities, talking about 172	it is / was no versus there is / was no	auxiliary verbs xii
reporting <b>yes / no questions</b> 64	194	definition of 214
before <b>to-infinitive</b> 172	as object of verb 194	grammar reminder 219–21
whether or not 172	reporting with passive forms 50	with performatives 2
if-clauses	with viewpoint verbs 194	reporting to reported clause, summary
after would / would like 130	it, introductory	of changes 74
future events 24	to focus attention on sentence	study planner xii
inversion instead of 198	element 192	much (of), many (of), a lot of, lots
should, were, had, and omission of if	it-clauses 204	<b>(of)</b> 100
168	it + be + adjective / noun 192	multi-word verbs 188
without main clauses 168	it + be + (adverb) + adjective + that	definition of 214
see also conditional clauses imaginary situations 32, 234	204	definition of two-word verbs 214
imperative clauses 42, 166, 213	it + be + (adverb) + adjective + to- infinitive 204	definition of three-word verbs 214
indefinite article xii	it + verb + object + that-clause 192	particle in 214
see also a / an, the, and zero article	it + verb + object + to-infinitive	position of prepositions in two-word
indirect object 58, 214	clause 192	verbs 110
see also object; verb complementation	it + verb + that-clause 192	position of prepositions in three-word verbs 110
indirect questions 215	it + verb + to-infinitive clause 192	word order 188
see also reporting	not as alternative to <b>noun</b> as subject	must
indirect speech 215	192	
see also reporting	where subject is to-infinitive, that-	drawing conclusions 36 formal rules, regulations and
infinitive forms 213	clause, wh-clause or -ing clause	warnings 36
instructions 24, 166, 196	192	and <b>have (got) to</b> 36, 220–21
grammar reminder 220	it-clauses 44, 196	must / mustn't, in reporting 74
if-clauses, without main clauses 168	1	need(n't), don't have to, mustn't 221
intentions 26, 78	jobs / job titles 92	proposing future arrangements 36
interrupted past actions / events 8	L	
intransitive verbs see transitive /	less see few, little, less, and fewer	N
intransitive verbs	linking verbs	names, of people 80, 92
introducing new topic 196		narrative 64
introducing a contrasting point 210	adjective patterns with 138, 140, 164	necessity 220–21
introducing a problem or	become and get 42	need
disadvantage 210	'becoming' verbs 42	in formal written English 38
inversion	'being' verbs 42	need(n't), don't have to, mustn't,
additional exercise 245	and complement 42, 213, 214	don't need to 38, 221

as ordinary versus modal verb 38	transitive verbs 216	'liking/wanting' verbs 48
in questions 38	see also transitive / intransitive verbs;	modal verbs 296
negative questions 54, 222	verb complementation	'naming' verbs 46
newspaper writing	obligations 40, 221	reporting with 50
be to + infinitive, for events likely to	offers 18, 72, 166, 220	study planner xii–xiii
happen 24	one and ones	'telling' verbs 46
participle clauses, use of 112	with countable nouns 122	tenses 296
past perfect continuous, use of 14	inclusion of 122	topic emphasis 44
no, none (of), and not any 98 nominal relative clauses 108, 215	not used after nouns used as adjectives 122	transitive two- and three-word verbs 46
see also relative clauses	omission of 122	verbs with related nouns 44
nominalisation 202, 214	with possessive determiners 122	past continuous
non-affirmative meaning 214	referring to people 122	with adverbs of frequency 4
non-defining relative clauses	see also a / an and one	as / when / while 158
for adding information 106	opinions 62	
definition of 215	orders 24, 72, 78	grammar reminder 218
participle clauses, use of instead of 112	organisations, names of 80	passive form 296
prepositional phrases 114	ought to see should and ought to	past perfect continuous, and past perfect 14
whose, clauses with 108	ought to see should and ought to	and past simple 8, 16
see also relative clauses	P	intentions not carried out 8, 10
non-finite verbs 216	participle adjectives 214	in narratives 8
non-gradable adjectives 134, 136, xii, 237	-ing and -ed forms, as adjectives 138	past events in succession 8
non-grading adverbs 134, xii	after nouns, reduced relatives 138	■ Property (All Control of Contr
	in compound adjectives 138	past events over same period 8
noun phrases	with much, very much 154	repeated past actions 8
adding information to 112	position of 138	past participle ( <b>-ed</b> ) 214
complex noun phrases 202	that / those before 138	as+passive/past participle 208
conjunctions 112	participle clauses	grammar reminder 231
namely, use of 112	active and passive in noun phrases 112	reduced relative clause 215
participle clauses 112	with adverbial meaning 116	see also participle adjectives; participle clauses
prepositional phrases 114	contrasting 164	past perfect
that is, use of 112	definition of 213	grammar reminder 218
to-infinitive clauses 112	having + participle, and timing of	passive form 296
complements 42	action 116	past perfect continuous, and past
definition of 213 nominal relative clauses 215	implied subject, and subject of main clause 116	continuous 14
nouns	not, position of 116	and past simple
additional exercise 240–41	with own subject 116	additional exercise 236–37
definition of 214	use of prepositions with 118	intentions not carried out 10
study planner xiv	participles 214	ordering past events 10
see also compound nouns;	particles 188, 214	reporting past events 10
countable / uncountable nouns	passive forms 296	review of use of 16
number expressions 88	active patterns 46,48	time clauses 6
number expressions do	additional exercise 238–39	past perfect continuous
0	agent, omission of 44	additional exercise 236–37
object	'appointing' verbs 46	grammar reminder 218
and complement 213	'giving' verbs 46	intentions not carried out 10
definition of 214	grammar reminder 221–22	past perfect and past continuous
position of in two- and three-word	it-clause as subject of 44	activity in progress recently
verbs 188	to cleane as subject of 44	versus finished 14

prepositions	newspaper headlines 4
additional exercise 244	passive form 296
after nouns 186	phrases introducing news 4
after verbs 184	and present continuous 16
definition of 214	immediacy 4
particles 214	life commentaries 4
phrasal verbs 214	mental states 2
of place 178	performative verbs 2
of position and movement 176	state verbs 2
reasons, giving 160	real conditionals 166
in relative clauses 110	time clauses 6
study planner xx-xxi	present subjunctive 78, 216
of time 180	present tenses, in reporting and reported
present and past time, review 16, 235	clauses 70
	product names 92
15 NO. 25 NO. 26 NO. 25 NO.	pro-forms, 206, 215
0.000 P0.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000 00.000	promises 18
	pronouns
	definition of 215
	study planner xvii–xviii
74	types of 215
NO. 099937-04000 - 495-201 1000340103941-9	purposes and results
	in order / so as + to-infinitive 162
, , , , ,	in order that and so that 162
	so + adjective / adverb + that-clause
CIR_100	146
	such that, in such a way that, such
# 197 ST ST 150 144 S000000000000000000000000000000000	that 162
3800 07 1000 VO-6 MIST FEB 12/07-28/03/6	Q
16, 236	qualitative adjectives 132, 136, xii
real conditionals 166	quantifiers
present perfect continuous	definition of 215
grammar reminder 218	grammar reminder 227–30
passive form 296	study planner xv–xvi
and present perfect	with and without 'of' 228–29
activities in progress until recently 12	quantity expressions 84, 88
- 1.1717 1 22.5	qualitity expressions o 1, oo
additional exercise 236	see also some and any
conclusions from what can be seen /	see also some and any
	question forms
conclusions from what can be seen /	question forms grammar reminder 222
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12 recently completed events 12	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215 negative questions 54
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12 recently completed events 12 repeated <i>versus</i> one-off activities 12	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215 negative questions 54 study planner xii–xiii
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12 recently completed events 12 repeated <i>versus</i> one-off activities 12 results of circumstances / activities 12	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215 negative questions 54 study planner xii–xiii with that-clauses 54
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12 recently completed events 12 repeated versus one-off activities 12 results of circumstances / activities 12 review of uses of 16	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215 negative questions 54 study planner xii–xiii with that-clauses 54 types of 215
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12 recently completed events 12 repeated versus one-off activities 12 results of circumstances / activities 12 review of uses of 16 situations existing until present 12	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215 negative questions 54 study planner xii–xiii with that-clauses 54 types of 215 see also wh-questions; yes / no
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12 recently completed events 12 repeated versus one-off activities 12 results of circumstances / activities 12 review of uses of 16 situations existing until present 12 present simple	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215 negative questions 54 study planner xii-xiii with that-clauses 54 types of 215 see also wh-questions; yes / no questions
conclusions from what can be seen / heard etc. 12 recently completed events 12 repeated versus one-off activities 12 results of circumstances / activities 12 review of uses of 16 situations existing until present 12 present simple contents of books / films etc. 4	question forms grammar reminder 222 indirect questions 215 negative questions 54 study planner xii–xiii with that-clauses 54 types of 215 see also wh-questions; yes / no
	additional exercise 244 after nouns 186 after verbs 184 definition of 214 particles 214 phrasal verbs 214 of place 178 of position and movement 176 reasons, giving 160 in relative clauses 110 study planner xx-xxi of time 180 present and past time, review 16, 235 present continuous with adverbs of frequency 4 for future events 20, 22, 219 grammar reminder 217 intentions 26 passive form 296 and present simple 2, 4, 16 present participle (-ing) 214 see also participle adjectives; participle clauses present perfect grammar reminder 217–18 passive form 296 and past simple 6, 236 and present perfect continuous 12, 16, 236 real conditionals 166 present perfect continuous grammar reminder 218 passive form 296 and present perfect activities in progress until recently 12

R	reported speech 215	should and shall 40
real conditionals	reporting 64	simple versus continuous forms,
<b>if-clauses</b> 166, 168	additional exercise 240	summary of uses of 16
real and unreal conditions 213, 233–34	grammar reminder 224	since and for 12, 14
tenses in 20, 166, 168, 172, 234	modal auxiliaries 74	some and any
unless and if not 172	negative forms 64	with <b>before</b> 96
reasons	offers / suggestions / orders /	'approximately' 96
cleft sentences 196	intentions / requests 72	with comparisons 96
conjunctions 174	passive forms 46	general statements about whole
prepositions 118, 160	punctuation for 224	classes of things 96
sentence connectors 174	questions 64	grammar reminder 227–28
reduced relative clauses 132, 138, 215	quotations 64	with negative words 96
see also relative clauses	study planner xiv	non-affirmative contexts 96
referring to other parts of a spoken	tense choice in 70	non-specific, unspecified things 96
presentation 208	that-clauses 66, 72, 76	before plural and uncountable nouns 96
referring to other parts of a written	using adjectives 76	strong and weak forms 96
text 208	using nouns 76	unknown / unimportant person or thing 96
referring to other work 208	reporting / reported clauses 64, 72	speculating 210
reflexive pronouns	definition of 215	state verbs 2, 12, 14, 166, 215
definition of 215	past tenses 70	subject and complement 213
for emphasis 120	present subjunctive 78	definition of 215
formality 120	Reporting structures to introduce ideas	it-clause as 44
grammar reminder 231	cautiously and challenge ideas 210	passive, uses of 44
inclusion / omission of, with some verbs 120	Reporting structures to invite opinions 210	placement of long 44
in verb + object + adjective	reporting verbs 64, 215	relative pronouns as 106
complement structure 56	requests	who or what as 52
regret 170	grammar reminder 220	see also agreement; inversion
relative clauses	if-clauses 168	subjunctive 216
additional exercise 243	reporting 72,78	past 170
defining 106, 108, 112, 215	will and be going to 18	present 78
definition of 215	Witt also be going to 10	subordinate clauses 213, 215
grammar reminder 230	S	see also adverbial clauses; relative
nominal 108, 215	seasons 88, 94	clauses
non-defining 106, 108, 112, 114, 215	semi-colon 174	substitution
prepositions in 110	semi-modal verbs 214	to, for to-infinitive clause 130
reduced 132, 138, 215	grammar reminder 219–21	additional exercise 243
study planner xvii	see also modal verbs	do 128, 200, 222, 232
relative pronouns	sense verbs 30	do so and such 126
definition of 215	sentence connectors 174, 206, 215	so and not 124
omission / inclusion of 106, 110, 190	short answers 124	study planner xvii-xviii
as subject / object of relative clause 106	should and ought to	suggestions 54, 72, 78, 222
relative words 215	be supposed to 221	superlative forms
a / the reason why / that 108	expectations 40	the + adjective with -est 144
nominal relative clauses, with $\mathbf{who}$ /	had better, in spoken English 40	the + most + adjective 144
what 108	obligations / recommendations 40	of + plural noun phrase, after
whatever, whoever, whichever 108	questions / requests for confirmation	superlative 144
when, whereby, where, why 108	or advice 40	in + singular noun phrase, after
whose, clauses with 108	regret / criticism 40	superlative 144

adjectives with a / an, the, and zero what 52 article 92 uncertainty 76 which 52 most + adjective / adverb 144 unchanging states 12 who 52 noun + of which 110 uncountable nouns see whom 52 countable / uncountable nouns whose 52 unless and if not 172 see also negative questions tenses unreal conditionals wh-words 215, 216 grammar reminder 217-219 but for 166 what-clauses 80, 196 study planner x-xi if + past simple 166 whether see if and whether that-clauses real and unreal conditions 206, 233-34 whole see all (of), whole, every, passive sentences 44 unless and if not 172 reporting 66, 72, 76 were in if-clause 166, 170 should in 78 will, would and used to unreal past characteristic behaviour / habits 32 wh-questions with 54 might / could have + past participle the see a / an, the, and zero article conclusions / assumptions 32 234 there + be criticism 32 would have + past participle 32, 234 change of topic, topic known to grammar reminder 220 listener / reader 190 used to repeated events in past 32 introducing topics 190 grammar reminder 220 unreal past situations 32 noun following, agreement of be repeated events in past 32 will and be going to with 190 in reporting 74 be going to + go / come 20 noun following, indefinite / nonspecific meaning of 190 conditional sentences 18 with nouns followed by that, verb complementation decisions 18 wh, to-infinitive or -ing clause 190 additional exercise 239 formality / informality 18, 20 'thinking' verbs 30, 60 direct and indirect objects 58 offers / requests / promises 18 three-word verbs see multi-word verbs negative forms 62 planned / likely events 18, 20 time adverbs xii, 208 prepositional object, with for / to 58 predictions 18 time clauses verb + -ing or bare infinitive 60 willingness 22 conjunctions 174 verb + object + bare infinitive 60 works of art 92 tenses in 233 verb + object + to-infinitive 62 would see if-clauses; will, would and times, of day and night 94 used to verb + object / possessive + -ing 60 titles, of newspapers, books, films 80 Υ verb + preposition + object + toinfinitive 62 to-infinitive yes / no questions 64, 215 verb + to have + past participle 62 with come and grow 42 see also question forms definition of 213 verb + to (preposition) + -ing 60 see also transitive / intransitive verbs leaving out 130 zero article xii verb phrases 216 with linking verbs 140 see also a / an, the, and zero article verbs 215, 216 noun phrases, adding information to 112 viewpoint adverbs 156, xii see also verb complementation transitive / intransitive verbs 56 grammar reminder 223 wh-clauses implied object 56 focusing 196 intransitive verbs 56, 213 with linking verbs 140 passives, grammar reminder 221-22 verbs with 68 transitive or intransitive verbs 56 wh-questions 52, 215, 216 transitive verbs 56, 216 auxiliary verb 54 two- and three-word verbs, word order how and what 52 reporting 64

with that-clauses 54

see also verb complementation

two-word verbs see multi-word verbs

affected 138

a / an 88, 90, 92, 94, 146, afford 130 argument 76 among 178 190, xii, 213 afraid 130, 132, 140 144 among other things 178 arise 294 a bit 134 after 6, 20, 118, 158 174, 213 among others 178 arms trade 86,90 a bit of 104 after all 174 amongst 178 army 80 a few (of) 230 after that 174, 206 amount of 100 arrange 48, 62, 68 a little (of) 230 afternoon 94 amused 78 arrest 228 alot (of) 82, 100, 234 afterwards 174 and 112, 174, 213 arts festival 86 a number of 82,110 agitatedly 142 angry 76, 134, 140 as 144, 146, 158, 174, 198 a / the majority of 82 agree 2, 26, 46, 50, 62 66, announce 46, 50, 58, 66 as a consequence 174 ability 186 72, 124, 130, 217, 223 as a result 174 announcement 76 able 140 agree about / on / with 184 annoy 192 as a result of 202 about 184 agreed 76 as a rule 150 annoyed 76, 140 above 176, 208 aim 26, 46, 186, 223 annoying 140 as argued 208 above all 174 alarmed 140 as demonstrated 208 annually 152 absent from 120 alarmed / alarming 232 another 122 as depicted 208 absolute 132 albeit 206 answer 56, 66, 76 as described 208 absolutely 134 alert 144 answer back 188 as discussed 208 abusive 76 alike 132, 144 anticipate 48, 210, 217 as distinct from 202 academic 136 alive 132 anxious 78 as explained 208 accept 124, 194 all 110, 213 any 96, 186, 227-28 as far as I can judge 210 accident 194 all (of) 82, 102, 228, 229 any 82 as far as I can see 210 acclimatise 120 all in all 150, 206 any (of) 82, 228 as far as I can tell 210 according to 156 all of a sudden 4 anybody 98, 228 as follows 206 account for 188 all over 176 anyone 96, 98, 190, 228 as for 202 ache 217 all the same 174 as given 208 anything 96, 98, 228 acknowledge 2,66 all things considered 150 anyway 174 as if 170 acknowledgement 76 allegation 76 anywhere 98 as indicated 208 across 176 allege 50, 62 apart 182 as illustrated 208 act on 188 allegedly 142 apart from 182 as it were 170 active 144 allocated 138 apologetic 76 as long as 174 adamant 76 allow 48, 58, 62, 223 apologise 2 as mentioned 208 adapt 60, 120 almost 102, 134, 150, 154 appalling 78 as many 146 adapted 42 alone 132, 144, 154 apparent 42, 204 as much 146 address book 86 along 176, 198 apparently 156 as noted 208 adhere to 56 already 208 as opposed to 202 appeal 62 adjust 60 also 174, 206 appear 2, 42, 48, 62, 124, as outlined 208 admiration 186 alternative 194 132, 140, 164, 190, 192, as pointed out 208 228 admire 154 alternatively 174 as seen 208 apply 62 admit 2, 58, 60, 62, 66, 124, although 118, 164, 174, 206 as shown 2 08 194, 228 applying 138 altogether 154 as soon as 6, 20, 174 adult 136 appoint 46 always 4, 36, 150 as such 206 advertise 62 appreciate 48, 154, 217 amaze 192 as suggested 208 advice 76 approve 60 amazed 78, 140 as though 170 advisable 78 approve of 60, 188 amazed / amazing 232 as to 68, 76, 172 advise 2, 46, 62, 66, 68 72, argue 66, 194, 204 amazing 140 as well 174, 206 78, 130, 172 argue about / for / with 184 ambition 186

ashamed 132, 140, 144, 186

aside 182 blind 42 call 46 be about to 24, 26 ask 46, 48, 56, 58, 62, 66, be afraid 124 blow 295 call back 46, 188 68, 72, 78, 130, 228 be allowed to 30, 214 book 58 call on 72,188 ask about / for / of 184 be bound to 26 bored 144 call up 46 ask of 184 bored / boring 232 be certain 124 campaign 62 asleep 132 be due to 26 boring 144 can 30, 74, 128, 214, 219, 220 aspire to 56 be going to 18, 20, 166 **both** 110 can I just say 210 associate with 56 be likely 34 both (of) 233 can't bear 48, 194 association 80 be on the brink of 26 bother 38 can't stand 194, 224 assume 50, 56, 66, 124 be on the point of 26 boy's arm 86 capable 132 assuming (that) 174 brave 140 care 150 be on the verge of 26 assure 66 be supposed to 28, 190, 221 bravely 156 care about / for 184 astonish 192 be sure to 26, 124 break 56, 295 careful 140, 144 astonished 140 be to 24 break in 188 careless 144 astonishingly 156 beach 90 break out 86 carelessly 156 astounded 78 break-out 86 bear 294 carry out 46 at no time 152 bearing in mind that 206 brick-built 138 cast 294 at that time 174 beat 294 briefly 148 cast back 46 at the end of the day 150 beautiful 132 bring 48, 58, 295 catch 48, 58, 295, 229 at the same time 174, 206 because 118, 160, 174, bring about 188 catch out 188 athletics 84 206, 213 broadcast 295 cause 62, 223 atmosphere 90 because of 160 broken 138 caused 138 because of this 206 atomic 132 brother-in-law 86 cautious 144 attempt 46, 186 become 42, 132, 140, brush up on 46 cease 228 164, 295 attract 2 build 58, 295 certain 76, 140, 144 before 20, 96, 118, 158 174, attribute to 56 building materials certainly 156 200, 208 audience 80 industry 86 chance 102, 130, 186 194 before that 174, 206 autumn 94 burn 56, 295 change 56 beg 2,78 avail of 120 burst 295 cheap 144 begin 48, 56, 60, 130, 228, available 132 busy 134, 140 294 cheap(ly) 142 average 136 busy with 120 behave 120 check 66, 68 avoid 48 but 174, 182, 206, 213 believe 2, 30, 48, 50, 56 62, check into 188 awake 132, 294 64, 66, 124, 194, 217, 223 but for 166, 182 chemical 132 award 46, 58 belong 12, 166 buy 58, 295 chicken drumsticks 86 aware 42, 132, 140, 144 by 94, 118, 180 belong to 217 choice 194 away 198 belongings 84 by air 94 choose 58, 68, 130, 172, 295 awful 134, 140 below 176, 208 by bus 94 chosen 138 awkward 140 bend 56, 294 by car 94 civil 136 beneath 176 by contrast 174 claim 50, 76, 204 baby's bedroom 86 besides 118, 174, 182, 206 by email 94 class 80 back 198 bet 294 by phone 94 clean 136 **bad** 140 between 178 by plane 94 bald 42 clean up 188 big 134 by post 94 clear 140, 144, 204 ban 186 bind 294 by sea 94 clear away 188 barely 96, 200 biologically 156 by taxi 94 clearly 148, 150, 156 base on 56 by the time 6, 20 birds' nests 86 clear(ly) 142 be 42, 128, 130, 132 140, bite 294 by train 94 164, 295, xii clever 134 bleed 295 be able to 30, 130, 214, 219 climate 90 calculate 50,68

climb 48	congratulations 84	data 84	dignified 142
cling 222	consent 62	dawn 94	diplomatic 136
close 56, 60	consequently 174	dawn on 192	direct 78, 144
clothes 84	consider 2, 8, 46, 50, 56, 62,	day 102	direct(ly) 142
clothes shop 86	66, 68, 172, 194, 217, 223	deaf 42	disagree 66
club 80	consist of 2, 222	deal 294	disagreement 172
coal mine 86	constantly 4	debate 68, 172	disappointed 78, 140
coffee 90	constitute 217	decide 30, 50, 62, 68	disappointedly 142
coincidence 194	contain 217	decision 76,186	disapprove of 46, 60
cold 144	content 132	declare 2, 46, 56, 66	discourage 60
collect 58	continually 4	decline 223	discover 50, 68
college 80	continue 48, 223	decrease 56	discuss 68, 172
come 42, 48, 152, 198, 295,	convenient 204	deep 134	discussion 76, 172, 186
215, 228	conversation 90	deep(ly) 142	dislike 12, 48, 60, 194, 223
come about 192	convince 66	definitely 156	dismissive 76
come across 110	convinced 42	delay 223	dive 294
come in for 188	cook 56, 58	delighted 130	do 126, 128, 200, 295, xii,
come to 188	cost 2, 58, 186, 192, 294, 217	demand 66, 72, 78, 223	222, 232
come up against 46, 188	could 30, 34, 74, 128, 214,	democratic 132	do out of 188
command 62, 72, 78, 223	219, 220, 234	demonstrate 46, 50, 58, 204	do so 126
comment 76	council 80	deny 2, 48, 58, 62, 66 96,	domestic 134
commission 80	count 60, 62	194, 223	don't have to 38, 221
committee 80	count out 188	department 80	doubt 2, 124, 166, 172, 217
common 134, 136	country(side) 90	depend 60, 62	doubtful 76, 140, 204
community 80	cover up 188	depend on 172	<b>down</b> 198
company 80	cowardly 142	depending on 202	downstairs 148
company director 92	cow's milk 86	deprive of 46	draw 294
complain 66	crazy 140	describe 46, 48, 58	dread 223
complete 132, 144	creased 144	description 186	dreadfully 134
completely 134, 150	creep 295	deserve 130	dream 294
complex 144	crew 80	deservedly 142	dress 120
complimentary 76	criteria 84	desire 186, 217	drink 56, 295
computer 90	critical 76, 136	despite 164	drink up 188
computer keyboard 86	crop up 188	deter 60	drive 56, 295
conceivable 204	crowd 80	determination 186	drop 56
concentrate 60	crucial 78	determine 68	duck's eggs 86
concern 38,192	culminate in / with 56	determined 130	<b>due to</b> 160
concern with 120	cup of tea 86	determinedly 142	during 180
concerned 78, 132, 140, 172	curious 140	detest 60, 223	dwell 294
conclude 2,68	curiously 150	detract from 56	L 02 102 110 122
conclusion 76	customs officer 86	develop 150	each 82, 102, 110, 122, xii, 229
confess 2, 60, 66	<b>cut</b> 294	diabetes 84	each of 82
confide 66	cut back on 188	differ 150	each (of) 228
confidence 102	cut out 188	differ from 217	each other 231
confident 140	daily 152	differentiate between 56	eager 144
conflict 172	dance 56	difficult 42, 140	earlier 174, 208
confusion 172	dare 60, 295, 214	dig 295	earnings 84
congratulate 2	dark 144	digital 132	easy 140, 204
SEST SECTION IS AND DESCRIPTION	work I I I	AN - 2000 Stores	110, 204

every so often 102, 150 easy-going 138 financially 150, 156 perspective 156 eat 56, 295 everybody 82 find 2, 48, 50, 56, 58, 66, from time to time 150 194, 295, 217, 223 economic 132 everyone 82 fully 134 find out 48, 68 economics 84 everything 82 fun 144 fine 132 effect 186 furious 140 evident 204 fine(ly) 142 either 122, 228 exact 144 furniture 96 finish 56, 60, 223 excellent 134 either ... or 82 further 206 first 122, 150, 152, 206 furthermore 174, 206 either of 82 except 182 first of all 206 elderly 142 except for 182 future 90 firstly 206 electorate 80 excepted 182 gather 124 fit 2, 294 electric 136 excited / exciting 232 gather up 188 fix 58 elsewhere 208 excitedly 142 general 132 flat(ly) 142 emerge 192 exclusively 134 generally 156 flee 295 emphasise 194 expect 2, 8, 26, 46 50, 54, 64, generation 80 66, 72 124, 130, 210, 217 flick through 188 empty 136 generously 156 explain 46, 50, 66, 68 fling 294 enable 62, 223 genuine 136 explanation 76 fly 152, 198, 294 encourage 50, 62, 72, 223 get 42, 58, 132, 295, 222 extremely 134, 154 focus 60 encouragement 76 get down 46, 188 follow 192 end 60 face 48 get up 188 fond 186 end up 42 fail 56, 62, 96, 130, 223 girls' school 86 fondness 186 enemy 80 failure 186 give 46, 58, 295 foolish 140 enjoy 48, 154, 166, 194, 223 fair 144 given that 206 foolishly 156 enormously 150, 154 fairly 134 glad 132, 140 for 12, 14, 174, 184 enough 146 fall 294, 223 glasses case 86 for one thing 174, 210 entire 102, 132 fall through 188 go 42, 146, 152, 198, 295, for (reasons) 160 entirely 134, 150, 160 false 136 223 for this reason 206 entitle 62 familiarise with 120 go bad 42 forbid 2, 96, 295 environment 90 family 80 go bust 42 force 62, 222, 223 environmental 132, 134 far-reaching 138 go dead 42 forecast 76, 295 environmentally 156 fashion 142 go missing 42 foreign 136 envisage 223 fast 134 go mouldy 42 forever 4 envy 58 fast-growing 138 go off 42 forget 48, 60, 62, 68, equal 144 favourite 144 go on 62 130, 295 equate with 56 fear 38, 90, 186 go over 188 forgive 58, 295 especially 154 federation 80 go rotten 42 formal 144 essential 78, 134, 208 feed 294 go through with 188 forwards 148 establish 50, 68 feel 2, 30, 46, 48, 50, 60 go up 150 found 138 64, 66, 132, 140, 164 194, estimate 50, 204 go wrong 42 frankly 150, 156, 210 295, 210, 217, 223 even 154 goat's cheese 86 free 140 feel like 223 even if 164, 170 good 140, 194 free(ly) 142 fence off 46 even so 174 good and 136 freeze 295 fetch 58 even though 164, 174 good-looking 138 frequent 144 few 104, 146 evening 94 goods 84 friendly 134, 142 few (of) 230 every 82, 102, 186, 229 government 80 frighten 192 fewer 104 every few (months) 102 grab 223 frightened 132 fight 294 every now and again 102 grateful 76 frightened / frightening fill in 110 every other (kilometre) 102 greatly 150 232 finally 148 every single (day) 102 ground 90 from my / his / her

innocent 136 hitherto 206 I'm sure 18 group 80 grow 42, 295 hold 56, 295 imaginable 132 insist 60.78 grow up 188 hold out 188 imagine 2, 46, 60, 68 124, insistent 76 170, 210, 217, 223 grumble 66 hold over 46 insofar as 174, 206 immensely 134 guarantee 2, 26, 58, 72, holiday 180 instead 174 76, 194 imperative 78 home-made 138 institute 80 guess 68, 124 important 78, 134, 204 honestly 150, 156 instruct 48, 68, 72, 78 guess so / not 124 impossible 96, 134, 140, 204 hope 8, 10, 26, 48, 50 54, instruction 76 guilty 136, 140 62, 72, 102, 124 130, 194, improvement 186 insufficient 204 217, 223 gymnastics 84 in 118, 180, 198 insulting 76 hopefully 150 in a way 210 intake 86 habit 186 horizon 90 in addition 174, 206 intend 8, 26, 50, 64 72, 78, had better 40, 214, 219 hourly 152 in amazement 142 130, 210 hair 90 how 52, 68, 82, 146, intensely 134 in any case 174 hair-raising 138 196, 216 in case 20 intention 186 hand 46, 58 however 174, 215 in comparison with 202 interested 42,138 hang 152, 295 huge 134 in consequence 174 interested / interesting 232 hanger-on 86 hugely 134 in contrast 174 interesting 140, 204 happen 168, 192, 223 human 136 in line with 202 interestingly 156 happily 142 human race 90 in my / his / her opinion 156 internet 90 happy 134, 140 hurriedly 142 in order that 162 interview 186 hard 140, 204 hurt 192, 295 in order to 162 introduce 46, 58 hardly 38, 96, 150, 158, I bet 18 invaluable 134 in spite of 164 200, 220 I'd have thought 210 in such a way that 162 invitation 76 hardly ever 150, 152 l expect 18 in sum 206 invite 62.72 hate 48, 60, 130, 194, 217, I gather 4 in summary 206 involved 132 have 2, 60, 62, 114, 128, I hear 4 iron 90 in that 160, 174, 206 295, xii, 217 I hope 18 in the case of 202 irrelevant 42 have got 128 I imagine 18, 210 in the light of 206 irrespective of 202 have got to 36, 214, 219, I mean 206 in this way 206 issue 76 220-21 I suppose I'm trying to inability 186 it 50, 140, 192, 194 have to 36, 38, 74, 220-21 say 210 inappropriate 78 it says here 4 having said that 206 I reckon 18 itself 231 inasmuch as 160 hear 30, 46, 48, 60, 124 I see 4 incline to / towards 56 294, 222, 228 joke 66 I take your point, but 210 inclined 140 hear out 188 journalist 92 Ithink 18 included 138 help 46, 60, 192, 223 judge 56 Lunderstand 4 income tax 86 help on with 188 jury 80 I wonder 18 inconceivable 78, 204 help out 188 just 154 idea 130, 186 inconvenient 204 hence 174, 206 just(ly) 142 ideal 144 increase 56 her 122 identified 138 keep 42, 48, 60, 295 indicate 66 here 82 ideologically 156 keep on 62 indication 76 here comes 198 if 20, 64, 166, 172, 174, kind 140 indifferent 172 herself 120, 231 200, 213 kindly 142, 156 individual 136 hesitate 223 if not 172 kneel 295 industrially 156 hide 120, 295 if only 170 knit 295 infected 42 high(ly) 142 if so 174 know 2, 12, 50, 60, 68 124, inflict on 56 himself 120, 231 ill 42, 132 166, 295, 217 influence 186 hit 192, 295, 223 illness 180 know about / of 184

inform 50, 66, 68

lack 186 look after 110, 188 mend 58 neither 122, 200 lamb chops 86 look down on 188 mention 46, 50, 58, 66 194 neither do I 200, 232 largely 134, 154, 160 look forward 60 mere 132 neither / nor 82 last 150 look forward to 154 neither of 82, 110 mess up 188 late 136 look to 26 midday 94 neither (of) 228 late(ly) 142 look up 46, 188 midnight 94 nerve-wracking 138 later 174, 206, 208 look up to 188 might 34, 128, 214, nervous 140 220, 234 later on 208 looker-on 86 never 36, 38, 54, 96, 98, might well 34 150, 200, 220 lay 295 lose 295 millions of 100 nevertheless 174 lead 295 lots of 100, 229 mind 48, 223 news 84 lean 295 loud(ly) 142 next 150, 152, 208 mine 215 leap 295 love 2, 48, 60, 130, 194, 223 minimum 132 nice 140 learn 68, 295 loved ones 122 miserable 140 nice and 136 learn about / of 184 lovely 140, 142 miss 223 night 102 least 144 lovely and 136 mistake for 56 no 54, 98, 182, 186, 200, 228 leave 48, 58, 194, 215, 295 low 134 mobile 136 no amount of 98 leave out 188 luckily 156 modern 144 no bother 98 lend 46, 58, 214, 295 lucky ones 122 money-making 138 no chance 98 less 104, 144, 146 mad 140 month 102 no comment 98 less (of) 230 made-up 138 monthly 152 no idea 98 let 60, 295 mainly 134, 154, 160 morally 156 no longer 194 let go 60 maintain 204 more 144 no one 38, 98 let in 46 majority of 82 more and more 136 no problem 98 let in on 188 make 46, 58, 60, 140, 295 more wrong 144 no sooner 158 let out 46 make up 188 moreover 174, 206 no sooner than 200 lie 152, 295 make sense 192 morning 94 no way 98 light 295 manage 62, 223 most 110, 144 no wonder 98 like 2, 48, 60, 130, 154 166, manner 142 194, 295, 223 mostly 154 nobody 38, 54, 98, 182 many 100, 110, 146 likely 204 most(ly) 142 no(body) 190 many (of) 228, 229 likelihood 186 move 56, 120 nominate 46 march 152 likewise 174 move off 188 none (of) 82, 98, 110, 228 mathematics 84 linguistics 84 mow 295 noon 94 matter 223 lion's den 86 much 100, 146, 154 nor 200 maximum 132 little 104, 146, 200 much (of) 228, 229 nor do I 200 may 34, 74, 128, 214, 220 little (of) 230 must 36, 40, 74, 128, 214 normally 36 may well 34 little ones 122 mustn't 36, 38, 74, 221 northern 132 me 215 live 152 my 122, 213 not 200 meal 180 live up to 188 myself 120, 231 not a single 98 mean 8, 26, 48, 130 140, lively 142 not any 98, 186 192, 295, 217, 223 name 2, 46 logically 156 not certain 76 means 84 namely 112, 206 London-based 138 not many 104 meanwhile 174 naturally 150, 156 lone 132 not much 104 measles 84 nearby 150 lonely 142 not necessarily 164 measure 2, 217 nearly 102, 134, 150 long 62,72 not once 152 media 84 necessary 204 long-lasting 138 not only 200 medical 132 need 38, 48, 130, 194, 214, not one 98 longest-serving 138 219, 223 medically 156 look 2, 42, 164, 217 note 204 needn't 38, 226 meet 295

nothing 54, 182 order 2, 48, 58, 62, 72, 76, private 136 physics 84 78, 228 notice 48, 60, 66, 68 194, pick up 188 probability 186 217, 223 order about 188 plainly 150 probable 204 notify 66 original 136 plan 8, 10, 26, 50, 62 64, probably 156 now 152 otherwise 174 68, 186, 223 problem 76, 186 nowhere 54, 98 ought to 40, 128, 297, plans 130 prohibit 60, 96 214, 219, 221 number of 82, 100 play 56, 58 promise 2, 26, 66, 72 76, ourselves 231 pleased 140, 144 124, 130 object 60 out 198 pleased / pleasing 232 pronounce 56 obligatory 78 outcome 86 pleasure 90 proper 132 observation 76 outskirts 84 plenty of 82, 100 property 90 observe 46, 48, 60, 223 outwardly 156 point 194 proposal 186 obvious 42, 204 over 176, 180 propose 26, 46, 50, 64 66, point out 58, 66 obviously 156 overheads 84 72, 78, 204, 210 pointedly 142 occasional 132 overhear 60, 223 prospect 186 police 84 occupy ... with 120 owe 58, 194 proud 186 politically 156 odd 136, 140 owing to 160 prove 42, 56, 58, 164, 294 politics 84 oddly 150 own 2, 217 provide for 188 popular 134 of 144, 184 own up 60 provided 20,138 population 80 off 198 provided that 174 positive 140 panic 38 offer 46, 58, 62, 72, 228 public 80, 136 possess 217 paper 90 office-worker 86 publications department possibility 186 park 56 often 150 86 possible 132, 204 part 110 old 136 pull 223 post 58 particular 136 on 118, 184 pull to 188 pour 58 particularly 154 on account of 160 push to 188 practically 134 particulars 84 on condition that 174 push-up 86 predict 2, 194 partly 160 on many occasions 150 put 296 prefer 2, 48, 78, 130 154, pass 58 on the contrary 174 put down as 188 194, 217, 223 passer-by 86 on the other hand 174 put out 46 pregnant 42 past 90 on the part of 202 put up to 188 premises 84 pause 56 on top of that 206 put up with 188 prepare 120, 223 pay 58, 192, 295, 223 once 6 prepared 140 quarterly 152 peace-keeping 138 once a week 152 present 90 question 76, 172, 194 peculiar 144 one 88, 122 press 80 quickly 142, 148 pen top 86 one another 88, 231 presumably 150, 156 quick(ly) 142 people 48, 84 one of 82 presume 66, 124 quiet 134 per cent 84 ones 122 pretend 62 quietly 148 perfect 134, 144 oneself 120 pretty 134 quit 296 perfectly 134 only 38, 154, 200, 220 prevail 62 quite 150, 233 permission 186 only later 152 prevent 60, 96 permit 2,58 rabies 84 open 56,60 prevent from 46 personally 156 opportunity 130, 186 rarely 36, 96, 150, 152, 200 previously 174, 208 persuade 50, 62, 66, 72, 223 rather 134, 150, 170 opposite 132 pride 186 phase out 46 read 46, 56, 58, 296 opposition 80 pride on 120 phenomena 84 ready 140 option 186 primarily 134 phone 56 or 112, 174 ready-made 138 printout 86 phonetics 84 real 144 orchestra 80 prior to 202 physically 156 realise 2, 68, 217

ride 296 shake 296 really 134, 154 so as to 162 reason 102, 108, 186, 194 right 144 shall 40, 74, 128, 214 so do 1 200, 232 reasonable 204 right across 176 shall / shan't 26 so far 180 reasonably 134 rightly 156 shame 186 so long as 174 shampoo 90 reassure 50, 66 so that 162, 174 ring 296 recall 48, 60, 62, 223 rip 56 shave 120 so what you're saying is 210 recent 144 rise 296 she 215 so you mean (that) 210 risk 186, 223 reckon 54, 210 shear 295 so you're saying (that) 210 recognised 42 roll 152 shed 296 soft 144 recommend 50, 66, 72, rough 144 sheer 132 soft-spoken 138 78. 210 shine 296 run 152, 296 solely 154 recommendation 76 run into 188 shock 192, 223 some 96, 110, 122, 213, 227 refusal 76, 186 shocked 78, 140 runner-up 86 some 82 refuse 2, 48, 58, 62, 72 96, shoot 296 some (of) 82, 228 sad 140 130, 223 shoot down 188 somebody 48, 96, 228 sadly 156 regard 194 shop around 188 someone 48, 96, 228 satisfaction 186 regard as / with 56 short-term 138 something 48, 96, 190, 228 satisfied 186 regardless of 202 short(ly) 142 sometimes 36,148 save 58 region to region 94 should 40,74,128,198, somewhat 154 regret 2, 62, 154, 217, 223 savings 84 214, 219, 221 soon 174 savings account 86 regularly 150 show 48, 50, 58, 66 68, sooner 158, 170, 200 saw 296 reluctance 186 204, 223 sorry 132, 140 say 50, 54, 58, 62, 66 68, shrink 296 reluctant 96 sort out 188 72, 124, 296, 224 rely 60, 62 shut 56, 295 sound 2, 42, 90, 164, 217 scarcely 96, 150, 158 200 shut up 188 remain 42 sour-tasting 138 scare 192 remaining 138 sign 186 sow 296 school 80 remember 30, 48, 60, 62 similar 132 speak 60, 296 scientific 136 68, 166, 194, 223 similarly 174 special 144 scornful 76 remind 2, 50, 62, 66, 68, 72 simple 140 specialise in 56 sea 90 remind of 56 simply 134, 154 specifically 154 seaside 90 repair 58 simultaneously 206 speculate 66,68 secret 194 repeatedly 142 since 6, 12, 14, 118, 174 speculation 76, 172 see 2, 30, 46, 50, 60, 68 reply 66, 76 since (because) 160, 174 194, 296, 217, 224 speed 296 report 46, 48, 50, 56, 58 sing 56, 58, 296 seeing as 160 66, 204, 223 spell 296 sink 296 seeing that 160, 206 reportedly 142 spend 296 sit 152, 296 seek 296 reputedly 142 spill 296 sky 90 seem 42, 48, 62, 124 132, request 2,72,78 spin 296 sleep 214, 296 164, 190, 192, 217 require 48, 66, 78 spit 296 sleeping 132 seen 140 resemble 217 splash out 188 slide 296 seldom 96, 150, 152, 200 resent 48, 60, 194, 223 split 296 slightly 134, 150 self 120 resolve 26 split up 188 sling 296 sell 58, 296, 223 resort 60 spoil 296 slowly 148 selves 120 responsible 132 spot 224 slow(ly) 142 send 46, 48, 58, 296 result from 188 spread 296 small-scale 138 sense 186 resulting 138 spring 94, 296 smell 30, 296, 217 seriously 150, 156 reveal 50 staff 84 smoke 56 set 296 rich 134 stairs 84 so 146, 174, 200 sew 296 riches 84 stand 152, 296

stand up 188	surroundings 84	that said 206	they 48
start 48, 56, 60, 62, 130,	suspect 124	that's not to say 210	they say 4
223–24	swear 72,296	the 92, 94, 122, 144, xii, 213	things like this 206
state-of-the-art 86	sweep 296	the affluent 122	think 2, 8, 10, 50, 54, 56,
statement 76	sweet-smelling 138	the disadvantaged 122	62, 64, 66, 68, 124, 194, 296, 210, 217
statistics 84	swell 296	the elderly 122	
stay 42, 180	swim 152, 214, 296	the first of these 206	think about 8, 68, 172
steal 296	swing 296	the first one 206	think of 8, 10, 60
stick 296	sympathetic 76	the following 206	thin(ly) 142
sting 296	sympathy 102	the former 206	this 92, 122, 213, 224
stink 296	4-46-1-76	the homeless 122	this morning / week / month 6
stipulate 78	tactful 76	the last of these 206	this was the reason for 206
stolen 138	take 58, 192, 194, 296, 214	the last one 206	those 122,138
stop 60, 223–24	take after 46, 188	the low-paid 122	ACCUSATION OF THE PROPERTY OF
straight 136	take against 188	the main 122	though 164, 174
strange-sounding 138	take on 110	the majority of 82	thoughtful 140
strike 192, 296	take over 188	the minute / second /	threat 76
strive 296	take up on 188	moment 6	threaten 62, 72
strong 134	taken 138	the number of 82	through 118, 176, 180
study 56	taking into account that 206	the only 122	throughout 176, 180
stupid 140	talk 60	the only problem is 210	throw 46, 58, 296, 223
stupidly 156	talk about / of / on / with	the only thing is 210	throw away 188
subdued 142	68, 172, 184	the only trouble is 210	thrust 296
subsequently 174, 206	talk down to 46	the poor 122	thus 174
such 200, 206	talk out of 188	the position of 92	tidy up 188
such that 162	taste 30, 192, 217	the position of 92	till 180
	tea cup 86		tired 140
such things 206	tea leaf 86	the privileged 122	tired / tiring 232
suddenly 4, 142	teach 46, 48, 58, 62, 66, 68,	the reason for this is that 206	title 46
suffer 150	296, 223	the rich 122	to 130
sufficient 204	team 80	the role of 92	to be honest 210
sufficiently 146	tear 296	the slightest 186	to date 180
suggest 2, 46, 50, 54, 58, 66, 72, 78, 124, 204,	tear away from 120	the sole 186	to my / his / her
210, 223	technical 136		knowledge 156
suggestion 76, 130	technically 156	the way 68	to put it another way 206
suitable 132	tell 46, 48, 50, 58, 60, 62,	the wealthy 122 the whole of 180	to put it briefly 206
summer 94	66, 68, 72, 124, 296, 223–24		to summarise 206
<b>sun</b> 90		the young 122	today 6
superb 134	tell apart 188	their 213	tomorrow 150
suppose 20, 50, 54, 64, 124,	tend 48, 190	themselves 120, 231	tons of 100
170, 210	terrible 134, 140	then 152, 174	too 146, 154, 174
supposed to 28, 190, 221	terrific 140	then again 210	total 132
supposedly 142	than 198	there 50, 82, 190	totally 134
supposing 20, 170, 174	thank 2	there again 210	touch 223
sure 76, 132, 140	thanks 84	there goes 198	town 90
surprise 192, 194	that 106, 110, 122, 138, 196,	there is 190	transpire 192
surprised 78	215, 224	therefore 174	travel industry 90
surprised / surprising 232	that is 112, 206	these 122, 206, 224	tread 296
surprisingly 156	that is to say 206	these are 208	treatment 180
surprisingly 130			deatment 100

tree-lined 138 well 132 with 118, 184 up-to-date 86 tremendous 134 upset 78, 140, 192 well-behaved 138 with confusion 142 tremendously 154 upstairs 148 well-resourced 138 with reference to 202 trouble about / with 120 urge 72, 78 were 170 with the exception of 202 true 136, 144, 204 urgent 78 without 96, 118 wet 295 try 130, 223 use 194 what 52, 64, 68, 76 108, woman's face 86 women's clinic 86 try out 188 use up 188 what I mean is (that) 210 turn 42 used to 32, 74, 190, 214, wonder 4, 8, 68 219, 220 what if 20 wonderful 134, 140 turn in 188 useful 204 what I'm saying is 210 turn out 42, 192 world 90 usually 148 what with 118 worn 144 unable 96,140 utter 132 whatever 108 worried 42, 140, 144 unaware 140 utterly 134 whatsoever 98 worried / worrying 232 unbelievably 156 what's more 174, 215 worriedly 142 vary 56, 150 uncertain 76, 140, 172 when 6, 20, 54, 68, 108, 158, worry 38, 192 very 134, 154 uncertainty 172 174, 196, 200, 215 would 32, 74, 128, 214, 219, very much 154 unclear 204 when it comes down to 220, 234 view 194 it 150 uncomfortable 140 would like 130 violently 148 whenever 118, 174 undecided 172 would rather 170 virtually 102, 134, 154 where 64, 68, 82, 108, 196, under 176 would sooner 170 206, 215 visit 180 underlying 132 wring 296 whereabouts 84 visually 156 underneath 176 write 56, 58, 295 to 296 whereas 164, 174, 206 vital 78 understand 2, 12, 30, 48 wrong 144 whereby 108, 206 volunteer 62, 72 50, 66, 68, 124, 166 194, wrongly 156 296, 222 whether 64, 68, 76, 172 vote 46 undertake 26 which 52, 64, 68, 106, 110, yesterday 152 vow 72 122, 196, 215, 216, 222 undoubtedly 156 yet 174 wait 62 whichever 108 undress 120 you 44 wake 56, 296 while 20, 118, 158, 164, 174, unexpectedly 142 young 134 206, 213 walk 152 unhappy 140 your 122, 213 want 8, 10, 26, 48, 6472, whilst 164 unique 134, 144 yours 215 130, 223, 224 who 52, 64, 68, 106, 108, university 80 yourself 120, 231 196, 215, 216, 222 warn 2, 50, 62, 66, 6872, unknown 134 78, 223, 224 whoever 108 yourselves 231 unless 20, 172, 174 warning 76, 78 whole 102, 134 unlikely 96, 204 wash 56, 120 whom 52, 106, 110, 216 unnecessary 78, 204 wash up 56, 188 whose 52, 108, 216, 222 unprofessional 140 watch 60, 224 why 68, 108, 196, 209 unreasonable 140, 204 want 210 wide(ly) 142 unsure 132, 140, 172 wave 56 wild 136 unsure. way 142, 186 will 18, 20, 26, 32, 128, not sure 76 214, 220 we 44 until 6, 20, 158, 174, 180, weak 134 willing 140 200 wear 296 willingness 186 until now 180 win 56, 296 weave 296 unwell 132 wind 296 week 102 unwillingness 186 weekly 152 wind up 188 **up** 198 winter 94, 102 **weep** 296 up till 180 wisely 156 weigh 2, 217 up to 180

wish 170, 228

welcome 140

## Appendix 1 Irregular verbs

bare infinitive	past simple	past participle (-ed form)
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoken
be	was / were	been
bear	bore	borne
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn <sup>1</sup>	burnt	burnt
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep <sup>1</sup>	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dived	dived
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream <sup>1</sup>	dreamt	dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwell <sup>1</sup>	dwelt	dwelt
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought

bare infinitive	past simple	past participle
		(-ed form)
find	found	found
fit <sup>1</sup>	fit	fit
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade <sup>2</sup>	forbidden
forecast <sup>1</sup>	forecast	forecast
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang <sup>1</sup>	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel <sup>1</sup>	knelt	knelt
knit <sup>1</sup>	knit	knit
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean <sup>1</sup>	leant	leant
leap <sup>1</sup>	leapt	leapt
learn <sup>1</sup>	learnt	learnt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie <sup>4</sup>	lay	lain
light <sup>1</sup>	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
mow <sup>3</sup>	mowed	mown
pay	paid	paid
prove	proved	proven
	F	L

## Appendix 1

bare infinitive	past simple	past participle (-ed form)
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read <sup>5</sup>	read <sup>5</sup>
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
saw <sup>3</sup>	sawed	sawn
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew <sup>3</sup>	sewed	sewn
shake	shook	shaken
shear <sup>3</sup>	sheared	shorn
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
sling	slung	slung
smell <sup>1</sup>	smelt	smelt
sow <sup>3</sup>	sowed	sown
speak	spoke	spoken
speed <sup>1</sup>	sped	sped
spell <sup>1</sup>	spelt	spelt
spend	spent	spent
spill <sup>1</sup>	spilt	spilt

Trigon special resis	50 Sy V.	© 580% W
bare infinitive	past simple	past participle (-ed form)
spin	spun	spun / span
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spoil <sup>1</sup>	spoilt	spoilt
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
strike	struck	struck
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell <sup>3</sup>	swelled	swollen
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trodden
understand	understood	understood
wake <sup>1</sup>	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weave <sup>1</sup>	wove	woven
weep	wept	wept
wet <sup>1</sup>	wet	wet
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> These verbs have two past simple and two past participle forms, both the ones given and regular forms (e.g. burn; burnt / burned; burnt / burned).

<sup>2</sup> 'forbad' is also sometimes used, but is old fashioned.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> These verbs have two past participle forms, the one given and a regular form (e.g. mow; mowed; mown /

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> When *lie* means 'deliberately to say something untrue' it is regular ('lie / lied / lied').

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup> Pronounced /red/.

## Appendix 2 Passive verb forms

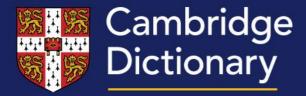
If an agent is mentioned, it goes in a prepositional phrase with **by** after the verb (see also Unit 24).

Present si Active:	mple tell(s)	John <b>tells</b> me that you're thinking of leaving.
Passive:	am / is / are told	I'm told (by John) that you're thinking of leaving.
		The cold (by John) that you're thinking or teaving.
Past simp		11 411 71 4 1 1 1 1
Active:	told	John <b>told</b> me that you were leaving.
Passive:	was / were told	I was told (by John) that you were leaving.
Present pe	erfect	
Active:	have / has told	John has told me that you are leaving.
Passive:	have / has been told	I have been told (by John) that you are leaving.
Past perfe	ect	
Active:	had told	John <b>had</b> already <b>told</b> me that you were leaving.
Passive:	had been told	I <b>had</b> already <b>been told</b> (by John) that you were leaving.
	400.00 57 670 7506 7090 Feb - 20 73 4924	. Had all easy been total (by John) and you were tearning.
	ontinuous	. 1 . 7 . 1
Active:	am / is / are telling	John <b>is</b> always <b>telling</b> me that you are leaving.
Passive:	am / is / are being told	I <b>am</b> always <b>being told</b> (by John) that you are leaving.
Past conti	inuous	
Active:	was / were telling	John was always telling me that you were leaving.
Passive:	was / were being told	I was always being told (by John) that you were leaving.
Future sin	nole	
Active:	will tell	I will tell John that you are leaving.
Passive:	will be told	John will be told (by me) that you are leaving.
	2002-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00-00	John Wile De Lote (by the) that you are teaving.
Future pe Active:	will have told	By tomorrow I will have told John that you are leaving
		By tomorrow I <b>will have told</b> John that you are leaving.
Passive:	will have been told	By tomorrow John will have been told (by me) that you are leaving.
Present pe	erfect continuous (rare in the pa	assive)
Active:	has / have been telling	John has been telling me for ages that you are leaving.
Passive:	has / have been being told	I have been being told (by John) for ages that you are leaving

## Modal verbs with passives

Active: Passive:	should / could / might / ought to (etc.) tell should / could / might / ought to (etc.) be told	You <b>should tell</b> John. John <b>should be told</b> .
Active: Passive:	should / could / might / ought to (etc.) have told should / could / might / ought to (etc.) have been told	You <b>should have told</b> John. John <b>should have been told</b> .
Active:	should / could / might / ought to (etc.) have been telling	You <b>should have been</b> <b>telling</b> John while I was outside.
Passive:	should / could / might / ought to (etc.) have been being told	John <b>should have been being told</b> while I was outside.

Other passive verb forms are very rare.



# Trusted by millions of learners and teachers

Free, corpus-informed dictionaries, thesaurus and language learning resources for every level









## Clear explanations

Written especially for learners of English, our definitions are clear and easy to understand, in your choice of American or British English. You'll also find audio pronunciations for each word, grammar advice, example sentences and translation dictionaries in more than 20 languages.



Personal learning Cambridge
Dictionary +Plus

Cambridge Dictionary +Plus is a free resource for learners and teachers of English where you can create, download and share word lists and quizzes. Sign up for our learner and teacher newsletters to get monthly tips and hear about new dictionary features.



## Unique thesaurus

Beyond just listing synonyms and opposites, the Cambridge Thesaurus helps you choose the right word for the right context. It explains how similar words are used differently depending on their context – American or British English, formal or informal language – with thousands of example sentences that show collocations and grammar patterns.



## Community network

Join our community of dictionary fans on Instagram, Twitter and Facebook to enjoy new content every day. Whether it's a learning challenge or a Word of the Day post, our social media channels have something for everyone!









# Trusted by millions, RIGHT FOR YOU.

# CHOOSE IN USE

- Grammar, vocabulary and pronunciation for all levels, including advanced.
- Trusted and recommend by teachers for over 35 years.
- Perfect for self-study or supplementary classroom material.

To find out more visit:

cambridge.org/inuse

